

L. g. sept.

50

lcl

L. g. sept.
50 ~~50~~

Rothwell

<36635066610019



<36635066610019

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek



THE
ENGLISH READER.

A Key
to the English Language and Literature.

A choise Miscellany
of
Anecdotes, Moral Tales, Narratives, Travels, Historical
Pieces, Biographies, Fables, Letters &c. &c.
selected
from the best modern Authors.

The whole accompanied with
Questions for Exercise, Copious German Notes, Critical and Explanatory;
Concise, clear, and easy Rules on the Pronunciation, and particularly adapted
for the use of Schools, as well as for private Study.

By
J. S. S. Rothwell,
Professor of modern Languages.

Sixteenth Edition.
Augmented, improved, and corrected.

Bayerische
Staatsbibliothek
München

Munich 1896.
Published by Julius Grubert.

"He that knows no other tongue
Knows little of his own."

Goethe.

"Th' advantages of language every man can tell; —
What tongue soe'er you speak, be sure you speak it well."

Honeycomb.



V o r r e d e.

Weder Mangel an Chrestomathien, noch der Ruhm, der durch eine solche Arbeit zu erlangen ist, viel weniger das Verlangen, etwas Neues der Neuheit halber zu verfassen, hat mich bewogen, vorliegendes Werkchen dem Publicum darzubieten, sondern der Wunsch, nützlich zu sein, — der Wunsch, das Studium meiner Muttersprache, — welche heutzutage für jeden Gebildeten beinahe zur Nothwendigkeit geworden ist, — faßlich, leicht und angenehm zu machen.

Mein Buch unterscheidet sich von anderen englischen Lesebüchern besonders in folgenden Punkten:

I. Durch die Bezeichnung der Vokal-laute oben auf jeder Seite, sowie auch die Bezeichnung der Aussprache durch deutsche Buchstaben, wo dieselbe von der Regel ganz abweichend ist, sowie die am Anfang des Buches gegebenen kurzen faßlichen Regeln darüber, welche als Norm dienen dürften und ein jeder leicht im Gedächtniß behalten wird, während er nicht im Stande wäre, die vielen Regeln über diesen Gegenstand, welche in der Grammatik zu finden, leicht zu fassen und anzuwenden.

II. Die unten auf jeder Seite mit Hinweisung auf die Regeln der Grammatik bezifferten erklärenden Anmerkungen, welche als Schlüssel zur Sprache dienen dürften, und wodurch jeder leicht in den Geist derselben eindringen kann. Manche sind vielleicht der Meinung, daß die Sache hierdurch zu leicht, das tiefere Studium der Sprache gefährdet wird, daß es besser wäre, diese Anmerkungen am Ende des Werkes zu haben. Dieser Ansicht kann ich aus langjähriger Erfahrung dadurch begegnen, daß es leider mit den neueren Sprachen wie mit den alten Classikern geht: unter Hundert, welche Sprachen erlernen, sind höchstens zehn — wenigstens in den ersten 12 Monaten — welche etwas lesen oder lesen wollen, weil, wie sie ganz richtig bemerken, das ewige Aufschlagen im Wörterbuche zu zeitraubend und langweilig ist, und sie doch am Ende mit Hülfe des Wörterbuchs, — besonders anfangs — nichts Erhebliches herausbringen können. Durch die vorliegende Methode aber hoffe ich die Sache umzukehren und neunzig Leser aus hundert zu gewinnen.

Jeder, der sich nur die Mühe gegeben hat, mittelst eines Wörterbuchs ein Stück aus einer unbekannten Sprache zu übersetzen oder sich für die Stunde vorzubereiten, wird wohl wissen, wie viele Nuancen beinahe jedes Wort, wenn es im Satz eine andere Stellung bekommt

oder mit andern Worten verbunden ist, hat, und wie wenig Aufschluß hierüber ein Lexikon zu geben im Stande ist. Wäre dieses nicht der Fall, so hätte der berühmte Schlegel, der den unsterblichen *Shakspeare* so ausgezeichnet aufgefaßt und im Ganzen vortrefflich übersetzt, ihn in einigen Fällen nicht gegen den Sinn wiedergegeben: z. B. im III. Akt, 2. Scene des „Kaufmanns von Venedig“ läßt der Verfasser die *Portia* ihrem Liebhaber *Bassanio* sagen.

“Beshrew your eyes,
They have o'erlook'd me, and divided me;
One half of me is your's, the other half your's, — —
Mine own, I would say, but if mine, then your's,
And so all yours:”

Welches Schlegel mit den Worten:

„O der Augen,
Die so mich übersehn und mich getheilt,
Halb bin ich eur, die andere Hälfte euer —
Mein wollt ich sagen; doch wenn mein, dann euer,
Und so ganz euer.“

wieder gibt.

Bedeutet das Wort „übersehn“ hier so viel als „nicht sehen, nicht betrachten,“ die Bedeutung, die man ihm im Deutschen im Allgemeinen beilegt, so hat obige Stelle keinen Sinn, denn durch das „Nichtansehen, Nichtbetrachten,“ kann man keine Zauberkraft mit den Augen ausüben, welche *Shakspeare* deutlich ausdrückt, indem er sagt:

„O der Augen,
Die so mich durch das Ansehen behext, bezaubert und mich getheilt,
In Folge dessen bin ich halb eur, die andere Hälfte euer — 2c.“

Schlegel hat ohne Zweifel im Lexikon das Wort „*overlook*“ mit „übersehen, nichtsehen, nichtbeachten“ gegeben gefunden, hätte er aber irgend eine Amme in England darüber gefragt, so hätte sie ihm gewiß geantwortet, daß in dem Sinne, in welchem es *Shakspeare* in obiger Stelle gebraucht hat, es sogar heutigen Tages „mittels der Augen behexen, bezaubern“ heißt.

III. Die am Ende eines jeden Stückes gestellten Fragen, durch welche der Lernende erstens auf den Inhalt des Gelesenen aufmerksam gemacht und geprüft wird, ob er ihn verstanden oder nicht, dienen zweitens besonders als Aufmunterung zum Sprechen, weil die Antwort auf jede Frage sich leicht im Stücke vorfindet, und immer in englischer Sprache gegeben werden muß, und drittens wird eine der größten Schwierigkeiten der englischen Sprache dadurch gehoben, daß das Ohr durch die Fragen sich leicht an die Aussprache gewöhnt. Beim eigenen Gebrauch des Buches stelle ich dem Lernenden die Fragen, wie sie darin vorkommen, dann muß derselbe die Antwort im Englischen aus dem Gelesenen herausfinden.

Hat man die Sprache erst angefangen, so wäre es natürlich verlorene Zeit, diese Lesestücke, wenn auch mit Hülfe der Anmerkungen allein zu studieren, weil man in den ersten Stunden nicht im Stande sein wird, die Fragen zu verstehen, noch viel weniger Englisch zu beantworten. Nach drei- bis vierwöchentlichem Unterricht aber, in welcher

Zeit die Für-, Zahl- und Zeitwörter gelernt sind, sollte der Schüler für jede Stunde ein Paar Seiten durchstudieren, um im Stande zu sein, dieselben in der Stunde mündlich zu übersetzen und auch die Fragen zu beantworten. Ich lese meinen Schülern das Stück immer vorher vor.

VI. Durch die Auswahl des Inhalts, von dem vieles verdient, nicht allein gelesen, sondern auch in's Gedächtniß geprägt zu werden. Da derselbe nicht nur das Studium der Sprache, sondern auch die allgemeine Bildung des Geistes und Herzens bezwecken soll, so habe ich solche Lesestücke gewählt, welche der Jugend Vergnügen und Nutzen gewähren und in welchen Vorgerücktere manches Neue und manches Vergessene finden werden. Um gleichzeitig zur Beförderung des Studiums der Sprache eines besonderen Volkes zu dienen, beziehen sich die meisten Stücke auf englische Verhältnisse oder englische Geschichte.

Vieljährige Erfahrung hat mich gelehrt, daß die Lesestücke nicht zu kurz, nicht haltlos, aber auch, besonders für Gymnasien und Schulen, nicht zu lang sein dürfen; denn sind dieselben zu ausgedehnt, wie zum Beispiel das vorzügliche Werkchen "*The Vicar of Wakefield*," welches hauptsächlich als erstes Lesebuch zur Hand genommen wird, so hat man den Inhalt des ersten Kapitels schon vergessen, bevor man das zweite gelesen, folglich gewährt es dem Lernenden kein Vergnügen, flößt ihm keinen Wunsch, kein Verlangen ein, das Ganze durchzulesen, was bei kleineren Lesestücken, wenn sie interessant, verschiedenartig und gut gewählt sind, der Fall ist.

Dies sind die Punkte, die ich als Vorzüge dieses Werkchens, in seiner Eigenschaft als erstes Lesebuch, vor andern der Art betrachte. Ob sie sich als solche bewähren, mögen meine ehrenwerthen Collegen beurtheilen.

Bei dieser Gelegenheit kann ich nicht umhin, das Publikum auf die neue Auflage meiner vollständigen, theoretisch-praktischen englischen Grammatik sowohl, als auch meiner vereinfachten Schulgrammatik, aufmerksam zu machen.

Habe ich durch meine kleine Arbeit das Studium der englischen Sprache erleichtert und befördert, so ist mein Zweck erreicht.

München, im Oktober 1847.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

Vorrede zur zweiten Auflage.

Sehr erfreulich ist es mir, daß in so kurzer Zeit eine zweite Auflage des vorliegenden Werkchens nothwendig geworden ist, was für seine Brauchbarkeit spricht. Bei dieser neuen Auflage habe ich ein Paar neue interessante Stücke hinzugefügt, manche kleine Unrichtigkeiten und Druckfehler, die sich bei der ersten Auflage eingeschlichen hatten, entfernt und

so vermehrt und verbessert empfehle ich es Denjenigen, welche das Werkchen seit seinem ersten Erscheinen so freundlich aufgenommen haben.

Ich benütze diese Gelegenheit, die ehrenwerthen Collegen im Lehrfache auf meine "*New English and German Dialogues*," welche sich stets auf die Regeln der Grammatik beziehen und dadurch zur Beförderung des Studiums der englischen Sprache wesentlich beitragen, aufmerksam zu machen. Für Liebhaber der englischen Poesie, oder für diejenigen, welche in den Geist derselben mit Leichtigkeit eindringen möchten, wäre "*Rothwell's* Collection of Select Modern Poems with German Notes, &c." sehr zu empfehlen.

Toulouse, im Januar 1851.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

Vorrede zur vierzehnten Auflage.

Die gegenwärtige Auflage habe ich durch zwei interessante Stücke vermehrt, die Anmerkungen einer nochmaligen genauen Revision unterworfen und mich bemüht, das Buch seinen Freunden korrekt zu übergeben.

Greifenberg, im Juni 1880.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

Table

of

Contents and Alphabetical Index.

	Page.
A. Anecdotes, Narratives, &c.	3
B. Fables, Narratives, &c.	53
C. Letters, Proverbs, &c.	67
D. Historical Pieces, &c.	81
E. Biographical, and Historical Pieces, &c.	93
F. Orations and Harangues	127
G. Narrative, Pathetic, and other Pieces	131
H. Moral, Pathetic, and descriptive Pieces	159
K. Humorous, Oratorical, and Historical Pieces	185
Appendix, containing List of Authors' names, &c.	217

Alphabetical Index.

	Piece.	Page.
A bdallah and Balsora, an Oriental Tale. <i>Addison</i>	XXIII.	27
Abuse (the) of authority. <i>Shakspeare</i>	LXXII.	106
Adventure (a dreadful). <i>Courier</i>	X.	11
Advice (Dean Swift's) respecting Servants	IX.	10
Agha Mahomed Khan, Shah of Persia. <i>Sir John Malcolm</i>	LXXV.	113
Antony's Funeral oration over Cæsar. <i>Shakspeare</i>	XCVI.	213
Arthur, Nephew of king John of England. <i>Shakspeare</i>	XCVII.	156
B abes (the) in the Wood. <i>Percy's Reliques</i>	CXVIII.	215
Bagpiper (the) revived	XIII.	15
Barleycorn (John). <i>Rob. Burns</i>	CIX.	193
Bird (the little). <i>J. S. S. Rothwell</i>	XCV.	149
Blind Boy (the). <i>Colley Cibber</i>	LXXXVIII.	137
Books (Diffusion of). <i>Milton</i>	CIII.	172
Books (Devouring). <i>Annals of Education</i>	LVI.	79
Broken Heart (the). <i>Washington Irving</i>	CVII.	180
British Soldier (Character of the). <i>Col. Napier</i>	LXXXVII.	136
Brothers (the two) — Apologue. <i>J. S. S. R.</i>	V.	7

VIII

	Piece.	Page.
Bundle (the) of Sticks. <i>Campbell</i>	XXXIX.	55
Byron (Lord) to his Highness Jussuf Pacha	LII.	72
Calcutta (Black-Hole at). <i>Gleig</i>	LXX.	100
Canute's Reproof. <i>Hume</i>	XXXIV.	47
Chatham (Lord) to the British House of Peers	LXXXIII.	128
Chesterfield (the Earl of) to his Son	LV.	77
Chimney-sweepers' Feast or the Lost Child found	XIV.	16
Columbus and the Egg. <i>Washington Irving</i>	XCIII.	147
Conscience. <i>Goldsmith</i>	LXVII.	97
Constantinople (Siege and Conquest of). <i>Gibbon</i>	LXII.	83
Curiosity put to the Test. <i>J. S. S. R.</i>	C.	170
Doctors and Dentists (What are)?	CII.	172
Don Carlos (Death of). <i>Prescott</i>	LXXIII.	107
Dudley (from Lord) to the Lord Bishop of Llandaff	LIII.	73
Dumb Woman (the mysterious). <i>Capt. Basil Hall</i>	XXVIII.	38
Education (the most valuable part of every man's)	LXXIV.	112
Elizabeth (Queen) and the Countess of Nottingham	LXX.	81
Elizabeth (Queen) character of. <i>Hume</i>	LXXVI.	115
Elizabeth (Queen) to her Forces at Tillbury. <i>English History</i>	LXXXIV.	130
Eloquence. <i>Sterne</i>	LXV.	92
England in 1685 and England in 1877. <i>Macaulay</i>	CXII.	204
Englishmen (the mysterious)	XVIII.	20
Epigram. <i>Dr. Bowring</i>	XLV.	65
Esquimaux (Description of the). Coquetry at the North Pole. <i>Sir Edward Parry</i>	CXV.	211
Faith. <i>Martin Tupper</i>	CXIV.	210
Famine in London. <i>J. S. S. Rothwell</i>	XLIII.	61
Flower and Bird (the largest)	CV.	178
Fly (the) and the Spider. <i>Walcot</i>	LXXIX.	119
Franklin (from Dr. Benjamin) to Mr. Dubourg	XLVIII.	67
Gay (from the Poet John) to Mr. Fenton	XLIX.	69
Ghosts (on)	LXXXI.	126
Giant (the) and the Dwarf. <i>Goldsmith</i>	XXXVIII.	54
Gilpin (John the diverting History of). <i>Cowper</i>	CXI.	201
Golden Rule (A)	XI.	14
Golden Rule (the)	XXV.	36
Gout (a cure for the). <i>Biography and obituary for 1832</i>	XCI.	145
Gray (from the Poet Thomas) to Mr. Nicholls	LI.	71
Habit (what it becomes in a Child)	XVI.	18
Hamlet's "To be, or not To be." <i>Shakspeare</i>	CXIII.	209
Happiness is a man's proper Business. <i>Locke</i>	XLII.	60
Hermit (the) of Bath. <i>Elder</i>	CVIII.	185
History (Questions on ancient)	IV.	6
Hodge and the Vicar. <i>Anon</i>	CI.	171
Hogarth (Biography of). <i>J. S. S. Rothwell</i>	LXVIII.	98

	Piece.	Page.
Honesty (Affected). <i>Sterne</i>	LXI.	82
Hope. <i>Shakspeare</i>	LXXXVI.	135
Inattention. <i>Dugald Stewart</i>	LIX.	80
Inkle and Yarico. <i>Steele</i>	XLIV.	63
Japanese (A) Sermon. <i>Algernon Bertram Mitford</i> . . .	XCIX.	159
Johnson (Dr.) and Mrs. Thrale	I.	3
Knowledge and Ignorance. <i>Arabian Author</i>	L.	90
Knowledge (Variety of). <i>Boswell's Life of Johnson</i> . . .	CXVII.	214
Learned (How to become)	XII.	14
Louis XVI. and Family (Fate of). <i>Maunders</i>	XXII.	25
Man (the) who had an Axe to grind. <i>Franklin</i>	XCVI.	149
Marriage (a Fleet). <i>By an Irishman</i>	XXXV.	48
Mary Queen of Scots. <i>Robertson</i>	LXIII.	90
Minds (How many were formed in Secrecy)	LXXXIX.	137
Minstrel (the Last). <i>Walter Scott</i>	CXIX.	217
Monsieur Margot, or the French Professor. <i>E. L. Bulwer</i> .	CX.	194
Montague (Lady Mary) to the Countess of Bute	LIV.	75
My Mother. <i>Mrs. Gilbert</i>	XVII.	19
Neighbours (the two) or Confidence in God. <i>J. S. S. R.</i> .	XCII.	146
Nelson. The Battle of Trafalgar. <i>Southey</i>	LXVII.	93
Next-door Neighbour (our). <i>Dickens</i>	XC.	138
Old (the) Man's Comforts and how he gained them. <i>Southey</i>	LVIII.	80
<i>Orations</i> : See: Wolfe, Chatham, Elizabeth, Antony.		
Ossian's address to the Sun. <i>Macpherson</i>	XXXIII.	47
Otway (Biography)	LXIX.	99
Painter (the) who endeavoured to please every one	LXIV.	92
Patriotism (Desperate)	VIII.	10
Philosopher (the) outdone	VII.	9
Physicians (a Hint to) how to acquire Celebrity. <i>Countess of</i>		
<i>Blessington</i>	LXXX.	120
Politeness (Excessive)	LXXI.	106
Proverbs (Arabic)	LVII.	79
Prudence (Political)	XXXII.	46
Rabelais and his Poison for the King. <i>J. S. S. R.</i> . . .	II.	4
Royal George (The loss of the). <i>Ingram. Rothwell</i> . . .	XCVII.	150
Rules (Ten) to be observed in Practical Life. <i>Jefferson</i> . .	XLI.	60
Scott (Walter) at School. <i>Lockhart</i>	III.	4
Sedar (the) and Leopard Hunt. <i>H. R. Addison</i>	LXXXV.	131
Solomon and Sheba. <i>J. D'Israeli</i>	LXXVII.	117
Sparrow's (the) First Flight	XXX.	44
Speaker (advice to an affected). <i>La Bruyère</i>	XXVI.	37
Star (the) of Destiny. <i>New Monthly Magazine</i>	CIV.	173
Sterne	XXVII.	37

	Piece.	Page.
Suffer not your Spirits to be subdued	LXXVIII.	118
T alleyrand (the Princess) and Denon	XLVI.	66
Taste (M usical)	XXXI.	46
Taste and Knowledge. <i>J. D'Israeli</i>	XXIX.	43
Thomson and Quin	VI.	8
Time tries the characters of Men	XX.	22
Turpitude (Infamous)	XXXVI.	52
U nhappy (the most). <i>Miscellany of Eastern Learning</i> . .	XV.	18
Unhappy (Comparatively and Superlatively). <i>Capt. Basil Hall</i>	XXI.	23
V ulture's (the) Lessons. <i>Dr. Johnson</i>	XL.	58
W histle (the) <i>Dr. Franklin</i>	XXIV.	35
Wise (A) man's Kingdom is his own breast	XIX.	22
Wit and Humour. <i>E. P. Whipple</i>	XCIV.	148
Wolf (the) and the Lamb. <i>Croxall</i>	XXXVII.	53
Wolfe (General) to his Army before Quebec. <i>Aikin</i> . . .	LXXXII.	127
Y orick's Death. <i>Sterne</i>	CVI.	178
Youth and Old Age (the Duties of)	XLVII.	66

Vor Erinnerung über die Aussprache.

Allgemeine Regeln über die Vokale.

Regel I.

Die Vokale sind lang vor einem einfachen Konsonanten, worauf ein stummes *e* ⁽¹⁾ folgt, z. B.:

- A* (e): *Fate* (feh't), Schicksal; *hate* (heht), Haß; *made* (meh'd), gemacht.
E (i): *Mete* (miht), messen; *here* (hihr), hier; *sere* ⁽²⁾ (sihr), weß.
I (ei): *Pine* (pein), Fichte; *shine* (schei'n), scheinen; *thine* ⁽³⁾ (dthein), Dein.
O (o): *Note* (noht), Billet; *robe* (roh'b), Kleid; *antidote* ⁽⁴⁾ (antidoht), Gegengift.
U (ju): *Tune* (tjuhn), Arie; *use* (juh's), Gebrauch; *repute* (ripuht) ⁽⁵⁾, Ruf.
Y (uei): lautet wie *i* an seiner Stelle lauten würde, z. B.: *style* (steil), Stile; *stile* (steil), Steige; *type* (teip), Schrift.

Regel II.

Die Vokale sind kurz vor allen Konsonanten, worauf kein stummes *e* folgt z. B.:

- A* (a): *Fat* (fatt), fett; *hat* (hatt), Hut; *mad* (madd), toll.
E (e): *Met* (mett), begegnet; *her* (herr), sie; *servant* (serrwn't), Diener.
I (i): *Pin* (pinn), Stecknadel; *shin* (schinn), Schienbein; *thin* (thinn), dünn.
O (kurz o): *Not* (nott), nicht; *rob* (robb), rauben; *dot* (dott) Punkt.
U (u): *Tun* (tonn), Tonne; *us* (oß), uns; *put* (putt), stellen.
Y (i) ⁽⁶⁾: *Typical* (tipik'l), vorbildlich; *Styx* (stix), der Styx.

NB. Es ist wohl zu merken, daß das *w* stets wie *u* (u) und das *j* wie (dsche) ausgesprochen werden, z. B.:

- When* (huenn), wann; *who* (hu), wer, welcher; *wit* (uitt), Wiß.
June (dschuhn), Juni; *James* (dschehm's), Jakob.

Allgemeine Regel über die Diphthongen.

Regel III.

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <i>Ae</i> | lautet in der Regel wie | (i), z. B.: <i>Caesar</i> (sihs'r). |
| <i>Ai</i> u. <i>ay</i> | lauten " " " " | (eh), z. B.: <i>Hair</i> (hehr), Haar; <i>May</i> (meh), Mai. |
| <i>Ao</i> | lautet " " " " | (eh), z. B.: <i>Gaol</i> (dschehl), Gefängniß. |
| <i>Au</i> u. <i>aw</i> | lauten " " " " | (oa), z. B.: <i>Caught</i> (foah't), gefangen; <i>daw</i> (doah), Dohle. |
| <i>Ea</i> | lautet " " " " | (i), z. B.: <i>Dear</i> (dihr), theuer; <i>heat</i> (hiht), Hitze ⁽⁷⁾ . |
| <i>Eau</i> | lautet " " " " | (oh), z. B.: <i>Beau</i> (boh), Stutzer; <i>bureau</i> (bjuroh), Schreibtisch ⁽⁸⁾ . |

(1) NB. Das "e" ist stumm in allen mehrsilbigen sowohl, als auch in allen einsilbigen Worten, die aus mehr als drei Buchstaben bestehen, z. B.:

hateful (hehtfull), gehässig; *make* (meh't), machen, zc.

(2) Ausgenommen sind *there* (dtchehr), da; *where* (huehr), wo; *were* (uerr), waren.

(3) Dieser Vokal hat dieselbe Aussprache vor "nd, ld, gh, gn," z. B.:

kind (keind), gütig; *mild* (meild), mild; *sigh* (sei), Seufzer; *sign* (sein), Zeichen.

(4) Ausgenommen sind *lose* (luhs); *move* (muhw); *prove* (pruhw); *whose* (huhs).

(5) Ausgenommen sind *fortune* (forttjenn), *fortunate* (forttjenett), und noch einige andere Wörter.

(6) Das *y* am Ende einsilbiger Wörter wird meistens (ei), am Ende mehrsilbiger (i) ausgesprochen, z. B.: *by* (bei); *why* (huei); *thy* (dthei); *family* (famili); *surely* (schuhrli).

(7) Von dieser Regel gibt es viele Ausnahmen, denn häufig lautet das "ea" wie (e), bisweilen auch wie (a), z. B.: *Bread* (bredd), Brot; *head* (hedd), Kopf; *heart* (harrt), Herz. Hierin kann nur die Übung lehren (s. S. 52. Kap. III. der Orthoepie, *Rothwell's Grammar*).

(8) Von dieser Regel gibt es die folgenden Ausnahmen, wo das "eau" wie "ju" ausgesprochen wird, z. B.: *Beauty* (bjuti), *beautiful* (bjutiful), *beauteous* (bjutjeß), *beautify* (bjutifei).

Ee lautet in der Regel wie (i od. ih), z. B.: *Eel* (ihl), Aal; *feel* (fihl), fühlen.
Ei u. *ey* lauten in der Regel wie (ih), z. B.: *Either* (ihdth'r) ⁽¹⁾; *journey* (dschorni).
Ia lautet in der Regel wie (jä), z. B.: *Immediately* (immihd-jätli).
Ie " " " " " (ih), z. B.: *Field* (fihlđ), Feld; *fiend* (fihnd).
Ier " " " " " (ju), z. B.: *Adieu* (edju), Adieu.
Oa " " " " " (oh), z. B.: *Boat* (bohđ), Boot; *soar* (sohr), schweben.
Oe " " " " " (o), z. B.: *Woe* (uoh), Weh; *toe* (toh), Zehe ⁽²⁾.
Oi u. *oy* lauten in der Regel wie (oi), z. B.: *Oil* (oail), Del; *boy* (boai), Knabe.
Oo lautet in der Regel wie (uh), z. B.: *Room* (ruhm), Zimmer; *fool* (fuhl), Narr ⁽³⁾.
Ou " " " " " (au), z. B.: *House* (haus); *out* (aut), aus.
Ua " " " " " (ueh), z. B.: *Quake* (kuehđ), zittern.
Ue " " " " " (ui), z. B.: *Queen* (kuihn), Königin.
Ui u. *uy* lauten in der Regel wie (ui), z. B.: *Languish* (languisch); *obloquy* (oblofui).

Allgemeine Regel über die Aussprache der Endungen der Wörter.

Regel IV.

Cean, cian, sion ⁽⁴⁾, *tion* und *tian* lauten wie ein ganz kurz und scharf ausgesprochenes (schenn), z. B.: *Ocean* (o-sch'n); *politician* (politi-sch'n); *pension* (pennsch'n); *nation* ⁽⁵⁾ (nehsch'n); *tertian* (terr'sch'n).
Cial, tial lauten wie ein kurz gesprochenes (schell), z. B.:
Official (offisch'l), offiziell; *martial* (marrsch'l), kriegerisch.
Cient, tient lauten wie ein kurz ausgesprochenes (schennt), z. B.:
Ancient (ehnsch'nt), alt; *patient* (pehsch'nt), geduldig.
Cious, scious und *tious* lauten wie ein kurz gesprochenes (scheß), z. B.:
Delicious (delischeß), köstlich; *conscious* (konnischeß), bewußt; *fictitious* (fiktischeß), erdichtet.
Science ⁽⁶⁾, *tienc* lauten wie ein kurz ausgesprochenes (schennß), z. B.:
Conscience (konn'sch'nß), Gewissen; *patience* (pehsch'nß), Geduld.
Ceous lautet wie (scheß); *geous* wie (dscheß); *geon* wie (dschenn), z. B.:
Testaceous (steßte-scheß); *courageous* (fore-dscheß); *pigeon* (pid'sch'n).
Eous, ious lauten wie (jeß); *eon, ian, ion* wie (jenn), z. B.:
Duteous (djutjeß); *tedious* (tihdjeß); *plebeian* (plebijenn); *chameleon* (kamihl-jenn).

NB. Ueber die Aussprache des "gh", welches in *cough* (koff), *laugh* (laff), *enough* (enoff), *tough* (toff) wie "f" lautet; in andern Fällen aber, wie *high* (hei), *sigh* (sei), stumm ist, s. § 103 der Grammatik.

NB. Obiges über die Aussprache kann als allgemeine Regel gelten, in der Grammatik findet man Ausführlicheres hierüber und die Übung wird bald das Uebrige thun.

-
- (1) Dieses Wort wird häufig (eidth'r) ausgesprochen. *Ei* wird wie (e) in *heir, their* (dthehr), wie (ei) in *height* (heit), *sleight* (sleit) ausgesprochen.
(2) Ausgenommen sind *shoe* (schuh), Schuh; *canoe* (kenuh); *economy* (ekonomi); *Phoenix* (fihnix).
(3) Ausgenommen sind *door* (dohr), *floor* (flohr), *blood* (blodd), *flood* (flodd).
(4) Kommt vor der Endung "tion" ein "s" zu stehen, so wird das "tion" wie (tjenn) ausgesprochen, z. B.: *digestion* (di-dscheßt-jenn); *question* (kueßt-jenn).
(5) In den Wörtern *occasion, invasion, provision, decision, division, adhesion* wird das "sion" sehr weich, wie wenn das "f" in *Rose* mit dem "schenn" verbunden wäre.
(6) NB. Als selbständiges Wort muß man "science" (Wissenschaft) "sei-enß" aussprechen.

NB. Die in diesem Buche vorkommenden Hinweisungen beziehen sich auf "Rothwell's vollständige, theoretisch-praktische Grammatik der englischen Sprache," wovon die 12. Auflage 1875 erschienen ist.

A. Anecdotes, Narratives, &c.

I. Dr. Johnson and Mrs. Thrale.

(Dokt'r Johnson's und Miß's Thrale.)

The first time¹ Johnson was in company with² Mrs. Thrale, neither³ the elegance⁴ of his conversation, nor³ the depth⁵ of his knowledge could prevent⁶ that lady from being shocked⁷ at⁸ his manners. Among other pieces⁹ of indecorum, his¹⁰ tea not being¹¹ sweet¹² enough¹³, he dipped¹⁴ his fingers into the sugar-basin¹⁵, and supplied¹⁶ himself with as little¹⁷ ceremony and concern¹⁸ as if there had not been a lady at the table¹⁹. Every well-bred²⁰ cheek²¹ was²² tinged with²² confusion²³; but Mrs. Thrale was so exasperated²⁴, that she ordered²⁵ the sugar-basin immediately from the table²⁶, as if its contents²⁷ had been contaminated²⁸ by the Doctor's fingers. The doctor prudently²⁹ took³⁰ no notice³¹, but³² peaceably swallowed³³, as usual, his dozen cups of tea. When³⁴ he had done³⁵, instead of³⁶ placing³⁷ his cup and saucer³⁸ upon the table, he threw³⁹ them both calmly under the grate⁴⁰. The whole tea-table⁴¹ was thrown into confusion⁴². Mrs. Thrale screamed⁴³ out, "Why⁴⁴, doctor, what have you done? You have spoiled⁴⁵ the handsomest set of china⁴⁶ I have in the world!" "I am⁴⁷ very sorry for it, madam," answered⁴⁸ Dr. Johnson, "but I assure⁴⁹ you, I did it out of good breeding⁵⁰, for⁵¹, from⁵² your treatment of⁵³ the sugar-basin, I supposed⁵⁴ you would never touch⁵⁵ any thing again⁵⁶ that I had once soiled²⁸ with my fingers."

1. At what was Mrs. Thrale shocked? — 2. Into what did Dr. Johnson dip his fingers?
3. How did Mrs. Thrale act, and what did she order to be done?
4. How did Dr. Johnson act?
5. When the Doctor had finished his tea, what did he do?
6. What was Mrs. Thrale's exclamation, when Dr. Johnson threw the cup and saucer under the grate?
7. What was the Doctor's reply?

1. Mal, man ergänze „als“, siehe die Grammatik, Reg. VIII. S. 562.
2. *in company with*, in Gesellschaft bei.
3. *neither—nor*, weder—noch.
4. das Geistreiche. 5. Größe seiner Kenntnisse.
6. *prevent that*, verhindern, daß diese.
7. *from being shocked*, sich ärgerte 8. über.
9. *pieces, &c.*, Stücken von Anstößigkeiten.
10. da sein. 11. war. 12. süß. 13. genug.
14. steckte. 15. Zuckerdose. 16. versah sich.
17. eben so wenig. 18. Bedenken.
19. Tische. 20. feine, zarte. 21. Wange.
22. *was tinged with*, wurde roth vor.
23. Verlegenheit. 24. aufgebracht.
25. Befehl gab.
26. vom Tische wegzunehmen.

27. Inhalt. 28. beschmutzt. 29. flügerweise.
30. nahm. 31. keine Notiz davon.
32. sondern. 33. schlürfte. 34. als.
35. fertig war. 36. anstatt. 37. zu stellen.
38. Untertasse. 39. warf.* 40. Kaminrost.
41. Theegesellschaft.
42. *was thrown into confusion*, wurde bestürzt.
43. schrie. 44. wie, was. 45. verdorben.
46. Porcellan-Service, welches.
47. *I am, &c.*, es thut mir sehr leid (daraus).
48. antwortete. 49. versichere.
50. aus seiner Bildung. 51. denn.
52. aus. 53. Handlungsweise gegen.
54. setzte ich voraus. 55. anrühren.
56. wieder.

II. Rabelais and his Poison¹ for the King.

Rabelais, a celebrated² French monk³, satirist³, and physician⁴ of the 15th century, was once⁵ on his way from Rome to Paris. On⁶ reaching Lyons, his money⁷, a circumstance⁸ which often⁹ happened to him⁹, was at an end; wishing, however¹⁰, to proceed¹¹, he had recourse¹² to the following expedient¹³. He asked¹⁴ the hostess¹⁵, in whose house he lodged, whether she had any¹⁶ one who could write¹⁷. She replied that her son, a lad¹⁸ of twelve years, could. Rabelais took¹⁹ the boy¹⁸ into his room²⁰ with him²¹, and, having²² procured some brick-dust²³ and made several²⁴ packets of it²⁴, he ordered him to write²⁵ on the one "poison¹ for Monsieur²⁶," upon a second, "poison for the Dauphin," and on a third, "poison for the king." Having²⁷ made this provision²⁷ for the royal family, he ordered²⁸ the boy not²⁹ to say a word about it²⁹, otherwise³⁰ they should be all hanged. The lad¹⁸, however¹⁰, frightened³¹, ran³² to his mother, and told³³ her what had taken³⁴ place. The plot³⁵ succeeded as he desired: the hostess sent immediately³⁶ to the police, who soon³⁷ arrived, seized³⁸ the supposed traitor³⁹, and took⁴⁰ him to Paris. As⁴¹ soon as he appeared⁴² before the minister, he was recognized⁴³ as the celebrated Rabelais; and his powder⁴⁴, upon⁴⁵ examination, being⁴⁶ found very⁴⁷ innocent, the jest⁴⁸, for which a less eminent wag⁴⁹ might⁵⁰ have been sent to⁵⁰ the galleys, was⁵¹ heartily laughed at and pardoned⁵².

J. S. S. R.

1. Who was Rabelais? — 2. What happened to him at Lyons?
3. What did he ask the hostess? — 4. What was her reply?
5. What did R—do with the boy? — 6. What did he order the boy?
7. What did the lad do? — What did the hostess and the police do?

III. Walter Scott at School⁵³.

It appears⁵⁴ that when⁵⁵ this celebrated author was at school, though⁵⁶ very laborious⁵⁷, his intelligence⁵⁸ was not brilliant, and his great success⁵⁹ in after-life⁶⁰ was owing⁶¹ to his indefatigable⁶² perseverance⁶³.

The following anecdote is found⁶⁴ in his autobiography⁶⁵ published⁶⁶ some years since⁶⁷.

1. Gift. 2. berühmter.
3. Mönch, Satiriker. 4. Arzt.
5. einst auf. 6. als er — erreichte. 7. Geld.
8. Umstand. 9. öfters bei ihm vorkam.
10. jedoch. 11. seine Reise fortzusetzen.
12. nahm er seine Zuflucht.
13. Ausweg. 14. fragte.
15. Wirtin. 16. Jemand.
17. schreiben. 18. Knabe.
19. nahm. 20. Zimmer. 21. mit sich.
22. da er sich — verschafft hatte.
23. Backsteinstaub. 24. mehrere Packete davon.
25. zu schreiben. 26. des Königs Bruder.
27. als er, auf diese Weise — gesorgt hatte.
28. befahl. 29. kein Wort darüber zu sagen.
30. sonst. 31. erschrocken. 32. lief.
33. sagte. 34. Statt gefunden.
35. Streich gelang.

36. sogleich. 37. bald erschien.
38. ergriff. 39. vermeintlichen Verräther.
40. führte. 41. so bald als.
42. erschien. 43. erkannt.
44. Pulver. 45. beim Untersuchen.
46. da — wurde. 47. sehr. 48. Scherz wofür.
49. ein weniger berühmter Schalk.
50. auf die Galeeren geschickt worden wäre.
51. wurde herzlich belacht. 52. verziehen.
53. In der Schule. 54. scheint. 55. als.
56. obwohl. 57. fleißig, doch.
58. Talente. 59. Glück. 60. im späteren Leben.
61. was owing, verdankte er (s. Anmerk. 123, S. 329 d. Grammatik).
62. unermüdlichen. 63. Beharrlichkeit.
64. ist — zu finden.
65. seiner Selbstbiographie.
66. herausgegeben. 67. vor einigen Jahren.

"There¹ was," says Walter Scott, "a boy in my class who stood² always at the top, and I could not with all my efforts³ supplant⁴ him. Day⁵ came after day, and still⁶ he kept⁷ his place; till⁸ at length⁹ I observed that, when a question¹⁰ was asked him, he always fumbled¹¹ with his fingers at a particular¹² button¹³ on the lower¹⁴ part of his waistcoat¹⁵ while seeking¹⁶ an answer¹⁷. I thought¹⁸ therefore, if I could remove¹⁹ the button sliely²⁰, the surprise²¹ at not finding it²², might derange²³ his ideas at²⁴ the next interrogation²⁵ of the class, and give me a chance²⁶ of taking²⁷ him down. The button was therefore removed without²⁸ his perceiving it²⁹. Great was my anxiety³⁰ to know the success³¹ of my measure³², and it succeeded³³ but³⁴ too well.

"The hour of interrogation³⁵ arrived³⁶, and the boy was questioned³⁷, he sought³⁸, as usual³⁹, with his fingers, for⁴⁰ the friendly button, but could not find it. Disconcerted⁴¹ he looked down⁴², the talisman was gone⁴³, his ideas became⁴⁴ confused⁴⁴, he could not reply⁴⁵. I seized⁴⁶ the opportunity, answered the question, and took⁴⁷ his place, which he never recovered⁴⁸, nor do I believe⁴⁹ he ever suspected⁵⁰ the author⁵¹ of the trick⁵².

"I have often met⁵³ with him since⁵⁴ we entered⁵⁵ the world, and never without feeling⁵⁶ my conscience reproach⁵⁷ me. Frequently have I resolved⁵⁸ to make him some amends⁵⁹ by rendering him a service⁶⁰; but an opportunity did not present⁶¹ itself, and I fear I did⁶² not seek one with as much ardour⁶³ as I sought⁶⁴ to supplant⁴ him at school." W. S.

(This anecdote, with many others equally interesting, is found in the Life of Walter Scott, edited by his son-in-law Mr. Lockhard.)

1. To what was Sir Walter Scott indebted for his great success?
2. What could Sir Walter not do with regard to a boy in his class?
3. What did Sir Walter observe regarding the boy above him in the class?
4. What did Walter Scott do to the boy? — 5. What did the boy seek?
6. What was the consequence when the boy could not find the button?
7. What did Walter Scott do, when the boy could not answer the question?
8. What did Sir Walter feel, and what did he resolve to do?

1. es. 2. stood always at the top, immer der erste war. 3. Streben. 4. verdrängen.
5. day came after day, Tag für Tag verstrich.
6. immer noch.
7. behielt. 8. bis. 9. endlich.
10. a question was asked him, man ihm eine Frage stellte. 11. spielte mit.
12. at a particular, einem besondern.
13. Knopf. 14. untern. 15. Weste.
16. while seeking, während dem er — suchte, (s. Reg. LX. LXI. S. 520 der Grammatik.)
17. Antwort. 18. dachte daher.
19. entfernen. 20. schlau.
21. Erstaunen.
22. at not finding it, ihn nicht mehr zu finden.
23. verwirren. 24. bei der nächsten. 25. Frage.
26. Hoffnung. 27. of taking him down, ihn herunter zu bringen. 28. ohne.
29. his perceiving it, daß er es bemerkte.
30. Gespanntheit. 31. Erfolg. 32. Maßregel.

33. gelang. 34. nur zu gut.
35. of interrogation, zum Ausfragen.
36. kam an. 37. gefragt. 38. suchte.
39. wie gewöhnlich. 40. nach. 41. verlegen.
42. hinunter. 43. fort. 44. wurden verwirrt.
45. antworten. 46. ergriff. 47. nahm — ein.
48. never recovered, nie wieder erreichte.
49. nor do I believe, auch glaube ich nicht, daß.
50. vermutete. 51. wer der Urheber.
52. Streiches gewesen sei.
53. met with, begegnet. 54. seitdem.
55. in die Welt eingetreten sind.
56. zu empfinden, daß. 57. Vorwürfe machte.
58. mich entschlossen. 59. Vergeltung.
60. by rendering him a service, dadurch, daß ich ihm einen Dienst erweise.
61. did not &c., bot sich nicht dar.
62. ich fürchte ich suchte nicht eine mit eben so viel.
63. Eifer. 64. suchte.

IV. Questions on Ancient History.

And oft conducted by Historic Truth,
We tread the long extent of backward Time.
Thomson's *Spring*.

What monarchies were first founded¹ after the deluge?² The Chaldean monarchy founded by Nimrod 2221 (two thousand two hundred and twenty-one) years before the nativity³ of our Saviour⁴. The Chinese, founded by Fohi, B. C. (before Christ) 2207 (two thousand two hundred and seven). The Egyptian, founded by Misraim, B. C. 2188 (two thousand one hundred and eighty-eight). The ancient Assyrian, founded by Ashur, the second son of Shem, B. C. 2059 (two thousand and fifty-nine). What were the first cities built⁵ after the flood? Babylon, Memphis, Niniveh, Sidon and Sicyon. What nation first established⁶ regular⁷ government? Most⁸ probably the Egyptian; for⁹ long before Joseph was carried¹⁰ into Egypt, Menes, or Misraim, had founded that Kingdom. In what state¹¹ was Egypt when the family of Jacob took refuge¹² there? The hierarchy or sacred¹³ government was instituted¹⁴: hieroglyphical characters¹⁵, and chariots¹⁶ and cavalry for war*, were in use¹⁷ among the Egyptians; and mention is made in the Bible of¹⁸ their having¹⁹, at that time, magi, or wise men, physicians, cities, temples, and other edifices²⁰; all of which²¹ are proofs²² of advanced²³ science²⁴. To whom did the Egyptians communicate²⁵ the knowledge²⁶ of their discoveries²⁷ in the useful²⁸ and elegant arts²⁹? To the Greeks, who afterwards made them known³⁰ to the Romans, and from them the other European nations received³¹ their first ideas of civilization and refinement³². What people introduced³³ the arts of agriculture and commerce? The Egyptians. Who improved the state of commerce? The Phoenicians, who inhabited³⁴ that part of Syria which lies immediately³⁵ north of Palestine, on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, and were, even³⁶ in³⁷ the time of Abraham, considered³⁸ as a powerful nation. Their chief³⁹ city was Tyre, which was taken⁴⁰ by⁴¹ Nebuchadnezzar, the proud and presumptuous⁴² king of Babylon, after a siege⁴³ of thirteen months, B. C. 538 (five hundred and thirty-eight). What king improved⁴⁴ the civil and military establishments⁴⁵ of the Egyptians? Sesostris; he succeeded⁴⁶ that Amenophis (or Pharaoh), who was drowned⁴⁷ in the Red Sea; and by the wisdom of his laws⁴⁸ and government, his kingdom became⁴⁹ the most civilized and powerful then⁵⁰ known. In what condition was Europe at this early period⁵¹? The inhabitants were savage⁵², wild, and barbarous, totally uninstructed⁵³ and uninformed⁵⁴, having little or no intercourse⁵⁵ with the civilized part of mankind⁵⁶.

1. gegründet. 2. Sündflut. 3. Geburt.
4. Erlösers. 5. die gebaut wurden. 6. gründete.
7. regelmäßige. 8. sehr wahrscheinlich. 9. denn.
10. geführt. 11. Zustand. 12. sich dahin flüchtete.
13. Priesterherrschaft. 14. eingeführt.
15. Schriftzeichen. 16. Wagen. 17. Gebrauch.
18. mention is made—of, es ist — erwähnt, daß.
19. sie — hatten. 20. Gebäude.
21. all of which, welches alle. 22. Beweise.
23. einer vorgeschrittenen. 24. Wissenschaft.
25. teilten — mit. 26. Kenntnisse. 27. Entdeckung.

28. nützlichen. 29. schönen Künste. 30. bekannt.
31. erhielten. 32. Bildung. 33. führte — ein.
34. bewohnten. 35. liegt unmittelbar.
36. sogar. 37. zu. 38. betrachtet. 39. Haupt.
40. erobert. 41. durch.
42. vermessen. 43. Belagerung. 44. verbesserte.
45. Einrichtungen. 46. folgte — auf dem Thron.
47. ertrank. 48. Gesetze. 49. wurde.
50. der damals bekannten. 51. frühen Zeit.
52. roh. 53. ununterrichtet. 54. ungebildet.
55. Umgang. 56. Menschheit. * Krieg.

V. The Two Brothers. — Apologue.¹

Jerusalem was formerly² a cultivated³ field; two brothers possessed⁴ that part⁵ of it on which⁶ the temple is now situated⁷. One of these brothers was married⁸, and had several⁹ children, the other was single¹⁰, and lived¹¹ alone. They cultivated¹² in common¹² the field which they had inherited¹³ from their mother, and the harvest-time¹⁴ having¹⁵ commenced, the two brothers bound¹⁶ their sheaves¹⁷ and made of them¹⁸ two equal heaps¹⁹, which they left²⁰ in the field. During²¹ the night, a good thought²² came²³ into the head of the brother who was not married⁸. He said²⁴ to himself: "My brother has a wife²⁵ and children to support²⁶, it is not just²⁷ that my part⁵ should be as great as²⁸ his; I will go and take²⁹ from my heap¹⁹ some³⁰ sheaves, which I will secretly³¹ add to his; he will not perceive³² it, and can therefore³³ not refuse³⁴ them." And he did as he had thought.

The same³⁵ night, the other brother awoke³⁶ and said to his wife: "My brother is young, he is alone and without³⁷ a companion³⁸ for life; he has no one to assist³⁹ him with his labour⁴⁰ or to console⁴¹ him when fatigued⁴² or ill; it is not right²⁷ that we should take²⁹ from our field⁴³ in common as⁴⁴ many sheaves as he; let⁴⁵ us arise, and go and carry⁴⁶ secretly to his heap a certain number of sheaves; he will not perceive it, and can therefore not refuse³⁴ them." And they did as they had thought.

The following⁴⁷ day each of the brothers repaired⁴⁸ to the field, and both were highly⁴⁹ astonished to see that the two⁵⁰ heaps were still⁵¹ quite equal; neither⁵² could explain⁵³ to himself this wonder. They continued⁵⁴ to do the same thing for⁵⁵ several consecutive⁵⁵ nights; but as each⁵⁶ brother carried⁵⁷ to the other brother's heap the same number⁵⁸ of sheaves, the heaps always⁵⁹ remained⁵⁹ equal, till⁶⁰ one night, both of them being⁶¹ determined to stand⁶² sentinel, in order⁶³ to ascertain⁶⁴ the cause⁶⁵ of this mystery, they met⁶⁶ each other, each⁶⁷ carrying the sheaves which they had mutually⁶⁸ destined for one another.

Therefore⁶⁹, this place, in which so good a thought had, at⁷⁰ the same time, so perseveringly⁷¹ entered⁷² the minds of two men, must⁷³ be a place agreeable to God, and the men blessed⁷⁴ it, and

1. Parabel. 2. früher. 3. bebautes.
4. besaßen. 5. jenen Theil desselben. 6. worauf.
7. gelegen. 8. verheiratet.
9. mehrere Kinder. 10. ledig. 11. lebte allein.
12. bebauten gemeinschaftlich.
13. geerbt. 14. Erntezeit.
15. da — gekommen war. 16. banden.
17. Garben. 18. daraus. 19. gleiche Haufen.
20. liegen ließen. 21. während. 22. Gedanke.
23. kam — in den Kopf. 24. sagte zu sich.
25. Frau. 26. zu ernähren. 27. recht.
28. als das seinige. 29. nehmen.
30. einige. 31. heimlich — hinzufügen.
32. bemerken. 33. deshalb. 34. zurückweisen.
35. dieselbe. 36. wachte — auf. 37. ohne.
38. Lebensgefährtin. 39. zu helfen. 40. Arbeit.
41. zu trösten. 42. er müde oder krank ist.
43. gemeinsamen Felde. 44. so viele.

45. laßt uns aufstehen. 46. tragen.
47. folgenden. 48. begab sich nach.
49. höchst erstaunt. 50. die beiden.
51. noch ganz gleich. 52. keiner von beiden.
53. sich — erklären. 54. führen fort.
55. for several consecutive, während mehrerer aufeinanderfolgenden.
56. jeder von ihnen. 57. trug.
58. Anzahl. 59. bleiben — immer. 60. bis.
61. being determined, da — entschlossen waren (s. Reg. LX. LXI. S. 525 der Grammatik).
62. Schildwache zu stehen. 63. um.
64. zu ergründen. 65. Ursache.
66. begegneten sie sich. 67. Jeder — hintragend.
68. sie sich gegenseitig bestimmt. 69. daher.
70. zu gleicher Zeit. 71. beständig.
72. in den Geist — gekommen sei.
73. mußte. 74. segneten ihn.

chose¹ it to build² thereon a house dedicated³ to the service⁴ of the invisible⁵ God!"

J. S. S. R. (Arabic Legend.)

1. What was Jerusalem formerly? — 2. Who possessed it?
3. What was the one brother? And what the other? — 4. What did they cultivate?
5. What did they do when the harvest-time commenced?
6. What came into the head of the unmarried brother? — 7. What did he say to himself?
8. What did he do? — 9. What did the other brother do the same night?
10. What did he say to his wife? — 11. What did they do?
12. What did the brothers do the following day? — 13. What did they continue to do?
14. What must the place be, and what did the men do?

VI. Thomson and Quin.

When Thomson the poet first came to London, he was in very narrow⁶ circumstances⁷, and was⁸ very often at a loss⁸, where, or how⁹ to procure¹⁰ himself a dinner. Upon¹¹ the publication¹² of his Seasons¹³, one of his creditors¹⁴ had¹⁵ him arrested¹⁶, thinking¹⁷ that¹⁸ a proper¹⁹ opportunity²⁰ to get²¹ his money. The report²² of this misfortune reached²³ the ears²⁴ of Quin; who had read²⁵ the Seasons, but never seen²⁶ their author: and he was told²⁷ that Thomson was in a Sponging-house²⁸ in Holborn²⁹. Thither³⁰ Quin went³¹, and being admitted³² into his chamber; "Sir," said³³ he, "you do³⁴ not know me, but my name is Quin." Thomson said, "that, though³⁵ he could not boast³⁶ of the honour of a personal acquaintance³⁷, he was³⁸ no stranger either to his name or³⁸ his merit;" and invited³⁹ him to sit down⁴⁰. Quin then told³³ him⁴¹ he was⁴² come to sup⁴³ with him, and that he had already⁴⁴ ordered⁴⁵ the cook to provide⁴⁶ supper, which⁴⁷ he hoped he would excuse. When supper was over⁴⁸, and the glass⁴⁹ had gone briskly about⁵⁰, Mr.⁵¹ Quin told him⁴¹ "it was now time to enter⁵² upon business." Thomson declared⁵³ he was ready⁵⁴ to serve⁵⁵ him as far as⁵⁶ his capacity⁵⁷ would reach⁵⁸, in any thing⁵⁹ he might command (thinking⁶⁰ he was come about⁶¹ some affair relating to the drama).

1. wählten. 2. um darauf — zu bauen.
3. geweiht. 4. dem Dienste. 5. unsichtbaren.
6. bedrängten. 7. Umständen.
8. *was a at loss*, wußte — nicht (s. Anmerk. 26. NB. 3. S. 347 d. Grammatik).
9. wo oder wie. 10. verschaffen sollte.
11. bei. 12. Herausgabe.
13. vier Jahreszeiten. 14. Gläubiger.
15. ließ (s. Reg. XIVc. S. 484 d. Grammatik).
16. verhaften, arretiren. 17. da er dachte.
18. daß dieses — sei.
19. gute. 20. Gelegenheit.
21. zu bekommen. (s. § 184 S. 305 d. Grammat.).
22. das Gerücht. 23. kam zu.
24. Ohren. 25. gelesen.* 26. nie — gesehen.
27. *he was told*, es wurde ihm erzählt (s. § 177 S. 296 d. Grammatik).
28. Schuldthurm. *Sponging-house* (Spondschinghaus), ein Haus, worin Schuldner, welche man verhaftet hat, einstweilen verwahrt werden, bis ihnen ein bestimmtes Gefängnis angewiesen wird, oder bis sie vielleicht mit ihren Gläubigern ein Abfinden treffen, und wo die Bailiffs auf Kosten der Gefangenen leben.

29. eine Straße in London. 30. dorthin.
31. ging.* 32. *being admitted*, als er — eingelassen wurde. 33. sagte.
34. *do not know*, kennen — nicht.
35. obgleich. 36. sich rühmen. 37. Bekanntschaft.
38. *he was, &c.*, so war weder sein Name noch sein Verdienst ihm fremd.
39. lud ihn ein. 40. sich zu setzen. 41. ihm, daß.
42. sei (s. Reg. XXXIII. S. 508 der Grammatik).
43. zu Abend zu essen. 44. schon.
45. befohlen. 46. zu bereiten.
47. was er hoffte, er entschuldigen wolle.
48. vorbei. 49. die Gläser (der Wein).
50. *had gone, &c.*, lebhaft in Anspruch genommen wurden.
51. *Mr.* (mißt'r), Herr (s. Anmerk. 17, 20, S. 118 der Grammatik).
52. *to enter upon business*, von Geschäften zu sprechen. 53. erklärte, daß.
54. bereit. 55. zu dienen. 56. so weit.
57. Fähigkeit. 58. reichen.
59. Allem was. 60. da er dachte, er sei gekommen.
61. *about some affair relating to*, wegen Sachen, welche auf — Bezug hätten.

"Sir," says Quin, "you mistake me¹. I am in your debt². I owe³ you a hundred pounds, and I am come to pay⁴ you." Thomson with a disconsolate⁵ air⁶, replied⁷, that, as⁸ he was a gentleman whom he had never offended⁹, he wondered¹⁰ he should seek¹¹ an opportunity to banter¹² with his misfortune¹³. "No," said Quin, raising¹⁴ his voice: "I say I owe you a hundred pounds, and there it is (laying¹⁵ a bank note of that amount¹⁶ before him). Thomson, astonished¹⁷, begged¹⁸ he would explain¹⁹ himself. "Why²⁰," says Quin, "I will tell²¹ you. Soon after²² I had read your Seasons, I took²³ it into my head, that, as²⁴ I had something to leave²⁴ behind me when I died²⁵, I would make my will²⁶; and among²⁷ the rest²⁸ of my legatees²⁹ I set down³⁰ the author of the Seasons for a hundred pounds; and this day hearing³¹ that you were in this house, I thought³² I might as well³³ have the pleasure of paying³⁴ the money myself, as order my executor³⁵ to pay it, when perhaps you might³⁶ have less need of it; and this, Mr. Thomson, is my business." Of course³⁷ Thomson left the house in³⁸ company with his benefactor³⁹.

1. For what was Thomson often at a loss?
2. What happened to him after the publication of his Seasons?
3. Who went to visit Thomson in the Sponging-house, and how did he introduce himself?
4. What was Thompson's reply? — 5. What did Quin order?
6. After supper what did Quin say? — 7. What did Thomson declare?
8. How much did Quin say he owed Thomson?
9. On Thomson's begging an explanation, what explanation did Quin give him?

VII. The Philosopher Outdone.⁴⁰

A learned⁴¹ philosopher being⁴² very busy⁴³ in his study⁴⁴, a little girl⁴⁵ came to ask⁴⁶ him for some fire. "But," says the doctor, "you have nothing to take⁴⁷ it in;" and as⁴⁸ he was going⁴⁹ to fetch⁵⁰ something for⁵¹ that purpose⁵², the little girl stooped⁵³ down at⁵⁴ the fire-place, and taking⁵⁵ some cold ashes in one hand, she put⁵⁶ burning embers⁵⁷ on them⁵⁸ with the other. The astonished⁵⁹ doctor threw⁶⁰ down his books, saying⁶¹: "With all my learning⁶², I should⁶³ never have found out⁶⁴ that expedient⁶⁵."

1. What did the little girl ask for, and of whom?
2. What was the Doctor's reply? — 3. What did the little girl do?
4. What was the Doctors exclamation?

1. irren sich. 2. in your debt, Ihr Schuldner.
3. schulde. 4. zu bezahlen. 5. trostlos.
6. Miene. 7. erwiederte. 8. da.
9. beleidigt. 10. wundere sich, daß. 11. suchen.
12. to banter with, sich über — lustig machen.
13. Unglück. 14. erhebend.
15. indem er — hinlegte. 16. von diesem Betrag.
17. erstaunt. 18. bat, daß.
19. erklären möchte. 20. nun.
21. es Ihnen sagen. 22. bald nachdem.
23. I took it, &c., setzte ich es mir in den Kopf.
24. da — zu hinterlassen.
25. stirbe. 26. Testament.
27. unter. 28. Uebrigen. 29. Testat-Erben.
30. set down for, bedachte ich den — mit.
31. da ich — hörte. 32. so dachte ich.
33. ich könnte eben so gut. 34. zu bezahlen.

35. Testamentsvollstrecker.
36. might have less need of it, es weniger nöthig hätten. 37. natürlich — verließ.
38. in company with, in der Gesellschaft.
39. Wohlthäters. 40. übertroffene.
41. gelehrter. 42. als ein zc. — war.
43. beschäftigt. 44. Studierzimmer.
45. kleines Mädchen. 46. um — zu bitten um.
47. to take it in, um es hinein zu thun.
48. als. 49. was going, gehen wollte um.
50. zu holen. 51. zu. 52. Zweck.
53. bückte sich nieder. 54. at the fire-place, am Feuerheerd. 55. indem sie — nahm.
56. legte. 57. glühende Kohlen. 58. darauf.
59. erstaunte. 60. warf — nieder.
61. indem er sagte. 62. Gelehrsamkeit.
63. hätte ich nie. 64. entdeckt. 65. Mittel.

VIII. Desperate¹ Patriotism.

During² the wars³ of Napoleon in Spain, a regiment of the guard⁴ of Jerome, ex-king of Westphalia, arrived⁵ under the walls⁶ of Figueiras. The general sent⁷ a message to the prior to demand⁸ refreshment⁹ for his officers and men¹⁰. The prior replied that the men would find good quarters¹¹ in the town¹², but that he and his monks would entertain¹³ the general and his staff¹⁴.

About¹⁵ an hour afterwards¹⁶ a plentiful¹⁷ dinner was served¹⁸; but the general, knowing¹⁹ by²⁰ experience how necessary it was for the French to be on²¹ their guard when²² eating²³ and drinking with Spaniards, invited²⁴ the prior and two of the monks to dine²⁵ with him²⁵.

The invitation was accepted²⁶ in such²⁷ a manner as to lull²⁸ every suspicion²⁹. The monks sat down³⁰ to table³¹ and ate³² and drank plentifully³³ with their guests³⁴, who, after the repast³⁵, thanked them heartily³⁶ for their hospitality³⁷, upon which³⁸ the prior rose³⁹ and said; "Gentlemen, if you have any worldly⁴⁰ affairs⁴¹ to settle⁴², there is no time⁴³ to lose⁴⁴; this is the last meal⁴⁵ you and I shall take⁴⁶ on⁴⁷ earth: in an hour we shall know⁴⁸ the secrets⁴⁹ of the world to come⁵⁰."

The prior and his two monks had put⁵¹ a deadly poison⁵² into the wine in which they had pledged⁵³ the French officers; and notwithstanding⁵⁴ the antidotes⁵⁵ immediately given⁵⁶ by the doctors, in less than an hour, every man, hosts⁵⁷ and guests had ceased⁵⁸ to live.

1. What did the French general demand of the Prior of Figueiras?
2. What was the prior's reply?
3. Whom did the general invite to dine with him, and why?
4. What did the prior do and say after dinner?
5. What had the prior and his monks done, and what was the result?

IX. Dean⁵⁹ Swift's advice Respecting⁶⁰ Servants.

"If you want⁶¹ a servant, take⁶² one; if you wish to be badly served⁶³, take two; if you wish to serve yourself, take three; if you wish to be well served, serve⁶⁴ yourself."

1. Verzweiflungsvoller. 2. während. 3. Kriege.
4. Garde. 5. kam — an. 6. Mauern.
7. sent a message, sandte eine Botschaft.
8. um — zu verlangen. 9. Erfrischungen.
10. Mannschaft. 11. Quartiere.
12. Stadt. 13. bewirthen. 14. Stab.
15. ungefähr. 16. nachher. 17. ein reichliches.
18. aufgetragen. 19. der — wußte.
20. aus Erfahrung — wie nötig es war.
21. on their guard, auf ihrer Hut.
22. so oft sie. 23. aßen.
24. lud. 25. mit zum Essen ein.
26. angenommen.
27. in such a de., auf eine solche Weise, daß es.
28. einfluchte, beseitigte.
29. Verdacht. 30. setzten sich. 31. Tisch.
32. aßen. 33. reichlich. 34. Gästen.
35. Essen. 36. herzlich.

37. Gastfreundschaft.
38. worauf (s. Reg. XLVII. S. 475 der Gramm.).
39. sich erhob. 40. any worldly, weltliche.
41. Angelegenheiten.
42. zu ordnen. 43. Zeit. 44. zu verlieren.
45. Mahlzeit, welche.
46. genießen. 47. auf. 48. wissen.
49. Geheimnisse.
50. of the world to come, der zukünftigen Welt.
51. gethan. 52. tödliches Gift.
53. Bescheid gethan hatten.
54. ungeachtet. 55. Gegengiftes, welches.
56. gegeben wurde. 57. Wirte.
58. aufgehört.
59. des Dean Swift's Rath.
60. in Betreff der Dienstboten. 61. brauchen.
62. nehmen Sie einen. 63. bedient.
64. bedienen Sie sich selbst.

X. A Dreadful¹ Adventure² (adwentjerr).

I was³ one day travelling³ in Calabria (says Courier in a letter to his female⁴ cousin). It is a country⁵ of wicked⁶ people, who, I believe⁷, have no great liking⁸ to⁹ any body, and are particularly ill disposed¹⁰ towards¹¹ the French. To tell¹² you why¹³ would be a long affair¹⁴. It is enough¹⁵ that they hate¹⁶ us to death¹⁷, and that the unhappy being¹⁸ who should chance¹⁹ to fall²⁰ into their hands would not pass²¹ his time in the most agreeable manner. I had for²² my companion a fine²³ young fellow²⁴. I do²⁵ not say²⁵ this to interest²⁶ you — but because²⁷ it is the truth. In these mountains the roads²⁸ are precipices²⁹, and our horses got³⁰ on with the greatest difficulty. My comrade going³¹ first, a track³², which appeared³³ to him more practicable³⁴ and shorter than the regular path³⁵, led³⁶ us astray. It was my fault³⁷. Ought³⁸ I to have trusted³⁹ to a head of twenty years? We sought⁴⁰ our way out of the wood⁴¹ while⁴² it was yet⁴³ light; but the⁴⁴ more we looked for⁴⁵ the path, the⁴⁴ farther we were off⁴⁶ it. It was a very black⁴⁷ night, when⁴⁸ we came close⁴⁹ upon⁵⁰ a very black house. We went in⁵¹, and not without suspicion⁵². But what was to be⁵³ done? There we found a whole⁵⁴ family of charcoal burners⁵⁵ at table⁵⁶. At⁵⁷ the first word they invited us to join⁵⁸ them. My young man did not stop⁵⁹ for much ceremony. In a minute or two we were eating⁶⁰ and drinking in⁶¹ right earnest — he at least⁶²; — for my own part⁶³ I could not help⁶⁴ glancing about⁶⁵ at the place and the people. Our hosts⁶⁶ indeed looked⁶⁷ like⁶⁸ charcoal burners; — but the house; — you would have taken⁶⁹ it for an arsenal⁷⁰. There was nothing to be seen but (als) muskets, pistols, sabres, knives, cutlasses⁷¹. Every thing displeased⁷² me, and I saw that I was⁷³ in no favour myself. My comrade, on the contrary⁷⁴, was soon one of the family. He laughed⁷⁵, he chatted⁷⁶ with them; and with an imprudence⁷⁷ which

1. schreckliches. 2. Abenteuer.
3. reiste (s. § 198. S. 319 d. Grammatik).
4. Cousine (s. Reg. IV. S. 119 d. Grammatik).
5. Land, voll von.
6. schlechten Menschen. 7. glaube.
8. have no great liking, keine große Liebe.
9. zu irgend Jemand.
10. are ill disposed, sind besonders schlecht gesinnt.
11. gegen die Franzosen. 12. zu sagen.
13. warum. 14. Geschichte. 15. genug.
16. hassen. 17. in den Tod. 18. Wesen.
19. zufällig. 20. fallen sollte. 21. zubringen.
22. als. 23. schönen. 24. Menschen.
25. sage dieses nicht (Anmerk. 10, S. 479 der Grammatik).
26. to interest you, um bei Ihnen ein größeres Interesse zu erregen, sondern.
27. weil. 28. Straßen. 29. wahre Abgründe.
30. got on, schlichen vorwärts (s. § 186, S. 309 der Grammatik).
31. going first, der voranging.
32. einen Weg. 33. schien.
34. gangbarer, wegsamer. 35. Pfad.
36. führte uns irre. 37. Schuld.

38. hätte ich mich.
39. anvertrauen sollen. 40. suchten.
41. Wald. 42. so lange es. 43. noch.
44. the more — the farther, je mehr — desto weiter (s. Reg. XIV. S. 400 der Grammatik).
45. nach — suchten.
46. we were off it, kamen wir davon ab.
47. dunkel, schwarz. 48. als. 49. dicht.
50. an. 51. hinein. 52. Verdacht.
53. zu thun (s. Reg. III. S. 478 d. Grammatik).
54. ganze. 55. Kohlenbrennern.
56. bei Tische. 57. beim. 58. mit zu essen.
59. did not stop for, &c., ließ sich nicht lange nöthigen, machte wenig Umstände. 60. aßen.
61. in right earnest nach Herzenslust.
62. wenigstens. 63. for my, &c., meinstheils.
64. umhin (s. Anmerk. 107. S. 327 d. Grammatik).
65. herum zu blicken auf. 66. Wirth.
67. sahen — aus. 68. wie.
69. would have taken it, hätten es gehalten.
70. Zeughaus. 71. Hirschfänger. 72. mißfiel.
73. was in no favour, gar nicht in Gunst stand.
74. on the, &c., im Gegentheil, dagegen.
75. lachte. 76. plauderte. 77. Unflugheit.

I ought to have prevented*, he at once¹ said where² we came from, where³ we were going, that we were Frenchmen. Think⁴ of our situation⁵. Here we were amongst⁶ our mortal enemies⁷; alone, benighted⁸, far⁹ from all human aid¹⁰. That¹¹ nothing might be omitted¹² that could tend¹³ to destroy¹⁴ us, he must play¹⁵ the rich man forsooth¹⁶, promising¹⁷ these folks¹⁸ to pay¹⁹ them well for their hospitality²⁰; and then he must prate²¹ about²² his portmanteau, earnestly beseeching²³ them to take²⁴ great care of it, and put²⁵ it at the head²⁶ of his bed, for²⁷ he wanted²⁸ no other pillow²⁹. Ah, youth, youth, how you are to be pitied³⁰! Cousin, they might³¹ have thought³¹ we carried³² the diamonds of the crown³³: the treasure³⁴ in his portmanteau which gave³⁵ him such anxiety³⁶ consisted of³⁷ the letters of his mistress³⁸.

When supper was ended³⁹, they left⁴⁰ us. Our hosts slept⁴¹ below⁴²; we on the story⁴³ where we had been eating⁴⁴. In⁴⁵ a sort of platform⁴⁵ raised⁴⁶ seven or eight feet, where⁴⁷ we were to mount⁴⁷ by a ladder, was the bed that awaited⁴⁸ us — a nest into which⁴⁹ we had⁵⁰ to introduce⁵¹ ourselves, by jumping⁵² over barrels⁵³, filled with provisions⁵⁴ for all the year. My comrade seized⁵⁵ upon the bed above⁵⁶, and was soon fast⁵⁷ asleep, with his head upon the precious⁵⁸ portmanteau. I was determined⁵⁹ to keep⁶⁰ awake, so I made a good fire, and sat⁶¹ myself down. The night was almost⁶² passed over tranquilly⁶³ enough, and I was beginning⁶⁴ to be comfortable, when, just at⁶⁵ the time when it appeared⁶⁶ to me that day was about⁶⁷ to break⁶⁸, I heard our host and his wife talking⁶⁹ and disputing⁷⁰ below me; — and putting⁷¹ my ear into the chimney⁷² which communicated⁷³ with the lower⁷⁴ room, I perfectly distinguished⁷⁵ these exact⁷⁶ words of the husband: — “*Well, well, let us see: — shall we kill⁷⁷ them both?*” To which⁷⁸ the wife replied, “*Yes,*” — and I heard no⁷⁹ more.

* hätte verhindern sollen.

1. auf ein Mal.
2. woher. 3. wohin. 4. denken Sie sich.
5. Lage. 6. unter. 7. Todfeinden.
8. von der Nacht überfallen. 9. entfernt.
10. Hülfe. 11. damit.
12. *might, &c.*, unterbleibe.
13. dazu dienen.
14. uns ins Verderben zu stürzen.
15. spielen. 16. wahrhaftig.
17. indem er — versprach. 18. Leuten.
19. bezahlen. 20. Gastfreundschaft.
21. prahlen, schwagen.
22. von seinem Mantelsack.
23. indem er sie ernstlich ersuchte.
24. *to take, &c.*, besonders darauf Acht zu geben.
25. hinzustellen, hinzulegen.
26. *at the, &c.*, an das Haupt seines Bettes.
27. denn (s. Anm. 18, S. 357 d. Gramm.).
28. brauchte. 29. Kopfkissen.
30. zu bedauern. 31. hätte denken können.
32. bei uns führten. 33. Krone.
34. Schatz. 35. verursachte.
36. Besorgnis. 37. bestand aus.
38. Geliebten.
39. als das Abendessen beendet war.

40. verließen. 41. schliefen. 42. unten.
43. im selben Stocke.
44. gegessen (s. Anmerk. 59, S. 320 d. Gramm.).
45. in einer Art Plattform. 46. hoch.
47. *where we were to, &c.*, wohin wir durch — steigen sollten (s. Reg. II, S. 477 d. Gramm.).
48. uns erwartete. 49. in welches.
50. mußten (s. Reg. XLI. 2. S. 515 d. Gramm.).
51. *introduce ourselves*, gelangen.
52. dadurch, daß wir über — sprangen.
53. Fässer. 54. Mundvorrath.
55. nahm Besitz.
56. oben. 57. schlief bald fest ein.
58. kostbaren Mantelsack.
59. entschlossen. 60. wach zu bleiben.
61. setze mich davor.
62. *was almost, &c.*, war beinahe — verstrichen.
63. ruhig genug. 64. fing eben an.
65. gerade zu. 66. schien. 67. im Begriff.
68. anzubrechen. 69. sprechen.
70. streiten „mit einander“.
71. da ich — steckte. 72. Kamin.
73. in Verbindung stand.
74. unteren Zimmer.
75. hörte ich deutlich. 76. wirklichen.
77. tödten. 78. worauf. 79. Nichts mehr.

How shall I tell¹ you the rest²? I could scarcely breathe³; my whole body⁴ was as cold as marble; to have seen⁵ me, you could not have told⁶ whether⁷ I was⁸ dead or alive. Heavens! when I yet⁹ think upon it¹⁰. We two were almost without arms¹¹; against us were twelve or fifteen who had plenty of weapons¹¹. And then my comrade dead of sleep¹² and fatigue¹³. To call¹⁴ him up, to make a noise¹⁵, was more than I dared¹⁶; — to escape¹⁷ alone, was an impossibility¹⁸. The window¹⁹ was not very high — but under it²⁰ were two great dogs howling²¹ like²² wolves. Imagine²³ if you²⁴ can the distress²⁵ I was in. At²⁶ the end of a quarter of an hour, which seemed²⁷ an age²⁸, I heard²⁹ some one on³⁰ the stair-case³¹, and through the chink³² of the door, I saw the old man, with a lamp in one hand and one of his great knives³³ in the other. He mounted³⁴, his wife after him; I was behind³⁵ the door. He opened³⁶ it; but before he came in³⁷, he put³⁸ down the lamp, which his wife took³⁹ up, and coming in, with his feet naked⁴⁰, she being⁴¹ behind him, said⁴² in⁴³ a smothered⁴⁴ voice, hiding⁴⁵ the light partially⁴⁶ with her fingers, *Gently*⁴⁷, *go gently*. When⁴⁸ he had reached⁴⁹ the ladder, he mounted³⁴, his knife between⁵⁰ his teeth⁵¹; and going⁵² to the bed where that poor young man lay⁵³ with his throat⁵⁴ uncovered⁵⁵, with one hand he took his knife³³, and with the other — ah, my cousin — he seized⁵⁶ a ham⁵⁷ which hung⁵⁸ from the roof⁵⁹, cut⁶⁰ a slice⁶¹, and retired⁶² as⁶³ he had come in. The door is re-shut⁶⁴, the light vanishes⁶⁵, and I am left⁶⁶ alone to my reflections⁶⁷.

When the day appeared, all⁶⁸ the family with a great noise came to rouse⁶⁹ us, as we had desired⁷⁰. They brought⁷¹ us plenty⁷² to eat — they served⁷³ us a very proper⁷⁴ breakfast⁷⁵, a capital⁷⁶ breakfast, I assure⁷⁷ you. Two capons formed⁷⁸ part⁷⁹ of it, of which⁸⁰ said the hostess, you must eat one and carry⁸¹ away the other. When I saw the capons, I at once⁸² comprehended⁸³ the meaning⁸⁴ of those terrible words — *Must we kill them both?*

1. To whom are the Calabrians ill disposed?

2. How would a person who fell into the hands of the Calabrians spend his time?

1. erzählen. 2. das Uebrige, Weitere.
3. athmen. 4. Körper.
5. hätten Sie mich gesehen.
6. sagen. 7. ob. 8. sei.
9. noch. 10. daran. 11. Waffen.
12. vor Schlaf. 13. Müdigkeit.
14. rufen, aufwecken. 15. Lärm.
16. wagen durfte. 17. zu entkommen.
18. Unmöglichkeit. 19. Fenster.
20. under it, darunter. 21. welche heulten.
22. wie. 23. denken Sie sich.
24. wenn Sie es können.
25. the distress I was in, die Angst, in der ich war. 26. At the end, nach Verlauf.
27. mir — zu sein schien.
28. Zeitalter. 29. hörte. 30. auf.
31. Treppe. 32. Spalte. 33. Messer.
34. stieg hinauf. 35. hinter. 36. öffnete sie.
37. herein kam, hereinto trat.
38. put down, setzte, stellte — nieder.
39. took up, aufnahm. 40. nackten.
41. hinter — her. 42. sagte. 43. mit.

44. gedämpfter. 45. verbergend.
46. theilweise. 47. leise. 48. als.
49. erreicht hatte. 50. zwischen.
51. Zähnen. 52. sich nähernd.
53. lag. 54. Halbe. 55. unbedecktem.
56. ergriff. 57. Schinken. 58. herunter hing.
59. Dache. 60. schnitt.
61. Stück „davon ab“. 62. zog sich zurück.
63. auf demselben Wege, wo.
64. wieder zugemacht. 65. verschwindet.
66. gelassen. 67. Gedanken.
68. die ganze. 69. aufzuwecken.
70. verlangt, gewünscht. 71. brachten.
72. genug. 73. setzten uns — vor.
74. gutes. 75. Frühstück.
76. vorzügliches. 77. versichere.
78. bildeten.
79. part of it, einen Theil davon.
80. wovon (von den Capaunen).
81. carry away, mitnehmen.
82. at once, sogleich. 83. verstand.
84. Bedeutung.

3. Who was Courier's companion? — 4. What sort of roads are there in Calabria?
5. Who led Courier astray? — 6. What sort of a night and house was it?
7. What did they find in the house? — 8. What was to be seen in the house?
9. How did Courier's companion conduct himself towards the family?

NB. Obige 9 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 11.

10. What did he play, and what did he promise?
11. What did he prate about, and where did he order it to be put?
12. What might the portmanteau have been supposed to contain, and what did it actually contain? — 13. Describe the bedroom.
14. What did Courier's comrade do, and what did he do himself?
15. How did the night pass?
16. What did C—hear just about day-break, and what did he hear the husband and wife say?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 12.

17. Describe C—'s sensation at what he heard.
18. What did C—hear on the stair-case, and see through the door?
19. After they had entered the room, what did the wife do and say?
20. Whose bed did the husband approach, and what had he in his hand?
21. What did the man seize, and do?
22. When did C—comprehend the meaning of the words „*Must we kill them both?*“

XI. A Golden Rule (Regel).

Industry¹ will make a (einem) man a purse², and frugality³ will find him strings⁴ for it⁵. Neither⁶ the purse nor the strings will cost him any thing⁷. He who has it⁸, should only draw⁹ the strings as frugality directs¹⁰, and he will be sure¹¹ always to find a useful penny at¹² the bottom of it. The servants¹³ of industry are known¹⁴ by their livery; it is always *whole*¹⁵ and *wholesome*¹⁶. Idleness travels¹⁷ very leisurely¹⁸, and poverty¹⁹ soon overtakes²⁰ him. Look at²¹ the *ragged*²² *slaves* of *Idleness*, and judge²³ which is the best master to serve²⁴ *Industry* or *Idleness*?

XII. How²⁵ to become Learned.

The celebrated John Locke was²⁶ asked²⁷ how he had contrived²⁸ to accumulate²⁹ a mine³⁰ of knowledge³¹ so rich, yet³² so extensive³³ and deep³⁴. He replied³⁵, that he attributed³⁶ what little³⁷ he knew³⁸ to the not having³⁶ been ashamed to ask³⁹ for⁴⁰ information⁴¹; and to the rule⁴² he had laid down⁴³ of conversing⁴⁴ with all descriptions⁴⁵ of men, on those topics chiefly⁴⁶ that formed⁴⁷ their own peculiar⁴⁸ professions⁴⁹ and pursuits⁵⁰.

1. der Fleiß. 2. Geldbeutel.
3. die Sparsamkeit. 4. Schnüre. 5. dazu.
6. *neither—nor*, weder—noch. 7. etwas.
8. *has it*, *should only*, ihn hat, braucht nur.
9. zu ziehen. 10. angibt.
11. *be sure to*, immer sicher sein.
12. *at the bottom, &c.*, unten darin zu finden.
13. Diener. 14. bekannt. 15. gut.
16. schön. 17. reist. 18. gemächlich.
19. die Armuth.
20. *soon, &c.*, holt — bald ein.
21. setzt nur — an. 22. zerlumpten.
23. beurtheilt dann. 24. zu dienen.
25. wie man gelehrt werden kann.
26. wurde. 27. gefragt.

28. *he had contrived*, er es gemacht habe.
29. sich — zu sammeln. 30. Masse.
31. Kenntnisse. 32. doch. 33. ausgedehnt.
34. gründlich. 35. erwiderte.
36. *he attributed — to the not having been ashamed*, er schrieb — dem Umstand zu, daß er sich nicht geschämt habe (s. Reg. IX. S. 410 u. Reg. LV. S. 523 d. Grammatik).
37. das Wenige, was. 38. wußte.
39. zu bitten. 40. um. 41. Belehrung.
42. Regel. 43. *laid down*, die er sich gemacht.
44. zu sprechen. 45. allerlei Art.
46. *on, &c.*, hauptsächlich über Gegenstände.
47. betrafen. 48. besonderen. 49. Beruf.
50. Studium, Streben.

XIII. The Bagpiper¹ Revived².

The following³ event⁴ happened⁵ in London during⁶ the great plague⁷, which in 1665 carried⁸ off nearly 100,000 of the inhabitants.

A Scotch bagpiper used⁹ to get his living by sitting¹⁰ and playing¹¹ his bagpipes every day on the steps¹² of St.¹³ Andrew's church, in Holborn¹⁴. In order¹⁵ to escape¹⁶ the contagion¹⁷ he drank a great deal¹⁸ of *gin*¹⁹; and, one day, having taken²⁰ more than usual²¹, he became²² so drunk that he fell²³ fast asleep on the steps. It was the custom²⁴, during the prevalence²⁵ of that terrible disease²⁶, to send carts²⁷ about²⁸ every night to collect²⁹ the dead³⁰, and carry³¹ them to a common³² grave³³, or deep pit³⁴, of which³⁵ several³⁶ had been made in the environs³⁷ of London.

The men passing³⁸ with the cart up Holborn-hill³⁸, and seeing the piper¹ extended³⁹ on the steps¹², naturally thought⁴⁰ it was a dead body⁴¹, and tossed⁴² him into the cart among⁴³ the others, without observing⁴⁴ that he had his bagpipes under his arm, and without paying⁴⁵ any attention to⁴⁶ his dog, which followed the cart, barking⁴⁷ and howling⁴⁸ most piteously⁴⁹.

The rumbling⁵⁰ of the cart over the stones⁵¹, and the cries⁵² of the poor dog, soon awoke⁵³ the piper from his drunken lethargy⁵⁴, and, not being⁵⁵ able to discover⁵⁶ where he was, he began squeezing⁵⁷ his bag⁵⁸ and playing¹¹ a Scotch air⁵⁹, to the great astonishment and terror⁶⁰ of the carters⁶¹, who immediately fetched⁶² lights⁶³, and found the Scot sitting⁶⁴ erect amid⁴³ the dead bodies, playing his pipes. He was soon released⁶⁵ and restored⁶⁶ to his faithful dog. The piper became, from⁶⁷ this event⁴, so celebrated, that one of the first sculptors⁶⁸ of that epoch⁶⁹ made a statue of him and his dog, which is still⁷⁰ to be⁷¹ seen in London.

1. How many people died of the plague in London in 1665?
2. How did the Scotch bagpiper get his living?
3. What did he do in order to escape the contagion, and what were the consequences?
4. What was the custom at that time in London?
5. What did the men do with the piper? — 6. What awoke the piper?
7. What did he do on awaking? — What became of him afterwards?

1. (bagpiper) Dudelsackpfeifer.
2. wiederbelebte. 3. folgende. 4. Begebenheit.
5. ereignete sich. 6. während. 7. Pest.
8. *carried off*, hinraffte.
9. *used to get his living*, gewann — seinen Lebens-Unterhalt.
10. *by sitting*, dadurch — daß er saß.
11. spielte. 12. auf den Stufen.
13. St. sprich (heißt), Abkürzung von *saint*, heilig.
14. Holborn (eine Straße in London).
15. *in order to*, um (s. Anmerk. 28 S. 359 der Grammatik).
16. zu entgehen. 17. Ansteckung.
18. sehr viel. 19. Wachholder-Branntwein.
20. *having taken*, da er — zu sich genommen hatte. 21. gewöhnlich. 22. wurde.
23. *fell fast asleep*, fest einschlief.
24. Gebrauch. 25. *the prevalence of*, herrschte.
26. Krankheit. 27. Wagen.
28. herumzuschicken.
29. zu sammeln, abzuholen. 30. die Todten.

31. hinzufügen. 32. gemeinsamen. 33. Grab.
34. Grube. 35. wovon. 36. mehrere.
37. Umgegend.
38. welche — durch Holborn gingen.
39. ausgestreckt. 40. dachten.
41. eine Leiche. 42. warfen. 43. unter.
44. ohne zu bemerken.
45. *paying any attention*, irgend Aufmerksamkeit zu schenken. 46. seinem. 47. bellend.
48. heulend. 49. jämmerlich. 50. das Rumpeln.
51. Steine, das Pflaster. 52. Winseln.
53. weckte — auf. 54. trunkenen Schlassucht.
55. da er nicht im Stande war.
56. zu entdecken. 57. zu drücken.
58. Sack, Dudelsack. 59. Arie. 60. Schrecken.
61. Wagenführer. 62. holten. 63. Licht.
64. *sitting erect*, aufrecht sitzend. 65. befreit.
66. zurückgegeben. 67. durch.
68. Bildhauer. 69. der dermaligen Zeit.
70. immer noch. 71. *to be seen*, zu sehen ist. (Reg. III. S. 478 d. Grammatik.)

XIV. The Chimney-sweepers'¹ Feast, or the Lost² Child³ Found⁴.

There⁵ was formerly⁶ in London, on the first of May of every year, a superb⁷ feast given⁸ to the chimney-sweepers of the metropolis⁹ at¹⁰ Montagu-House, Cavendish-Square¹¹, the town¹² residence of the Montagu family. The custom¹³ is said¹⁴ to have taken its origin from the following circumstance.

Lady Montagu, being¹⁵ at her country-seat¹⁶ as¹⁷ usual¹⁸ in the summer, used¹⁹ to send²⁰ her little boy Edward to walk²¹ every day with the foot-man²², who had strict²³ orders never²⁴ to lose sight of him. One day, however²⁵, the servant, meeting²⁶ an old acquaintance²⁷, went²⁸ into an alehouse²⁹ to drink, and left³⁰ the little boy running³¹ about by³² himself. After³³ staying³⁴ some time drinking, the footman came out to look³⁵ for the child to³⁶ take him home³⁷ to dinner, but he could not find him. He wandered about³⁸ till³⁹ night, inquiring⁴⁰ at¹⁰ every cottage⁴¹ and at every house, but in vain⁴², no Edward could be found. The poor mother, as⁴³ may well be imagined, was in the greatest anxiety⁴⁴ about⁴⁵ the absence⁴⁶ of her dear boy; but it would be impossible to describe⁴⁷ her grief⁴⁸ and despair when the footman returned⁴⁹, and told⁵⁰ her he did⁵¹ not know what had become⁵² of him. People⁵³ were sent to seek⁵⁴ him in all directions⁵⁵; advertisements⁵⁶ were put⁵⁷ in all the newspapers⁵⁸; bills⁵⁹ were stuck up in London, and in most of the great towns of England, offering⁶⁰ a considerable⁶¹ reward⁶² to any person⁶³ who would bring him or give any news⁶⁴ of him. All endeavours⁶⁵ were, however, unsuccessful⁶⁶, and it was concluded⁶⁷ that the poor child had fallen into some pond⁶⁸, or that he had been stolen⁶⁹ by Gypsies⁷⁰, who would not bring him back⁷¹ for fear⁷² of being⁷³ punished.

Lady Montagu passed⁷⁴ two long years in this miserable uncertainty⁷⁵: she did not return⁷⁶ to London as usual in the winter, but

1. Kaminfeger-Fest.
2. das verlorene. 3. Kind. 4. wiedergefundene.
5. es wurde (s. § 169. S. 291 d. Grammatik.)
6. ehemals. 7. prächtiges Fest. 8. gegeben.
9. Hauptstadt. 10. in. 11. Cavendish-Platz.
12. town residence, Stadt-Wohnung.
13. Gebrauch.
14. is said to have taken its origin, &c., soll seinen Ursprung in dem folgenden Umstand gehabt haben. (s. Reg. II. S. 477 d. Grammatik.)
15. als — war. 16. Landsitz. 17. wie.
18. gewöhnlich. 19. pflegte sie. 20. zu schicken.
21. spazieren. 22. Lakai. 23. strenge.
24. never to lose sight of him, ihn nie aus den Augen zu lassen.
25. jedoch. 26. traf. 27. Bekannten.
28. ging. 29. Bierstube. 30. ließ.
31. herumlaufen.
32. by himself, allein (s. § 85b Anm. 57, S. 194 der Grammatik).
33. nachdem. 34. er — geblieben war.
35. to look for, um nach dem — zu sehen.
36. um — zu nehmen.
37. nach Hause. 38. herum. 39. bis.

40. sich erkundigen. 41. Hütte.
42. vergebens.
43. as may, &c., wie man sich wohl denken kann.
44. Angst. 45. wegen.
46. Abwesenheit, Ausbleiben.
47. zu beschreiben. 48. Kummer.
49. zurück kam. 50. sagte.
51. did not know, nicht wußte (s. Anmerk. 10 Reg. V. S. 479 d. Grammatik).
52. aus ihm geworden sei. 53. Leute.
54. aufzusuchen. 55. Richtungen.
56. Anzeigen. 57. eingerückt. 58. Zeitungen.
59. bills were stuck up, Maueranschläge wurden angeklebt.
60. anbietend. 61. bedeutende.
62. Belohnung. 63. einem Jeden.
64. any news of, Auskunft über.
65. Bemühungen, 66. ohne Erfolg.
67. it was included, man glaubte endlich.
68. Teich. 69. gestohlen. 70. Zigeunern.
71. zurück. 72. aus Furcht.
73. of being punished, gestraft zu werden.
74. brachte — zu. 75. Ungewißheit.
76. kehrte nicht — zurück, sondern.

passed her time in grief and solitude¹ in² the country. At³ length one of her sisters married⁴, and, after many refusals⁵, Lady Montagu consented⁶ to give a ball and supper on⁷ the occasion at her town-house. She arrived⁸ in London to superintend⁹ the preparations¹⁰, and while¹¹ the supper was cooking¹², the whole house was alarmed¹³ by¹⁴ a cry of, fire!

It appears¹⁵ that one of the cooks¹⁶ had overturned¹⁷ a saucepan¹⁸, and set¹⁹ fire to the chimney. The chimney-sweepers were²⁰ sent for, and a little boy was sent²¹ up; but the smoke²² nearly suffocated²³ him, and he fell into²⁴ the fire-place²⁵. Lady Montagu came herself with some vinegar²⁶ and a smelling-bottle²⁷; she began to bathe²⁸ his temples²⁹ and his neck³⁰, when³¹ suddenly³² she screamed³³ out. — Oh! Edward! — and fell senseless³⁴ on the floor³⁵. She soon recovered³⁶, and taking³⁷ the little sweep³⁸ in her arms, pressed³⁹ him to her bosom, crying³³, It is my dear Edward! It is my lost boy!

It appears¹⁵ she had recognized⁴⁰ him by a mark⁴¹ on his neck. The⁴² master-chimney-sweeper, on⁴² being asked where he had obtained⁴³ the child, said⁴⁴ he had bought⁴⁵ him about⁴⁶ a year before⁴⁷ of a gypsy woman⁴⁸, who said he was⁴⁹ her son. All that⁵⁰ the boy could remember⁵¹ was, that some people had given him fruit⁵², and told him they would take him home⁵³ to his mamma; but that they took him a long way⁵⁴ upon a donkey⁵⁵, and after keeping⁵⁶ him a long time⁵⁷, they told him he must go and live⁵⁸ with the chimney-sweep who was his father: that they had beaten⁵⁹ him so much⁶⁰, whenever⁶¹ he spoke⁶² of his mamma and of his fine⁶³ house, that he was⁶⁴ almost afraid to think of it⁶⁵. But he said his master, the chimney-sweeper, had treated⁶⁶ him very well⁶⁷.

Lady Montagu recompensed⁶⁸ the man handsomely⁶⁹, and from that time⁷⁰ she gave a feast to all the chimney-sweepers of the Metropolis on the 1 st. of May, the birth-day⁷¹ of little Edward, who always presided⁷² at the table⁷³, which was covered⁷⁴ with the good

1. Einsamkeit. 2. in, &c., auf dem Lande.
3. endlich. 4. verheiratete sich.
5. after many refusals, nach vielem Weigern.
6. willigte — ein.
7. bei der Gelegenheit, Veranlassung.
8. kam — an. 9. zu leiten.
10. Vorbereitungen.
11. während — wurde.
12. zubereitete (s. Reg. LXIII. S. 527 d. Gramm.).
13. wurde in Schrecken gesetzt. 14. durch.
15. scheint. 16. Köche. 17. umgeworfen.
18. Kasserole. 19. set fire to, steckte — in Brand.
20. were sent for, wurden geholt. (s. Reg. XXIX. S. 497 d. Grammatik.)
21. sent up, hinaufgeschickt; (man ergänze „den Kamin“).
22. Rauch. 23. erstickte. 24. auf — herunter.
25. Feuerherd. 26. Essig. 27. Riechfläschchen.
28. zu benetzen. 29. Schläfe. 30. Hals.
31. als. 32. plötzlich. 33. ausschrie, ausrief.
34. besinnungslos.
35. Boden (s. § 7, S. 585 der Gramm.).
36. kam bald zu sich. 37. indem sie — nahm.

38. Kaminfeger. 39. drückte.
40. wieder erkannt. 41. Mark.
42. on being asked, als der Kaminfegermeister gefragt wurde, wo.
43. bekommen.
44. sagte er, er habe es.
45. gekauft. 46. ungefähr. 47. vor.
48. gipsy woman, Zigeunerin.
49. sei (s. Reg. XXXIII. S. 508 d. Gramm.).
50. was (s. Anmerk. 57, S. 198 d. Gramm.).
51. sich erinnern (s. Reg. XXXI. S. 505 der Grammatik.)
52. Obst. 53. nach Hause. 54. Weg.
55. Esel. 56. nachdem — behalten.
57. Zeit. 58. leben. 59. geschlagen.
60. so much, so sehr. 61. so oft.
62. sprach. 63. schönen.
64. was almost afraid, sich beinahe fürchtete.
65. daran. 66. behandelt.
67. very well, sehr gut. 68. belohnte.
69. anständig. 70. Zeit an. 71. Geburtstag.
72. die Honneurs machte.
73. bei Tische. 74. besetzt.

old English fare¹, roast beef, plum-pudding, and strong² beer. This circumstance³ happened⁴ many, many years ago⁵, and Lady Montagu and Edward are both dead⁶; but the first of May is still⁷ celebrated⁸ as the chimney-sweepers' holiday⁹, and you may¹⁰ see them on that day in all parts of London, dressed¹¹ in ribbons¹² and all sorts¹³ of finery¹⁴, dancing¹⁵ to music at¹⁶ almost every door, and beating¹⁷ time with the implements¹⁸ of their trade¹⁹.

1. What was there formerly in London? — 2. What used Lady M—to do?

3. What did the servant do, and what was the consequence?

4. How did the poor Mother feel?

5. What was the result of all the endeavours to find the boy, and what was concluded?

6. How did Lady M—pass her time, and how long?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 16.

7. By what was the house alarmed?

8. Who were sent for, and what was the consequence? — 9. What did Lady M—do?

10. How did she recognise her son?

11. What did the chimney-sweeper say about the child? — 12. What could the boy remember?

13. How did Lady M—reward the man? — 14. What did she always give?

15. How is the first of May still celebrated in London?

XV. The most Unhappy²⁰.

Cosroes, King of Persia, in conversation²¹ with two philosophers and his vizir, asked²² — “What situation²³ of man is most to be deplored²⁴?” One of the philosophers maintained²⁵, that it was old age²⁶ accompanied²⁷ with extreme poverty²⁸; the other, that it was to have the body oppressed²⁹ by infirmities³⁰, the mind³¹ worn³² out, and the heart³³ broken³⁴ by a heavy series³⁵ of misfortunes³⁶. “I know a condition³⁷ more to be pitied³⁸,” said the Vizir, “and it is that³⁹ of him³⁹, who has passed through life without doing good; and who, unexpectedly⁴⁰ surprised⁴¹ by death⁴², is sent to appear⁴³ before the tribunal of the Sovereign⁴⁴ Judge.”

Miscellany⁴⁵ of Eastern Learning.

1. What condition of man is most to be pitied?

XVI. What⁴⁶ Habit in a Child Becomes.

Habit, in a child, is at first like⁴⁷ a spider's⁴⁸ web; if neglected, it becomes⁴⁹ a thread⁵⁰ or twine; next⁵¹ a cord⁵² or rope; finally a cable⁵³: and then who can break it?

1. Kost. 2. starkem. 3. Begebenheit
4. ereignete sich. 5. vor. 6. to(d)t.
7. *is still*, wird immer noch.
8. gefeiert. 9. Feiertag.
10. *you may*, man kann.
11. geschmückt. 12. mit Bändern.
13. allerlei Art. 14. Puß. 15. tanzend nach.
16. vor. 17. Takt schlagend.
18. Werkzeugen. 19. Handwerks.
20. unglücklichste. 21. Unterredung.
22. fragte. 23. welche Lage.
24. beklagen. 25. behauptete.
26. *was old age*, das hohe Alter sei.

27. begleitet von. 28. Armut. 29. unterdrückt.
30. Gebrechen, Krankheit. 31. Geist.
32. abgenutzt. 33. Herz.
34. gebrochen durch. 35. eine schwere Reihe.
36. Unglücksfällen. 37. Zustand, welcher.
38. zu beklagen. 39. der, desjenigen.
40. unerwartet. 41. überrascht.
42. Tod. 43. zu erscheinen.
44. höchsten Richters. 45. Sammlung.
46. wohin die Gewohnheit bei einem Kinde führt.
47. gleich. 48. Spinnengewebe. 49. wird sie zum.
50. Faden oder Zwirn. 51. nachher.
52. Strick oder Seil. 53. Tau.

XVII. My Mother.

Who fed¹ me from her gentle² breast,
And hush'd³ me in her arms to rest⁴,
And on⁵ my cheek⁶ sweet kisses⁷ prest⁸? My Mother.

When sleep forsook⁹ my open eye¹⁰,
Who was it¹¹ sung sweet lullaby¹²,
And sooth'd¹³ me that I should not cry¹⁴? My Mother.

Who sat¹⁵ and watch'd¹⁶ my infant¹⁷ head¹⁸,
When¹⁹ sleeping on my cradle-bed²⁰;
And tears²¹ of sweet affection²² shed²³? My Mother.

When pain²⁴ and sickness²⁵ made me cry,
Who gaz'd²⁶ upon my heavy²⁷ eye,
And wept*, for²⁸ fear that I should die²⁹? My Mother.

Who lov'd to see me pleased³⁰ and gay³¹,
And taught³² me sweetly³³ how³⁴ to play,
And minded³⁵ all³⁶ I had to say? My Mother.

Who ran³⁷ to help me when I fell,
And would³⁸ some³⁹ pretty story⁴⁰ tell,
Or kiss the place⁴¹ to make it well? My Mother.

Who taught my infant heart to pray⁴²,
And love⁴³ God's holy⁴⁴ book and day;
And taught me Wisdom's⁴⁵ pleasant way⁴⁶? My Mother.

And can I ever cease⁴⁷ to be
Affectionate³³ and kind⁴⁸ to thee,
Who wast so very kind to me? My Mother.

Ah, no! the thought⁴⁹ I cannot bear⁵⁰;
And if God please⁵¹ my life to spare⁵²,
I hope I shall reward⁵³ thy care⁵⁴, My Mother.

When thou art feeble⁵⁵, old, and gray,
My healthy⁵⁶ arm shall be thy stay⁵⁷;
And I will soothe⁵⁸ thy pains⁵⁹ away, My Mother.

And when I see thee⁶⁰ hang⁶¹ thy head,
'Twill⁶² be my turn to watch thy bed⁶²;
And tears of sweet affection shed, My Mother.

For⁶³ God who lives above⁶⁴ the skies,
Would look⁶⁵ with vengeance⁶⁶ in his eyes,
If I should ever dare⁶⁷ despise⁶⁸ My Mother.

Mrs. Gilbert.

1. nährte. 2. zarten. 3. lullte mich ein.
4. Ruhe. 5. auf. 6. Wange. 7. Küsse.
8. drückte.* 9. verließ. 10. Auge.
11. es, der ein — sang. 12. Wiegenlied.
13. besänftigte. 14. schreie. 15. saß.*
16. bewachte. 17. kindliches. 18. Haupt.
19. when sleeping, als ich — schlief.*
20. Wiegenbett. 21. Thränen. 22. Liebe.
23. vergoß.* 24. Schmerz. 25. Krankheit.
26. blickte. 27. müdes. 28. for fear, aus Furcht.
29. sterben. 30. vergnügt. 31. heiter.
32. lehrte.* 33. liebevoll.
34. how to play, zu spielen. 35. achtete auf.
36. alles; man ergänze „was“. 37. lief.*
38. pflegte (s. Reg. XII. © 483 b. Gramm.)
39. eine hübsche. *weinte.

40. story tell*, Geschichte zu erzählen.
41. Stelle — um. 42. beten.
43. lieben. 44. heiliges. 45. der Weisheit.
46. angenehmen Pfad. 47. aufhören.
48. gütig gegen. 49. Gedanken. 50. ertragen.
51. es Gott gefällt. 52. zu erhalten.
53. vergelten. 54. mütterliche Sorge.
55. schwach. 56. kräftiger. 57. Stütze.
58. soothe away, besänftigen, stillen.
59. Schmerzen. 60. daß Du. 61. hängst.
62. 'twill be my turn, &c., dann wird an mir
die Reihe sein, an deinem Bette zu wachen.
63. denn. 64. oben im Himmel wohnt.
65. blicken. 66. Zorn.
67. erdreisten. 68. zu verachten.

XVIII. The Mysterious Englishmen.

In the year 1767, two Englishmen landed¹ at Calais; they did² not go to Dessein's hotel, which was at that time much³ frequented by⁴ their countrymen⁵, but⁶ took up⁷ their lodgings at an obscure⁸ inn⁹, kept¹⁰ by a man named Dulong. The landlord¹¹ expected¹² every day that they would set¹³ off for Paris; but they made¹⁴ no preparations¹⁵ for departure¹⁶, and did not even inquire¹⁷ what was worth¹⁸ seeing at Calais. The¹⁹ only amusement they took¹⁹, was to go²⁰ out sometimes a-shooting.

The landlord began, after a few weeks, to wonder²¹ at²² their stay²³, and used²⁴ to gossip²⁵, of an²⁶ evening, with his neighbour²⁷ the grocer²⁸ upon²⁹ the subject³⁰. Sometimes they decided³¹ that they were spies³², at other times they were suspected³³ to be runaways³⁴. However³⁵, they lived³⁶ well, and paid³⁷ so liberally³⁸, that it³⁹ was at last concluded³⁹ that they were fools⁴⁰; which was confirmed⁴¹, in the opinion⁴² of Mr. Dulong, by⁴³ a proposition⁴⁴ they soon after made⁴⁵ to him.

They called⁴⁶ him into their room⁴⁷ and said, Landlord, we are very well⁴⁸ satisfied⁴⁹ with your table⁵⁰ and your wine, and, if the lodging suited⁵¹ us, we should probably remain⁵² with you some time longer; but unfortunately⁵³ all your rooms look⁵⁴ into the street⁵⁵, and the smacking⁵⁶ of postillions' whips⁵⁷, and the noise⁵⁸ of the carriages⁵⁹ disturb⁶⁰ us very⁴⁸ much.

Monsieur Dulong began to feel alarmed⁶¹, and said if it were possible to make⁶² any arrangements⁶³ to render⁶⁴ them more comfortable⁶⁴, he would gladly⁶⁵ do it. — Well, then, said one of them, we have a proposal⁴⁴ to make which will be advantageous⁶⁶ to you; it will cost some money, it is true⁶⁷, but we will pay half⁶⁸ the expense⁶⁹, and our stay⁷⁰ will give you an opportunity of reimbursing⁷¹ yourself. — Well, said the landlord, what is it? — Why⁷², said the Englishman, your garden is very quiet⁷³, and if you will run⁷⁴ up a wall in the corner⁷⁵, you can easily⁷⁶ make us two rooms, which is all⁷⁷ we shall want⁷⁸; the expense will not be great, as⁷⁹ the old wall that is there will form⁸⁰ two of the sides⁸¹, and your house will be worth so⁸² much the more.

1. landeten. 2. *did not go*,* gingen nicht.
3. *much frequented*, sehr besucht. 4. von.
5. Landsleuten. 6. sondern.
7. *took* up their lodgings at*, stiegen ab in.
8. unansehnlichen. 9. Gasthaus.
10. *kept* by*, welches — gehörte. 11. Wirth.
12. erwartete. 13. *set* off for*, nach — abreisen.
14. trafen. 15. Anstalten. 16. zur Abreise.
17. *did not, &c.*, erkundigten sich nicht einmal.
18. *worth seeing*,* Sehenswerthes — gäbe.
19. ihre einzige Unterhaltung, Zeitvertreib.
20. *to go out a-shooting*, auf die Jagd zu gehen.
21. sich zu wundern. 22. über. 23. Bleiben.
24. pflegte. 25. zu plaudern. 26. des Abends.
27. Nachbar. 28. Spezereihändler. 29. über.
30. Gegenstand, Sache.
31. waren sie der Meinung. 32. Spionen.
33. *were suspected*, vermuthete man, daß.
34. Ausreißer. 35. jedoch. 36. lebten gut.
37. bezahlten.* 38. freigebig.

39. *that it was at, &c.*, daß man zuletzt fest überzeugt war. 40. Narren. 41. bestätigt wurde.
42. Meinung. 43. durch. 44. Vorschlag, welchen.
45. machten.* 46. ließen — kommen.
47. Zimmer. 48. *very well*, sehr. 49. zufrieden.
50. Tisch. 51. paßte. 52. bleiben.
53. unglücklicherweise.
54. *look into*, haben die Aussicht auf.
55. Straße. 56. Knallen. 57. Peitsche.
58. Lärm. 59. Wagen. 60. stören.
61. unruhig zu werden. 62. zu treffen.*
63. Anordnungen.
64. *to render them, &c.*, um es ihnen angenehmer zu machen. 65. gern. 66. vorthailhaft für.
67. wahr. 68. die Hälfte. 69. Kosten. 70. Aufenthalt.
71. sich zu entschädigen. 72. nun. 73. ruhig.
74. *run up a wall*, eine Mauer bauen lassen.
75. die Ecke. 76. leicht. 77. Alles, was.
78. bedürfen. 79. da. 80. bilden.
81. Seiten. 82. *so much, &c.*, um so mehr.

Dulong was glad¹ to find so² easy a method of preserving³ such profitable⁴ guests: the rooms were constructed⁵, the Englishmen took possession⁶, and appeared⁷ very comfortable⁸; living in⁹ their usual manner to the great satisfaction and profit¹⁰ of the landlord¹¹; though¹² he was¹³ at a loss to imagine why¹⁴ they should shut¹⁵ themselves up in such¹⁶ an obscure¹⁷ corner¹⁸. Thus passed¹⁹ about²⁰ two months, when one day they told him they were²¹ going on a shooting excursion, and that as²² they should be absent²³ three days, they would take abundance²⁴ of ammunition²⁵. The next morning they set²⁶ off with their guns on their shoulders, and their shot-bags²⁷ heavily²⁸ loaded²⁹; the landlord wishing them good sport³⁰. They told him that they had left³¹ some papers in the apartment³², and therefore³³ they took the key³⁴ with³⁵ them.

The three days passed, and so did³⁶ the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh, without the return³⁷ of the strangers. Mr. Dulong became³⁸ at first uneasy, then suspicious³⁹ and, at last, on⁴⁰ the eighth day, he sent for⁴¹ the police⁴² officers, and the door was broken⁴³ open in presence of the necessary witnesses⁴⁴. On the table was found⁴⁵ the following note⁴⁶:

“Dear Landlord, — You know, without⁴⁷ doubt, that your town of⁴⁸ Calais was in the possession⁴⁹ of the English during two hundred years; that it was at⁵⁰ length retaken⁵¹ by the Duke of Guise, who treated⁵² the English inhabitants⁵³ as our Edward III. had treated the French; that is⁵⁴, seized⁵⁵ their goods and drove⁵⁶ them out. A short⁵⁷ time ago we discovered⁵⁸ among some old family papers, some documents of one of our ancestors⁵⁹, who possessed a house at⁶⁰ Calais where yours⁶¹ now stands⁶². From⁶³ these documents we learned⁶⁴ that, on the retaking⁵¹ of Calais, he was obliged to flee⁶⁵; but in hopes⁶⁶ of being⁶⁷ able to return, he buried⁶⁸ a very considerable sum of money close to⁶⁹ a wall⁷⁰ in his garden: the paper⁷¹ contained⁷² also such an accurate⁷³ description of the spot⁷⁴, that we doubted⁷⁵ not of being⁷⁶ able to discover it. We immedi-

1. froh. 2. eine so leichte (s. Reg. III. S. 370 d. Grammatik).
3. behalten. 4. nugeinbringende. 5. gebaut.
6. nahmen Besitz. 7. schienen. 8. behaglich.
9. living in, und lebten auf.
10. Vortheil, Nutzen. 11. Wirthes. 12. obwohl.
13. he was at a loss to imagine, er sich nicht einbilden konnte. 14. warum.
15. shut* up, einschließen. 16. so.
17. dunkeln. 18. Ecke. 19. so vergingen.
20. ungefähr. 21. were going on a shooting excursion, auf die Jagd gingen.
22. da. 23. abwesend. 24. Fülle, Menge.
25. Schießvorrath. 26. set off, reisten — ab.
27. Schrotbeutel. 28. schwer. 29. beladen.
30. Jagd. 31. hinterlassen. 32. Zimmer.
33. deswegen. 34. Schlüssel.
35. with them, mit (sich) (s. Anmerk. 16, S. 358 u. Reg. XXIV. S. 461 d. Grammatik).
36. auch. 37. Rückkehr. 38. wurde zu.
39. argwöhnisch. 40. am. 41. nach.
42. police officers, Polizei-Beamten.

43. broken* open, aufgebrochen.
44. Zeugen. 45. was found,* fand man.
46. Billet. 47. ohne Zweifel.
48. town of, Stadt (s. Reg. IV. V. S. 408 der Grammatik).
49. Besitz. 50. at length, endlich.
51. wieder genommen. 52. behandelte.
53. Einwohner. 54. heißt.
55. seized their goods, nahm ihr Eigentum in Beschlagnahme. 56. vertrieb.
57. a short time ago, vor kurzer Zeit (s. Reg. XIX. 3. S. 380 der Grammatik).
58. entdeckten. 59. Vorfahren.
60. in. 61. das Jhrige. 62. steht.* 63. aus.
64. erfuhren. 65. fliehen. 66. in der Hoffnung.
67. of being able to return, zurückkehren zu können.
68. vergrub.
69. close to, dicht an. 70. Mauer.
71. Dokument, Urkunde. 72. enthielt.
73. genaue. 74. Stelle.
75. zweifelten.
76. of being able, &c., ihn entdecken zu können.

ately¹ came to Calais, and finding² your house on the place indicated³, we took lodgings in it⁴.

"We were soon convinced⁵ that the treasure⁶ was buried in the corner of your garden, but how⁷ dig for it without being⁸ seen? We found a method, it was the construction⁹ of the apartment. As soon as it was completed¹⁰ we dug up¹¹ the earth and found our object¹² in the chest¹³ which we have left you. We wish you success¹⁴ in your house, but advise¹⁵ you to give better wine, and to be more reasonable¹⁶ in your prices."

Poor Dulong was dumb¹⁷ with astonishment; he looked¹⁸ at his neighbour the grocer, and then at the empty¹⁹ chest; they both shrugged²⁰ up their shoulders, and acknowledged²¹ that the English were not quite²² such fools as they²³ had taken them for.

Judge²⁴ not the actions²⁵ of any one, without knowing²⁶ the motives²⁷.

1. Where did the Englishmen take up their lodgings? — 2. What was their only amusement?
3. What did the landlord wonder at, and what used he to do?
4. What did the landlord suppose they were?
5. What did the two Englishmen say to the landlord?
6. How did Mr. Dulong feel, and what did he say?
7. What proposal did the Englishmen make to Mr. Dulong?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 20.

8. What was Dulong glad to find? — 9. How did the Englishmen live?
10. What did they tell the landlord?
11. As the strangers did not return, what did Mr. Dulong do, and what did he find?
12. What were the contents of the letter?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 21.

13. With what was Dulong dumb?
14. What did he do, and what did he and his neighbour acknowledge?

XIX. A wise Man's Kingdom is his Own Breast.*

A wise man's kingdom²⁸ is his own breast; or, if he ever²⁹ looks farther³⁰, it will only³¹ be to the judgment³² of a select³³ few³⁴, who are free from prejudices³⁵, and capable³⁶ of giving³⁷ him solid and substantial³⁸ advice³⁹.

XX. Time tries the Characters of Men.

Time tries⁴⁰ the characters of men, as⁴¹ the furnace⁴² assays⁴³ the quality⁴⁴ of metals, by disengaging⁴⁵ the impurities⁴⁶, dissipating⁴⁷ the superficial⁴⁸ glitter⁴⁹, and leaves⁵⁰ the sterling⁵¹ gold bright and pure.

1. sogleich. 2. da wir — fanden.* 3. bezeichneten.
4. darin. 5. überzeugt. 6. Schatz.
7. *how dig for it*, wie sollten wir darnach graben.
8. gesehen* zu werden. 9. Erbauung.
10. fertig. 11. gruben* — auf.
12. erwünschten Gegenstand. 13. Kiste.
14. Glück. 15. rat(h)en. 16. mäßiger.
17. *dumb with*, stumm vor.
18. blickte — an. 19. leere.
20. *shrugged up their, &c.*, zuckten die Achseln.
21. gaben zu. 22. ganz.
23. *as they had taken them for*, wofür sie dieselben gehalten hatten.

* Herz, Gewissen.

24. beurteile. 25. Handlungen.
26. zu wissen,* kennen. 27. Beweggründe.
28. Himmelreich. 29. je.
30. weiter hinausblickt, so. 31. bloß.
32. *to the, &c.*, nach der Meinung, Ansicht.
33. ausgewählten. 34. Wenigen. 35. Vorurtheil.
36. fähig. 37. zu geben.* 38. wesentlichen.
36. Rat(h). 40. prüft. 41. wie.
42. Schmelzofen. 43. probirt.
44. Eigenschaft. 45. durch die Absonderung.
46. Unreinigkeit. 47. Zerstreuung.
48. oberflächlichen. 49. Schimmers.
50. hinterläßt.* 51. ächte. 51. glänzend.

XXI. Comparatively¹ and Superlatively² Unhappy.

Most³, if not all unhappy or unhealthy⁴ people, find a degree⁵ of interest, or perhaps consolation⁶, in hearing⁷ stories of persons more unhappy or unhealthy than themselves, and many consider⁸ their own⁹ fate¹⁰ as the most miserable¹¹ in the world, until¹² they are convinced¹³, by actual¹⁴ observation¹⁵, that there are thousands more to be¹⁶ pitied than they are.

"Several years ago¹⁷ a lady and gentleman were living¹⁸ at¹⁹ the Hague (hehg); they had been for²⁰ some time married, and were justly²¹ reckoned²² amongst²³ the happiest of the happy²⁴. Particular²⁵ business²⁶ called²⁷ the husband away. Shortly²⁸ afterwards²⁹ the wife received³⁰ a letter by³¹ express, stating³² that her husband was dangerously³³ ill, and that she³⁴ must use the utmost despatch³⁴, if³⁵ she hoped to see him alive³⁶. No time was lost; but on approaching³⁷ the inn³⁸, she³⁹ was met by a funeral⁴⁰ and learned⁴¹ to her unspeakable⁴² horror⁴³, that the hearse⁴⁴ before her contained⁴⁵ the dead body⁴⁶ of her husband! She fainted⁴⁷ in the streets; but when the funeral had passed⁴⁸ on, the people were⁴⁹ at a loss what to do⁵⁰ with her, not knowing⁵¹ who or what she was, nor even⁵² her connexion⁵³ with the gentleman who had died; for⁵⁴ when she recovered⁵⁵ from her fainting⁵⁶ fit, her reason⁵⁷ had⁵⁸ fled. A benevolent⁵⁹ lady, however, who witnessed⁶⁰ the whole scene from her window, ran⁶¹ down⁶² into the street, and desired⁶³ that⁶⁴ the woman should be⁶⁵ carried to her own room.

"For⁶⁶ some weeks her mind⁶⁷ continued⁶⁸ unsettled⁶⁹, and she seemed⁷⁰ unconscious⁷¹ of⁷² every thing, except⁷³ that some dreadful calamity⁷⁴ had⁷⁵ happened. At length her senses⁷⁶ returned, and with⁷⁷ them a full comprehension⁷⁸ of her loss⁷⁹. Her grief⁸⁰ became outrageous⁸¹ and uncontroled⁸², and she constantly⁸³ exclaimed⁸⁴, "I am the most wretched⁸⁵, the most unfortunate of women — surely never, never was⁸⁶ there any one put⁸⁷ to such a trial!"

1. vergleichsmäßig. 2. über die Maßen.
3. die Meisten. 4. kränklichen. 5. Grad.
6. Trost darin. 7. zu hören.* 8. betrachten.
9. eigenes. 10. Schicksal. 11. elendeste von.
12. bis. 13. überzeugt. 14. durch wirkliche.
15. Beobachtung.
16. to be pitied, zu beklagen. 17. vor.
18. lebten. 19. at the, im.
20. had been for, &c., waren einige Zeit lang
verheiratet. 21. mit Recht.
22. gezählt. 23. zu. 24. der Glücklichen.
25. besondere. 26. Geschäfte.
27. called — away, riefen — vom Hause weg.
28. kurz. 29. nachher. 30. erhielt.
31. by express, durch einen Eilboten.
32. meldend. 33. gefährlich krank.
34. sie sich so sehr als möglich beeilen müsse.
35. falls. 36. am Leben.
37. als sie sich näherte. 38. Gasthaus.
39. she was met by, begegnete* ihr.
40. Leichenzug. 41. sie erfuhr.
42. unaussprechlichen. 43. Schrecken.
44. Totenwagen. 45. enthielt.
46. Leiche. 47. wurde ohnmächtig.
48. vorbeigegangen war.
49. people were at a loss, wußte man nicht.

50. what to do*, was mit ihr zu machen sei.
51. da man nicht wußte. 52. nicht ein Mal.
53. Verhältniß zu. 54. denn.
55. sich erholte. 56. fainting fit, Ohnmacht.
57. Vernunft. 58. had fled, war dahin.
59. wohlwollende. 60. ansah. 61. lief.*
62. hinunter. 63. bat.
64. daß man.
65. should be carried, tragen, bringen möchte.
66. for some weeks, einige Wochen lang (siehe
Reg. IX. b, S. 542 d. Grammatik.
67. Geist. 68. blieb. 69. verwirrt.
70. schien. 71. unbewußt.
72. of every thing, Allem.
73. ausgenommen. 74. Unglück.
75. had happened, ihr zugestoßen sei.
76. senses returned, kehrten — Sinne zurück.
77. with them, damit.
78. Bewußtsein.
79. Verlustes. 80. Kummer.
81. unmäßig. 82. unbeschränkt.
83. fortwährend.
84. rief — aus. 85. elendeste, unglücklichste.
86. was there, war Jemand.
87. put to such a trial, auf eine solche Probe
gestellt.

For¹ a little while her unkown¹ but kind friend did not attempt² to stem³ these burts⁴ of grief, but at last she said to her, mildly, though⁵ firmly, — “Your lot⁶ is hard, but you are not the most unfortunate of mortals⁷. Listen⁸ to my story. I too, was a happy, happy wife. My husband and I had passed⁹ upwards¹⁰ of twenty years in the uninterrupted¹¹ enjoyment¹² of life, in companionship¹³ with our two children, a son and a daughter, who were in every respect¹⁴ what¹⁵ we could desire. To our infinite¹⁶ horror and amazement, we discovered that a villain¹⁷ in our own establishment¹⁸, a man in whom we had trusted¹⁹, had, by a series²⁰ of diabolical²¹ arts²², seduced²³ the affections of our poor girl! He fled²⁴ from²⁵ our vengeance²⁶, and his wretched, ruined²⁷ victim²⁸ died shortly after²⁹ of³⁰ a broken heart. Mean while³¹ her brother, who was of a delicate³² frame³³, and of a sensitive³⁴ temperament, was so wrought³⁵ up by sorrow³⁶ and humiliation³⁷ that he speedily³⁸ fell³⁹ into a decline, and we saw before us another inevitable⁴⁰ source⁴¹ of grief.

“To avert⁴² the blow⁴³, however, as long as possible, a journey to the south of Europe was recommended⁴⁴, and the grateful⁴⁵ air of a more genial⁴⁶ climate seemed to revive⁴⁷ the drooping⁴⁸ spirits of our son. One day he entered⁴⁹ a coffee-house, and had scarcely sat⁵⁰ down before⁵¹ he beheld⁵² the destroyer⁵³ of his sister placed⁵⁴ before him. Stupified⁵⁵ and uncertain what to do, he remained silent⁵⁶, while the other at once⁵⁷ broke⁵⁸ into taunts⁵⁹, allusions⁶⁰, and reproaches⁶¹. This was too much for human nature to stand⁶², and our poor boy, snatching⁶³ up a knife, which unfortunately lay⁶⁴ within⁶⁵ his reach, plunged⁶⁶ it into the heart of the monster⁶⁷ who had ruined the peace⁶⁸ of a whole family.

“Of course⁶⁹ he was instantly secured⁷⁰. The trial⁷¹ followed, and in spite⁷² of all the extenuating⁷³ circumstances which were urged⁷⁴, he was condemned⁷⁵, and, dreadful to relate⁷⁶, executed⁷⁷! My husband returned to me from the horrid scene apparently calm⁷⁸ and unmoved⁷⁹. We felt it our duty to support⁸⁰ one another under these terrible dispensations⁸¹, sent⁸² upon us, no doubt, for our

1. eine kurze Zeit lang — ihre unbekannte aber gütige.
2. *did not attempt*, versuchte — nicht.
3. Einhalt zu thun. 4. Ausbrüchen.
5. obwohl bestimmt. 6. Loß.
7. Sterblichen. 8. Hören Sie nur — an.
9. zugebracht. 10. Mehr als. 11. ungestörten.
12. Genuß. 13. Gemeinschaft. 14. jeder Hinsicht.
15. Alles waren, was wir nur. 16. unendlichen.
17. Schurke. 18. Geschäft, Hause.
19. *we had trusted*, wir unser Vertrauen gesetzt hatten. 20. Reihenfolge.
21. teuflischen. 22. Künsten.
23. *seduced the affections*, die Liebe — zu gewinnen gewußt. 24. entfloß. 25. vor.
26. Rache. 27. ruinirtes. 28. Opfer.
29. darauf. 30. an. 31. mittlerweile.
32. zartem. 33. Körperbau.
34. empfindsamen.
35. *wrought up* (Particip von *to work*), ergriffen.
36. Kummer. 37. Demütigung. 38. bald.
39. *fell into a decline*, schwindsüchtig wurde.

40. unausweichbare. 41. Quelle.
42. Um — abzuwenden. 43. Schlag.
44. empfohlen. 45. wohlthuende. 46. heiteren.
47. wieder zu beleben.
48. *drooping spirits*, niedergebeugte Gemüt.
49. trat — in ein.
50. *sat down*, sich — niedergelassen.
51. als. 52. sah. 53. Mörder. 54. sitzend.
55. bestürzt. 56. blieb er still. 57. auf ein Mal.
58. ausbrach, 59. Schmähungen.
60. Anspielungen. 61. Vorwürfen.
62. zu ertragen. 63. ergriff hastig. 64. lag.*
65. *within his reach*, in seinem Bereich.
66. stach, stieß. 67. Ungeheures.
68. Frieden, Glück. 69. natürlich.
70. verhaftet 71. das Verhör, der Prozeß.
72. ungeachtet. 73. mildernde.
74. vorgebracht wurden. 75. verurtheilt.
76. zu erzählen. 77. hingerichtet.
78. ruhig, gefaßt. 79. unbewegt.
80. zu unterstützen. 81. Rathschlüssen.
82. *sent upon us*, uns geschickt.

good¹, by the wisdom of a Power² whose ways³ are inscrutable⁴. The next day we had agreed⁵ to take⁶ a drive together; but after⁷ my husband had handed⁸ me into the carriage, he said he had forgotten⁹ something, for which he must return to his room. I waited¹⁰ for five or six minutes, and then, becoming¹¹ alarmed, I ran¹² up stairs, and found that he had put¹³ a period¹⁴ to his existence¹⁵!"

"Judge¹⁶ now, therefore, my dear madam, whether¹⁷ there¹⁸ may not be women in the world more unfortunate than you are."

Capt. Basil Hall.

1. What do all unhappy or unhealthy people find?
2. Who lived at the Hague? — 3. Amongst whom were they reckoned?
4. What did the wife receive?
5. What did she meet on approaching the inn?
6. What happened to her afterwards, and what had fled?
7. What did the benevolent lady do?
8. When her senses returned, how did her grief show itself?
9. What did she constantly exclaim?

NB. Obige 9 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 23.

10. What did her unknown friend say to her?
11. How many years had she passed in the enjoyment of life, and with whom?
12. Who seduced the affections of the daughter, and what were the consequences?
13. What effect had this upon the brother?
14. What was done to avert the blow?
15. Whom did he see in the coffee-house?
16. What did he plunge into the monster's heart?
17. What was the consequence of this last act?

NB. Obige 8 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 24.

18. What did the husband say as he handed his wife into the carriage?
19. What did the wife find on running up stairs?

XXII. Fate¹⁹ of Louis XVI. and Family.

On the 21st of January 1793, Louis XVI. of France was conveyed²⁰ to the scaffold²¹. He was summoned²² to his fate at eight o'clock in the morning; and he ascended²³ the platform²⁴ with a firm²⁵ air and steady²⁶ step. Raising²⁷ his voice, he said, "Frenchmen, I die innocent; I pardon all my enemies; and may France" — At²⁸ this instant the inhuman²⁹ Santerre ordered³⁰ the drums to beat³¹, and the executioners³² to perform³³ their office³⁴. When the guillotine descended³⁵, the priest who attended³⁶ him exclaimed³⁷, "Son of St. Louis, ascend³⁸ to heaven." The bleeding³⁹ head was held⁴⁰ up, and a few of the populace⁴¹ shouted⁴²: "*Vive la Republique!*" His body was interred⁴³ in a grave that was filled⁴⁴ up with quick-

1. Wohl, Besten. 2. Macht. 3. Wege.
4. unerforschlich. 5. verabredet.
6. to take a drive, spazieren zu fahren.
7. nachdem. 8. gehoben. 9. vergessen.
10. waited for, wartete.
11. becoming alarmed, da mir bange wurde.
12. ran* up stairs, lief — die Treppe hinauf.
13. gemacht.* 14. Ende. 15. Dasein.
16. beurtheile. 17. ob.
18. there may not be, es nicht — geben möge.
19. Schicksal. 20. auf — geführt. 21. Schaffot.

22. gerufen, geholt. 23. bestieg. 24. Gerüst.
25. entschlossener Miene. 26. festem Schritt.
27. erhebend. 28. in. 29. unmenshliche.
30. befahl; „daß man.“
31. rühre. 32. Scharfrichtern.
33. zu vollführen. 34. Amt, Dienst. 35. fiel.
36. begleitete. 37. rief aus. 38. fahre gen.
39. blutende.
40. held* up, in die Höhe gehalten.
41. Volkesh. 42. riefen.
43. beigeseht. 44. filled up, angefüllt.

lime¹, and a guard² placed³ around⁴ it, till⁵ it should be consumed⁶.

Thus⁷ fell Louis XVI. He possessed⁸ a good understanding⁹, which, however, was blunted¹⁰ by the early¹¹ indulgences¹² of a court. He had¹³ a strong sense of justice, and his humanity¹⁴ was perhaps extreme¹⁵. His chief¹⁶ defect¹⁷ was want¹⁸ of resolution and steadiness¹⁹. Unambitious²⁰, and easily advised²¹, he was induced²² to change²³ his purposes²⁴, especially by his queen, whose connexion with the House of Austria had²⁵ always tended²⁵ to render²⁶ his counsels²⁷ unpopular²⁸. Whether²⁹ he was connected³⁰ with the foreign³¹ invaders³² of his country, posterity³³ must decide³⁴; but all men of moderation³⁵ are convinced³⁶ that he was murdered by a band of ruffians³⁷. Indeed, a sentence³⁸ more unjust or more ferocious³⁹ is not to be found in the records⁴⁰ of history.

Louis XVI. was in the thirty-ninth year of his age⁴¹ when he, thus⁴², fell a victim⁴³ to the vile⁴⁴ passions of the vilest of men. He ascended⁴⁵ the throne of France May 10th, 1774; was driven⁴⁶ from the Tuilleries August 10th, 1792; imprisoned⁴⁷ on the 14th, and dethroned⁴⁸ the 22nd September following⁴⁹: having⁵⁰ reigned eighteen years and three months.

His queen, the once⁵¹ beautiful Marie Antoinette, was kept⁵² in prison for several months afterwards, where she⁵³ was not even allowed the consolation⁵⁴ of seeing⁵⁵ her children, who were also confined and treated⁵⁶ with marked⁵⁷ cruelty⁵⁸. At⁵⁹ length the unhappy queen shared⁶⁰ the fate of her royal husband — an insulting⁶¹ trial⁶² and decapitation⁶³.

The young Dauphin, the rightful⁶⁴ heir to the throne of France, soon followed his wretched⁶⁵ parents, though he perished⁶⁶ not by the guillotine, but from⁶⁷ the harsh⁶⁸ treatment⁶⁹ he met⁷⁰ with in prison; but the princess, after several years' incarceration⁷¹, was sent to Germany, in exchange⁷² for some French prisoners; and she afterwards married⁷³ the Duke d'Angoulême, with whom she returned⁷⁴

1. heißem Kalk. 2. Wache.
3. gestellt. 4. herum. 5. bis.
6. verzehrt. 7. so. 8. besaß.
9. richtigen Verstand. 10. abgestumpft.
11. frühzeitigen. 12. Genüsse.
13. *had a strong sense of justice*, besaß ein tiefes Gerechtigkeitsgefühl.
14. Menschenfreundlichkeit.
15. in zu hohem Grade. 16. Haupt.
17. Fehler. 18. Mangel an. 19. Festigkeit.
20. ohne Ehrgeiz. 21. überredet. 22. veranlaßt.
23. zu ändern. 24. Vorsätze.
25. *had tended*, diente. 26. zu machen.
27. Beschlüsse. 28. unbeliebt. 29. ob.
30. *was connected* in Verbindung stand oder nicht.
31. ausländischen. 32. Angreißern, Feinden.
33. Nachwelt. 34. entscheiden.
35. *men of moderation*, mäßigen Menschen.
36. überzeugt. 37. Mordlern, rohen Menschen.
38. Urtheilspruch. 39. grausamerer.
40. Urkunden. 41. Alters. 42. auf diese Weise.

43. *a victim*, als Opfer.
44. verabscheuungswürdigsten. 45. bestieg.
46. vertrieben. 47. ins Gefängnis geworfen.
48. entthront. 49. darauf.
50. *having reigned*, nachdem er — regiert hatte.
51. einst.
52. *kept in prison for*, gefangen gehalten.
53. *she was not even allowed*, sie nicht einmal — haben dürfte. 54. Trost.
55. sehen. 56. behandelt. 57. besonderer.
58. Grausamkeit. 59. *at length*, endlich.
60. *the unhappy queen shared*, wurde der unglücklichen Königin — zu Theil.
61. schimpfliches. 62. Verhör.
63. Enthauptung. 64. rechtmäßige.
65. unglücklichen. 66. fiel, kam — um.
67. durch. 68. harte. 69. Behandlung.
70. *he met with*, welche ihm zu Theil wurde.
71. Gefangenschaft.
72. *in exchange for*, im Austausch gegen.
73. heiratete. 74. zurückkehrte.

to her native¹ country on the restoration² of the Bourbons to the throne.

Unhappy land! did³ godless⁴ wisdom pour⁵
 Delightful liberty from shore⁶ to shore?
 Ah no! perverted⁶ Freedom curs'd⁷ the day
 With nameless deeds⁸ of horror⁹ and dismay¹⁰;
 Till heaven avenging¹¹ seiz'd¹² its ravish'd¹³ power,
 And crush'd¹⁴ an empire to decide¹⁵ her hour.

Maunders.

1. What did Louis XVI. say on the scaffold?

2. How was his dead body disposed of?

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 25.

3. What was the character of Louis?

4. When did he ascend the throne; and how long had he reigned?

5. What was the fate of the Queen? — the Dauphin? — and the Princess?

XXIII. Abdallah and Balsora.

The following story has been lately¹⁶ translated¹⁷ out of an Arabian manuscript, which I think has very¹⁸ much the turn¹⁹ of an oriental tale²⁰; and as it has never been before printed²¹, I question²² not that it will be highly²³ acceptable²⁴ to my readers.

The name of Helim is still²⁵ famous through²⁶ all the eastern²⁷ parts of the world. He is called²⁸ among the Persians, even²⁹ to this day, Helim, the great physician. He was acquainted³⁰ with all the powers³¹ of simples³², understood³³ all the influences³⁴ of the stars, and knew³⁵ the secrets³⁶ that were engraved³⁷ on the seal³⁸ of Solomon the son of David. Helim was also governor of the Black Palace, and chief³⁹ of the physicians to⁴⁰ Allnareschin, the great king of Persia.

Allnareschin was the most dreadful⁴¹ tyrant that ever reigned⁴² in this country. He was of a⁴³ fearful, suspicious⁴⁴, and cruel⁴⁵ nature, having⁴⁶ put to death upon very slight jealousies⁴⁷ and surmises⁴⁸ five-and-thirty of his queens, and above⁴⁹ twenty sons whom he suspected⁵⁰ to have⁵¹ conspired⁵² against his life. Being⁵³ at length wearied⁵⁴ with the exercise⁵⁵ of so many cruelties in his own family, and fearing⁵⁶ lest the whole race⁵⁶ of caliphs should be entirely lost⁵⁷, he one day sent for⁵⁸ Helim, and spoke to him

1. Vaterland. 2. Wiederherstellung, Restauration. 3. hat — verbreitet. 4. gottlose. 5. Ufer. 6. verkehrte. 7. brachte, durch — einen Fluch auf. 8. Thaten. 9. des Schreckens. 10. Bangigkeit. 11. bis der rächende Himmel. 12. bemächtigte sich. 13. beraubte. 14. zermalmte. 15. um sein Schicksal zu entscheiden. 16. neulich. 17. übersetzt. 18. very much, sehr. 19. Anstrich. 20. Erzählung. 21. zuvor im Druck erschienen ist. 22. so zweifelse. 23. sehr. 24. angenehm. 25. immer noch. 26. in. 27. östlichen. 28. genannt. 29. bis. 30. was acquainted with, kannte. 31. Wirkung. 32. Kräuter. 33. wußte. 34. Einfluß. 35. eingeweiht. 36. Geheimnisse. 37. eingravirt.

38. Siegel. 39. Chef der Aerzte. 40. des (s. Reg. VIII. S. 413 d. Grammatik). 41. schrecklichste. 42. regierte. 43. of a fearful, fürchtbarer. 44. argwöhnischer. 45. grausamer. 46. having put to death upon every slight, und bei sehr geringen — hinrichten ließ. 47. Eifersucht. 48. Vermuthungen. 49. mehr als. 50. in Verdacht hatte. 51. to have, daß sie — hätten (s. Reg. XLIV. S. 516 d. Grammatik). 52. sich verschworen. 53. da er endlich — war. 54. müde. 55. Ausübung. 56. fearing, &c., da er befürchtete, daß das ganze Geschlecht (Reg. LX. S. 525 der Gramm.). 57. zu Grunde ginge. 58. nach, od. ließ Helim holen.

after¹ this manner: "Helim," said he, "I have long admired² thy great wisdom and retired³ way of living. I shall now show⁴ thee the entire confidence⁵ which I place⁶ in thee. I have only two sons remaining⁷, who are as⁸ yet but infants⁸. It is my design⁹ that thou take¹⁰ them home¹¹ with thee, and educate¹² them as thy own. Train¹³ them up in the humble¹⁴, unambitious¹⁵ pursuits¹⁶ of knowledge¹⁷. By¹⁸ this means shall the line¹⁹ of caliphs be preserved²⁰, and my children succeed²¹ after me, without aspiring²² to my throne whilst²³ I am yet²⁴ alive." "The words of my lord²⁵ the king shall be obeyed²⁶," said Helim; after which he bowed²⁷ and went²⁸ out of the king's presence. He then received²⁹ his children into his own house, and from that time bred³⁰ them up with him in the studies of knowledge and virtue. The young princes loved and respected³¹ Helim as their father, and made such improvements³² under him, that by³³ the age of one-and-twenty, they were instructed³⁴ in all the learning³⁵ of the East³⁶. The name of the elder was Ibrahim, and of the younger Abdallah. They lived together in such a perfect³⁷ friendship, that to this day it is said of intimate³⁸ friends, that they live together like³⁹ Ibrahim and Abdallah. Helim had an only child, who⁴⁰ was a girl of⁴¹ a fine soul and a most beautiful⁴² person. Her father omitted⁴³ nothing in her education that might⁴⁴ make her the most accomplished⁴⁵ woman of her age⁴⁶. As⁴⁷ the young princes were in⁴⁸ a manner excluded⁴⁹ from the rest of the world, they frequently conversed⁵⁰ with this lovely⁵¹ virgin, who had been brought⁵² up by her father in the same course⁵³ of knowledge and of virtue. Abdallah whose mind⁵⁴ was of a softer⁵⁵ turn than that of his brother, grew⁵⁶ by⁵⁷ degrees so enamoured⁵⁸ of⁵⁹ her conversation, that he did⁶⁰ not think he lived⁶⁰, when he was not in⁶¹ company with his dear Balsora, for⁶² that was the name of the maid. The fame⁶³ of her beauty was so great that at length it⁶⁴ came to the ears of the king, who, pretending⁶⁵ to visit the young princes his sons, demanded⁶⁶ of Helim the sight⁶⁷ of Balsora, his fair daughter. The king was so inflamed⁶⁸ with her beauty and behaviour⁶⁹, that he sent

1. *after this manner*, folgender Maßen.
 2. bewundert.
 3. *retired way of life*, zurückgezogene Lebensweise. 4. zeigen. 5. Vertrauen. 6. setze.
 7. noch übrig. 8. immer noch nur Kinder.
 9. Wunsch. 10. nimmest. 11. nach Hause.
 12. erziehe. 13. *train them up*, bilde ihren Geist.
 14. demüthigen. 15. unehrgeizigen.
 16. Streben nach. 17. Kenntnissen.
 18. *by this means*, hierdurch.
 19. das Geschlecht. 20. erhalten.
 21. *succeed after me*, mir nachfolgen.
 22. nach — trachten. 23. während dem.
 24. *I am yet alive*, ich noch am Leben bin.
 25. Herrn. 26. befolgt werden. 27. sich verbeugte.
 28. *went out of the king's presence*, empfahl sich.
 29. nahm — auf.
 30. *bred them up with him*, erzog er sie.
 31. achteten. 32. Fortschritte.
 33. *by the age of*, als sie das Alter von — erreicht hatten. 34. unterrichtet.

35. Gelehrsamkeit. 36. Morgenlandes.
 37. vollkommenen. 38. intimen. 39. wie.
 40. *who was a girl*, ein Mädchen.
 41. *of a fine soul*, welche eine reine Seele besaß.
 42. wunderschön war.
 43. versäumte. 44. beitragen konnte. 45. gebildetsten.
 46. Zeitalters. 47. da.
 48. *in a manner*, einigermaßen.
 49. ausgeschlossen. 50. unterhielten sie sich.
 51. liebreichen. 52. *brought* up*, erzogen.
 53. *course of knowledge*, Streben nach Kenntnissen. 54. Geist, Gemüth.
 55. *of a softer turn*, empfänglicher Art.
 56. wurde. 57. *by degrees*, nach und nach.
 58. gefesselt. 59. durch, von.
 60. *did not, &c.*, glaubte nicht zu leben.
 61. *in company with*, in der Gesellschaft.
 62. denn. 63. Ruhm. 64. er — gelangte.
 65. unter dem Vorwand. 66. verlangte.
 67. *the sight of*, daß er ihn — sehen lasse.
 68. entflammt von. 69. Benehmen.

for¹ Helim the next morning, and told him it was now his design² to recompense³ him for all his faithful services⁴; and that, in⁵ order to do it, he intended to make his daughter queen of Persia. Helim knew⁶ very well the fate⁷ of all those unhappy women who had thus⁸ been advanced, and could⁹ not but be privy to the secret¹⁰ love which Abdallah bore¹¹ his daughter. "Far¹² be it," says he, "from the king of Persia to debase¹³ the dignity of the caliphs, and join¹⁴ himself in marriage¹⁵ with the daughter of his physician¹⁶." The king, however¹⁷, was so impatient¹⁸ for¹⁹ such a bride, that, without²⁰ hearing any²¹ excuses, he immediately ordered²² Balsora to be sent for²² into²³ his presence, keeping²⁴ the father with²⁵ him, in²⁶ order to make her sensible of the honor²⁶ which he designed²⁷ her. Balsora, who was too modest²⁸ and humble²⁹ to think³⁰ that her beauty had made such an impression³¹ on the king, was a few moments after³² brought into his presence, as³³ he had commanded.

She appeared³⁴ in the king's eye³⁵ as one of the virgins³⁶ of Paradise; but, upon³⁷ hearing the honor which he intended her, she fainted³⁸ away, and fell down as³⁹ dead at⁴⁰ his feet. Helim wept⁴¹, and, after having recovered⁴² her out⁴³ of the trance⁴⁴ into which she was fallen, represented⁴⁵ to the king, that so unexpected an honor was too great to have⁴⁶ been communicated to her all⁴⁷ at once, but that, if he⁴⁸ pleased, he would himself prepare⁴⁹ her for⁵⁰ it. The king bid⁵¹ him take⁵² his own way and dismissed⁵³ him. Balsora was conveyed⁵⁴ again to her father's house, where the thoughts⁵⁵ of Abdallah renewed⁵⁶ her affliction⁵⁷ every moment, insomuch⁵⁸ that at length she fell into a raging⁵⁹ fever. The king was informed of her condition⁶⁰ by those that saw her. Helim, finding no other means⁶¹ of extricating⁶² her from the difficulties she⁶³ was in, after having composed⁶⁴ her mind, and made her acquainted⁶⁵ with his intentions⁶⁶, gave her a certain potion⁶⁷ which he knew would lay⁶⁸ her asleep for⁶⁹ many hours, and afterwards,

1. nach. 2. Absicht. 3. zu belohnen.
4. treuen Dienste.
5. in order to do it, um dieses zu thun.
6. wußte. 7. Schicksal.
8. had thus been advanced, so erhöht worden waren.
9. could not but be privy to, mußte notwendig wissen von (Reg. VI. h. S. 560 d. Gramm.).
10. geheimen. 11. für — hegte. 12. fern.
13. die Würde — zu erniedrigen.
14. sich zu verbinden. 15. Ehe. 16. Arztes.
17. jedoch. 18. ungeduldig. 19. um.
20. without hearing, ohne — anzuhören.
21. any excuses, irgend eine Entschuldigung.
22. ordered B. to sent for, befahl, daß man Balsora sogleich hole.
23. into his presence, und sie in seine Gegenwart bringe.
24. er befielt. 25. with him, bei sich.
26. in order, &c., damit er ihr die Ehre erkläre, welche.
27. designed her, er ihr zugebacht habe.
28. bescheiden. 29. demütig.
30. to think, als daß sie denken könnte. (s. Reg. XLIV. S. 516 d. Grammatik).

31. Eindruck auf. 32. nachher.
33. as he, wie er es. 34. schien.
35. (ei) Augen. 36. Jungfrauen.
37. upon hearing, als sie von — hörte.
38. fainted away, wurde — ohnmächtig. 39. wie.
40. at his feet, ihm zu Füßen. 41. weinte.*
42. after, &c., nachdem er sie — zu sich gebracht hatte. 43. aus.
44. Ohnmacht (Scheintod). 45. erklärte er.
46. to have been communicated to her, als daß man es ihr — mittheilen dürfte.
47. all at once, auf einem Mal.
48. es ihm gefiele. 49. vorbereiten.
50. darauf. 51. befahl, hieß.
52. take his own way, zu thun, wie es ihm gefiele.
53. entließ. 54. hingebracht.
55. das Denken an. 56. erneuerte.
57. Betrübnis. 58. in so hohem Grade.
59. hitziges. 60. Zustand. 61. Mittel.
62. herauszuziehen.
63. she was in, worin sie sich befand.
64. beruhigt. 65. bekannt. 66. Absichten.
67. Trank, von dem er wußte, daß er.
68. lay asleep, im Schlaf versetzten.
69. mehrere Stunden lang — und nachher.

in all¹ the seeming² distress³ of a disconsolate⁴ father informed⁵ the king she was dead. The king who never let any sentiments⁶ of humanity⁷ come too near his heart, did not much trouble⁸ himself about⁹ the matter¹⁰: however, for¹¹ his own¹² reputation, he told the father that, since¹³ it was kown¹⁴ through the empire¹⁵, that Balsora had died at a time when¹⁶ he designed her for his bride, it¹⁷ was his intention¹⁸ that she should be honored as such¹⁹ after her death; that her body should be laid²⁰ in the Black Palace, among those²¹ of his deceased²² queens.

In²³ the mean time, Abdallah, who had heard²⁴ of the king's design²⁵, was not less afflicted²⁶ than his beloved Balsora. As²⁷ for the several circumstances of his distress²⁷, as²⁸ also how²⁹ the king was informed³⁰ of an irrecoverable³¹ distemper³² into³³ which he was fallen³⁴, they³⁵ are to be found at length³⁵ in the history of Helim; it shall suffice³⁶ to acquaint³⁷ my reader, that Helim, some days after the supposed³⁸ death of his daughter, gave the prince a potion³⁹ of the same nature⁴⁰ with⁴¹ that which had⁴² laid asleep Balsora.

It is the custom⁴³ among⁴⁴ the Persians to convey⁴⁵, in⁴⁶ a private manner, the bodies of all the royal family, a little⁴⁷ after their death, into the Black Palace, which is the repository⁴⁸ of all who are descended⁴⁹ from the caliphs, or any⁵⁰ way allied to them. The chief⁵¹ physician is always governor of the Black Palace, it⁵² being his office to embalm⁵³ and preserve⁵⁴ the royal family after they are dead, as⁵⁵ well as to⁵⁶ take care of them while⁵⁷ they are⁵⁸ yet living. The Black Palace is⁵⁹ so called⁶⁰ from the colour of the building⁶¹, which is all⁶² of the finest⁶³ polished⁶⁴ black marble. There⁶⁵ are always burning in it five thousand everlasting⁶⁶ lamps. It has also a hundred folding⁶⁷ doors of ebony⁶⁸, which are each of them watched⁶⁹ day and night by a hundred Negroes, who are⁷⁰ to take care that nobody enters besides⁷¹ the governor.

Helim, after having conveyed⁷² the body of his daughter into this repository⁴⁸, and at the appointed⁷³ time received⁷⁴ her out of the sleep into which she was fallen, took⁷⁵ care, some time after, to

1. mit allem. 2. scheinbaren. 3. Kummer.
4. trostlosen. 5. benachrichtigt — daß.
6. irgend ein Gefühl. 7. Menschlichkeit.
8. bekümmerte sich nicht viel. 9. um.
10. Sache. 11. wegen. 12. eigenen.
13. da. 14. bekannt. 15. das Reich. 16. als.
17. *it was*, so war es. 18. Wille. 19. solche.
20. beigelegt. 21. jene. 22. verstorbenen.
23. *In the mean time*, mittlerweile.
24. gehört. 25. Absicht. 26. betrübt.
27. *As for the several circumstances of his distress*, was die verschiedenen Umstände seiner Betrübnis anbelangt.
28. *as also*, so wie auch. 29. daß.
30. benachrichtigt. 31. unheilbaren. 32. Krankheit.
33. *into which*, womit. 34. behaftet sei.
35. so sind sie ausführlich — zu finden.
36. genügen. 37. zu benachrichtigen.
38. vermuthlichen. 39. Trank. 40. Art.
41. wie der. 42. *had laid asleep*, in Schlaf versetzt hatte. 43. Gebrauch.

44. bei. 45. hintragen zu lassen.
46. *in a private manner*, heimlich.
47. *a little after*, kurz nach.
48. Aufbewahrungsort. 49. abstammen.
50. *any way allied to*, irgend wie mit — verwandt. 51. Oberarzt.
52. *it being*, da es — ist. 53. einzubalsamieren.
54. aufzubewahren. 55. *as, &c.*, sowohl als auch.
56. *to take care of them*, für ihre Gesundheit Sorge zu tragen.
57. während dem.
58. *are yet living*, noch am Leben sind.
59. wird. 60. genannt. 61. Gebäudes.
62. ganz. 63. schönsten. 64. polierten.
65. *there are always burning in it*, es brennen stets darin. 66. immerwährenden.
67. Flügelthüre. 68. Ebenholz. 69. bewacht.
70. *are to take care*, Sorge tragen müssen.
71. ausser. 72. hingebracht hatte.
73. bestimmen. 74. sie aus — in Empfang genommen hatte. 75. trug Sorge.

bring that¹ of Abdallah into the same place. Balsora watched over² him till³ such time as the dose⁴ he had taken⁵ had lost its effect⁶. Abdallah was not acquainted⁷ with Helim's design when he gave him the sleepy⁸ potion. It is impossible to describe the surprise, the joy, the transport⁹ he¹⁰ was in, at¹¹ his first awaking. He fancied¹² himself in the retirement¹³ of the blessed¹⁴, and that the spirit¹⁵ of his dear Balsora, who, he thought, was just¹⁶ gone before him, was the first who came to congratulate¹⁷ him on his arrival. She soon informed him of the place¹⁸ he was in¹⁹, which, notwithstanding²⁰ all its²¹ horrors, appeared to him more sweet²² than the bower²³ of Mahomet in the company of his Balsora.

Helim, who²⁴ was supposed to be taken up in the embalming of the bodies²⁴, visited the place very frequently²⁵. His greatest perplexity²⁶ was how²⁷ to get the lovers out of it, the gates²⁸ being²⁹ watched in³⁰ such a manner as I have before³¹ related³². This consideration³³ did not disturb³⁴ the two interred³⁵ lovers. At length Helim bethought³⁶ himself, that the first day of the full moon of the month Tizpa was near at³⁷ hand. Now³⁸ it is a received³⁹ tradition among the Persians, that the souls of those of the royal family who are in⁴⁰ a state of bliss, do, on the first full moon after their decease⁴¹, pass⁴² through the eastern gate of the Black Palace, which is therefore⁴³ called⁴⁴ the gate of Paradise, in⁴⁵ order to take their flight⁴⁶ for⁴⁷ that happy place. Helim, therefore, having⁴⁸ made due preparations⁴⁹ for this night, dressed⁵⁰ each of the lovers in a robe⁵¹ of azure⁵² silk, wrought⁵³ in the finest looms⁵⁴ of Persia, with a long train⁵⁵ of linen, whiter than snow, that floated⁵⁶ on the ground behind them. Upon⁵⁷ Abdallah's head he fixed⁵⁸ a wreath⁵⁹ of green myrtle, and on Balsora's a garland⁶⁰ of the freshest roses. Their garments⁶¹ were scented⁶² with the richest perfumes of Arabia. Having thus⁶³ prepared every thing, the full moon was⁶⁴ no sooner up, and shining⁶⁵ in all its brightness⁶⁶, than⁶⁷ he privately⁶⁸ opened the gate of Paradise, and shut⁶⁹ it after the same manner as⁷⁰ soon as they had passed through it⁷¹. The band of Negroes, who were posted⁷² at a little distance⁷³ from the gate, seeing⁷⁴ two such

1. den (Körper) des Abdallah.
2. watched over him, bewachte ihn.
3. till such time as, bis zur Zeit, wo.
4. Trank, welchen.
5. eingenommen. 6. Wirkung. 7. vertraut.
8. Schlaftrunk. 9. Entzücken.
10. he was in, welche er empfand.
11. at his first awaking, als er aufwachte.
12. bildete er sich ein, daß er — sei.
13. Aufenthalt. 14. Seligen.
15. Geist. 16. so eben.
17. to congratulate him &c., ihm zu seiner Ankunft zu gratuliren, bewillkommen.
18. Orte. 19. worin. 20. ungeachtet.
21. its horrors, dessen Schrecken.
22. lieblicher, entzückender. 23. Laube.
24. who was supposed, &c., von dem man glaubte, daß er mit dem Einbalsamiren der Körper beschäftigt sei. 25. häufig. 26. Verlegenheit.
27. how to get the lovers out of it, wie er die Liebenden herausbringen sollte.
28. Thore. 29. da — wurden.

30. in such a manner as, auf die Weise wie.
31. schon. 32. erzählt. 33. Erwägung (wie man die Liebenden herausbringen sollte).
34. bekümmerte. 35. begrabenen Liebenden.
36. bedachte sich. 37. near at hand, nahe sei.
38. nun. 39. allgemein geglaubte Sage.
40. are in a state of bliss, do, selig sind.
41. Todte. 42. passiren. 43. daher.
44. genannt. 45. in order, um. 46. Flug.
47. nach. 48. nachdem er — hatte.
49. gebührenden Vorbereitungen. 50. kleidete.
51. Kleid. 52. himmelblauer Seide.
53. gewoben. 54. Webstühlen. 55. Schleppe.
56. schwebte, flatterte. 57. auf. 58. setzte.
59. Kranz. 60. Guirlande. 61. Kleider.
62. parfümirt. 63. so.
64. was no sooner up, so war — nicht so bald aufgegangen. 65. schien.
66. Glanz, Pracht. 67. als. 68. heimlich.
69. machte es zu. 70. as soon as, so bald.
71. dasselbe. 72. aufgestellt, postirt.
73. Entfernung. 74. als sie sahen.

beautiful apparitions¹, that showed² themselves to advantage³ by the light of the full moon, and being ravished⁴ by the odour⁵ that flowed⁶ from their garments, immediately concluded⁷ them to be the ghosts of the two persons lately⁸ deceased. They fell upon⁹ their faces as they passed through the¹⁰ midst of them, and continued¹¹ prostrate¹² on the earth until¹³ such time as they were out¹⁴ of sight. They reported¹⁵ the next day what they had seen, but this was looked¹⁶ upon by the king himself as the compliment that was usually paid¹⁷ to any of the deceased¹⁸ of the family. Helim had placed¹⁹ two of his own mules at²⁰ about a mile's²¹ distance²² from the Black Temple, on the spot²³ which²⁴ they had agreed²⁵ upon for their rendezvous. Here he met²⁶ them, and conducted²⁷ them to one of his own houses, which was²⁸ seated on mount²⁹ Khacan. The air of this mountain was so very healthful³⁰ that Helim had formerly³¹ transported³² the king thither³³, in order to recover³⁴ him out³⁵ of a long fit³⁶ of sickness, which succeeded³⁷ so well, that the King made him a³⁸ present of the whole mountain, with a beautiful house and fine gardens that were on the top of it³⁹. In this retirement⁴⁰ lived Abdallah and Balsora. They were so fraught⁴¹ with all kinds of knowledge, and possessed⁴² of so constant⁴³ and mutual⁴⁴ a passion⁴⁵ for each other, that their solitude never⁴⁶ lay heavy on them. Abdallah applied⁴⁷ himself to those⁴⁸ arts which were agreeable⁴⁹ to his manner⁴⁹ of living and the situation⁵⁰ of the place, insomuch⁵¹ that in a few years, he converted⁵² the whole mountain into a kind⁵³ of garden, and covered⁵⁴ every part of it with plantations⁵⁵ or spots⁵⁶ of flowers. Helim was too good a father to let⁵⁷ him want for any thing that might conduce⁵⁸ to make his retirement pleasant.

In⁵⁹ about ten years after their abode in this place⁵⁹, the old King died, and was⁶⁰ succeeded by his son Ibrahim, who, upon⁶¹ the supposed death of his brother, had been called⁶² to court, and entertained⁶³ there as heir to the Persian empire. Though he was some years inconsolable⁶⁴ for⁶⁵ the death of his brother, Helim durst⁶⁶ not trust⁶⁷ him with the secret, which he knew⁶⁸

1. Erscheinungen.
2. sich — zeigten, ausnahmen.
3. vortheilhaft. 4. da sie entzückt waren.
5. Wohlgeruch. 6. ausduftete.
7. *concluded them to be*, beschlossen sie, daß es — seien. 8. neulich. 9. auf.
10. *through the midst of them*, durch ihre Mitte.
11. blieben. 12. liegen.
13. *until such time as*, bis.
14. aus ihrem Gesichtskreis. 15. berichteten.
16. *looked upon by*, von — angesehen.
17. gezollt, gemacht. 18. Verstorbenen. 19. gestellt.
20. *at about*, ungefähr.
21. eine Meile.
22. entfernt. 23. Platz.
24. *upon which*, vorüber.
25. sich verabredet. 26. begegnete.
27. führte. 28. *was seated*, lag. 29. Berge.
30. gesund. 31. früher. 32. brachte.
33. dorthin. 34. damit er sich — erhole.
35. *out of*, von. 36. *fit of sickness*, Krankheit.
37. gelang. 38. *a present of*, zum Geschenk.

39. desselben. 40. Zurückgezogenheit.
41. durchdrungen von. 42. hegten eine.
43. beständige. 44. gegenseitige. 45. Liebe.
46. *never lay heavy on them*, ihnen nie langweilig wurde.
47. widmete sich. 48. denjenigen Künsten.
49. *manner of living*, Lebensweise angemessen.
50. Lage. 51. so sehr.
52. verwandelte. 53. Art.
54. bedeckte. 55. Baumpflanzungen.
56. *spots of flowers*, Blumenbeeten.
57. *to let him want for*, als daß er ihn an irgend etwas Mangel leiden ließe.
58. beitragen könnte.
59. *in about 10 years after their abode*, nachdem sie ungefähr 10 Jahre an diesem Orte gewohnt hatten.
60. *was succeeded by*, wurde auf dem Throne gefolgt von. 61. nach. 62. berufen.
63. behandelt, angesehen. 64. untröstlich.
65. wegen. 66. dürfte. 67. anvertrauen.
68. wovon er wußte.

would have fatal¹ consequences², should it by³ any means come to the knowledge of the old king. Ibrahim was no⁴ sooner mount- ed⁵ to the throne, than Helim sought⁶ after a proper⁷ opportunity of making a discovery⁸ to him, which he knew would be very agreeable to so good natured⁹ and generous a prince. It so hap- pened¹⁰, that before Helim found such an opportunity as he desired, the new king, Ibrahim, having¹¹ been separated from his company in¹² a chase, and almost fainting¹³ with¹⁴ heat and thirst, saw¹⁵ himself at¹⁶ the foot of mount Khacan. He immediately ascended¹⁷ the hill, and coming¹⁸ to Helim's house, demanded some refresh- ments¹⁹. Helim was very²⁰ luckily there at that time, and, after²¹ having set²² before the king the choicest²³ of wines and fruits, find- ing²⁴ him wonderfully pleased²⁵ with so seasonable²⁶ a treat²⁷, told²⁸ him that the best part of his entertainment²⁹ was³⁰ to come; upon³¹ which he opened³² to him the whole history of what³³ had passed³⁴. The king was at³⁵ once astonished and transported³⁶ at so strange a relation³⁷, and seeing his brother enter³⁸ the room with Balsora in³⁹ his hand, he leaped⁴⁰ off from the sofa on which he sat, and cried⁴¹ out, "It is he! it is my Abdallah!" Having said⁴² this, he fell upon his neck and wept⁴³. The whole company for⁴⁴ some time remained⁴⁵ silent, and shedding⁴⁶ tears of joy⁴⁷. The king at length⁴⁸, having⁴⁹ kindly reproached⁵⁰ Helim for⁵¹ having so long deprived⁵² him of⁵³ such a brother, embraced⁵⁴ Balsora with the greatest tenderness⁵⁵, and told her that now⁵⁶ she should be queen indeed⁵⁷; for⁵⁸ that he would immediately make his brother king of all the conquered⁵⁹ nations on the other⁶⁰ side of the Tigris. He easily discovered⁶¹ in the eyes of our two lovers, that instead⁶² of being⁶³ transported⁶⁴ with the offer⁶⁵, they preferred⁶⁶ their present retirement to empire⁶⁷. At⁶⁸ their request⁶⁹, therefore, he changed⁷⁰ his intentions⁷¹, and made them a present⁷² of all the open⁷³ country as⁷⁴ far as they could see from the top⁷⁵ of mount Khacan. Abdallah continued⁷⁶ to extend⁷⁷ his former improvements⁷⁸, beautified⁷⁹ this whole prospect⁸⁰ with groves⁸¹ and fountains, gardens und seats⁸² of pleasure, until⁸³ it became⁸⁴ the most deli-

1. daß es verderbliche. 2. Folgen.
3. *by any means come*, auf irgend eine Weise — gelangen.
4. *was no sooner*, hatte nicht eher.
5. bestiegen. 6. suchte.*
7. passende. 8. Entdeckung, Mittheilung.
9. gutmüthigen. 10. es traf sich.
11. da er — getrennt wurde.
12. *in a chase*, auf der Jagd.
13. ohnmächtig. 14. vor. 15. befand er sich.
16. *at the*, am. 17. bestieg.
18. als er an — kam. 19. Erfrischungen.
20. *very luckily*, glücklicherweise.
21. *after having*, nachdem er — hatte.
22. *set before*, vorgelegt. 23. ausgesuchte.
24. da er — fand. 25. sehr vergnügt
26. zeitgemäße. 27. Erquickung. 28. sagte.*
29. Bewirtung.
30. noch — sollte (s. Reg. II S. 477 d. Gramm.)
31. *upon which*, worauf.
32. mittheilte. 33. dem was.

34. vorgefallen war. 35. *at once*, zugleich.
36. entzückt über. 37. Mittheilung.
38. eintreten. 39. an. 40. sprang — auf.
41. rief aus. 42. gesagt.* 43. weinte.*
44. *for some time*, einige Zeit lang. 45. blieb.
46. vergossen. 47. Freude. 48. endlich.
49. nachdem er S. gutmüthig — gemacht hatte.
50. Vorwürfe. 51. *for having*, weil er — hatte.
52. beraubt. 53. *of such a*, eines solchen.
54. umarmte. 55. Zärtlichkeit. 56. jetzt.
57. in der That. 58. *for that*, denn.
59. eroberten. 60. jenseits. 61. entdeckte.
62. anstatt. 63. zu sein. 64. entzückt von.
65. Anerbieten. 66. zogen — vor.
67. der Herrschaft. 68. auf. 69. Bitte.
70. änderte. 71. Absicht. 72. ein Geschenk.
73. offene Land. 74. *as far as*, so weit.
75. Gipfel. 76. fuhr fort. 77. auszubehnen.
78. Verbesserungen. 79. verschönernte.
80. Aussicht. 81. Lustwäldern.
82. Lustsitze. 83. bis. 84. wurde.

cious¹ spot² of ground within³ the whole empire, and is therefore called⁴ the garden of Persia. This caliph Ibrahim, after a long and happy⁵ reign, died without children, and was succeeded⁶ by Abdallah, a son of Abdallah and Balsora. This was the king Abdallah who afterwards⁷ fixed⁸ the imperial⁹ residence upon mount Khacan, which continues¹⁰ at¹¹ this time to be the favourite¹² palace of the Persian empire.

Addison.

1. Where is the Name of Helim famous? — 2. What is he called among the Persians?
3. With what was he acquainted? — 4. What was Allnareschin?
5. How many of his queens had he put to death, and why?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 27.

6. What did Allnareschin say to Helim? — 7. What was Helim's reply?
8. Whom did the young princes love; — what were their names?
9. What is said of intimate friends?
10. What had Helim, and what was omitted in her education?
11. Of whose conversation did Abdallah become enamoured?
12. What came to the ears of the king?
13. With what was the king inflamed, and what did he do?

NB. Obige 8 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 28.

14. What did Helim well know, and what did he say to the king?
15. For what was the king impatient, and what did he do?
16. What did Balsora do as she heard of the honor which the king intended her?
17. What did Helim do, and what did he represent to the king?
18. Where was Balsora conveyed, and what happened to her?
19. What did Helim give his daughter, and of what did he inform the king?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 29.

20. How did the king act? — 21. Where was the body of Balsora to be laid?
22. At what was Abdallah afflicted, and what did Helim give him?
23. What is the custom among the Persians?
24. Who is governor of the Black palace, and what is his business?
25. Why is it called the Black palace? — How many lamps burn in it?
- How many doors has it? — By whom are the doors watched?
26. Where was the body of Abdallah conveyed?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 30.

27. Where did Abdallah fancy he was, when he awoke from his sleep?
28. What was Helim's greatest perplexity? — 29. What tradition is among the Persians?
30. How did Helim dress the lovers? — 31. What did he put on Abdallah's head?
32. When the Negroes saw them, whom did they conclude them to be?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 31.

33. As Abdallah and Balsora passed through the Negroes, what did they do?
34. What did they report the next day? — 35. What had Helim placed?
36. Where did he conduct Abdallah and Balsora?
37. What did Abdallah apply himself to? — 38. What happened about ten years after?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 32.

39. What did Helim seek after?
40. What happened before Helim found the opportunity he desired?
41. What did Helim tell the king?
42. How did the king act on hearing the strange relation?
43. After the king had reproached Helim, what did he do? — 44. What present did the king make?
45. What did Abdallah continue to do?

NB. Obige 8 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 33.

46. By whom was Caliph Ibrahim succeeded?

1. schönste. 2. spot of ground, Platz, Ort.
3. within the, im. 4. genannt. 5. Regierung.
6. auf dem Throne gefolgt. 7. später.

8. verlegte. 9. kaiserliche. 10. fortführt.
11. at this time, bis heutigen Tages.
12. Liebings.

XXIV. The Whistle¹ (huiß'l).A True Story — Written² to his Nephew by Dr. Franklin.

When I was child, at³ seven years of age⁴, my friends on⁵ a holiday⁵ filled my pockets⁶ with coppers⁷. I went⁸ directly⁹ to a shop where they¹⁰ sold¹¹ toys for children: and, being¹² charmed¹³ with¹⁴ the sound¹⁵ of a *whistle*, that I met¹⁶ by¹⁷ the way in the hands of another boy, I voluntarily¹⁸ offered¹⁹ him all my money for one. I then came home²⁰, and went whistling²¹ all over²² the house, much pleased²³ with my *whistle*, but disturbing²⁴ the whole family. My brothers, and sisters, and cousins, understanding²⁵ the bargain²⁶ I had made, told²⁷ me I had givin²⁸ four times as²⁹ much for³⁰ it as it was worth. This put³¹ me in mind what³² good things I might have bought³³ with the rest of the money; and they laughed³⁴ at³⁵ me so much for³⁶ my folly³⁷, that I cried³⁸ with vexation³⁹, and the reflection⁴⁰ gave me more chagrin⁴¹ than the *whistle* gave me pleasure.

This, however, was afterwards of use⁴² to me, the impression continuing⁴³ on my mind⁴⁴; so that often⁴⁵ when I was tempted⁴⁶ to buy some⁴⁷ unnecessary thing, I said to myself, *Don't⁴⁸ give too much for the whistle*; and so I saved⁴⁹ my money.

As I grew⁵⁰ up, came⁵¹ into the world, and observed⁵² the actions⁵³ of men, I thought⁵⁴ I met⁵⁵ with many, very many, who gave too much for their *whistle*.

When I saw any one too ambitious of⁵⁶ court favours⁵⁷, sacrificing⁵⁸ his time in attendance⁵⁹ on levees⁶⁰, his repose⁶¹, his liberty, his virtue, and perhaps⁶² his friends, to attain it⁶³, I have said to myself; *This man gives too much for his whistle*.

When I saw another full of popularity⁶⁴, constantly⁶⁵ employing⁶⁶ himself in political bustles⁶⁷, neglecting⁶⁸ his own affairs⁶⁹, and ruining⁷⁰ them by that neglect; *He pays indeed*, say I, *too much for his whistle*.

If I knew⁷¹ a miser⁷² who gave⁷³ up every kind⁷⁴ of comfortable living⁷⁵, all the pleasures of doing⁷⁶ good to others, all the

1. Pfeife (ein kleines Blas-Verzeug).
2. geschrieben.* 3. von. 4. alt.
5. an einem Feiertag. 6. Taschen.
7. Kupfergeld. 8. ging.* 9. sogleich nach.
10. man. 11. sold toys, Spielzeug — verkaufte.
12. da ich — wurde. 13. entzückt.
14. von. 15. Klang, Ton. 16. traf,* sah.
17. auf dem Wege. 18. freiwillig.
19. bot — an. 20. nach Hause. 21. pfeifend.
22. all over the, durch das ganze.
23. vergnügt. 24. störend.
25. welche vernahmen. 26. Kauf, welchen.
27. sagten mir, daß.
28. gegeben. 29. as much, so viel. 30. dafür.
31. put me in mind, erinnerte mich daran.
32. was für (s. Anm. 40, S. 474 d. Gramm.).
33. kaufen (siehe § 125, S. 246 der Gramm.).
34. lachten.
35. at me so much, mich so sehr aus.
36. wegen meiner. 37. Thorheit.

38. weinte vor. 39. Aerger. 40. Nachdenken.
41. Verdruß. 42. von Nutzen.
43. weil — blieb. 44. Geist. 45. öfters.
46. in Versuchung kam. 47. irgend etwas.
48. gib nicht. 49. ersparte.
50. aufwuchs. 51. in — kam.
52. beobachtete. 53. Handlungen.
54. dachte*, daß. 55. met with, traf.
56. ehrgeizig nach. 57. Gunst.
58. der — aufopferte.
59. Aufwartungen bei. 60. Morgen-Empfang.
61. Ruhe. 62. vielleicht.
63. um sie (die Gunst) zu erhalten.
64. Volksgunst. 65. beständig.
66. beschäftigend. 67. Treiben.
68. vernachlässigend. 69. Angelegenheiten.
70. ruinierend. 71. kannte.*
72. Geizhals. 73. aufopferte.
74. jede Art. 75. angenehmen Lebens.
76. of doing good to, Gutes zu thun.

esteem¹ of his fellow² citizens², and the joys of benevolent³ friendship, for⁴ the sake of accumulating⁵ wealth; *Poor man*, say I, *you do indeed⁶ pay too dear for your whistle.*

When I meet⁷ a man⁸ of pleasure, sacrificing⁹ every laudable¹⁰ improvement¹¹ of the mind, or¹² of his fortune, to mere¹³ corporeal¹⁴ sensations¹⁵; *Mistaken¹⁶ man*, say I, *you are providing¹⁷ pain for yourself instead¹⁸ of pleasure: you give too much for your whistle.*

If I see one fond¹⁹ of fine clothes²⁰, fine furniture²¹, fine equipages, all²² above his fortune, for²³ which he contracts²⁴ debts, and ends his career²⁵ in prison; *Alas!* say I, *he has paid dear, very dear, for his whistle.*

When I see a beautiful²⁶, sweet-tempered²⁷ girl, married²⁸ to an ill-natured²⁹ brute³⁰ of a husband; *What³¹ a pity it is*, say I, *that she has paid so much for a whistle.*

In³² short, I conceived³³ that great part³⁴ of the miseries³⁵ of mankind³⁶ were brought upon³⁷ them by the false estimates³⁸ they had made³⁹ of the value of things, and by⁴⁰ their giving too much for their whistles.

Franklin.

1. When Franklin was a child, what did his friends do?
2. What did F—do with the money? — 3. What did his brothers, &c. tell him.
4. What did the observations of F—'s brothers, &c. put him in mind of, and what was the consequence?
5. What use did F. derive from the remarks of his brothers, &c.?
6. What did F—say to himself when he saw an ambitious man?
7. And what, when he saw a man full of popularity?
8. And what to the miser? — 9. And what to the man of pleasure?

XXV. The Golden Rule⁴¹ (ruh!).

Love God with all your soul⁴² and strength⁴³,
With all your heart⁴⁴ and mind⁴⁵,
And love your neighbour⁴⁶ as yourself —
Be faithful⁴⁷, just⁴⁸ and kind⁴⁹.

Deal⁵⁰ with another as⁵¹ you'd have
Another deal with you;
What⁵² you're unwilling to receive,
Be sure you never do⁵².

1. Achtung. 2. Mitbürger.
3. wohlwollender. 4. *for the sake of*, nur um.
5. Reichthümer zusammenzuhäufen.
6. in der That. 7. begegne.
8. *a man of pleasure*, einem vergnügungssüchtigen Menschen. 9. der — aufopfert.
10. lobenswerthe. 11. Ausbildung.
12. *or of his fortune*, oder die Verbesserung seiner Vermögensumstände.
13. bloßen. 14. körperlichen.
15. Vergnügungen. 16. irriger.
17. bereiten. 18. anstatt.
19. *one fond of*, Jemand der liebt.
20. Kleider. 21. Möbel.
22. *all above his fortune*, Alles zu kostspielig für seine Glücksumstände.
23. und wofür. 24. Schulden macht.
25. Lebenslauf. 26. schönes.

27. sanftmüthiges. 28. verheiratet an.
29. boshaften. 30. rohen Menschen.
31. *what a pity it is*, wie schade.
32. kurz. 33. dachte. 34. Theil.
35. Glends. 36. Menschen.
37. auf — gebracht.* 38. Werth, welchen.
39. *made of the value of things*, auf Dinge gelegt hatten.
40. *by their giving*, dadurch, daß sie — gaben.
41. Regel. 42. Seele. 43. Kraft.
44. Herz. 45. Geist.
46. Nächsten wie. 47. getreu.
48. gerecht. 49. gütig.
50. *deal with*, handle gegen.
51. *as you'd have*, wie du möchtest, daß (f. § 213, § 334. d. Grammatik).
52. Was du nicht willst, daß man dir thu',
Das füg' auch keinem Andern zu.

XXVI. Advice¹ to an Affected Speaker² (spihf'r).

What do you say? — What — I really³ do not understand⁴ you. Be so good as to explain⁵ yourself again. — Upon⁶ my word I do⁷ not — oh! now I know: you mean⁸ to tell⁹ me it is a cold day: why¹⁰ did you not say at¹¹ once "It is a cold day." If you wish to inform¹² me, it rains or snows, pray¹³ say, "It rains," "It snows": or if you think I look¹⁴ well, and you choose¹⁵ to compliment me, say, "I think you look well." "But," you answer¹⁶, "that is so common¹⁷, and so plain¹⁸, and what everybody can say." Well, and what¹⁹ if they can? Is it so great a misfortune²⁰ to be understood²¹ when one speaks, and to speak like²² the rest of the world? I will tell you what²³, my friend; you and your finespoken²⁴ brethren want²⁵ one thing — you do not suspect²⁶ it, and I shall astonish²⁷ you — you²⁸ want common sense²⁸. Nay²⁹, this is not all: you have something too much³⁰; you possess³¹ an opinion that you have more sense than others. That is the source³² of all your pompous³³ nothings, your cloudy³⁴ sentences³⁵, and your big³⁶ words without a meaning³⁷. Before you accost³⁸ a person, or enter³⁹ a room⁴⁰, let me pull⁴¹ you by your sleeve⁴² and whisper⁴³ in your ear, "Do not try⁴⁴ to show⁴⁵ off your sense: have⁴⁶ none at all — that is your part⁴⁷. Use⁴⁸ plain⁴⁹ language, if you can; just⁵⁰ such as you find others use, who, in⁵¹ your idea⁵², have no understanding; and then, perhaps, you will get⁵³ credit for having some."

La Bruyère.

XXVII. Sterne (stern).

Sterne, who used⁵⁴ his wife very ill⁵⁵, was⁵⁶ one⁵⁷ day talking⁵⁶ to Garrick in⁵⁸ a fine sentimental manner⁵⁹ in praise of⁶⁰ conjugal⁶¹ love and fidelity⁶². "The husband⁶³," said Sterne, "who behaves⁶⁴ unkindly⁶⁵ to⁶⁶ his wife, deserves⁶⁷ to have⁶⁸ his house burnt over⁶⁹ his head." "If you think so," said Garrick; "I hope your house is insured⁷⁰."

1. Of what did Sterne speak? — 2. What expression did⁷¹ he make use of?
3. What was Garrick's reply?

1. Rath. 2. Menschen, Sprecher.
3. wirklich. 4. verstehe.
5. as to explain, zu erklären. 6. auf.
7. I do not, ich verstehe sie noch nicht.
8. wollen. 9. sagen, daß. 10. warum.
11. auf ein Mal. 12. zu benachrichtigen, daß.
13. bitte. 14. gut aussehe.
15. wollen wir — machen. 16. antworten.
17. gewöhnlich. 18. einfach. 19. was macht's.
20. Unglück. 21. verstanden.
22. like the rest, wie die übrigen Menschen.
23. etwas. 24. schönredende Bruderschaft.
25. leiden Mangel an einer Sache.
26. vermuthen. 27. Sie in Erstaunen setzen.
28. you want common sense, es fehlt Ihnen an gewöhnlichem Menschenverstand.
29. ja sogar. 30. zuviel. 31. hegen.
32. Quelle. 33. prunkhaften Nichts.
34. schwülstigen. 35. Phrasen. 36. großen.
37. Sinn. 38. anreden. 39. in — eintreten.

40. Zimmer. 41. ziehen.
42. by your sleeve, am Ärmel. 43. flüstern.
44. do not try, versuchen Sie es ja nicht.
45. to show off, sich wichtig zu machen mit.
46. have none at all, thun Sie, als ob Sie gar keinen hätten.
47. Rolle. 48. bedienen Sie sich. 49. einfachen.
50. gerade. 51. nach. 52. Meinung.
53. you will get credit for having some, wird man Ihnen etwas (Verstand) zutrauen.
54. behandelte. 55. schlecht.
56. was talking, sprach. 57. eines. 58. auf.
59. Weise. 60. in praise of, zum Lobe.
61. ehelicher. 62. Treue. 63. Ehemann.
64. sich — benimmt. 65. lieblos.
66. gegen (s. Num. 15, S. 358 der Grammatik).
67. verdient. 68. to have his house burnt, daß man ihm das Haus — in Brand stecke.
69. über. 70. versichert.
71. did he, &c., bediente er sich.

XXVIII. The Mysterious¹ Dumb² Woman."A story strange³ but true."

One summer evening, in a pretty little village⁴ on the pleasant banks⁵ of the Tweed (tuihð), a gentle tap⁶ was heard at the door of the schoolmaster's house, which was the first of a line⁷ of new buildings⁸ at⁹ the end of the "Toon¹⁰," as the natives¹¹ called¹² it. The schoolmaster, who was quite¹³ a young man, and just¹⁴ established in his laborious¹⁵ office¹⁶, opened the door himself¹⁷, and was rather¹⁸ surprised to see an elderly¹⁹ woman, holding²⁰ in her hand a very pretty person, at²¹ whose breast was²² an infant²³.

The old woman begged²⁴ admittance²⁵ for her young friend, stating²⁶ that she was quite exhausted²⁷, and would presently expire²⁸ of fatigue²⁹, if not assisted³⁰. The schoolmaster of course³¹ desired³² them to enter, and taking³³ the child in one arm, gave the other to the young woman, who fainted³⁴ as he placed³⁵ her on a chair³⁶. The schoolmaster's mother, an old lady who managed³⁷ the cottage³⁸ establishment for him, was somewhat³⁹ surprised to find such a party installed³⁹ in the house when she returned from visiting⁴⁰ a neighbour. But being of the same kindly⁴¹ disposition⁴² as her son, she gave the wearied⁴³ strangers a hearty⁴⁴ welcome; and although⁴⁵, she said, she could not give them such good accommodations⁴⁶ as they would have found at the inn⁴⁷ farther⁴⁸ up the street, she and her son would do the best they could for them.

Next morning a curious dilemma⁴⁹ arose⁵⁰. The elderly woman had silently taken⁵¹ her departure in the night; and as it soon appeared⁵² that the young person, who with her child had accompanied⁵³ her, was both⁵⁴ deaf and dumb⁵⁴, no direct⁵⁵ means⁵⁶ of ascertaining⁵⁷ who and what they were presented⁵⁸ themselves. The young woman, however, was so pleasing in her manners, so pretty withal⁵⁹, and both she and her child so well dressed⁶⁰, that the schoolmaster and his mother felt an involuntary⁶¹ respect for their mysterious guests, and very soon took⁶² such an interest in them, that all thoughts⁶³ of giving⁶⁴ them any hint⁶⁵ to retire⁶⁶ were out of the question⁶⁷.

1. geheimnißvolle. 2. taubstumme.
3. sonderbare. 4. Dorf. 5. Ufer.
6. leises Klopfen. 7. Reihe.
8. Gebäuden. 9. am.
10. Toon (tuhn), niederschottisch für town (taun), Stadt. 11. Eingebornen.
12. nannten. 13. ganz. 14. soeben — angetreten.
15. mühevoll. 16. Amt.
17. selbst (s. Anm. 41 c. S. 193 der Grammatik).
18. etwas. 19. älteste.
20. holding in, welche an — führte.
21. an. 22. lag. 23. Kindchen.
24. bat um. 25. Einlaß, Aufnahme.
26. indem sie sagte.
27. erschöpft. 28. sterben.
29. of fatigue, vor Mattigkeit.
30. if not assisted, wenn man ihr nicht beistehe.
31. natürlicherweise.
32. bat. 33. indem — er nahm.

34. in Ohnmacht fiel. 35. setzte.
36. Stuhl. 37. führte.
38. cottage establishment, Haushaltung.
39. einquartiert. 40. einen Besuch bei.
41. gütigen. 42. Sinnesart, Charakter.
43. müden. 44. herzliches.
45. obgleich, wie. 46. Bewirtung.
47. Gasthof. 48. weiter — hinaus.
49. Verlegenheit. 50. entstand.
51. taken her departure, sich — entfernt.
52. sich — ergab. 53. begleitet.
54. sowohl taub als stumm war.
55. unmittelbares. 56. Mittel.
57. um zu erfahren.
58. so war kein — vorhanden. 59. dabei.
60. gekleidet. 61. unwillkürliche. 62. nahmen.
63. Gedanken (daran). 64. zu geben.
65. Wink, daß sie. 66. weggehen sollten. 67. außer Frage.

The schoolmaster, as part¹ of his business², had learned the art³ of speaking⁴ on his fingers; and as his mother soon acquired⁵ it also, there occurred⁶ no difficulty in communicating⁷ with the young woman. The first request⁸ of the stranger was, that she might⁹ be asked no questions as¹⁰ to her history; the second was, that she might be permitted¹¹ to remain¹² where accident¹³ had placed¹⁴ her. And as she made¹⁵ this request, she produced¹⁶ a purse, containing¹⁷, as she explained¹⁸, an ample¹⁹ sum to discharge²⁰ her board²¹ and lodging for herself and the child for a year.

In a private consultation²² held between the schoolmaster and his mother on this proposal²³, the prudent²⁴, old lady strongly²⁵ objected to such an arrangement, on the plea²⁶ of its indelicacy²⁷, and the hazard²⁸ in which it might place²⁹ the respectability of the village school, when it was known³⁰ that a person of such questionable³¹ history had become the schoolmaster's guest.

The young man, on³² the other hand, warmly advocated³³ the cause³⁴ of the forlorn³⁵ wanderer — rendered³⁶ doubly helpless in consequence³⁷ of her unfortunate want³⁸ of speech³⁹ and hearing⁴⁰. As⁴¹ to the indelicacy, he said that was an idle⁴² notion⁴³, as his mother's presence⁴⁴ would effectually⁴⁵ maintain⁴⁶ all the proprieties⁴⁷. The truth was, however, that the schoolmaster, who⁴⁸ was a man of birth⁴⁸ considerably⁴⁹ above⁵⁰ his present station⁵¹, and who had received⁵² a first-rate⁵³ education, was greatly struck⁵⁴ with the beauty of the stranger. Moreover⁵⁵, though he did not confess⁵⁶ it, even⁵⁷ to himself, he had begun⁵⁸ to entertain⁵⁹ vague⁶⁰ hopes that, in process⁶¹ of time, the mystery might be cleared⁶² up. Then, thought he, all the proprieties⁴⁷ upon⁶³ which his mother dwelt⁶³ might be satisfied⁶⁴ in⁶⁵ a manner⁶⁶ which⁶⁷ he scarcely⁶⁸ ventured⁶⁹ to think of⁶⁷.

Month after month passed⁷⁰ in this way⁷¹. The stranger became⁷² every day more and more amiable, and the mother saw, with a feeling of mixed⁷³ alarm⁷⁴ and satisfaction⁷⁵, that while⁷⁶

1. Theil. 2. Berufes, Geschäfts. 3. Kunst.
4. mit — zu sprechen.
5. acquired it, sich dieselbe aneignete.
6. gab es. 7. sich — verständlich zu machen.
8. Bitte.
9. that she might be asked no questions, daß man ihr keine Fragen stelle (s. Reg. XVIII. XIX. S. 455 d. Grammatik).
10. as to, hinsichtlich. 11. erlaubt.
12. bleiben. 13. Zufall. 14. hingeführt.
15. gestellt hatte. 16. zog — hervor.
17. enthaltend. 18. erklärte.
19. hinlängliche.
20. zu bezahlen. 21. Kost. 22. Verathung.
23. Vorschlag. 24. fluge.
25. strongly objected to, machte — kräftige Einwendungen gegen.
26. on, &c., unter dem Vorwand.
27. Unschicklichkeit. 28. Gefahr.
29. versehen. 30. bekannt. 31. zweifelhafter.
32. on the other hand, dagegen, andererseits.
33. vertheidigte. 34. Sache.
35. verlassenen Wanderer.

36. rendered doubly helpless, welche doppelt hilflos war. 37. in Folge.
38. Mangels an. 39. Redefähigkeit.
40. Gehör. 41. as to, was — betraf.
42. müßige. 43. Gedanke, Idee.
44. Gegenwart. 45. wirksam.
46. versehen. 47. Schicklichkeiten.
48. who was a man, &c., dessen Herkunft.
49. bedeutend. 50. höher war als.
51. Stellung. 52. genossen.
53. ausgezeichnete. 54. gefesselt — von.
55. überdies. 56. eingestand.
57. nicht ein Mal. 58. angefangen.
59. zu hegen. 60. unbestimmte.
61. mit Verlauf. 62. aufgeklärt.
63. upon which — dwelt, worauf — bestand.
64. befriedigt werden. 65. auf. 66. Weise.
67. of which, woran (s. Reg. XXXII. S. 466 u. Reg. XLVII. S. 475 der Grammatik).
68. kaum. 69. wagte. 70. verging.
71. Weise. 72. wurde mit.
73. gemischter. 74. Besorgnis.
75. Zufriedenheit. 76. während.

the young people were¹ becoming daily more intimate² and attached³, the school was more and more neglected⁴, till⁵ at length⁶ the boys had it all⁷ to themselves. It was soon admitted⁸ by all parties that this could⁹ not be allowed to go on long⁹, and after one more fruitless¹⁰ attempt¹¹ to gain¹² from the young woman some notion¹³ what she was, or who she was, or where she came from (an attempt which she declared, if repeated¹⁴, must drive¹⁵ her for ever from them), it was agreed¹⁶ that a marriage¹⁷ should take¹⁸ place.

Married they were accordingly¹⁹, and the thousand and one gossips²⁰ of the village silenced²¹ for the time²². The school, which had languished²³ in proportion²⁴ as the courtship²⁵ of the preceptor had flourished²⁶, now revived²⁷; and what was very important and satisfactory²⁸ to the neighbourhood, a female department²⁹ was added³⁰. In this the schoolmaster's wife taught³¹ writing, cyphering³², and sewing³³ — her usefulness³⁴ being³⁵ necessarily limited³⁶ by her want³⁷ of the faculties³⁸ of hearing³⁹ and speech⁴⁰.

Her success⁴¹, however, was astonishing, and the school gained⁴² great celebrity in consequence⁴³. The discipline⁴⁴ she maintained⁴⁵ was perfect, for⁴⁶ it received⁴⁷ the most exact⁴⁸ obedience⁴⁹, while it gained for her the regard⁵⁰ as well as the respect⁵¹ of her pupils⁵². The shrewd⁵³ ones amongst the young folks⁵⁴ used⁵⁵ often to assert⁵⁶, when⁵⁷ alone, that the mistress⁵⁸ must only be⁵⁹ pretending to be deaf, as⁶⁰ she appeared⁶¹ to discover⁶², with a kind⁶³ of intuitive⁶⁴ accuracy⁶⁵, all that they said near⁶⁶ her. But the numberless⁶⁷ experiments⁶⁸ which they made to entrap⁶⁹ her, only tended⁷⁰ to establish⁷¹ that it really was no pretence⁷². Finally, all suspicion on⁷³ their part, as⁷⁴ well as on the husband's, if indeed any⁷⁵ had ever⁷⁶ existed, gradually died⁷⁷ away.

In⁷⁸ the mean time, she became⁷⁹ the mother of seven children, besides⁸⁰ the girl who had been with her at the time of⁸¹ her first appearance⁸², and who always called⁸³ her mamma, and was treated⁸⁴ as a daughter by her. I should mention⁸⁵ that the old woman

1. *were becoming*, wurden. 2. vertrauter.
3. verliebter. 4. vernachlässigt. 5. bis.
6. zuletzt. 7. ganz für sich. 8. eingesehen.
9. *could not be allowed to go on long*, nicht lang fortbauern durfte.
10. fruchtlosen. 11. Versuch.
12. zu erlangen. 13. Idee.
14. daß wenn es wiederholt würde, so.
15. müßte es — vertreiben. 16. ausgemacht.
17. Heirath. 18. *take place*, statt finden.
19. demgemäß. 20. Geschwätz, Plaudereien.
21. zum Stillschweigen gebracht.
22. Augenblick. 23. geschmachtet.
24. Verhältnis. 25. Hofmacherei.
26. geblüht. 27. lebte wieder auf.
28. befriedigend für. 29. Abtheilung.
30. hinzugefügt. 31. lehrte.*
32. Rechnen. 33. Nähen.
34. Leistungen dabei.
35. waren. 36. beschränkt.
37. Mangel an. 38. Fähigkeiten.
39. Hörens. 40. Redens.
41. Erfolg. 42. gewann.
43. in Folge dessen. 44. Zucht, welche.

45. führte. 46. denn. 47. erhielt.
48. pünktlichsten. 49. Gehorsam.
50. Liebe. 51. Achtung.
52. Zöglinge, Schülerinnen.
53. *shrewd ones*, Schläuen. 54. Leuten.
55. pflegten. 56. zu behaupten.
57. wenn sie allein waren.
58. Schulmeisterin.
59. *only be pretending*, sich bloß stelle, als ob
60. da. 61. schien.
62. entdecken. 63. Art.
64. anschauliche. 65. Genauigkeit.
66. in ihrer Nähe. 67. zahllosen.
68. Versuche. 69. zu fangen.
70. dienten nur. 71. zu bestätigen.
72. Verstellung.
73. *on their part*, ihrerseits.
74. *as well as on*, sowohl als auch seitens.
75. irgend ein. 76. je.
77. verschwand allmählig.
78. *in the mean time*, mittlerweile. 79. wurde.
80. außer. 81. *of her*, als sie.
82. erschien. 83. nannte. 84. behandelt.
85. hätte erwähnen sollen.

who had accompanied¹ her on² her arrival, paid³ her and her children a visit of several days once⁴ a year, and on these occasions⁵ she always brought⁶ with her a purse of⁷ money similar⁸ to that which the young woman had produced⁹ on the morning after¹⁰ she was received¹¹ by the schoolmaster.

One or two attempts to win¹² from the old lady some trace¹³ of the young person's mysterious history, were met¹⁴ by such earnest entreaties¹⁵ not to inquire¹⁶ into¹⁷ the matter¹⁸, and threatenings¹⁹ of such an alarming²⁰ nature, that after the second year no farther questions were put²¹ to her, and every²² thing fell²³ into a regular, successful²⁴, and happy train²⁵. No persons could be more attached²⁶, no family more flourishing²⁷, and no business²⁸ more satisfactory²⁹ than the joint³⁰ school.

The gentry³¹ of the neighbourhood were³² naturally much interested³² in this strange story, and still more interested in the heroine³³ of it, whose manners³⁴, as I have already mentioned³⁵, were those of a much higher rank in life. But they tried³⁶ in vain³⁷ to induce³⁸ her to visit them, and she stuck³⁹ resolutely⁴⁰ to her school and cottage⁴¹ duties.

On the fourteenth anniversary⁴² of her arrival, when the old woman had made⁴³ her periodical appearance with her purse of gold, the girl who was called⁴⁴, and who probably was, her eldest daughter, chanced⁴⁵ to pass⁴⁶ unobserved⁴⁷ through a room⁴⁸ in which this old person and her mother were. To her astonishment, and even horror⁴⁹, she heard her mother speak⁵⁰. Greatly alarmed⁵¹ and confused⁵², she ran⁵³ to her father, as she always called the schoolmaster, and communicated⁵⁴ the wonderful news⁵⁵ to him. He desired⁵⁶ the girl to tell⁵⁷ no one else, and said nothing himself till⁵⁸ the night came, and every one had retired⁵⁹ to bed.

He then told his wife of the discovery⁶⁰ which had been made, and entreated⁶¹ her to bless⁶² him with the sound⁶³ of her voice.

"You are⁶⁴ very wrong," she said, "and you will deeply rue⁶⁵ this breach⁶⁶ of our solemn contract⁶⁷. You have heard me speak once — you shall never hear me speak again!"

He tried⁶⁸ every art — he prayed⁶¹ — he wept⁶⁹ — but all in vain⁷⁰ — till at length, quite exhausted⁷¹, he fell asleep⁷².

1. begleitete. 2. bei. 3. machte.
4. ein Mal. 5. Gelegenheiten.
6. brachte.* 7. voll Geld. 8. ähnlich.
9. vorzeigte. 10. nachdem.
11. aufgenommen. 12. abzugewinnen.
13. irgend eine Spur hinsichtlich.
14. begegnet von. 15. Bitten.
16. daß man sich nicht erkundige.
17. über. 18. Sache. 19. Drohungen.
20. Besorgniß erregender Art. 21. gestellt.
22. Alles. 23. nahm. 24. gedeihlichen. 25. Gang.
26. *be more attached*, anhänglicher sein.
27. blühender. 28. Geschäft.
29. befriedigender. 30. vereinigte.
31. Vornehmen. 32. interessirten sich — sehr für.
33. Heldin derselben. 34. Manieren.
35. erwähnt. 36. versuchten.
37. vergebens. 38. zu überreden.

39. blieb. 40. entschlossen.
41. Hauspflichten. 42. Jahrestag nach.
43. *had made her periodical appearance*, periodisch erschien.
44. genannt. 45. zufällig. 46. ging.
47. unbemerkt. 48. Zimmer.
49. sogar Schrecken. 50. sprechen.
51. erschrocken. 52. bestürzt. 53. lief.*
54. theilte — mit. 55. Nachricht. 56. befaßl.
57. *to tell no one else*, es Niemand Anderem zu sagen. 58. bis.
59. sich — begeben. 60. Entdeckung.
61. bat. 62. zu beglücken. 63. Klang.
64. Sie haben sehr Unrecht (s. Anglizismen § 178 S. 297 d. Grammatik).
65. sehr bereuen. 66. Bruch. 67. Vertrags.
68. versuchte. 69. weinte. 70. umsonst.
71. erschöpft. 72. schlief ein.

In the morning his wife was no longer by his side: the house was searched¹ — all the grounds² — the desolate³ school — she was now here⁴ to be⁵ found, and the only thing like⁶ a trace was the uncertain report⁷ of a peasant, who had seen two females⁸ running out of⁹ the village at midnight.

This afforded¹⁰ no clue¹¹, however, and the poor man was left¹² in despair¹³. As his heart was well¹⁴ nigh broken, his business no longer prospered¹⁵. The girl's school, after a few vain¹⁶ attempts¹⁷ at a substitute¹⁸ for the spirit¹⁹ that had fled²⁰, was given²¹ up. The other branch²² fell into neglect²³, and the whole fortunes²⁴ of the poor man seemed²⁵ crushed²⁶ under the weight²⁷ of this misfortune²⁸.

His only consolation²⁹ was in his family; but this endured³⁰ not long, for³¹ before the year was out³², first one and then another fell³³ sick³⁴, till, just³⁵ at the period when the old woman was wont³⁶ to make her appearance³⁷, every member³⁸ of the young family was laid up³⁹ with measles (mißfiß)⁴⁰ or some⁴¹ such complaint⁴², several of them being⁴³ at the point of death. The utmost⁴⁴ anxiety⁴⁵ was of course⁴⁶ felt⁴⁷ to know⁴⁸ whether⁴⁹ the usual visit would be paid⁵⁰, and great was the joy⁵¹ of all when the old woman appeared. As she entered⁵² the door, she held⁵³ up her bag⁵⁴ of money, not⁵⁵ knowing⁵⁵ the condition⁵⁶ of the children.

"Of what use⁵⁷ is your base⁵⁸ gold?" exclaimed⁵⁹ the wretched⁶⁰ father. "Look⁶¹ at this sight⁶² — look at these motherless, deserted⁶³, dying children!"

The old woman, struck⁶⁴ with horror, threw⁶⁵ down the money, and fled⁶⁶. In less than a week she returned⁶⁷, leading⁶⁸ back the mysterious deserter⁶⁹, whose presence and attentions⁷⁰ soon restored⁷¹ all the party, young and old, to health and happiness.

But what excited⁷² unbounded⁷³ wonder⁷⁴ in the minds of her family, and⁷⁵ every one else, was the circumstance⁷⁶ of her⁷⁷ now speaking⁷⁸ and hearing⁷⁹ perfectly, and of her⁷⁷ no longer refusing⁸⁰ to go into society⁸¹.

1. durchsucht. 2. Anlagen. 3. verlassene.
4. *no where*, nirgend.
5. zu finden (s. Reg. III. S. 478 b. Gramm.).
6. *like a trace*, welches auf eine Spur deutete.
7. Bericht. 8. Frauen.
9. *running out of*, welche um — aus — laufen.
10. bot — dar. 11. Leitfaden.
12. verlassen. 13. Verzweiflung.
14. *well nigh*, beinahe. 15. gedieh.
16. vergeblich. 17. Versuchen.
18. eine Stellvertreterin — zu finden.
19. Person. 20. entflohen war.
21. aufgegeben. 22. Zweig.
23. wurde vernachlässigt. 24. Glück.
25. schien. 26. vernichtet. 27. Last.
28. Unglückes. 29. Trost. 30. dauerte.
31. denn. 32. abgelaufen. 33. wurde.
34. krank. 35. gerade. 36. gewohnt.
37. zu erscheinen. 38. Glied. 39. krank an den.
40. Masern. 41. irgend.
42. einer ähnlichen Krankheit.
43. *being at the point of death*, lagen am Sterben.
44. äußerste.

45. Unruhe, Gespanntheit. 46. natürlich.
47. empfunden. 48. um zu wissen. 49. ob.
50. gemacht. 51. Freude. 52. eintrat.
53. hielt — in die Höhe. 54. Beutel voll.
55. da sie — nicht kannte. 56. Zustand.
57. was nützt. 58. niederes.
59. rief — aus. 60. elende.
61. betrachte. 62. Anblick. 63. verlassen.
64. *struck with horror*, von Entsetzen ergriffen.
65. warf* — nieder. 66. entfloß.*
67. kehrte — zurück.
68. *leading back*, zurückführend.
69. Entflohene, Ausreißerin.
70. Sorgfalt, Pflege.
71. *soon restored to*, bald der ganzen Familie — wieder brachte.
72. erregte. 73. unbegränzt.
74. Erstaunen.
75. *and every one else*, sowohl als auch bei jedem Andern.
76. Umstand. 77. *of her*, daß sie.
78. spreche.* 79. höre.
80. sich — weigerte. 81. Gesellschaft.

The husband, it may¹ be well imagined², after the severe³ lesson he had received, never again approached⁴ the mysterious subject⁵ with his wife; and as no other person ventured⁶ to take⁷ such a liberty with her, the secret was never guessed⁸ at. The nearest approach to it⁹ — indeed, the only faint¹⁰ glimmer¹¹ of light which was ever shed¹² upon it — arose¹³ from the circumstance of her¹⁴ accent being slightly¹⁵ Irish; whence¹⁶ it was inferred¹⁷ that she may have belonged¹⁸ to some distinguished¹⁹ family in that country.

After this period — strange to say — the old woman never came back; and as the lady herself — for²⁰ such²¹ all who knew²² her admitted²³ she must have been — was carried²⁴ off by a sudden²⁵ illness some years afterwards²⁶, the seal²⁷ of permanent²⁸ mystery has been set²⁹ upon this singular adventure³⁰ for ever.

Captain Basil Hall.

1. At what was the schoolmaster surprised?
2. What did the old woman beg for, and what did she state?
3. What did the schoolmaster desire them to do?
4. What did the schoolmaster's mother give the strangers?
5. What arose next morning, and what had the elderly woman done?
6. What did the schoolmaster and his mother feel for their guests?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 38.

7. What had the schoolmaster learned? — 8. What was the request of the stranger?
9. What did the stranger become? — 10. What did the mother see?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 39.

11. Who were married, and what revived? — 12. What did the schoolmaster's wife teach?
13. What was her success? — 14. What used the *shrewd* ones to assert?
15. Who paid the schoolmaster's wife a visit once a year, and what did she bring with her?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 40.

16. What were the attempts to gain information from the old lady met by?
17. At what was the eldest daughter astonished, and what did she do?
18. What did the schoolmaster tell his wife, and what were the consequences?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 41.

19. What was the consequence of his wife's running away?
20. What was his only consolation, and what occurred to his family?
21. What did the old woman do when she entered the door?
22. What did the wretched father exclaim?
23. What did the old woman do? — 24. What excited such wonder?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 42.

25. Why was it supposed that she was an Irish lady? — 26. Was the mystery ever discovered?

XXIX. Taste (Geschmack) and Knowledge (Kenntniß).

Taste, like an artificial³¹ canal, winds³² through a beautiful country³³, but its borders³⁴ are confined³⁵ and its term³⁶ limited. Knowledge navigates³⁷ the ocean and is perpetually on voyages³⁸ of discovery.

1. *it may be*, man — kann.
 2. sich wohl denken. 3. harten. 4. berührt.
 5. Sache. 6. es wagte.
 7. zu nehmen. 8. errathen.
 9. *the, &c.*, daß Mutmaßlichste darüber.
 10. schwache. 11. *glimmer of light*, Lichtschimmer.
 12. darauf verbreitet. 13. entstand aus.
 14. daß ihr. 15. etwas — war. 16. woher.
 17. vermutet. 18. gehört. 19. vornehmen.

20. denn. 21. eine vornehme Person.
 22. kannten. 23. gaben zu, daß sie.
 24. weggerafft. 25. plötzliche. 26. darauf.
 27. Siegel. 28. ewigen Geheimnisses.
 29. *set upon*, auf — gedrückt. 30. Abenteuer.
 31. künstlicher. 32. schlängelt sich.
 33. Gegend. 34. Ufer. 35. beengt.
 36. Lauf beschränkt. 37. durchschiffte.
 38. auf Entdeckungsreisen.

XXX. The Sparrow's¹ First Flight².

It was midnight³ before my old friend permitted⁴ me to retire⁵. We had not met⁶ for⁷ years, and there⁸ was so much to relate⁹ that the hours flew¹⁰ by with astonishing rapidity¹¹; still¹² every thing must have an end, and the bowl¹³ was at last¹⁴ empty¹⁵.

The sun got¹⁶ up very early¹⁷ the next morning, and shining¹⁸ full upon my bed, made the heat insupportable¹⁹. You didn't²⁰ retire to your bed-room²¹ at²² midnight³, Mr. Sun, neither²³ did you drink your share²⁴ of a bowl of punch²⁴ first²⁵; had you done so, you would probably not have²⁶ been up at four in the morning.

"Confound²⁷ this hot bed," I exclaimed; and before the sentence²⁸ was well finished²⁹, I stood³⁰ on the floor. One window was open, I looked³¹ out. How quiet³² was the long street, with its quaint³³ old houses, of all shapes³⁴, sizes³⁵ and colours. The sun was³⁶ gilding³⁶ the second³⁷ floor³⁷ windows, the sparrows¹ chirped³⁸; but neither man nor dog was visible³⁹. The street had⁴⁰ been⁴⁰ swept⁴¹ clean the previous⁴² night, for⁴³ this was Sunday; the fountain splashed⁴⁴ and a dense⁴⁵ volume⁴⁶ of smoke⁴⁶ issued⁴⁷ from the baker's chimney. Further⁴⁸ indications⁴⁹ of life there⁵⁰ were none⁵⁰. I gaped⁵¹, and the action⁵² reminded⁵³ me that I wanted⁵⁴ more sleep. Wrapping⁵⁵ my precious limbs⁵⁶ in an old dressing-gown⁵⁷, I extended⁵⁸ myself on the sofa, and was soon⁵⁹ in the land of dreams.

The flutter⁶⁰ of wings⁶¹ restored⁶² me to consciousness⁶³. I knew that I lay on the sofa of my sleeping apartment⁶⁴, and that I had dreamed. My eyes were still closed. That fluttering⁶⁰ again! Am I awake⁶⁵ or not? I looked⁶⁶ up, and see, a small⁶⁷ bird was endeavouring⁶⁷ to escape⁶⁸ by the second window⁶⁹, which was shut⁷⁰. It must have flown⁷¹ in at the open casement⁷², but was not wise enough⁷³ to know⁷⁴ how⁷⁵ to retrace its steps⁷⁵. I arose⁷⁶, closed⁷⁷ the window, and the little flutterer⁷⁸ was my prisoner. I took⁷⁹ it in my hand. "*Pee* (pih), *pee*, *pee*", screamend⁸⁰ the poor captive⁸¹. It was a sparrow⁸², quite⁸³ young, as⁸⁴ was indicated by⁸⁴ its yellow⁸⁵ beak⁸⁶ and still⁸⁷ imperfect wings⁸⁸.

1. des Sperlings. 2. Ausflug. 3. Mitternacht.
4. erlaubte. 5. wegzugehen.
6. uns — begegnet. 7. seit. 8. es.
9. zu erzählen. 10. flogen vorüber.
11. Schnelligkeit. 12. doch, immerhin.
13. Punschbowl. 14. zuletzt. 15. leer.
16. ging auf. 17. sehr früh.
18. schien gerade. 19. unerträglich.
20. *didn't retire*, zogen sich nicht erst — zurück.
21. Schlafzimmer. 22. um.
23. *neither did you drink*, auch tranken Sie nicht.
24. Antheil einer Bowl Punsch. 25. vorher.
26. *have been up at*, um — aufgestanden sein.
27. der Teufel hole. 28. Sag.
29. gut ausgesprochen. 30. stand.
31. schaute hinaus. 32. ruhig.
33. schmücken. 34. Gestalten. 35. Größen.
36. vergoldete. 37. des zweiten Stocks.
38. zwitscherten. 39. zu sehen. 40. war.
41. gekehrt. 42. vorhergehende. 43. denn.
44. plätscherte. 45. dichte.

46. Rauchsäule. 47. stieg.
48. andere. 49. Zeichen. 50. gab es keine.
51. gähnte. 52. diese Handlung. 53. erinnerte.
54. bedurfte. 55. indem ich — umhüllte.
56. Glieder. 57. Schlafrock.
58. streckte. 59. halb. 60. das Geflatter.
61. Flügel. 62. brachte — zum.
63. Bewußtsein. 64. Schlafzimmer.
65. wach oder nicht. 66. sah auf.
67. ein kleiner Vogel versuchte. 68. zu entkommen.
69. durch das zweite Fenster. 70. zu.
71. hineingeflogen sein. 72. Fenster. 73. genug.
74. zu wissen.
75. seinen Weg zurückzufinden.
76. stand auf. 77. schloß.
78. Flatterer (Vogel).
79. nahm. 80. schrie. 81. Gefangene.
82. Sperling. 83. ganz.
84. wie es — angedeutet wurde. 85. gelben.
86. Schnabel. 87. noch.
88. Flügel.

"Poor bird," I soliloquized¹, "what was thy object² in flying³ into my room⁴? Supposing⁵ I had⁶ kept a cat, or should now feel inclined⁷ to make a sparrow⁸-pie⁹ of¹⁰ thee! Such things¹¹ have¹² happened¹² to sparrows⁸. But thou art young; this is probably thy first flight¹³, and thy maternal¹⁴ parent¹⁴ may be¹⁵ grieving¹⁵ for¹⁶ thee. Why should I doom¹⁷ thee to an untimely¹⁸ death, or to perpetual¹⁹ imprisonment²⁰ for²¹ an error²² of youth? I was once young myself! Thank thy stars, or thy progenitors²³, little brown bird, that thou art no²⁴ lark²⁵, or²⁶ my appetite might get²⁷ the better of my compassion, which would be no²⁸ lark²⁸ for thee. Be grateful²⁹ that thou art no canary-bird, or²⁶ my love of³⁰ harmony might sentence¹⁷ thee to an honorable confinement³¹. Thou art but a poor, unpretending³² sparrow, so go thy ways even³³, and prosper³⁴ if thou canst."

I opened the window, and released³⁵ my captive. With a chirp³⁶ of joy, he flew³⁷ to a window-sill³⁸ of the opposite³⁹ house, where he was immediately joined⁴⁰ by his mamma, who proceeded⁴¹, no doubt, to question⁴² him as⁴³ to his protracted⁴⁴ absence. The ungracious⁴⁵ little bird, without even⁴⁶ condescending⁴⁷ a reply⁴⁷, hopped⁴⁸ off⁴⁹ the sill; but being⁵⁰ unpractised⁵¹ on⁵² the wing⁵³, and fatigued besides⁵⁴ by his previous⁵⁵ exertions⁵⁶, fluttered and fluttered till he reached⁵⁷ the ground. The mother was instantly by his side and strove⁵⁸ to persuade him to accompany⁵⁹ her back⁶⁰ to the nest, representing⁶¹ the danger he incurred⁶² by remaining⁶³ in the street, which, it⁶⁴ now being past six o'clock, was no longer without passengers⁶⁵. All was in vain⁶⁶; the young adventurer refused⁶⁷ to obey⁶⁸ other⁶⁸ than the dictates⁶⁹ of his own will. Upon⁷⁰ this⁷⁰, the disconsolate⁷¹ parent¹⁴ flew³⁷ away, to seek the assistance of her mate⁷² in compelling⁷³ the refractory⁷⁴ youngster⁷⁵ to return⁷⁶ home.

No sooner⁷⁷ was she gone⁷⁸, than⁷⁹ my late⁸⁰ visitor feeling⁸¹ himself free from restraint⁸², looked⁸³ to⁸⁴ the right, and looked to the left⁸⁵. There was nothing to apprehend⁸⁶. He hopped forwards a few⁸⁷ steps⁸⁸, stopped⁸⁹, looked about⁹⁰ him, and then ventured⁹¹

1. sagte ich zu mir selbst.
2. Zweck. 3. indem du — flogst.
4. Zimmer. 5. Geseht der Fall, daß.
6. had kept, hätte. 7. geneigt.
8. Sperling. 9. Pastete. 10. aus dir.
11. Dinge. 12. sind — geschehen. 13. Ausflug.
14. Mutter. 15. grämt sich vielleicht.
16. um. 17. verurtheilen. 18. frühzeitig.
19. ewiger. 20. Einsperrung. 21. wegen.
22. Fehler. 23. Vorfahren. 24. keine.
25. Lerche. 26. sonst.
27. get the better of, überwinden.
28. kein Spaß. 29. dankbar. 30. zur.
31. Gefangenschaft. 32. anspruchloser.
33. eben. 34. sei glücklich. 35. befreiete.
36. Zirpen. 37. flog. 38. Fensterbank.
39. gegenüberstehenden. 40. begegnet wurde.
41. anfang. 42. auszufragen.
43. wegen. 44. langen Abwesenheit.
45. gottlose. 46. ohne sie einmal.
47. einer Antwort zu würdigen.
48. hüpfte. 49. von — ab.

50. da er. 51. ungelübt.
52. mit. 53. Flügeln. 54. überdies.
55. vorhergehenden.
56. Anstrengungen. 57. erreichte.
58. bemühte sich. 59. begleiten. 60. zurück.
61. ihm vorstellend. 62. sich aussetzte.
63. wenn er — blieb,
64. it now being past, da es jetzt nach — sei.
65. Vorbeigehenden. 66. umsonst.
67. weigerte sich.
68. irgend Jemand Anderm zu gehorchen, als.
69. Eingebungen. 70. hierauf. 71. trostlose.
72. Gatten. 73. um zu zwingen.
74. widerspenstigen.
75. Jüngling. 76. zurückzukehren.
77. nicht so bald. 78. fort. 79. als.
80. so eben fortgegangener Besucher.
81. der — fühlt. 82. Zwang.
83. schaute. 84. to the right, rechts.
85. links. 86. zu befürchten.
87. einige. 88. Schritte. 89. hielt inne.
90. um sich. 91. wagte — zu gehen.

a little further. On¹ he hopped; and oh! reader, blush² for² the nature of little birds, let³ out for⁴ the first time⁵! At⁶ the early⁶ hour of six, on a Sunday morning too⁷, he hopped straight⁸ in, at⁹ the door of a beer-house.

"Thus¹⁰ to begin life!" I exclaimed, "thus almost unfledged¹¹, to rush¹² into a vile¹³ pot-house¹⁴! Thus to bring degradation¹⁵ on¹⁶ thyself, thus to mortify¹⁷ thy loving¹⁸ parents! Would¹⁹ I had wrung²⁰ thy neck!"

Moralizing, I retired²¹ from the window. *British Leaves.*

1. What got up early in the morning? — 2. What was open?

3. What was the sun gilding? — 4. What were the sparrows doing?

5. Whence did the volume of smoke issue?

6. Whence was the bird endeavouring to escape? — 7. What did the poor captive scream?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 44.

8. What did I soliloquise? — 9. Whither did the captive fly?

10. By whom was he joined? — 11. What did the ungracious bird do?

12. What did the mother do? — 13. What did the young adventurer refuse to do?

14. What did the parent do? — 15. What did my late visitor do?

NB. Obige 8 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 45.

16. Where did he hop? — 17. What did I exclaim?

XXXI. Musical Taste²².

The ass has been frequently²³ made²⁴ one of the parties in the most popular²⁵ fables from²⁶ Aesop downwards²⁶. The following²⁷ is not much²⁸ known²⁹. A trial³⁰ of skill in singing³¹ being³² agreed upon between³³ the cuckoo and the nightingale, the ass was chosen³⁴ as umpire³⁵. After³⁶ each³⁷ had done his best³⁸, the sagacious³⁹ animal declared⁴⁰ that the nightingale sung extremely⁴¹ well; but for⁴² a good plain song the cuckoo was far⁴³ his superior⁴⁴. — How many such critics there are in the world!

XXXII. Political Prudence (Flugheit).

Wise men say nothing in dangerous times. The lion called⁴⁵ the sheep, and asked her if⁴⁶ his breath⁴⁷ smelt⁴⁷; she said "Ay"⁴⁸, and he bit off her head for⁴⁹ a fool. He called the wolf, and asked him. He said "No," and he tore⁵⁰ him in pieces for⁴⁹ a flatterer. At last he called for⁴⁵ the fox, and asked him. "Truly"⁵¹, said Reynard⁵², "I have got⁵³ a cold⁵³, and cannot smell."

1. vorwärts. 2. erröthe über.

3. let out, die — frei gelassen worden. 4. zum.

5. Mal. 6. zur frühen. 7. auch.

8. gerade hinein. 9. at the, zur. 10. so.

11. unbefiedert. 12. zu stürzen.

13. abscheuliche. 14. Bierkneipe.

15. Schande. 16. über. 17. kränken.

18. lieben. 19. ich wollte daß.

20. wrung thy neck, dir den Hals umgedreht

21. zog mich — zurück. 22. Geschmack.

23. häufig. 24. zu — gemacht.*

25. populärsten, beliebtesten.

26. von Aesopzeiten bis jetzt.

27. das Folgende. 28. sehr. 29. bekannt.

30. a trial of skill, ein Wettstreit.

31. im Singen.

32. being agreed upon, wurde verabredet.

33. zwischen. 34. gewählt.*

35. zum Schiedsrichter. 36. nachdem.

37. ein Jeder. 38. Möglichstes.

39. scharfsinnige. 40. erklärte.

41. außerordentlich.

42. for a good plain song, was ein gutes einfaches Lied anbelangte.

43. bei Weitem.

44. his superior, ihr — überlegen.

45. rief — zu sich und fragte. 46. ob.

47. Athem schlecht rieche. 48. ja.

49. als. 50. zerriß. 51. wahrhaftig.

52. Reinecke. 53. mich erkältet.

XXXIII. Ossian's Address¹ to the Sun.

O thou, that² rollest above³, whence⁴ are thy beams⁵, O Sun, thy everlasting⁶ light? Thou comest forth⁷ in thy awful⁸ beauty: the stars hide⁹ themselves in the sky; the moon, cold and pale¹⁰ sinks in the western wave¹¹: but thou thyself movest¹² alone. Who can be a companion of thy course¹³? — The oaks¹⁴ of the mountains fall; the mountains themselves decay¹⁵ with years; the ocean shrinks¹⁶ and grows¹⁷ again; the moon herself is lost¹⁸ in heaven: — but thou art for ever the same, rejoicing¹⁹ in the brightness²⁰ of thy course. — When the world is dark²¹ with tempests²²; when thunder rolls and lightning flies²³; — thou lookest²⁴ in thy beauty from the clouds²⁵, and laughest²⁶ at the storm. — But thou art perhaps, like me, for a season²⁷: thy years will have an end: thou shalt sleep in thy clouds, careless²⁸ of the voice of the morning. — Exult²⁹ then, O Sun, in the strength³⁰ of thy youth. — Age³¹ is dark and unlovely³²: it is like the glimmering³³ light of the moon, when it shines through broken³⁴ clouds, and the mist³⁵ is on the hills, the blast³⁶ of the north is on the plain³⁷, the traveller³⁸ shrinks³⁹ in the midst of his journey.

Macpherson.

XXXIV. Canute's Reproof⁴⁰ (reprüß).

Canute⁴¹, the greatest and most powerful⁴² monarch of his time, sovereign of Denmark and Norway as⁴³ well as of England, could⁴⁴ not fail of meeting with adulation from his courtiers; a tribute which is liberally⁴⁴ paid⁴⁵ even⁴⁶ to the meanest⁴⁷ and weakest⁴⁸ princes. Some of his flatterers⁴⁹, breaking⁵⁰ out one day in admiration of his grandeur⁵¹, exclaimed⁵² that every thing was possible for him. Upon⁵³ which the monarch ordered⁵⁴ his chair to be⁵⁵ set on the sea-shore⁵⁶ while the tide⁵⁷ was rising⁵⁸, and, as the waters approached, he commanded them⁵⁹ to retire⁶⁰, and to obey⁶¹ the voice of him who was lord⁶² of the ocean. — He feigned⁶³ to sit some time in expectation⁶⁴ of their submission.⁶⁵ — But when the sea still advanced⁶⁶ towards him, and began to wash him with

1. Anrede. 2. die du (s. Reg. XXXIII. S. 466 der Grammatik).
3. oben. 4. woher. 5. Strahlen.
6. ewiges. 7. hervor.
8. Ehrfurcht einflößender. 9. verbergen* sich.
10. bleich. 11. Wogen. 12. bewegst dich.
13. Laufes. 14. Eichen.
15. verschwinden. 16. zieht* sich zurück.
17. wächst wieder an. 18. verloren.*
19. dich erfreuend. 20. Glanz, Pracht.
21. dunkel vor. 22. Stürmen.
23. leuchtet. 24. schauest — herab.
25. Wolken. 26. lachst über.
27. eine Zeit lang. 28. unbekümmert um die.
29. frohlocke. 30. Kraft. 31. das hohe Alter.
32. unlieblich. 33. schimmernden.
34. gebrochene. 35. Nebel liegt.
36. Sturmwind. 37. Ebene. 38. Reisende.
39. hebt zurück. 40. Verweis, Zurechtweisung.

41. Canute could not fail of meeting with adulation from his; courtiers, es konnte nicht ermangeln (ausbleiben), daß dem Canute — Schmeicheleien seitens seiner Höflinge gemacht wurden.
42. mächtigste. 43. as well as, sowohl als auch.
44. freigebig. 45. gezollt.* 46. sogar.
47. unbedeutendsten. 48. schwächsten.
49. Schmeichler. 50. sich — auslassend.
51. Größe. 52. riefen aus. 53. upon which, worauf.
54. befahl, daß man, od. ließ (s. Reg. XIV. S. 484 der Grammatik).
55. to be set, setze od. setzen. 56. Meeresufer.
57. Flut. 58. was rising, im Steigen war.
59. ihm. 60. sich zurückziehen.
61. zu gehorchen. 62. Herr.
63. he feigned to sit some time, er saß einige Zeit und that, als ob er. 64. erwartete.
65. Gehorsam. 66. vorrückte.

its billows¹, he turned² to his courtiers, and remarked³ to them, that every creature in the universe was feeble⁴ and impotent⁵ — and that power resided⁶ with one Being⁷ alone, in whose hands were all the elements of nature; who could say⁸ to the ocean, *thus⁹ far shalt thou go and no farther*; and who could level¹⁰ with his nod¹¹ the most towering¹² piles of human ambition. *Hume.*

1. What did Canute's flatterers exclaim?

2. What did the Monarch order to be done?

3. When the sea advanced, what did Canute remark to his courtiers?

XXXV. A Fleet¹³ Marriage¹⁴, By an Irishman.

“By *Mac and O, you'll always know
True Irishmen, they say,
But if they lack, both O and Mac,
No Irishmen are they.”

Moore.

Lady C—¹⁵ was a beautiful woman, but Lady C— was an extravagant¹⁶ woman. She was still¹⁷ single¹⁷, though¹⁸ rather¹⁹ past²⁰ extreme youth. Like most pretty²¹ females²², she had looked²³ too high, had estimated²⁴ her own loveliness²⁵ too dearly²⁶, and now she refused²⁷ to believe that she was²⁸ not as²⁹ charming³⁰ as ever. So no wonder she still remained³¹ unmarried³².

Lady C— had about³³ five thousand pounds in the world. She owed³⁴ about forty thousand pounds; so, with all her wit³⁵ and beauty, she got³⁶ into the Fleet, and was³⁷ likely to remain there.

Now, in the time I speak³⁸ of, every lady had³⁹ her head dressed³⁹ by a barber; and the barber of the Fleet was the handsomest barber in London. Pat O'Philan was a great admirer⁴⁰ of the fair⁴¹ sex: and where's⁴² the wonder? Sure⁴³ Pat was an Irishman. It was one very fine morning when O'Philan was dressing her captivating⁴⁴ head⁴⁵, that her ladyship⁴⁶ took⁴⁷ it into her mind to talk⁴⁸ to him, and Pat was well pleased⁴⁹, for⁵⁰ Lady C—'s teeth were the whitest, and her smile⁵¹ the brightest⁵² in all the world.

“So you're⁵³ not married, Pat⁵⁴,” says she.

1. Wogen. 2. wandte sich.
3. machte — die Bemerkung. 4. schwach.
5. unmächtig. 6. gehöre. 7. Wesen.
8. sagen.* 9. *thus far*, so weit.
10. zerstören, vernichten. 11. Wink.
12. *towering piles*, hochmüthigsten Gedanken.
13. *Fleet*, ein Schuldgefängniß in London.
14. Heirat. 15. die Gräfin C. 16. verschwenderisch.
17. immer noch ledig.
18. obwohl. 19. etwas.
20. *past extreme youth*, über das blühende Jugendalter hinaus.
21. hübschen. 22. Frauen.
23. *looked too high*, zu hoch hinaus wollen.
24. geschätzt. 25. Schönheit. 26. zu hoch.
27. *refused to believe*, wollte sie nicht mehr glauben.
28. sei (s. Reg XXXIII. S. 508 d. Gramm.).

29. eben so. 30. reizend als je. 31. blieb.
32. unverheiratet. 33. ungefähr.
34. schuldete. 35. Wit. 36. gerieth.
37. *was likely to remain there*, es war wahrscheinlich, daß sie dort bliebe.
38. *I speak of*, wovon ich spreche.
39. *had her head dressed*, ließ sich frisieren.
40. Bewunderer.
41. *fair sex*, des schönen Geschlechts.
42. *where's the*, es ist kein. 43. Pat war ja.
44. bezauberndes. 45. Haupt. 46. Gnaden.
47. *took it into her mind*, setzte es sich in den Kopf. 48. zu sprechen.*
49. sehr vergnügt darüber. 50. denn.
51. Lächeln. 52. holdseligste.
53. *you are*, (s. die verbliebenen Abkürzungen § 113 S. 336 der Grammatik).
54. *Pat*, Abkürzung von *Patrick*, Patricius.

* An dem *Mac* und *O* kann man immer, sagt man, die echten Irländer erkennen, wenn sie aber vor ihrem Namen kein *O* oder *Mac* haben, so sind sie keine echten Irländer.

"Devil¹ an inch! your honour's² ladyship;" says he.

"And wouldn't³ you like to be married?" asks she again.

"Would a duck⁴ swim?"**

"Is⁵ there⁵ any one you'd prefer⁶?"

"May⁷ be, madam," says he, "you never heard of Kathleen O'Reilly, down⁸ beyond Doneraile? Her father's⁹ cousin to O'Donaghew, who's own¹⁰ steward¹¹ to¹² Mr. Murphy, the under-agent to my Lord Kingstown, and —"

"Hush¹³!" says she; "sure¹⁴ I don't want to know who she is. But, would she have¹⁵ you, if you asked¹⁶ her?"

"Ah, then, I only¹⁷ wish I'd¹⁸ be after putting the question¹⁸."

"And why don't¹⁹ you?"

"Sure²⁰ I'm too poor." And Philan heaved²¹ a prodigious²² sigh²³.

"Would you like to be rich?"

"Does** a dog bark²⁴?"

"If I make you rich, will you do as I tell you?"

"Mille murthers²⁵! your honor, don't be tantalizing²⁶ a poor boy."

"Indeed²⁷ I'm not," said Lady C— "So listen²⁸. How would you like to marry me?"

"Ah, then, my lady²⁹, I believe²⁹ the *King of Russia* himself would be proud³⁰ to do that same, leave³¹ alone a poor devil like Pat Philan."

"Well, O'Philan, if you'll marry me to-morrow, I'll give you a thousand pounds."

"O! whilaboloo³²! whilaboloo! sure³³ I'm mad³⁴, or enchanted³⁵ by the good³⁶ people," roared³⁷ Pat, dancing round³⁸ the room.

"But there are conditions³⁹," says Lady C— "After the first day of our nuptials⁴⁰ you must never see me again, nor claim⁴¹ me for your wife."

"I don't like that," says Pat, for he had been⁴² ogling her ladyship most⁴³ desperately.

"But, remember⁴⁴ Kathleen O'Reilly. With the money I'll give you, you may go and marry her."

"That's true," says he. "But, then, the bigamy?"

"I'll never appear⁴⁵ against you," says her ladyship.

1. devil an inch, ganz und gar nicht. 2. Gnaden.
3. möchten Sie nicht (s. § 127. S. 246 d. Gramm.). 4. schwimmt eine Ente gern.
5. gibt es. 6. vorziehen.
7. may be, vielleicht.
8. down beyond, jenseits. 9. Vater ist.
10. wirklicher. 11. Verwalter.
12. des. 13. Stille.
14. sure I don't want to know, ich will ja nicht wissen. 15. zum Ehemann nehmen.
16. um sie anhielten. 17. nur.
18. daß ich ihr einmal die Frage gestellt hätte.
19. warum thun Sie es nicht.
20. sure I'm, ich bin ja. 21. stieß — aus.

22. ungeheuren. 23. Seufzer. 24. bellt.
25. um Gottes Willen („tausend Mordthaten“).
26. haben Sie — nicht zum Besten.
27. indeed I'm not, in der That, ich thue es nicht.
28. hören Sie. 29. Frau Gräfin, ich glaube.
30. stolz. 31. leave alone, wie viel mehr.
32. Herr je! 33. gewiß. 34. toll.
35. behert. 36. Jeen. 37. schrie.
38. indem er im Zimmer herum tanzte.
39. Bedingungen. 40. Ehe.
41. nor claim me for, auch auf mich als — keinen Anspruch machen.
42. been ogling, geliebäugelt. 43. ungeheuer.
44. erinnern Sie sich. 45. auftreten.

** NB. Bekanntlich gibt der Irländer nie eine gerade Antwort, sondern er antwortet dadurch, daß er eine andere Frage stellt.

"Only remember you must take¹ an oath never to call² me your wife after to-morrow, and never to go³ telling all the story."

"Devil⁴ a word I'll ever say."

"Well, then," says she; "there's ten pounds. Go and buy⁵ a licence⁶, and leave⁷ the rest to me;" and then she explained⁸ to him where he was⁹ to go, and when he was to come, and all¹⁰ that.

The next day Pat was true¹¹ to his appointment¹², and found two gentlemen already with her ladyship.

"Have you got¹³ the licence?" says she.

"Here it is, my lady," says he, and he gave¹⁴ it to her. She handed¹⁵ it to one of the gentlemen, who viewed¹⁶ it attentively¹⁷. Then, calling¹⁸ in her two servants, she turned¹⁹ to the gentleman who was²⁰ reading.

"Perform²¹ the ceremony," says she.

And sure²² enough, in ten minutes, Pat O'Philan was the husband, the legal²³ husband, of the lovely Lady C—.

"That²⁴ will do," says she to her new husband, as he gave her a hearty²⁵ kiss; "that'll²⁴ do. Now, sir, give me my marriage²⁶ certificate²⁶." The old gentleman did so, and bowing²⁷ respectfully to²⁸ the five pound note she gave him, he retired²⁹ with his clerk³⁰; for, sure²² enough, I forgot³¹ to tell you he was a parson³².

"Go and bring me the warden³³," says my lady to one of her servants.

"Yes, my lady," says she, and presently the warden appeared³⁴.

"Will you be good³⁵ enough," says Lady C—, in³⁶ a voice that would allure³⁷ a bird³⁸ off³⁹ a tree, — "will you be good enough to send and fetch⁴⁰ me a hackney-coach⁴¹? I wish to leave⁴² this prison⁴³ immediately."

"Your ladyship forgets³¹," replied⁴⁴ he, "that you must pay⁴⁵ forty thousand pounds before I can let you go."

"I am a married woman. You can detain⁴⁶ my husband, but not me." And she smiled⁴⁷ at Philan, who⁴⁸ began rather to dislike the appearance of things⁴⁸.

"Pardon me, my lady, it is well known you are single⁴⁹."

"I tell you I am married."

"Where's your husband?"

1. *take an oath*, einen Eid leisten.
2. zu nennen.
3. *to go telling all*, die ganze — erzählen.
4. *devil a word*, der Teufel mag jedes Wort holen, was. 5. kaufen Sie.
6. Erlaubnißschein.
7. überlassen Sie mir das Weitere.
8. erklärte.
9. *was to go*, gehen* sollte (s. Reg. II. S. 477 d. Grammatik.).
10. *all that*, so weiter. 11. getreu.
12. Versprechen, Verabredung. 13. bekommen.*
14. gab.* 15. überreichte. 16. besichtigte.
17. aufmerksam. 18. *calling in*, herein rufend.
19. wandte sich an. 20. *was reading*, las.
21. vollführen Sie.

22. *sure enough*, ganz gewiß. 23. gesetzliche.
24. *that will do*, das ist genug; so ist es recht.
25. herzlich. 26. Heirathsschein.
27. sich verbeugend. 28. vor.
29. entfernte — sich. 30. Kirchendiener.
31. vergaß. 32. Pfarrer. 33. Kerkermeister.
34. erschien. 35. *good enough*, so gut.
36. mit. 37. locken. 38. Vogel. 39. vom.
40. holen — lassen. 41. Mietwagen.
42. zu verlassen. 43. Gefängniß. 44. versetzte.
45. bezahlen. 46. zurück behalten.
47. *smiled at*, lächelte — an.
48. *who began rather to dislike the appearance of things*, dem das Aussehen der Dinge nicht mehr ganz gefiel.
49. ledig.

"There, Sir!" and she pointed¹ to the astonished barber; "there he stands. Here is my marriage-certificate, which you can peruse² at³ your leisure. My servants yonder⁴ were witnesses⁵ of the ceremony. Now detain⁶ me, Sir, one instant at⁷ your peril."

The warden was dumb-founded⁸, and no wonder. Poor O'Philan would have spoken⁹, but neither¹⁰ party would let¹¹ him. The lawyer¹² below was consulted¹³. The result was evident¹⁴. In half an hour Lady C— was free, and Pat O'Philan, her legitimate¹⁵ husband, a prisoner for¹⁶ debt to the¹⁷ amount of forty thousand pounds.

Well, Sir, for some time Pat thought¹⁸ he was in a dream, and the creditors¹⁹ thought they were still²⁰ worse. The following day they held a meeting²¹, and finding how they had been tricked²², swore they'd detain²³ poor Pat for ever. But as they well knew²⁴ he had nothing, and wouldn't feel²⁵ much shame in²⁶ going through the Insolvent-Court²⁷, they²⁸ made the best of a bad bargain²⁸ and let him out²⁹.

Well, you must know, about³⁰ a week after³¹ this, Paddy O'Philan was sitting³² by his little fire, and thinking³³ over the wonderful things he had seen, when as³⁴ sure as death, the postman³⁵ brought him a letter, the first he had ever received³⁶, which he took³⁷ over³⁸ to a friend of his³⁹, one Ryan, a fruit-seller⁴⁰, because, you see, he was no great⁴¹ hand at reading writing, to decipher⁴² for him. It ran⁴³ thus: —

"Go to Doneraile, and marry Kathleen O'Reilly. The instant the knot⁴⁴ is tied, I fulfil⁴⁵ my promise of making⁴⁶ you comfortable for life. But, as⁴⁷ you value⁴⁸ life and liberty, never⁴⁹ breathe⁴⁹ a syllable of what has passed⁵⁰. Remember you are in my power if you tell the story. The money will be paid to you directly⁵¹ when you inclose⁵² me your marriage-certificate. I send you fifty pounds for present⁵³ expenses⁵⁴. "C—".

Oh! happy Paddy! Didn't⁵⁵ he get drunk, that same night, and didn't he start⁵⁶ next day for⁵⁷ Cork, and didn't he marry Kathleen, and touch⁵⁸ a thousand pounds? By⁵⁹ the powers he did. And what

1. deutete auf. 2. überlesen.
3. at your leisure, nach Muße. 4. da.
5. Zeugen. 6. halten Sie — zurück.
7. at your peril, auf Ihre Verantwortung.
8. wie vom Blitz getroffen. 9. gesprochen.*
10. keiner von den beiden.
11. ließ ihn zu Worte kommen. 12. Advokat.
13. um Rath gefragt. 14. klar. 15. gesetzlicher.
16. for debt, wegen einer Schuld.
17. to the amount, im Betrag.
18. dachte.* 19. Gläubiger.
20. noch schlimmer daran. 21. Versammlung.
22. betrogen. 23. zurückbehalten.
24. wußten.* 25. sich nicht sehr schämen.
26. in going through, zu erscheinen.
27. Schuldengerichtshof.
28. they made, &c., so machten sie gute Miene zum bösen Spiel.
29. laufen. 30. ungefähr. 31. darnach.
32. saß. 33. dachte über — nach
34. as sure as death, so gewiß wie der Tod.

35. Briefträger. 36. je erhalten.
37. trug.* 38. hinüber.
39. von ihm (s. Reg. XI. S. 412 d. Gramm.).
40. Obsthändler.
41. no great hand at reading writing, im Handschreiben kein großer Künstler.
42. to decipher for him, damit er (der Obster) den Brief für ihn entziffere.
43. lautete wie folgt
44. knot is tied, Knoten fest ist.
45. erfülle.
46. of making you comfortable for life, Sie lebenslänglich glücklich zu machen.
47. wenn. 48. schätzen.
49. sagen Sie nie. 50. vorgefallen ist.
51. sogleich. 52. zuschicken.
53. gegenwärtige. 54. Ausgaben.
55. didn't he get drunk, betrank er sich nicht.
56. reiste — nicht. 57. nach.
58. bekam, empfang — nicht.
59. by the powers, beim Jupiter.

is more, he took¹ a cottage², which perhaps you know, not a hundred miles from Bruffin, in the county of Limerick: and as sure as day, he forgot his first wife clean³ and entirely, and never told⁴ any one but⁵ myself, under a promise of secrecy⁶, the story of his "Fleet Marriage."

So, remember, as⁷ it's a secret, don't tell it to any one⁸, you see.

1. Where and what is the Fleet? — 2. Describe Lady C—?

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 48.

3. What answer did Pat O'Philan give, when Lady C—asked whether he would marry her?

NB. Obige Frage bezieht sich auf Seite 49.

4. After the marriage was over, whom did Lady C— order to be brought?

5. What did she say to the Warden?

6. What was the warden's reply, and what did Lady C— say?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 50.

7. Who was kept prisoner? — 8. What did Pat think?

9. What was brought to Pat, and what did it contain?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 51.

XXXI. Infamous⁹ Turpitude¹⁰.

Have you confessed¹¹ all? said a venerable¹² *abbé* to a sinner¹³ at confession¹⁴. — No replied the latter, I have another sin on¹⁵ my conscience¹⁶; I have stolen a watch¹⁷, will you accept¹⁸ it? — I! said the offended¹⁹ priest, how dare²⁰ you insult²¹ me and my holy profession in²² such a manner? Return²³ the watch instantly to the owner²⁴. — I have already²⁵ offered to restore it, and he has refused²⁶, therefore I beseech²⁷ you to take²⁸ it. — Cease²⁹ to insult me, said the *abbé*, you should have offered it again. — I have done so, replied³⁰ the thief³¹, and he declares he will not accept¹⁸ it. — In that case³², said the holy and unsuspecting³³ father, I can absolve³⁴ you; but I strictly³⁵ enjoin³⁶ you not to commit³⁷ any more thefts³⁸. — Soon after the departure³⁹ of the penitent⁴⁰, the curate⁴¹ discovered that his own watch had ben stolen from the hook⁴² on which he was accustomed⁴³ to hang it; and he then perceived⁴⁴ that the impious⁴⁵ thief had offered²⁵ it to him, but he had refused²⁶ to accept it.

1. What did the sinner confess he had stolen?

2. What did the *Abbé* order him to do, and what was his answer?

3. What did the Curate discover when the thief was gone?

1. mietete. 2. Häuschen.
3. *clean and entirely*, ganz und gar.
4. nie erzählte er. 5. außer.
6. *of secrecy*, daß ich es geheim halte. 7. da.
8. erzählen Sie es Niemanden, den Sie zufällig sehen. 9. berücktigte.
10. Abscheulichkeit. 11. gebeichtet.
12. ehrwürdiger. 13. Sünder.
14. bei der Beichte. 15. auf. 16. Gewissen.
17. Uhr. 18. annehmen. 19. beleidigte.
20. kannst du dich erdreisten.
21. zu beleidigen. 22. auf eine.

23. gib — zurück. 24. Eigenthümer.
25. *already offered to restore it*, sie schon dar-
geboten.
26. sich geweigert (man ergänze „sie anzunehmen“).
27. ersuche. 28. anzunehmen.*
29. höre auf. 30. erwiederte. 31. Dieb.
32. Fall. 33. arglose. 34. absolviren.
35. strengstens. 36. befehle. 37. zu begehen.
38. Diebstähle. 39. Abgang.
40. Büßenden. 41. Pfarrer.
42. Haken auf den. 43. gewohnt.
44. bemerkte. 45. gottlose.

B. Fables (fables), Narratives, &c.

XXXVII. The Wolf and the Lamb.

One hot, sultry¹ day, a Wolf and a Lamb happened² to come, just³ at the same time, to quench⁴ their thirst in the stream of a clear silver brook⁵, that ran⁶ tumbling⁷ down⁸ the side of a rocky⁹ mountain. The Wolf stood¹⁰ upon the higher¹¹ ground; and the Lamb at some distance¹² from him down¹³ the current¹³. However¹⁴, the Wolf, having¹⁵ a mind to pick¹⁶ a quarrel with him, asked¹⁷ him, what he meant¹⁸ by troubling¹⁹ the water, and making²⁰ it so muddy²¹ that he could not drink; and at the same time demanded satisfaction²². The Lamb, frightened²³ at this threatening²⁴ charge²⁵, told him, in a tone as mild as possible, That, with humble²⁶ submission²⁷, he could not conceive²⁸ how that could be; since²⁹ the water which he drank, ran down from the Wolf to him, and therefore³⁰ it could not be disturbed³¹ so far up³¹ the stream. Be³² that as it may, replied the Wolf, you are a rascal³³, and I have been told that you treated³⁴ me with ill language behind my back³⁵ about³⁶ half a year ago³⁷. Upon my word, says the lamb, the time you mention³⁸ was before I was born. That may be, replied the Wolf; but it was no later³⁹ than yesterday that I saw⁴⁰ your Sire⁴¹ encouraging⁴² the Hounds that were pursuing⁴³ me. Pardon me! answered the Lamb, my poor Sire fell a victim⁴⁴ to the Butcher's⁴⁵ knife upwards⁴⁶ of a month since⁴⁶? It was your Dam⁴⁷, then, replied the savage⁴⁸ beast. My Dam, said the innocent Lamb, died⁴⁹ on the day I was born. Dead or not, vociferated⁵⁰ the Wolf, as he gnashed⁵¹ his teeth in rage⁵²; I know very well that all the breed⁵³ of you hate⁵⁴ me, and therefore I am determined to have⁵⁵ my revenge⁵⁶. So saying, he sprung upon the poor, innocent, defenceless⁵⁷ thing, tore⁵⁸ it to pieces and devoured⁵⁹ it.

1. schwülen.
2. happened to come, kamen zufällig.
3. gerade zur selben Zeit. 4. Löschen.
5. Baches. 6. lief. 7. stürzend.
8. hinunter. 9. felsigen. 10. stand.
11. higher ground, höher hinauf.
12. Entfernung von ihm.
13. Strom abwärts. 14. jedoch.
15. having a mind, da er im Sinne hatte.
16. pick a quarrel, einen Streit — anzufangen.
17. so fragte er.
18. meant by, damit meine*, daß es.
19. trübe. 20. mache.* 21. schmutzig.
22. Genugthuung. 23. erschrocken durch.
24. drohende. 25. Anklage.
26. demüthiger. 27. Unterwürfigkeit.
28. begreifen. 29. da. 30. deswegen.

31. getrübt werden so weit — hinauf.
32. be that &c., dem sei wie ihm wolle.
33. Schuft.
34. treated me with ill language, mir Uebles nachgeredet habet.
35. Rücken. 36. ungefähr. 37. vor.
38. die Sie erwähnen. 39. no later than, erst.
40. sah. 41. Vater. 42. aufmunternd.
43. verfolgten. 44. als Opfer.
45. Fleischermeßers. 46. vor mehr als.
47. Mutter. 48. wilde. 49. starb.
50. brüllte. 51. knirschte, fletschte.
52. Wuth.
53. all the breed of you, deine ganze Race.
54. haßt. 55. zu nehmen.
56. Rache. 57. schutzlose.
58. zerriß es in. 59. verschlang.

*Application*¹.

When a cruel, ill-natured² man has³ a mind to abuse⁴ one inferior⁵ to himself, either in power or courage, though⁶ he has not given the least occasion⁷ for it, how does⁸ he resemble⁸ the Wolf! Where cruelty and malice⁹ are in combination¹⁰ with power, nothing is so easy¹¹ as for them to find a pretence¹² to tyrannize over innocence, and exercise¹³ all¹⁴ manner of injustice.

Injustice¹⁵, leagu'd¹⁶ with Strength¹⁷ and Power,

Nor¹⁸ Truth nor Innocence can¹⁸ stay¹⁹

In vain²⁰ they plead²¹ when tyrants lower²²,

And seek to make the weak²³ their prey²⁴:

No equal²⁵ rights obtain²⁶ regard,

When passions fire²⁷, and spoils²⁸ reward.

Dr. Croxall.

XXXVIII. The Giant (ðjɛɪənt)²⁹ **and the Dwarf** (duɔrɪ)³⁰.

Once³¹ upon a time, a giant and a dwarf³² were friends, and kept³³ together. They made³⁴ a bargain that they would never forsake³⁵ each other, but³⁶ go and seek adventures³⁷. The first battle³⁸ they fought³⁹ was with⁴⁰ two Saracens; and the dwarf, who was very courageous⁴¹ dealt⁴² one of the champions a most angry⁴³ blow⁴⁴. It did the Saracen very little injury⁴⁵, who, lifting⁴⁶ up his sword, fairly⁴⁷ struck off the poor dwarf's arm. He was now in a woful⁴⁸ plight⁴⁹; but the giant, coming to his assistance⁵⁰, in a short time left⁵¹ the two Saracens dead on the plain⁵², and the dwarf cut⁵³ off the dead man's head out⁵⁴ of spite. They then travelled⁵⁵ on to another adventure. This was against three bloody-minded⁵⁶ satyrs, who were carrying⁵⁷ off a damsel⁵⁸ in distress. The dwarf was not quite⁵⁹ so fierce⁶⁰ now as before; but for⁶¹ all that, struck⁶² the first blow, which was returned⁶³ by another which knocked⁶⁴ out his eye; but the giant was⁶⁵ soon up with them, and had they not fled⁶⁶ would certainly have killed⁶⁷ them every⁶⁸ one. They were all very joyful⁶⁹ for⁷⁰ this victory, and the damsel who was relieved⁷¹, fell⁷² in love with the giant, and married him.

1. Anwendung, Moral. 2. böshafter.
3. *has a mind*, wünscht. 4. zu mißhandeln.
5. nachsteht. 6. wenn auch.
7. *the least occasion for it*, die geringste Veranlassung dazu. 8. ist — gleich.
9. Bosheit. 10. vereinigt. 11. leichter.
12. Vorwand — um. 13. auszuüben.
14. *all manner*, allerlei Arten.
15. wenn die Ungerechtigkeit.
16. verbunden ist. 17. Kraft.
18. *nor — nor — can*, so kann weder — noch.
19. sich dagegen schützen, wehren. 20. umsonst.
21. bitten. 22. drohen. 23. Schwachen.
24. Beute. 25. keine gleichen.
26. *obtain regard*, werden beachtet.
27. anfeuern. 28. Beute belohnt.
29. Riese. 30. Zwerg.
31. *once upon a time*, es gab ein Mal.
32. man ergänze „welche“.
33. *kept together*, zusammen hielten.
34. *made a bargain*, schlossen einen Vertrag.

35. verlassen. 36. sondern. 37. Abenteuer.
38. Schlacht, man ergänzt „die“ oder „welche“.
39. fochten.* 40. gegen. 41. tapfer.
42. gab. 43. zornigen.
44. Schlag. 45. Schaden. 46. aufhebend.
47. *fairly struck off*, schlug — ganz ab.
48. beklagenswerthen. 49. Zustand.
50. Hilfe. 51. lagen. 52. Ebene.
53. schnitt* — ab.
54. *out of spite*, aus Rache, Groll.
55. reisten weiter. 56. blutdürstigen Waldgötter.
57. fortschleppten.
58. *damsel, &c.*, ein unglückliches Fräulein.
59. ganz. 60. hitzig, ungestüm.
61. *for all that*, dessen ungeachtet.
62. versetzte er den ersten Schlag. 63. erwiedert.
64. *knocked, &c.*, ihm ein Auge aususchlug.
65. *was soon up with them*, kam bald hinzu.
66. geflohn.* 67. getötet. 68. Alle.
69. erfreut. 70. über. 71. gerettet.
72. *fell in love with*, verliebte sich in.

They now travelled far¹, and farther than I can tell, till they met² with a gang³ of robbers. The giant, for⁴ the first time, was foremost⁵ now; but the dwarf was not far behind. The battle was stout⁶ and long. Wherever⁷ the giant came, all fell before him; but the dwarf had⁸ like to have been killed more than once. At last, the victory declared⁹ for the two adventurers; but the dwarf lost his leg¹⁰. The dwarf had now lost an arm, a leg and an eye, while¹¹ the giant was without¹² a single¹³ wound; upon¹⁴ which he cried out to his little companion; — "My little hero, this is glorious sport¹⁵; let us get¹⁶ one victory more, and then we shall have honour for ever." "No," cries the dwarf, who was by this time grown¹⁷ wiser; "no, I declare¹⁸ off; I'll fight no more: for¹⁹ I find in every battle, that you get²⁰ all the honour and rewards²¹, but all the blows fall upon me."

Application.

Such²² as are poor, and will associate²³ with none but the rich, are hated²⁴ by those they avoid²⁵, and despised²⁶ by those they follow²⁷. Unequal²⁸ combinations²⁹ are always disadvantageous³⁰ to the weaker³¹ side: the rich having³² the pleasure, and the poor the inconveniences³³ that result³⁴ from³⁵ them.

Oliver Goldsmith.

1. What did the giant cry out to the dwarf?
2. What was the dwarf's reply?

XXXIX. The Bundle³⁶ of Sticks.

A good old man, no³⁷ matter where,
Whether³⁸ in York or Lancashire;
Or on a hill, or in a dale³⁹,
It cannot much⁴⁰ concern our tale;
Had children very⁴¹ much like others,
Composed⁴² of sisters and of brothers:
In life he had not much to give,
Save⁴³ his example how⁴⁴ to live;
His luck⁴⁵ was what⁴⁶ his neighbours had,
For⁴⁷ some⁴⁸ were good and some were bad;
When⁴⁹ of their father death⁵⁰ bereft 'em⁵¹,
His good advice⁵² was all⁵³ he left 'em⁵⁴.

1. weit. 2. trafen. 3. Räuberbande.
4. zum. 5. der Erste. 6. hartnäckig.
7. wohin auch immer.
8. *had like to have been*, war — beinahe (siehe Anmerk. 56. S. 244 d. Grammatik).
9. erklärte sich. 10. Bein.
11. während dem. 12. ohne. 13. einzige.
14. *upon which*, worauf.
15. Zeitvertreib. 16. gewinnen. 17. geworden.
18. *I declare off*, ich bin nicht dabei.
19. denn. 20. bekommen. 21. Belohnung.
22. diejenigen welche.
23. *will associate with none but the rich*, bloß mit den Reichen Umgang pflegen wollen.
24. verhaßt. 25. vermeiden. 26. verachtet.
27. *they follow*, deren Gesellschaft sie aufsuchen.

28. ungleiche. 29. Verbindungen.
30. nachtheilig. 31. schwächere.
32. da — haben. 33. Unbequemlichkeiten.
34. entstehen. 35. daraus.
36. das Bündel Ruthen.
37. *no matter*, es macht nichts. 38. ob. 39. Thal.
40. *it cannot much concern our tale*, es geht unsere Erzählung nicht sehr an.
41. *very much like*, ungefähr wie.
42. bestehend aus. 43. außer.
44. *how to live*, wie man leben solle.
45. Glück. 46. dasselbe wie. 47. denn.
48. *some were*, bisweilen ging es ihm gut.
49. als. 50. Tod. 51. sie — beraubte.
52. Rath. 53. Alles, was.
54. ihnen hinterließ.

This good old man, who long had lain¹
 Afflicted² with disease³ and pain,
 With difficulty drew⁴ his breath⁵,
 And felt the sure approach⁶ of death.
 He still⁷ had lived⁷ an honest life,
 Kind⁸ to his neighbour and his wife;
 His practice⁹ good, his faith¹⁰ was sound¹¹,
 He built¹² his hopes on Scripture¹³ ground;
 And knowing¹⁴ life hangs on¹⁵ a breath¹⁶,
 He always lived prepared¹⁷ for death;
 He trusted¹⁸ God, nor¹⁹ feared to die —
 May it be thus²⁰ with you and I²¹!
 Nor²² let us hope to die content²³,
 Unless²⁴ our lives be wisely spent²⁵.

He called²⁶ his children round²⁷ his bed,
 And with a feeble²⁸ voice he said:
 "Alas²⁹, alas! my children dear,
 "I well perceive my end is near:
 "I suffer much but kiss the rod³⁰,
 "And bow³¹ me to³² the will of God
 "Yet³³ ere from you I'm quite removed³⁴,
 "From you whom always I have loved,
 "I wish to give you all my blessing³⁵,
 "And leave³⁶ you with a useful³⁷ lesson;
 "That when I've left this world of care³⁸,
 "Each may³⁹ his testimony bear,
 "How much⁴⁰ my latest thoughts inclined⁴¹
 "To prove⁴² me tender⁴³, good, and kind!
 "Observe⁴⁴ that fagot⁴⁵ on the ground,
 "With twisted⁴⁶ hazel firmly⁴⁷ bound⁴⁸."

The children turned⁴⁹ their eyes that way,
 And viewed⁵⁰ the fagot as it lay:
 But wondered what their father meant⁵¹,
 Who thus⁵² expounded⁵² his intent⁵³;
 "I wish that all of you would take it,
 "And try⁵⁴ if any one can break it."
 Obedient⁵⁵ to the good old man,
 They all to try their strength⁵⁶ began:
 Now boy, now girl, now he, now she,
 Applied⁵⁷ the fagot to⁵⁸ their knee;

1. gelegen. 2. gequält von.
 3. Krankheit. 4. holte* er.
 5. Athem. 6. Annäherung.
 7. immer — geführt. 8. gütig gegen.
 9. Handlungen. 10. Glaube. 11. fest.
 12. baute. 13. biblischen.
 14. da er wußte, daß. 15. von.
 16. Athemzug. 17. vorbereitet. 18. traute.
 19. *nor feared*, und fürchtete sich nicht. 20. so.
 21. das "I" muß hier als eine dichterische Freiheit betrachtet werden, grammatisch müßte es *me* heißen.
 22. *nor let us hope*, auch dürfen wir nicht hoffen.
 23. glücklich. 24. wenn — nicht.
 25. verbracht ist. 26. rief.
 27. rund um. 28. schwacher.
 29. o weh! 30. Ruthe. 31. beuge.

32. unter. 33. doch ehe ich.
 34. weggenommen. 35. Segen.
 36. verlassen. 37. nützlichen Lehre.
 38. der Sorge.
 39. *may his testimony bear*, Zeugniß ablegen kann. 40. wie sehr.
 41. dahin gerichtet waren.
 42. beweisen. 43. zärtlich.
 44. sehet. 45. Reisigbündel.
 46. *twisted hazel* (heßl), Haselbinden.
 47. fest. 48. gebunden.*
 49. richteten.
 50. betrachteten. 51. meinte.
 52. wie folgt — erklärte. 53. Absicht.
 54. versucht. 55. gehorsam gegen.
 56. Kraft. 57. legte.
 58. über das Knie.

They tugg'd¹ and strain'd², and tried again,
But still³ they tugg'd and tried in vain⁴!
In vain their skill⁵ and strength exerted⁶;
The fagot every effort⁷ thwarted⁸;
And when their labour⁹ vain they found
They threw¹⁰ the fagot on the ground.

Again the good old man proceeded¹¹,
To give the instructions¹² which they needed¹³.
"Untwist¹⁴," says he, "the hazel bind¹⁵,
"And let¹⁶ the fagot be disjoin'd¹⁶."
Then stick¹⁷ by stick, and twig¹⁸ by twig,
The little children and the big¹⁹,
Following²⁰ the words their father spoke²¹,
Each spring²² and spray²³ they quickly broke;
"There, father!" all began to cry²⁴,
"I've broken mine! — and I! — and I!"
Replied the Sire²⁵: — "Twas my intent
"My family to represent²⁶:
"While²⁷ you are join'd²⁸ in friendship's²⁹ throng²⁹.
"My dearest children, you'll be strong!
"But if by quarrel³⁰ and dispute³¹,
"You undermine³² affection's³³ root³⁴,
"And thus the strengthening³⁵ cord³⁶ divide³⁷,
"Then will³⁸ my children ill³⁹ betide:
"E'en⁴⁰ beasts⁴¹ of prey⁴¹ in bands⁴² unite⁴³,
"And kindly for each other fight⁴⁴;
"And shall not Christian children be
"Join'd in sweet⁴⁵ links⁴⁶ of amity⁴⁷?
"If separate⁴⁸, you will each be weak⁴⁹;
"Each like a single⁵⁰ stick will break:
"But if you're firm⁵¹ and true⁵² and hearty⁵³,
"The world, and all its spite⁵⁴, can't part⁵⁵ ye."
The father having closed⁵⁶ his lesson,
Proceeded⁵⁷ to pronounce⁵⁸ his blessing⁵⁹;
Embraced them all, then pray'd and sigh'd⁶⁰,
Look'd⁶¹ up, and dropp'd⁶² his head — and died!

Application.

And thus, my countrymen, should you,
And I, and all, be firm and true,
If Christian faith⁶³ and love combine⁶⁴ us,
And sweet affection's³³ cord³⁶ entwine⁶⁵ us,

1. zerrten. 2. zogen. 3. immer noch.
4. vergeblich. 5. Geschicklichkeit.
6. wandten — daran. 7. Anstrengung.
8. vereitelte. 9. Mühe. 10. warfen.*
11. fuhr fort. 12. Belehrung. 13. bedürften.
14. machet los. 15. Hasel-Binde.
16. leget — auseinander.
17. Stock für Stock. 18. Zweig.
19. großen. 20. gehorchend auf. 21. sprach.*
22. Sproß. 23. Reiz. 24. auszurufen.
25. Vater. 26. darzustellen. 27. so lang.
28. vereint. 29. im Kreise der Freundschaft.
30. Zank. 31. Streit. 32. untergrabet.
33. der Liebe. 34. Wurzel. 35. kräftigende.

36. Band. 37. löset, zerstöret. 38. wird es.
39. ill betide, schlecht gehen. 40. sogar.
41. Raubthiere. 42. Truppen.
43. vereinigen sich. 44. kämpfen.
45. liebevollen. 46. Banden.
47. der Freundschaft. 48. vereinzelt.
49. schwach. 50. einzelner.
51. entschlossen. 52. treu. 53. herzlich.
54. Haß. 55. trennen. 56. beendet.
57. fuhr er fort. 58. ertheilten.
59. Segen. 60. seufzte.
61. blickte gen Himmel. 62. neigte.
63. Glaube. 64. vereinen.
65. umschlingt.

We need¹ encourage² no dejection³,
 Secure⁴ in the Divine⁵ protection;
 In prosperous⁶ days we'll bless⁷ our God,
 And when He smites⁸, we'll kiss the rod.

Campbell.

XL. The Vulture's⁹ Lessons.

An old vulture was¹⁰ sitting on a naked prominence¹¹, with her young about¹² her, whom she was instructing¹³ in the arts¹⁴ of a vulture's life, and preparing¹⁵, by her last lecture¹⁶, for their final¹⁷ dismissal¹⁸ to the mountains and the skies¹⁹.

"My children," said the old vulture, "you will the less²⁰ want²⁰ my instructions²¹, because you have had my practice before your eyes; you have seen me²² snatch from the farm²³ the household²⁴ fowls²⁴, you have seen me seize²⁵ the leveret²⁶ in the bush, and the kid²⁷ in the pasture²⁸; you know²⁹ how to fix your talons³⁰, and how to balance³¹ your flight when you are laden³² with your prey³³. But you remember the taste³⁴ of more delicious³⁵ food³⁶. I have often regaled³⁷ you with the flesh of man³⁸." "Tell us," said the young vultures, "where man may be found, and how³⁹ he may be known; his flesh is surely the natural food of a vulture. Why have you never brought⁴⁰ a man in your talons to the nest?" "He is too bulky⁴¹," said the mother; "when we find a man we can only tear⁴² away his flesh, and leave his bones upon the ground." "Since man is so big⁴¹," said the young ones, "how do you kill him? You are afraid⁴³ of the wolf and of the bear, by what power are vultures superior⁴⁴ to man? Is man more defenceless⁴⁵ than a sheep?" "We have not the strength of man;" returned the mother, "and I am⁴⁶ sometimes in doubt⁴⁶ whether we have the subtlety⁴⁷; and the vultures would seldom feast⁴⁸ upon his flesh, had not nature, that devoted⁴⁹ him to our uses⁵⁰, infused⁵¹ into him a strange ferocity⁵², which I have never observed in any other being that feeds⁵³ upon the earth. Two herds of men will⁵⁴ often meet⁵⁴ and shake⁵⁵ the earth with noise, and fill the air with fire. When you hear noise, and see fire, with flashes⁵⁶ along the ground, hasten⁵⁷ to the place with your swiftest⁵⁸ wing⁵⁸ for⁵⁹ men are surely de-

1. so brauchen wir uns. 2. nicht hinzugeben.
 3. der Niedergeschlagenheit.
 4. da wir sicher sind. 5. göttlichen.
 6. glücklichen. 7. preisen. 8. züchtigt.
 9. Geiers. 10. *was sitting*, saß. 11. Anhöhe.
 12. um sich. 13. unterrichtete. 14. Künsten.
 15. bereitete sie vor. 16. Vorlesung.
 17. schließliche. 18. Entlassung. 19. Luft.
 20. um so weniger — bedürfen. 21. Lehren.
 22. *me snatch*, wie ich — erhasche.
 23. Pachthof. 24. Hausgeflügel.
 25. ergreife. 26. Häslein. 27. Zieglein.
 28. auf der Weide.
 29. *know how to fix*, versteht zu gebrauchen.
 30. Klauen.
 31. *how to balance your flight*, das Gleichgewicht im Fluge — zu behalten.

32. beladen. 33. Beute. 34. Geschmackes.
 35. köstlicheren. 36. Nahrung.
 37. bewirtet. 38. Menschenfleisch.
 39. *how he may be known*, wie man ihn erkennen kann. 40. gebracht.*
 41. groß. 42. *tear away*, wegreißen.
 43. fürchtest dich vor. 44. überlegen.
 45. wehrloser. 46. *am in doubt*, zweifelte.
 47. List, Schlaueit.
 48. *feast upon*, Gastmahl halten von.
 49. bestimmt. 50. Gebrauch. 51. eingeflößt.
 52. Grausamkeit. 53. *feeds upon*, weidet auf.
 54. treffen sich öfters.
 55. erschüttern.
 56. Blitzen, Flammen auf dem Boden. 57. eilet.
 58. schnellsten Schwingen (d. h. so schnell als möglich). 59. denn.

stroying¹ one another; you will then find the ground smoking² with blood, and covered with carcasses³, of which many are dismembered⁴ and mangled⁵ for the convenience⁶ of the vulture." "But when men have killed⁷ their prey⁸," said the pupil⁹, "why do they not eat it? When the wolf has killed a sheep, he suffers¹⁰ not the vulture to touch¹¹ it, till he has satisfied¹² himself. Is not man another kind of wolf?" "Man," said the mother, "is the only beast¹³ who kills that which he does not devour¹⁴, and this quality makes¹⁵ him so¹⁶ much a benefactor to our species¹⁷." "If man kill our prey, and lay¹⁸ it in our way," said the young¹⁹ one, "what need²⁰ shall we have of labouring²¹ for ourselves?" "Because²² man will sometimes," replied the mother, "remain²³ quiet in his den²⁴. The old vultures will tell you when you are²⁵ to watch²⁶ his motions. When you see men in great numbers²⁷ moving close together²⁷, like a flight²⁸ of storks, you may conclude²⁹ that they are hunting³⁰, and that you will soon revel³¹ in human blood." "But still³²," said the young one, "I would gladly³³ know the reason of this mutual³⁴ slaughter³⁵: I could never kill what I could not eat." "My child," said the mother, "this is a question which I cannot answer, though I am reckoned³⁶ the most subtle³⁷ bird of the mountain. When I was young, I used³⁸ frequently to visit the eyry (ihri)³⁹ of an old vulture, who dwelt⁴⁰ upon the *Carpathian* rocks; he had made many observations⁴¹; he knew the places that afforded⁴² prey round his habitation, as far in every direction as the strongest wing can fly between the rising⁴³ and the setting⁴⁴ of the summer sun; he had fed⁴⁵ year after⁴⁶ year on⁴⁷ the flesh of men. His opinion was, that men had only the appearance⁴⁸ of animal⁴⁹ life, being⁵⁰ really vegetables⁵⁰ with a power of motion⁵¹; and that as the boughs⁵² of an oak are dashed⁵³ together by the storm, that⁵⁴ swine may fatten⁵⁵ upon⁵⁶ the fallen acorns⁵⁷, so men are by some unaccountable⁵⁸ power driven⁵⁹ one against another, till they lose their motion that⁵⁴ vultures may⁶⁰ be fed⁶⁰. Others think they have observed something of contrivance⁶¹ and policy⁶² among these mischievous⁶³ beings; and those that hover⁶⁴ more closely⁶⁵ round⁶⁶ them, pretend⁶⁷, that there is in every herd one that gives⁶⁸ directions⁶⁹ to the

1. are surely destroying, bringen — gewiß um.
2. dämpfend. 3. Leichen.
4. in Stücke zerrißen. 5. zerhauen.
6. Bequemlichkeit. 7. getödtet. 8. Beute.
9. Schüler, Zögling. 10. duldet, erlaubt.
11. anrührt. 12. gesättigt. 13. Thier.
14. frißt. 15. makes him, macht ihn zu.
16. so much a, einem so großen.
17. Geschlechts. 18. lege.*
19. young one, das Junge (s. Reg. XIV. S. 431 d. Grammatik).
20. what need shall we have, warum werden wir es nöthig haben. 21. zu arbeiten.
22. weil der Mensch — pflegt bisweilen.
23. ruhig — zu bleiben.
24. Höhle. 25. sollet. 26. bewachen.
27. Anzahl sich dicht zusammen bewegen.
28. Flug. 29. daraus schließen.
30. auf der Jagd. 31. schwelgen.
32. noch. 33. gern. 34. gegenseitigen.

35. Niedermeßeln. 36. zu — gezählt.
37. listigsten, schlauesten. 38. pflegte.
39. den Horst. 40. wohnte.
41. Beobachtungen.
42. that afforded prey, wo Beute zu finden sei.
43. Aufgehen.
44. Untergehen. 45. sich genährt.
46. Jahr aus, Jahr ein. 47. von. 48. Schein.
49. animal life, des Thierlebens.
50. daß sie wirklich nur Gewächse seien.
51. der Selbstbewegung begabt.* 52. Nester.
53. are dashed together, aneinander gestoßen werden. 54. damit.
55. sich mästen können. 56. von. 57. Eicheln.
58. unerklärliche. 59. getrieben. 60. sich füttern können.
61. Plan. 62. Schlaueit, Politik.
63. böshafsten, mutwilligen. 64. schweben.
65. näher. 66. um — herum. 67. geben vor.
68. ertheilt. 69. Befehle.

rest¹, and seems to be more eminently² delighted³ with a wide⁴ carnage⁵. What it is that entitles⁶ him to⁷ such pre-eminence we know not; he is seldom the biggest⁸ or the swiftest⁹, but he shows by his eagerness¹⁰ and diligence that he is, more than any of the others, a friend of the vultures.”

Dr. Johnson.

1. What did the old vulture say to her young ones?
2. What was the old vulture's reply when asked why she never brought a man to the nest?
3. And what when asked how she killed man?
4. What will two herds of men often do?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 58.

5. What was the vulture's answer when asked whether man was not another kind of wolf?
6. And what, when asked why the vultures should labour for themselves?
7. What did the young vulture gladly wish to know? — And what was the mother's answer?
8. What was the opinion of the old vulture respecting man?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 59.

XLII. Ten Rules to be¹¹ Observed in Practical Life.

The following rules were given by the late¹² Mr. Jefferson, in a letter¹³ of advice to his namesake¹⁴, *Thomas Jefferson Smith*, in 1825:

1. Never put¹⁵ off till to-morrow what you can do to-day.
2. Never trouble¹⁶ others for¹⁷ what you can do yourself.
3. Never spend¹⁸ your money before you have it.
4. Never buy¹⁹ what you do not want²⁰ because it is cheap.
5. Pride costs us more than hunger, thirst and cold.
6. We never repent²¹ of having eaten²¹ too little.
7. Nothing is troublesome²² that we do willingly.
8. How much pains²³ have those evils²⁴ cost us which never happened²⁵.
9. Take²⁶ things always by their smooth²⁷ handle²⁷.
10. When angry²⁸, count²⁸ ten before you speak, — if very angry a hundred.

1. What must never be put off till to-morrow?
2. What must we never buy? — 3. What does pride cost?
4. How many must we count when angry, and how many when very angry?

XLII. Happiness is a Man's proper Business.

It is a man's proper²⁹ business³⁰ to seek³¹ happiness³² and avoid³³ misery³⁴. Happiness consists³⁵ in³⁶ what delights³⁷ and contents³⁸ the mind: misery in what disturbs³⁹, discomposes⁴⁰, or torments⁴¹ it⁴².

Locke.

1. Uebrigen. 2. am allermeisten.
3. entzückt zu sein. 4. ungeheuern.
5. Blutbad. 6. das Recht — verleiht.
7. to such pre-eminence, auf einen solchen Vorrang. 8. Grösste.
9. Schnellste. 10. Eifer.
11. to be observed, welche man im — beobachten soll. 12. verstorbenen.
13. letter of advice, Ratherteilungsschreiben.
14. Namensvetter.
15. never put off, schiebe nie — auf.
16. belästige. 17. um das. 18. verbrauchet.

19. kauft. 20. brauchet bloß weil es billig ist.
21. repent of having eaten, bereuen es — gegessen zu haben. 22. mühsam.
23. Besorgniß. 24. Unglücksfälle.
25. sich nie ereignet haben. 26. faßet.
27. guten Seite.
28. when angry count, wenn du zornig bist, zähle.
29. besonders. 30. Geschäft. 31. zu suchen.
32. Glück. 33. vermeiden. 34. Elend.
35. besteht. 36. in dem. 37. entzückt.
38. befriedigt. 39. beunruhigt. 40. stört.
41. quält. 42. denselben.

XLIII. Famine¹ in London.

"Facts² are stubborn³ things."

There is nothing more common⁴, or perhaps more erroneous⁵, than to praise the happiness and virtues of former⁶ times, and to exclaim⁷ against every thing modern. How often do we hear persons cry⁸ out against the over-refinement⁹ and the vices of the age¹⁰? How often do they bewail¹¹, that man has become¹² so weak, so effeminate¹³; that his morals are depraved¹⁴, his life shortened¹⁵; in a word, that he is no longer the *Robin Hood, or the Guy, Earl of Warwick* of the middle ages? In making¹⁶ those comparisons¹⁷, however, they forget that¹⁸ the *great* and *prominent*¹⁹ virtues of the olden times were strongly²⁰ contrasted with vices equally *great* and *prominent*. In contemplating²¹ the quarters about²² St. Giles in London, or the *Rue du Temple*, etc., in Paris, how apt²³ are some people to exclaim, "What misery! what wretchedness! and all this caused²⁴ by the refinement, the luxury of the nineteenth century." 'Tis true, the philosophers of old²⁵ taught²⁶ man to reduce²⁷ his wants²⁸ to the lowest²⁹ number possible, and made it even³⁰ a crime to increase³¹ them; we believe, however, that, though we cannot advocate³² luxury in the abstract³³, that even luxury has its good side, that it gives employment to thousands, and by the stimulus³⁴ it gives to action³⁵ often leads³⁶ to excellence. How often do the *Utopians*³⁷ of the present day exclaim against the wealthy, and the great, for³⁸ not assisting³⁹ the poor; for not alleviating⁴⁰, or removing⁴¹ all this misery? Unfortunately, from the time of Adam up to our own day, history presents⁴² us no period in which there was not misery and destitution⁴³, and we much fear this state⁴⁴ of things must, and will, exist to the end of the Chapter⁴⁵. However, from⁴⁶ what we have been able to glean⁴⁷ from the records⁴⁸ of the past⁴⁹, we firmly believe, that never was there a time, in which the sympathies⁵⁰ of the rich and powerful were so lively⁵¹ sensible to the sufferings⁵² of their unhappy fellow-creatures⁵³, as in our own age.

The following picture⁵⁴, taken from the statistics of London at different periods, may serve⁵⁵ to show⁵⁶ the above⁵⁷ in its proper⁵⁸ light, and perhaps convince⁵⁹ those who are open⁶⁰ to conviction, that London, in her present refinement, with her thousands of pau-

1. Hungersnoth. 2. Thatfachen.
3. hartnäckige. 4. allgemeiner. 5. irriger.
6. früherer. 7. eifern. 8. cry out, schreien.
9. zu große Verfeinerung.
10. unseres Zeitalters. 11. beklagen.
12. geworden. 13. weichlich. 14. verdorben.
15. abgekürzt.
16. indem sie — machen, anstellen.
17. Vergleichen. 18. daß.
19. hervorragenden.
20. were strongly contrasted with, mehr als auf-
gewogen wurden von.
21. bei der Betrachtung.
22. um. 23. geneigt. 24. veranlaßt.
25. der alten Zeit. 26. lehrten.
27. zu vermindern. 28. Bedürfnisse.

29. to the lowest number possible, so sehr als
möglich. 30. sogar. 31. vermehren.
32. vertheidigen. 33. im Allgemeinen.
34. Sporn. 35. zur Thätigkeit. 36. führt.
37. Träumer, Nirgendheimer. 38. weil.
39. helfen. 40. lindern. 41. entfernen.
42. bieten — dar. 43. Mangel. 44. Zustand.
45. the chapter, der Zeit. 46. aus dem was.
47. nachzulesen, sammeln. 48. Urkunden.
49. Vergangenheit. 50. Mitgefühl.
51. lively sensible, lebhaft, empfänglich.
52. für das Leiden. 53. Nebenmenschen.
54. Bild. 55. dienen. 56. darzustellen.
57. das Gesagte. 58. gehöriges. 59. überzeugen.
60. are open to conviction, sich überzeugen lassen
wollen.

pers¹, and her vices, is in every respect², superior³ to London in those palmy⁴ days of which some men love to write and speak; — those days, when barbarism and brutality reigned⁵ in all their pride and glory:

Walsingham gives the following strong⁶ picture of a famine in London in the Reign of Edward II. in the year 1312. "They — the king and peers — sat⁷ at a parliament in London, where no great matter⁸ was concluded⁹, for the famine and pestilence¹⁰ increased. The famine was grown¹¹ so terrible, that horses, dogs, yea¹², even¹³ men and children, were stolen for food, and — what is horrible to think — the thieves newly¹⁴ brought into the gaols (d̥ŋhehls)¹⁵ were torn¹⁶ in pieces, and eaten presently by¹⁷ such as had been there. In London it was proclaimed¹⁸ that no corn should be converted¹⁹ to brewers' uses²⁰: which act²¹, the king (moved²² with compassion towards his nation) imitating²³, caused²⁴ to be executed throughout²⁵ the kingdom; otherwise²⁶ the greater part of the people should have died for want²⁷ of bread. The dysentery²⁸, caused²⁹ through raw and corrupt³⁰ humours³¹, engendered³² by putrid³³ meat and unnatural diet³⁴, raged³⁵ every where, and, together with other dreadful maladies³⁶, brought such multitudes³⁷ of the poorer classes to their end, that the living³⁸ could scarcely bury³⁹ the dead."

In the beginning of the last century, the population of London within⁴⁰ the Walls, that is in the so called⁴¹ City, was not much less than 140,000, as proved⁴² by deduction⁴³ from the Parish⁴⁴ Registers; and the annual mortality⁴⁵ was as one to⁴⁶ twenty of that population. In the year 1750, the population had decreased⁴⁷ to 87,000; and fortunately for the health of the citiziens, space⁴⁸ continues⁴⁹ to become more⁵⁰ and more valuable for counting-houses⁵¹ and warehouses than for human⁵² habitations, so that the population of the City within the walls became⁴⁷ 78,000 in the year 1801, and is now (1872) diminished⁵³ to 55,778. The rate⁵⁴ of mortality being⁵⁵ now one in⁵⁶ forty-two, and for the whole of London together, one in forty-five; a circumstance which not only proves⁵⁷ the advantages⁵⁸ of modern, over ancient times, but also that London is the most wholesome⁵⁹ of all the large cities in the world (60).

J. S. S. Rothwell.

1. What is common and erroneous? — 2. What do we hear persons cry out against?
3. In making those comparisons what do people forget?

1. Bettlern. 2. Hinsicht. 3. viel besser als.
4. blühenden. 5. herrschten. 6. starke.
7. saßen im. 8. Sache. 9. beschlossen.
10. Pest. 11. geworden. 12. ja. 13. sogar.
14. *newly brought*, welche neulich — gebracht waren. 15. Gefängnisse. 16. zerrissen.
17. *by such as*, von denjenigen, welche.
18. befohlen. 19. verwendet. 20. Gebrauch.
21. Befehl. 22. durchdrungen von.
23. nachahmend.
24. *caused to be executed*, ausführen ließ (siehe Reg. XIV. S. 484 d. Grammatik).
25. durch das ganze. 26. sonst.
27. aus Mangel an. 28. Dysenterie, Ruhr.
29. veranlaßt. 30. verdorbene. 31. Säfte.
32. erzeugt. 33. verfaultes.

34. Kost, Nahrungsmittel.
35. wüthete. 36. Krankheiten. 37. Menge.
38. Lebenden. 39. begraben. 40. innerhalb.
41. sogenannten.
42. wie es bewiesen worden ist.
43. Schlußfolgerung aus. 44. Kirchspiel.
45. Sterblichkeit. 46. zu.
47. sich vermindert auf. 48. Raum.
49. fährt fort.
50. *more and more valuable*, alle Tage werthvoller. 51. Comptoire. 52. menschliche.
53. sich verringert auf. 54. Verhältniß.
55. ist. 56. zu. 57. beweist. 58. Vorzug.
59. gesündeste.
60. Ganz London enthält jetzt — 1880 — 4,050,000 Einwohner.

4. In contemplating London and Paris, what do people exclaim?
5. What did the philosophers teach? — 6. What do we firmly believe?
7. When was London superior?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 61.

8. What were stolen for food during the famine? — 9. Who could scarcely bury the dead?
10. What was the population of London in the beginning of the last century?
11. What was the mortality at that time, and what is it at present?
12. What does the present rate of mortality prove?

XLIV. Inkle and Yarico.

Thomas Inkle, of London, a young man of the age of twenty years, embarked¹ on board the *Achilles* on 16th of June 1647, and set² sail from the Downs³ for⁴ the West Indies, with the intention of increasing⁵ his fortune by trade⁶ and merchandize⁷. Our adventurer⁸ was the third son of one the most eminent⁹ citizens, who, early in life, had taken¹⁰ particular care¹¹ to inculcate¹² into the mind of the young man a love of gain¹³, and to teach¹⁴ him profoundly¹⁵ the science¹⁶ of numbers, thus giving¹⁷ him a quick¹⁸ eye for profit¹³ and loss¹⁹, and preventing²⁰ the natural impulses²¹ of passion, by a preoccupation²² in favor²² of his own interest. To a mind thus formed²³, young Inkle added²⁴ a person every²⁵ way agreeable, a face which bespoke²⁶ blooming health, strong limbs²⁷ and blond and flowing²⁸ hair, which fell down in ringlets²⁹ upon his shoulders. It happened³⁰ in the course³¹ of the voyage, that the *Achilles*, in some distress³², put³³ into a creek³⁴ of the Continent of America, in search³⁵ of provisions³⁶. The young man, the hero of my story, went³⁷ on shore³⁸ with several other persons of the crew³⁹: no sooner⁴⁰ were they landed than they were observed by a crowd⁴¹ of Indians, who were concealed⁴² in the woods⁴³. The English advanced⁴⁴ imprudently⁴⁵ into the country, to a great distance from the shore, and were cut⁴⁶ off by the Natives, who murdered the greater part of them. Our adventurer, however, escaped⁴⁷ with some others, and took⁴⁸ refuge in the forest. Upon⁴⁹ his coming to a distant and pathless⁵⁰ part of the wood, he threw⁵¹ himself down, fatigued⁵², and exhausted⁵³, on a rising⁵⁴ ground⁵⁴. Suddenly⁵⁵, a young Indian girl emerged⁵⁶ from a copse⁵⁷ behind him. After the first surprise⁵⁸ was over, they were charm-

1. schiffte sich ein. 2. set sail,* segelte.
 3. Dünen. 4. nach. 5. vermehren.
 6. Handel. 7. Kaufwaaren. 8. Abenteurer.
 9. angesehensten. 10. getragen. 11. Sorge.
 12. einzuflößen. 13. zum Gewinn.
 14. lehren. 15. gründlich.
 16. science of numbers, Rechenkunst.
 17. auf diese Weise — zu verleihen. 18. scharfes.
 19. Verlust. 20. zu verhindern. 21. Antrieb.
 22. durch eine besondere Vorliebe für.
 23. so gebildet. 24. fügte — hinzu.
 25. every way, in jeder Hinsicht.
 26. anzeigte. 27. Glieder.
 28. wogenden, wallenden. 29. Locken auf.
 30. es traf sich.

31. Lauf. 32. Noth.
 33. put into, in eine — einließ. 34. Bucht.
 35. um — zu suchen. 36. Mundvorrath.
 37. ging.* 38. ans Ufer. 39. Mannschaft.
 40. kaum. 41. Menge. 42. verborgen.
 43. Wäldern. 44. rückten vorwärts.
 45. unvorsichtiger Weise.
 46. were cut off, es wurde ihnen von — der Rückzug abgeschnitten. 47. entkam.
 48. took refuge, flüchtete sich.
 49. upon his coming, als er — kam.
 50. unwegsam. 51. warf.* 52. ermüdet.
 53. erschöpft. 54. Anhöhe. 55. plötzlich.
 56. trat — hervor. 57. Buschholz.
 58. Erstaunen.

ed¹ with each other. If the European was highly delighted² with the form³, features³, and wild graces of the young American, she was no less taken⁴ with the costume, complexion⁵, and figure of the European. The young Indian immediately fell⁶ in love with him, and at the same moment set⁷ about providing⁸ for his safety⁹. She conducted¹⁰ him into a cavern¹¹ where she prepared for him a repast¹² of delicious fruits, and then took¹⁰ him to a stream to quench¹³ his thirst. In¹⁴ the midst of these kind offices, she would¹⁵ sometimes play¹⁶ with his hair, and amuse herself by contrasting¹⁷ its colour with that of her own fingers, sometimes, open¹⁸ the breast¹⁹ of his waistcoat¹⁹ and laugh²⁰ at him for²¹ keeping his bosom covered. She appeared to be a person of distinction²², for every day she came to him with new sets²³ of shells, bugles²⁴, and beads²⁵. She brought him also a great number of objects²⁶ which her other lovers had presented²⁷ her with, so that his cavern was richly ornamented²⁸ with all sorts of spotted²⁹ skins³⁰ of animals, and with feathers the most beautiful and varied³¹ which are supplied³² by the birds of the new world. To render³³ his prison more supportable³⁴, she would¹⁵ lead¹⁰ him, in the twilight, or favoured³⁵ by the light of the moon, into solitary bowers³⁶ and places, shewing³⁷ him at the same time, where he might lie³⁸ down in safety, and sleep amidst³⁹ the music of the cascades⁴⁰ and the melody of the nightingale. Her part⁴¹ was to watch over him while he slept, and sometimes she awoke⁴² him, in order⁴³ to provide⁴⁴ for his safety against the hatred⁴⁵ of her countrymen. In this manner our two lovers passed⁴⁶ their time, until⁴⁷ they had learned a language⁴⁸ of their own, in which, the traveller⁴⁹ gave his lover to understand⁵⁰, how happy he would be to take⁵¹ her to his own country, where she would be dressed⁵² in silk⁵³ like that of his waistcoat, and travel⁵⁴ about in houses, drawn⁵⁵ by horses, without being⁵⁶ exposed to wind or weather. He promised her the enjoyment⁵⁷ of all this, without the apprehension⁵⁸ and fear, which tormented⁵⁹ them in their present situation. The lovers lived several months in this tender⁶⁰ friendship, until Yarico, instructed⁶¹ by her wooer⁶², discovered⁶³ a vessel on the coast to which she

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. bezaubert. 2. entzückt. | 30. Thierhäuten. 31. verschiedensten. |
| 3. Gestalt, Gesichtszüge. 4. gefesselt. | 32. are supplied by, darbieten. |
| 5. Gesichtsfarbe. | 33. zu machen. 34. erträglich. |
| 6. fell in love, verliebte sich. | 35. begünstigt. 36. Lauben. 37. und zeigte. |
| 7. set about, fing sie an. | 38. sich niederlegen. 39. unter. |
| 8. Anstalten zu treffen. 9. Sicherheit. | 40. Wasserfall. 41. Rolle, Geschäft. |
| 10. führte. 11. Höhle. 12. Mahl, Essen. | 42. weckte ihn auf. |
| 13. zu löschen. | 43. in order, um. |
| 14. in the midst of these kind offices, inmitten dieser freundlichen Dienste. | 44. zu sorgen. 45. gegen den Haß. |
| 15. pflegte. 16. zu spielen. | 46. verbrachten. 47. bis. |
| 17. zu vergleichen. 18. zu öffnen. | 48. a language of their own, eine eigene Sprache. |
| 19. die Knöpfe seiner Weste. | 49. Reisende. |
| 20. auslachen. | 50. zu verstehen. 51. zu nehmen.* |
| 21. for keeping, weil er — hielt. | 52. gekleidet. 53. Seide. 54. herum reisen. |
| 22. hohem Rang. | 55. gezogen.* |
| 23. sets of shells, Schmuck von Muscheln. | 56. without being exposed, ohne dem — ausgesetzt zu sein. 57. Genuß. |
| 24. Glaskorallen. 25. Glasperlen. | 58. Besorgniß. 59. quälten. 60. zarten. |
| 26. Gegenständen. 27. verehrt. | 61. belehrt. 62. Geliebten, Anbeter. |
| 28. geschmückt. 29. gefleckt. | 63. entdeckte. |

made¹ a signal, and with extreme² joy and satisfaction, she accompanied³ her dear Inkle, in the night, to his country-men, who formed⁴ the crew of a vessel bound⁵ to Barbadoes. It appears that the moment a vessel arrives from the continent in this island, the Colonists come down⁶ to the shore, where a market of Indian and other slaves is immediately held⁷, the same as the markets for horses and oxen in England.

In a word, Thomas Inkle, on arriving⁸ in the English territory, began to reflect⁹ seriously on the time unprofitably¹⁰ spent, and to calculate in his own mind how many days' interest¹¹ of his money he had lost by his sojourn¹² with Yarico. This idea made him very gloomy¹³, and the account¹⁴ that he¹⁵ should have to render¹⁵ to his friends of his voyage, tormented¹⁶ him. These reflexions¹⁷ decided¹⁸ the economical and prudent¹⁹ young man, to sell Yarico to²⁰ a Barbadoes merchant, although the poor creature, in order to excite²¹ his compassion for her lot²², begged him to remember how she had saved²³ his life, had watched²⁴ over him with tender²⁵ care, and how she still loved him. But all this, far²⁶ from softening his heart, only²⁷ induced²⁷ him to demand so²⁸ much the more from the purchaser²⁹.

Steele.

1. What did Inkle's father take particular care to do? — 2. Describe Inkle's person.
3. What happened in the course of the voyage?
4. What did the English imprudently do, and what was the consequence?
5. Who emerged from the copse, and what followed?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 63.

6. What did the Indian girl appear to be? — 7. What was her part?
8. How long did the lovers live together?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 64.

9. What happens in Barbadoes on the arrival of a ship?
10. What did Inkle begin to do on arriving in the English territory.
11. What did his reflexions decide him to do?

XLV. Epigramm.

“Wist un dwaes, dat hij waer zot.”

Could fools³⁰ but³¹ feel their want³² of sense³³,
And strive³⁴ to earn³⁵ intelligence³⁶,
They would be wiser for their pains³⁷;
But 'tis the bane³⁸ of folly³⁹ ever
To think itself supremely⁴⁰ clever⁴¹, —
And thus⁴² the fool a fool remains⁴³.

Bowring.

1. made a signal, Zeichen gab.
2. außerordentlicher Freude und Vergnügen.
3. begleitete.
4. formed the crew, die Mannschaft — bildeten.
5. welches nach — bestimmt war. 6. hinunter.
7. gehalten.* 8. bei seiner Ankunft.
9. nachzudenken über.
10. unprofitably spent, welche er unnütz zugebracht hatte. 11. Zinsen.
12. Aufenthalt. 13. traurig. 14. Rechenschaft.
15. he should, &c., er — würde geben müssen.
16. plagte. 17. Betrachtungen.
18. brachten — zu dem Entschluß.
19. flugen. 20. an. 21. erregen.

22. Loos. 23. gerettet. 24. gewacht.
25. liebevoller.
26. far from softening, weit davon entfernt — zu erweichen.
27. veranlaßte ihn nur.
28. so much the more, um so mehr.
29. Käufer.
30. Thoren. 31. nur — einsehen.
32. Mangel. 33. Verstand.
34. sich bestreben.*
35. zu erwerben. 36. Einsicht, Kenntniß.
37. Mühe. 38. Glück.
39. Thorheit. 40. äußerst.
41. geschick. 42. so. 43. bleibt.

XLVI. The Princess Talleyrand and Denon.

Denon, author of an excellent work upon¹ Egypt, being² once invited to dine with Prince Talleyrand; the prince wished that the princess (a Mad. Grandt) should read³ his work in⁴ order to be able to compliment⁵ him upon⁶ it at⁷ dinner. For⁸ this purpose⁹ the prince sent the work to the princess from his own library¹⁰, accompanied¹¹ by Robinson Crusoe, which he intended¹² for a young lady residing in the house; but through¹³ mistake¹³, the latter work fell into the princess's hands. When at dinner; the princess thanked Baron Denon for the pleasure his book had afforded¹⁴ her, but what was the dismay¹⁵ of the prince when she exclaimed¹⁶: "Yes, *Mons. le Baron*, your work has delighted¹⁷ me; but I am¹⁸ longing to know what has become¹⁹ of your poor man Friday, about²⁰ whom I feel²¹ such an interest?"

On the second restoration of the Bourbons, Prince Talleyrand wishing²² to get²² shut of the Princess, advised her to go to England for²³ some months for²⁴ change²⁵ of air, fully determined not²⁶ to admit²⁷ her into his house any²⁶ more. After a few weeks' absence, — being²⁸ advised of the Prince's intentions by some friend — she returned²⁹ unexpectedly before the prince had taken³⁰ any measures³¹ to prevent³² her entering his house again, and upbraided³³ him, with his intended infidelity³⁴. The day after the event, the Prince waited³⁵ on Louis XVIII. on affairs³⁶ of state³⁶; the King, who loved a joke³⁷, congratulated him on the unexpected arrival of the Princess.

Prince Talleyrand feeling the sarcasm³⁸, noticed³⁹ it by one of those smiles so peculiar⁴⁰ to him — a shake⁴¹ of the head⁴¹, and a shrug⁴² of the shoulders⁴², while he uttered⁴³, "*Que voulez-vous, Sire, chacun a son vingt Mars?*" referring⁴⁴ to the unexpected arrival of the Emperor Napoleon from Elba.

1. What did Prince T— wish? — 2. What work fell into the Princess's hands?
3. What was the Princess's exclamation which dismayed the Prince?
4. What did Prince T— advise the Princess to do, and what was his determination?
5. What did the Princess do? — 6. On what did the King congratulate T—?
7. What was Prince Talleyrand's reply?

XLVII. The Duties⁴⁵ of Youth and Old Age.

He that would pass⁴⁶ the latter part of his life with honour and decency⁴⁷, must, when he is young, consider that he shall one day be old, and remember⁴⁸ when he is old, that he was once young.

1. über. 2. da — war. 3. lesen.*
4. in order, um. 5. Komplimente zu machen.
6. upon it, darüber. 7. beim. 8. zu.
9. Zwecke. 10. Bibliothek. 11. begleitet von.
12. beabsichtigte. 13. aus Versehen. 14. gewährt.
15. Schrecken. 16. ausrief. 17. entzückt.
18. I am longing to know, ich bin ganz begierig zu wissen. 19. aus — geworden ist.
20. an. 21. nehme.
22. wishing to get shut of, da — wünschte — los zu werden. 23. auf. 24. zur.
25. Luftveränderung. 26. not any more, nie wieder.

27. aufzunehmen.
28. being advised, da sie — benachrichtigt wurde.
29. so kehrte — zurück. 30. getroffen.
31. Maßregeln. 32. zu verhindern, daß.
33. warf ihm — vor. 34. Treulosigkeit.
35. machte — seine Aufwartung bei.
36. in Staatsangelegenheiten. 37. Spaß, Scherz.
38. Spott, Sarkasmus. 39. ließ er es merken.
40. die ihm so eigen waren. 41. Kopfschütteln.
42. Achselzucken. 43. sagte. 44. hindeutend.
45. Pflichten. 46. zubringen möchte.
47. Anstand, Würde. 48. sich erinnern.

C. Letters, Proverbs, etc.

XLVIII. From Dr. Benjamin Franklin to Mr. Dubourg, containing observations¹ on the generally prevailing² doctrines³ of life and death.

London, July 21, 1770.

Dear Sir,

Your observations on the causes⁴ of death, and the experiments which you propose⁵ for recalling⁶ to life those who appear⁷ to be killed⁸ by lightning, demonstrate⁹ equally¹⁰ your sagacity¹¹ and humanity. It appears that the doctrines³ of life and death, in general, are yet¹² but little understood.

A toad¹³ buried¹⁴ in the sand will live, it¹⁵ is said, until the sand becomes petrified¹⁶; and then, being inclosed¹⁷ in the stone, it may live for we know not how many ages. The facts which are cited¹⁸ in support¹⁹ of this opinion, are too numerous and too circumstantial²⁰ not²¹ to deserve a certain degree of credit²². As we are accustomed²³ to see all the animals with which we are²⁴ acquainted²⁴ eat and drink, it appears difficult to²⁵ us to conceive²⁶, how a toad can be supported²⁷ in such a dungeon²⁸. But if we reflect²⁹ that the necessity of nourishment³⁰ which animals experience³¹ in their ordinary state, proceeds³² from the continual waste³³ of their substance³⁴ by respiration³⁵ and perspiration; it will appear less incredible³⁶, that some animals, in a torpid³⁷ state, perspiring³⁸ less because they use³⁹ no exercise, should have less need⁴⁰ of aliment³⁰; and that others which are covered with scales⁴¹ or shells, which stop⁴² perspiration, such as land and sea turtles⁴³, serpents, and some species of fish, should be able to subsist⁴⁴ a considerable time without any⁴⁵ nourishment whatever⁴⁵. A plant with its flowers, fades⁴⁶ and dies immediately, if exposed⁴⁷ to the air without⁴⁸ having its roots⁴⁹ immersed⁴⁸ in a humid soil⁵⁰, from which it may draw⁵¹ a sufficient quantity of moisture⁵² to supply⁵³ that which exhales⁵⁴ from its substance, and is carried⁵⁵ off continually⁵⁵ by the air. Perhaps, how-

1. Betrachtungen. 2. herrschenden.
3. Lehren über. 4. Ursachen.
5. vorschlagen. 6. um — zurückzurufen.
7. scheinbar. 8. getödtet. 9. zeigen.
10. sowohl. 11. Scharfsinn.
12. bis jetzt nur. 13. Kröte. 14. begraben.
15. *it is said*, sagt man.
16. zu Stein wird.
17. *being inclosed*, da sie — eingeschlossen ist.
18. angeführt.
19. *in support of*, zur Unterstützung.
20. umständlich.
21. *not to deserve*, als daß sie nicht — verdienen (s. Reg. XLIV. S. 516 d. Gramm.).
22. Glauben. 23. gewöhnt. 24. kennen.
25. für. 26. zu begreifen. 27. erhalten.

28. Kerker. 29. bedenken.
30. der Nahrung.
31. fühlen. 32. herrührt. 33. Abnutzung.
34. Stoffes. 35. das Athmen und die Ausdünstung. 36. unglaublich.
37. starren. 38. ausdünstend.
39. *use no exercise*, sich keine Bewegung machen.
40. bedürfen. 41. Schuppen oder Muscheln.
42. verhindern. 43. Schildkröten.
44. zu bestehen. 45. irgend eine.
46. verwelkt. 47. ausgesetzt.
48. *without having, &c.*, ohne daß ihre — gesteckt werden. 49. Wurzeln.
50. in feuchte Erde. 51. ziehen.*
52. Feuchtigkeit. 53. ersetzen. 54. ausdünstet.
55. fortwährend verzert.

ever, if it were buried¹ in quicksilver, it might preserve² for a considerable space³ of time³, its vegetable life, its smell and colour. If this be the case⁴, it might prove⁵ a commodious method of transporting from distant countries those delicate plants which are unable⁶ to sustain the inclemency⁷ of the weather at sea, and which require⁸ particular care and attention.

I have seen an instance⁹ of common flies preserved¹⁰ in a manner somewhat¹¹ similar. They had¹² been drowned¹² in Madeira wine, apparently¹³ about the time it was bottled¹⁴ in Virginia to be sent to London. At¹⁵ the opening of one of the bottles, at the house of a friend where I was, three drowned flies fell into the first glass that was filled. Having¹⁶ heard it remarked¹⁶ that drowned flies were¹⁷ capable of being revived¹⁷ by the rays of the sun, I proposed making the experiment upon these. They were therefore exposed¹⁸ to the sun, upon a sieve which had been employed¹⁹ to strain²⁰ them out of the wine. In less than three hours, two of them by²¹ degrees began to recover²² life. They commenced by some convulsive motions in the thighs²³, and at length they raised²⁴ themselves upon their legs²⁵, wiped²⁶ their eyes with their fore²⁷ feet, beat and brushed²⁸ their wings²⁹ with their hind feet, and soon after began to fly³⁰, finding themselves in Old England without knowing³¹ how they came thither. The third continued lifeless until sunset³², when losing³³ all hope of him, he was thrown³⁴ away.

I wish it were possible, from this instance, to invent³⁵ a method of embalming³⁶ drowned persons in such a manner, that they may be recalled³⁷ to life³⁷ at³⁸ any period, however³⁹ distant: for, having a very ardent⁴⁰ desire to see and observe the state⁴¹ of America a hundred years hence⁴², I should prefer⁴³ to an ordinary⁴⁴ death, the being⁴⁵ immersed in a cask⁴⁶ of Madeira wine, with a few friends, until that time, then to be recalled to life by the solar⁴⁷ warmth of my dear country! But since⁴⁸, in all probability, we live in an age too early⁴⁹, and too near the infancy of science, to see such an art⁵⁰ brought⁵¹ in our time to perfection, I must for the present⁵², content⁵³ myself with the treat⁵⁴, which you are so kind as to promise⁵⁵ me, of the resurrection⁵⁶ of a fowl⁵⁷ or a turkey-cock⁵⁸.

Sincerely yours, *B. Franklin.*

1. gesteckt, eingetaucht. 2. behalten.
3. Zeitraum. 4. Fall. 5. bewahren als.
6. *are unable to sustain*, nicht ertragen können.
7. Rauheit. 8. erfordern. 9. Beispiel.
10. welche — aufbewahrt worden waren.
11. einigermaßen. 12. ertranken.
13. *apparently about the time*, scheinbar zu der Zeit wo.
14. in Flaschen abgezogen wurde, um. 15. beim.
16. *having, &c.*, da ich die Bemerkung gehört hatte.
17. *were capable, &c.*, wieder zum Leben gebracht werden könnten. 18. ausgelegt.
19. gebraucht. 20. zu fischen, heraus zu fischen.
21. *by degrees*, nach und nach.
22. sich wieder zu beleben. 23. Schenkel.
24. erhoben. 25. Beine. 26. rieben sich.

27. vorder. 28. wischten sich.
29. Schwingen. 30. herumzufliegen.
31. zu wissen. 32. Sonnenuntergang.
33. da wir — verloren. 34. weggeworfen.*
35. zu erfinden. 36. einzubalsamieren.
37. in's Leben zurückgerufen. 38. zu.
39. wie — auch immer. 40. heißes Verlangen.
41. Zustand. 42. nach. 43. zöge es — vor.
44. gewöhnlichen.
45. *the being immersed*, daß man mich — hinein-
thäte. 46. Faß. 47. Sonnenwärme.
48. da. 49. früh. 50. Kunst. 51. gebracht.*
52. Diesmal. 53. begnügen.
54. Genuß, Vergnügen.
55. zu versprechen. 56. durch Auferstehung.
57. Huhn. 58. Welschenhahn.

1. How long can a toad live in the sand?
2. From what does the want of nourishment proceed?

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 67.

3. When were the flies drowned in the wine?
4. On opening the bottle, what fell into the glass?
5. What was done with the flies? — 6. When did the flies begin to recover?
7. What did Franklin wish for, in preference to an ordinary death?

XLIX. From the Poet John Gay to Mr. Fenton.

Account¹ of two young persons killed by lightning.

Stanton-Harcourt, Augt. 9, 1718.

My dear Sir,

The only news² you can expect to³ have from me here is news from heaven, for I am quite⁴ out of the world; and scarcely⁵ any thing can reach⁶ me except⁷ the noise of thunder, which undoubtedly you have heard too. We have read in old authors of high towers⁸ levelled⁹ by it to the ground: while the humble valleys have escaped¹⁰. But to let you see that the contrary¹¹ to this¹¹ sometimes happens¹², I must acquaint¹³ you, that a high and most extravagant¹⁴ heap of towers, in this neighbourhood, stands still¹⁵ undefaced¹⁶, while a cock¹⁷ of barley in our next field has been consumed¹⁸ to ashes. Would to God that this heap¹⁹ of barley had been all that had perished²⁰!

Beneath this little shelter²¹ sat two much more constant²² lovers than ever were found in romance, under the shade²³ of a beech²⁴ tree. John Hewet was a well-set²⁵ man, of about five-and-twenty; Sarah Drew might be rather²⁶ called²⁷ comely²⁸ than beautiful, and she was about the same age²⁹. They had passed³⁰ through the various labours³¹ of the year together, with the greatest satisfaction. If she milked, it was his morning and evening care³² to bring³³ the cows to her hand³³. It was but³⁴ last fair³⁵ that he had bought³⁶ her a present of green silk for her straw hat; and the posy³⁷ on her silver ring was of his choosing³⁸. Their love was the talk³⁹ of the whole neighbourhood. It was that⁴⁰ very morning that he had obtained⁴¹ the consent of her parents, and it was⁴² but till the next week that they were to wait for the happy day. Perhaps, in the intervals⁴³ of their work, they were talking⁴⁴ of their wedding clothes;

1. Bericht über. 2. Neuigkeit, Nachricht.
 3. zu bekommen. 4. ganz. 5. kaum.
 6. erreichen. 7. außer. 8. Thürmen.
 9. levelled by it to the ground, welche dadurch dem Boden gleich gemacht wurden.
 10. unversehrt geblieben sind.
 11. Gegenteil hiervon. 12. geschieht.
 13. benachrichtigen.
 14. ein höchst großartiger Haufen.
 15. immer noch. 16. unversehrt.
 17. a cock of barley, ein Gerstenschöber.
 18. verbrannt. 19. Haufen.
 20. zu Grunde ging. 21. Schutz, Obdach.
 22. treuere. 23. Schatten. 24. Buche.

25. gutgebauter. 26. eher. 27. genannt.
 28. anmutig. 29. Alter. 30. durchgemacht.
 31. Arbeit. 32. Gedanke.
 33. to bring to her hand, ihr die — zuzuführen.*
 34. erst. 35. Jahrmarkt. 36. gekauft.
 37. Sinnspruch. 38. Wahl.
 39. was the talk of, war zum Gegenstand des Gesprächs in — geworden.
 40. that very, sogar an jenem. 41. erhalten.
 42. it was but till the next week that they were to wait for, sie hatten bloß bis die nächste Woche auf — zu warten.
 43. Zwischenzeit, Unterbrechungen.
 44. sprachen.

and John was suiting¹ several sorts of poppies² and field flowers to her complexion³, to choose⁴ her a knot⁵ for the wedding-day. While they were conversing together, the clouds grew⁶ black, and such a storm of thunder and lightning ensued⁷, that all the labourers⁸ made⁹ the best of their way⁹ to what¹⁰ shelter¹¹ the trees and hedges afforded¹². Sarah was frightened¹³, and fell down in a swoon¹⁴, on a heap of barley. John, who never separated¹⁵ from her, sat¹⁶ down by her side, having¹⁷ raked¹⁷ together two or three heaps, the¹⁸ better to secure her¹⁸ from the storm. Immediately there was heard so loud a crack¹⁹ as if heaven had burst²⁰ asunder²⁰. The labourers, solicitous²¹ for each other's safety²¹, called²² to one another throughout²³ the field. Those who called to our lovers, receiving²⁴ no answer²⁴, stepped²⁵ to the place where they lay — perceived the barley all in a smoke²⁶, and then spied²⁷ this faithful²⁸ pair: John, with one arm about²⁹ Sarah's neck, and the other held³⁰ over her, as³¹ if to screen her from the lightning. They were struck³² dead, and they stiffened³³ in this tender posture³⁴. Sarah's left eyebrow was singed (findſch'd)³⁵, and there appeared a black spot³⁶ on her neck; her lover was all over black; but not the least signs³⁷ of life were found in either³⁸.

Attended³⁹ by their melancholy companions, they were conveyed⁴⁰ to the town; and the next day were interred⁴¹ in one grave.

I am my dear Sir,

yours sincerely, *J. Gay.*

1. Of what have we read in old authors?

2. Who sat beneath the cock of barley, and what were their names?

3. What was the talk of the neighbourhood?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 69.

4. What happened while they were conversing together?

5. What happened to Sarah? — 6. What did the labourers do?

7. What happened to the two lovers? — 8. How were they interred?

L. Knowledge⁴² and Ignorance⁴³.

The man of knowledge lives⁴⁴ eternally after⁴⁵ his death, while⁴⁶ his members⁴⁷ are reduced⁴⁸ to dust beneath⁴⁹ the tomb⁵⁰. But the ignorant man is dead, even⁵¹ while he walks⁵² upon⁵³ the earth: he is numbered⁵⁴ with⁵⁵ living⁵⁶ men, and yet⁵⁷ he existeth not.

Arabian Author.

1. paßte — an. 2. Mohn. 3. Gesichtsfarbe.

4. um — zu wählen.* 5. Blumenstrauß.

6. wurden. 7. folgte darauf. 8. Feldarbeiter.

9. made, &c., sich flüchteten, so gut sie es konnten.

10. zu solchem. 11. Schutz als. 12. gewährten.

13. erschrocken. 14. Ohnmacht auf.

15. sich nie — trennte. 16. setzte* sich.

17. nachdem er — zusammen gescharrt hatte.

18. um sie desto besser — zu schützen.

19. Schlag, Krach. 20. geborsten wäre.

21. für ihre gegenseitige Sicherheit besorgt.

22. riefen — zu. 23. durch.

24. als sie keine Antwort erhielten.

25. so näherten sie sich. 26. Rauch. 27. sahen.

28. treue. 29. um. 30. gehalten.*

31. as if to screen, als wenn er — beschirmen wollte. 32. erschlagen.

33. erstarrten. 34. Stellung. 35. versengt.

36. Stelle. 37. Zeichen.

38. dem Einen noch dem Andern zu finden.

39. begleitet. 40. getragen. 41. begraben.

42. Kenntniß. 43. Unwissenheit. 44. lebt.

45. nach. 46. während dem.

47. Glieder, Körper.

48. are reduced to dust, Staub werden.

49. im. 50. Grabe. 51. sogar. 52. geht.

53. auf. 54. gezählt. 55. zu.

56. lebenden. 57. doch.

LI. From the Poet Thomas Gray to Mr. Nicholls.

A description of Southampton.

November, 19, 1764.

Dear Sir,

I received your letter at Southampton. — My health is much improved¹ by the sea: not that I drank it, or bathed in it, as common² people do; no! I only walked³ by it, and looked⁴ upon it. The climate is remarkably mild at Southampton, even in October and November. No⁵ snow has been seen to lie⁵ here for⁶ these thirty years past. The myrtles grow in⁷ the ground against the houses; and Guernsey⁸ bloom in every window. The town, clean and well-built, surrounded⁹ by old stone walls with their towers and gateways¹⁰, stands¹¹ at the point¹² of a peninsula; and opens¹³ full south to an arm of the sea, which, having¹⁴ formed two beautiful bays¹⁵ on each hand, stretches¹⁶ away in direct¹⁷ view¹⁷, till it joins¹⁸ the British Channel; it is skirted¹⁹ on either side with gently²⁰ rising grounds, clothed²¹ with thick wood, and directly²² across its mouth²², rise the high-lands²³ of the beautiful Isle of Wight at a distance, but²⁴ distinctly seen.

In the bosom²⁵ of the woods, concealed²⁶ from profane eyes, lie hid²⁷ the ruins of Nettely Abbey. There may be richer and greater houses²⁸ of religion²⁸, but the abbot is content with his situation. See, at the top²⁹ of that hanging³⁰ meadow³⁰, under the shade of those old trees that bend³¹ into a half circle about³² it, he is³³ walking slowly, and bidding³⁴ his beads³⁴ for the souls of his benefactors, interred in the venerable pile³⁵ that lies beneath³⁶ him. Beyond³⁷ it, the meadow still³⁸ descending³⁹, nods⁴⁰ a thicket⁴¹ of oaks that mask⁴² the building, and exclude⁴³ a view⁴⁴ too garish⁴⁵ and luxuriant; only on either⁴⁶ hand they leave an opening to the blue glittering⁴⁷ sea.

I must not close⁴⁸ my letter without giving⁴⁹ you one principal event⁵⁰ of my history; which is, that, in the course of my late tour⁵¹, I set⁵² out one morning before five o'clock, the moon shining through a dark and misty⁵³ autumnal⁵⁴ air, and got⁵⁵ to the sea-coast time enough to be⁵⁶ at the sun's levee⁵⁷. I saw the clouds and dark vapours⁵⁸ open gradually to the right and left, rolling over one

1. gebeßert durch.
2. wie gewöhnliche Leute es thun.
3. ging nur daneben spazieren.
4. schaute, blickte darauf.
5. no snow, &c., hier hat man keinen Schnee liegen sehen.
6. for these, seit (s. Reg. XXVIII. S. 463. d. Gramm.). 7. in the ground, im Freien.
8. Guernsey (eine Art Blume).
9. umgeben. 10. Thoren.
11. steht,* ist gelegen. 12. Spitze.
13. opens full south, ist südlich ganz offen.
14. nachdem. 15. Buchten.
16. breitet sich hinweg. 17. voller Aussicht.
18. sich an — anschließt. 19. umgrenzt.
20. gently rising ground, schönen Anhöhen.
21. bedeckt. 22. gerade quer über die Mündung.

23. Hügel. 24. aber doch. 25. Mitte.
26. verborgen. 27. versteckt.
28. Gotteshäuser. 29. am obern Ende.
30. abschüssigen Wiese. 31. bilden.
32. um dieselbe herum. 33. geht er langsam.
34. betet seinen Rosenkranz.
35. Gebäude. 36. unter. 37. jenseits.
38. immer noch. 39. abschüssig.
40. neigt sich. 41. Dickicht.
42. verbirgt. 43. ausschließt. 44. Aussicht.
45. glänzend. 46. auf beiden Seiten.
47. schimmernden. 48. schließen.
49. zu schildern. 50. Hauptpunkt.
51. Ausfluges. 52. brach — auf.
53. nebligten. 54. Herbstluft. 55. gelangte.
56. um gegenwärtig zu sein beim.
57. Aufgang. 58. Dünste.

another in great smoky¹ wreaths²; and the tide³, as it flowed⁴ gently⁵ in upon the sands, first whitening⁶, then slightly⁷ tinged⁸ with gold and blue; and, all⁹ at once, a little line¹⁰ of insufferable¹¹ brightness¹², that, before I can write these few words, has grown¹³ to half an orb¹⁴, and now to a whole one, too glorious to be distinctly seen. It is very odd¹⁵, this makes no figure¹⁶ on paper; yet I shall remember it as long as the sun endures¹⁷, or at least as long as I endure. I wonder¹⁸ whether any body ever saw¹⁹ it before! I hardly believe it.

I am, dear Sir, yours very truly,

Thomas Gray.

1. Where is the climate so remarkably mild? — 2. How long is it since snow lay there?
3. Describe the town. — 4. Where do the ruins of Nettely Abbey lie hid?
5. What is the abbot doing? — 6. What did Gray do?
7. Describe the scene of the rising sun.

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 71.

8. How long does Gray say he will remember the scene?

LII. From Lord Byron to His Highness Yussuff Pacha.

Missolonghi, January 23, 1824.

Your Highness!

A vessel²⁰ in which a friend and some domestics of mine were embarked²¹, was detained²² a²³ few days ago²³, and released²⁴ by²⁵ order of your Highness. I have now to thank you; not²⁶ for liberating²⁶ the vessel, which, as carrying²⁷ a neutral flag²⁸, and being under British protection, no one had a right to detain, but²⁹ for having treated my friends with so much kindness while they were in your hands.

In the hope, therefore, that it may not be altogether displeasing³⁰ to your Highness, I have requested³¹ the Governor of this place to release³² four Turkish prisoners, and he has humanely³³ consented³⁴ to do so. I lose³⁵ no time therefore, in sending them back, in order³⁶ to³⁷ make as early a return as I could for your courtesy³⁷ on³⁸ the late occasion³⁸. These prisoners are liberated without any conditions³⁹: but, should the circumstance find a place in your recollection⁴⁰, I venture⁴¹ to beg, that your Highness will treat⁴² such Greeks as may henceforth⁴³ fall into your hands with humanity; more especially⁴⁴ since⁴⁴ the horrors of war are sufficiently great in themselves, without being⁴⁵ aggravated⁴⁵ by wanton⁴⁶ cruelties on either⁴⁷ side.

Noel Byron.

1. What had Lord Byron to thank Yussuff Pacha for?
2. What did Lord Byron request the Governor to do? — 3. What did Lord Byron beg, and why?

1. rauchähnlichen. 2. Gewinden. 3. Fluth.
4. wie sie hereinfloß. 5. langsam. 6. weißlich.
7. ein klein wenig. 8. gefärbt.
9. auf ein Mal. 10. Strich.
11. unerträglichem. 12. Pracht, Glanz.
13. angewachsen. 14. Himmelskörper.
15. sonderbar. 16. kein Effect. 17. dauert.
18. ich möchte gern wissen ob. 19. gesehen* hat.
20. Schiff. 21. eingeschifft. 22. zurückgehalten.
23. vor einigen Tagen. 24. freigelassen.
25. auf. 26. nicht für die Freilassung des Schiffes.
27. da es — trug. 28. Flagge.

29. but for having treated, sondern weil Sie — behandelten. 30. unangenehm. 31. gebeten.
32. freizulassen. 33. menschenfreundlich.
34. eingewilligt. 35. verliere.* 36. um.
37. to make as early, &c., sobald ich konnte, Ihre Höflichkeit — zu erwiedern.
38. on the, &c., bei der neuen Gelegenheit.
39. Bedingung. 40. Erinnerung. 41. wage es.
42. behandeln. 43. von nun an. 44. um so mehr da.
45. ohne sie zu vermehren. 46. muthwilligen.
47. auf der einen oder der andern.

LIII. From Lord Dudley to the Lord Bishop of Llandaff.

Brussels, Jany. 22nd 1816.

My dear Lord,

I had a very good passage¹ of only three hours on² the night of the 16th — 17th. It was eleven when we went³ on board⁴, and by⁵ two we were at Calais, and the day before yesterday I arrived here.

I passed⁶ the morning of yesterday in visiting⁷ the field of Waterloo — as it is called, *euphoniae⁸ gratia*, I suppose⁸, since no part of the battle²⁵ reached⁹ the village so called. If it had been really¹⁰ the battle of Waterloo, the victory¹¹ must have been Napoleon's, for it is on the Brussels' side¹² of the ground for which he fought¹³. I had an excellent guide¹⁴ in the person of Creevey, who was here at the time, and who went¹⁵ over it the next day accompanied¹⁶ by one of the Duke's staff. I say nothing of those feelings¹⁷ with which one must survey¹⁸ this modern Marathon. The slight¹⁹ acquaintance I happen²⁰ to have with Miltiades* adds²¹ to the interest. It is quite astonishing how he escaped²². The tree near²³ which he stood for a long time during²⁴ the battle²⁵ is pierced²⁶ by at least a dozen shot²⁷. The great struggle²⁸, as you very well know²⁹, was at the farm³⁰ of Hougoumont. It is a single³¹ house with a good many out-buildings³², spacious³³, solid, and well built according³⁴ to the Flemish custom³⁵. It served³⁶ us as a sort of little fortress³⁷ to prevent³⁸ Napoleon's left³⁹ from getting⁴⁰ upon the Nivelles road — which would have enabled⁴¹ him to turn⁴² our position at⁴³ St. Jean, and separate⁴⁴ General Clinton's division from the main⁴⁵ body⁴⁵. This made it of so great importance, that the Duke sent repeated⁴⁶ orders that it should⁴⁷ be defended⁴⁸ to⁴⁹ the last man. Colonel (forn'l) Hamilton, who was entrusted⁵⁰ with the last of these orders, was forced⁵¹ to communicate⁵² it by shouting⁵³ over the heads of part⁵⁴ of the assailants⁵⁵ who prevented⁵⁶ his⁵⁷ nearer approach. This brave⁵⁸ man escaped²² with his life — you may judge⁵⁹ how narrowly⁶⁰. There were two farm-yards⁶¹ and a garden to be defended⁶². The French after infinite⁶³ slaughter⁶⁴ carried⁶⁵ the outermost of the farm-yards; but they were driven⁶⁶

1. Ueberfahrt. 2. in. 3. gingen. 4. an Bord.
5. um. 6. brachte — zu. 7. um — zu besuchen.
8. des Wohlwills halber vermute ich, da.
9. sich bis zum sogenannten Dorfe erstreckte.
10. wirklich. 11. Sieg. 12. Seite.
13. kämpfte. 14. Führer.
15. went over it, es (das Feld) besichtigte.
16. begleitet. 17. Gefühlen. 18. betrachten.
19. geringe Bekanntschaft.
20. welche ich zufällig. 21. erhöht. 22. entkam.
23. near which, in dessen Nähe. 24. während.
25. Schlacht. 26. durchlöchert. 27. Kugeln.
28. Kampf. 29. wissen.* 30. Pächterhof.
31. einzelnes. 32. Nebengebäuden.
33. geräumig. 34. nach. 35. Art. 36. diente.

37. Festung. 38. um zu verhindern, daß.
39. linke Flügel.
40. from getting upon, auf — gelange.
41. in den Stand gesetzt. 42. zu umgehen.
43. bei. 44. zu trennen. 45. Hauptheer.
46. wiederholte. 47. mußte. 48. vertheidigt.
49. bis zum. 50. beauftragt. 51. genötigt.
52. mitzutheilen. 53. dadurch, daß er — schrie.
54. von einem Theil. 55. Angreifer.
56. ihn verhinderten.
57. his nearer approach, näher anzukommen.
58. tapfere. 59. denken. 60. mit welcher Noth.
61. Höfe. 62. zu verteidigen.
63. ungeheurem. 64. Blutvergießen.
65. eroberten. 66. getrieben.

* Wellington. — The Greek Miltiades, the victor at Marathon and Lemnos, being unable to pay a fine of 50 talents, was cast into prison, where he died! The English Miltiades (Wellington) received the title of Duke, with a revenue of 70,000 pounds a year, for his services to his country in the French war!

from it¹ again by² our people's setting fire to the surrounding³ buildings. Of the other and the garden they never got⁴ possession. The garden, which has been mis-named⁵ the orchard⁶, is a curious old place, and particularly excited⁷ my attention. It is such an appendage⁸ as one sometimes sees to a gentleman⁹ farmer's house in England. It is a square¹⁰ enclosure¹¹ of, I should¹² suppose, towards¹³ two acres (ehfrs)¹⁴, surrounded by a good stone wall. It forms a sort of terrace, and you¹⁵ rise to it, from the side towards¹⁶ the house, by stone steps¹⁷ after you have passed the gate¹⁸. There is something in the tranquillity of this spot¹⁹, and in its apparent²⁰ security, made as it should²¹ seem²¹ for retired²² leisure, that forms²³ a singular, and to me, as I walked²⁴ along it, a most striking²⁵ contrast with the awful²⁶ and sanguinary event²⁷ of which it was the scene. This Belgian yeoman's²⁸ garden-wall was the safeguard²⁹ of Europe, and the destiny³⁰ of mankind turned³¹ perhaps upon the possession of his house. The place has suffered³² less than one would imagine³³. A grove³⁴ beyond the garden has been a good deal damaged³⁵ by musquet shot³⁶, and some holes were pierced³⁷ in the garden-wall by our men that they might fire upon the French in safety; but this and the burning³⁸ of the buildings in the outer yard, is all the mischief³⁹ I observed, and the farm⁴⁰ goes on⁴⁰ as usual. After the battle the Duke joined⁴¹ in the pursuit⁴² and followed the enemy for⁴³ some miles. Colonel Hervey, who was with him, advised him to desist⁴⁴, as the country was growing⁴⁵ less open, and he⁴⁶ might be fired at by some stragglers from behind the hedges. "Let⁴⁷ them fire away⁴⁷, — the battle is won, and my life is⁴⁸ of no value now." *Vox magnifica, et tanto viro digna, quia se non sibi, sed reipublicae soli natum esse professus est*.*

I shall stay here only a day or two, and then proceed⁴⁹ to Paris. Pray⁵⁰ let me hear from you, and buy⁵¹ some thin paper like this for your foreign⁵² correspondence. In foreign⁵³ parts⁵³, wire-wowe⁵⁴, and the gentlemen⁵⁵ like use of wax⁵⁶ must be aban-

1. davon.
2. by our people's setting fire, dadurch, daß unsere Soldaten — in Brand steckten (s. Reg. VIII. S. 410 d. Grammatik).
3. die umliegenden.
4. bekamen sie nie Besitz.
5. falsch — genannt. 6. Obstgarten.
7. erregte. 8. Anhängsel.
9. eines reichen Oekonoms. 10. viereckiges.
11. Gehäuge von. 12. I should suppose, denke ich.
13. ungefähr. 14. Morgen groß.
15. you rise to it, man steigt dazu hinauf (siehe Reg. XIV. S. 454 d. Grammatik).
16. in der Richtung. 17. Stufen. 18. Thor.
19. Platzes. 20. augenscheinlichen.
21. scheinen dürfte. 22. zurückgezogene Mäße.
23. bildet. 24. walked along it, durchspazierte.
25. auffallenden. 26. schrecklichen.
27. Begebenheit. 28. Pächters.

29. Schutzmauer. 30. Schicksal.
31. turned upon, hing — von — ab.
32. gelitten. 33. sich's denken.* 34. Lustwald.
35. good deal, &c., sehr beschädigt.
36. Kugel. 37. durchbohrt.
38. das Verbrennen. 39. Schaden.
40. farm, &c., Pachtwirtschaft nimmt seinen Gang.
41. schloß sich — an. 42. Verfolgung.
43. weit. 44. davon abzustehen. 45. wurde.
46. he might be fired at by some stragglers, einige Nachzügler könnten auf ihn — schießen.
47. let, &c., sie mögen schießen, so viel sie wollen.
48. is of no value, hat keinen Werth.
49. meine Reise nach — fortsetzen. 50. bitte.
51. kaufen Sie. 52. ausländische.
53. fremden Ländern. 54. starkes Briefpapier.
55. gentleman like use, der vornehme Gebrauch.
56. Siegellack.

* For the Ladies, who may not have studied Latin, I shall take the liberty of translating the above passage:

"A magnificent declaration, and worthy of such a man, by which he professed that he was not born for himself alone, but for his country at large."

doned¹. Have you read Dr. Holland's Travels? You will be pleased with them I think.

Yours ever sincerely,

Dudley.

If you ever come to Brussels, it² may be as well to remember, that the Hotel de Bellevue, were I am, is the³ one where you will be worst waited⁴ upon⁴ and most imposed⁵ upon⁵.

1. What sort of a guide had Lord Dudley? — 2. What is quite astonishing?

3. How did Colonel Hamilton communicate the Duke of Wellington's orders?

4. What did the French carry?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 73.

5. Describe the garden of the farm-house.

6. What was the Belgian yeoman's garden-wall?

7. What did the Duke do after the battle?

8. What was the Duke's exclamation when advised to desist by Colonel Hervey?

LIV. Lady Mary Montague to the Countess of Bute.

Louvre, Feb. 19. N. S.⁶ 1753.

My Dear Child, — I gave⁷ you some general thoughts⁸ on the education of your children in my last letter; but fearing⁹ you should think I neglected your request¹⁰, by answering¹¹ it with too much conciseness¹², I am resolved to add¹³ to it what¹⁴ little I know on the subject, and which may perhaps be useful to you in a concern¹⁵, with¹⁶ which you seem to be nearly affected¹⁶.

People commonly¹⁷ educate their children as they build their houses, according¹⁸ to some plan they think beautiful, without considering¹⁹ whether it is suited²⁰ to the purposes²¹ for which they are designed²². Almost all girls of quality²³ are educated as if they were to be great ladies, which is often as little to be expected²⁴, as an immoderate²⁵ heat in the north of Scotland. You should teach²⁶ yours to confine²⁷ their desires²⁸ to probabilities²⁹, to be as useful as possible to themselves, and to think privacy³⁰ (as it really is) the happiest state³¹ of life. I do³² not doubt your³³ giving them all the instructions³⁴ necessary to form³⁵ them to a virtuous life; but 'tis a fatal mistake³⁶ to do this, without proper³⁷ restrictions³⁸. Vices are often hid³⁹ under the name of virtues, and the practice⁴⁰ of them followed⁴¹ by the worst of consequences⁴². Sincerity, friendship, piety⁴³, disinterestedness⁴⁴, and generosity are all great virtues; but

1. aufgegeben. 2. so dürfte es gut sein, sich zu erinnern. 3. dasjenige ist. 4. am schlechtesten bedient. 5. betrogen. 6. N. S. *new Style*, neuer Styl (d. h. die Zeitrechnung nach dem Gregorianischen Kalender). 7. theilte — mit. 8. Gedanken. 9. da ich befürchte, daß. 10. Bitte. 11. weil ich sie — beantwortete. 12. Kürze. 13. to add to it, hinzuzufügen. 14. what little, das Wenige was. 15. Sache. 16. with which, &c., welche Ihnen sehr nahe am Herzen zu liegen scheint. 17. gewöhnlich. 18. nach. 19. zu überlegen ob.

20. paßt. 21. Zwecken. 22. beabsichtigt. 23. Rang. 24. zu erwarten. 25. übermäßige. 26. lehren.* 27. beschränken. 28. Wünsche auf. 29. Wahrscheinlichkeiten. 30. Zurückgezogenheit. 31. Stand. 32. do not doubt, zweifle nicht. 33. your giving, daß Sie — geben werden. 34. Belehrung. 35. um — heranzubilden. 36. Irrthum. 37. gehörigen. 38. Beschränkungen. 39. verborgen.* 40. practice of them, Ausübung derselben. 41. begleitet. 42. Folgen. 43. Frömmigkeit. 44. Uneigennützigkeit.

pursued¹ without discretion² become criminal³. I have seen ladies indulge⁴ their⁵ own ill-humour⁵ by being⁶ very rude⁷ and impertinent, and think they deserve approbation⁸, by saying⁹ I love to speak truth. One of your acquaintances gave a ball the next day after her mother died, to show¹⁰ she was sincere. I believe your own reflection¹¹ will furnish¹² you with but too many examples of the ill effects of the rest¹³ of the sentiments¹⁴ I have mentioned, when too warmly embraced¹⁵. They are generally recommended to young people without limits¹⁶ or distinction¹⁷, and this prejudice¹⁸ hurries¹⁹ them into great misfortunes, while they are applauding²⁰ themselves in²¹ the noble practice²² (as they fancy)²³ of very eminent²⁴ virtues.

I cannot help²⁵ adding²⁶ (out of my real affection to you), that I wish you would moderate²⁷ that fondness²⁸ you have²⁹ for your children. I do not mean you should abate³⁰ any part of your care³¹, or, should not do your duty³² to them in its utmost³³ extent³⁴; but I would³⁵ have you early prepare yourself for disappointments³⁶, which are heavy³⁷ in proportion to their³⁸ being surprising³⁸. It is hardly possible, in such a number³⁹ that none should be unhappy; prepare yourself against a misfortune of that kind⁴⁰. I confess there is hardly any more difficult to support⁴¹; yet, it is certain, the imagination has a great share⁴² in the pain of it⁴³, and it is more in our power (than is commonly believed) to soften⁴⁴ whatever ills⁴⁵ are founded⁴⁶ on, or augmented⁴⁷ by fancy. Strictly⁴⁸ speaking, there is but one real⁴⁹ evil⁵⁰, I mean, acute⁵¹ pain⁵²; all other complaints⁵³ are so considerably⁵⁴ diminished⁵⁵ by time, that it is plain⁵⁶ the grief⁵⁷ is⁵⁸ owing to our passion, since⁵⁹ the sensation⁶⁰ of it⁴³ vanishes⁶¹ when that is over.

There is another mistake, I forgot⁶² to mention, usual⁶³ in mothers; if any of their daughters are beauties⁶⁴, they take⁶⁵ great pains to persuade⁶⁶ them that they are ugly⁶⁷, or at least that they think so, which the young woman⁶⁸ never fails⁶⁹ to believe springs⁷⁰ from envy⁷¹, and is⁷² perhaps not much⁷³ in the wrong. I would, if possible, give them a just⁷⁴ notion of their figure, and show⁷⁵ them how⁷⁶ far it is valuable. Every advantage⁷⁷ has its price, and may

1. ausgeübt. 2. Vorsichtigkeit. 3. tadelhaft.
4. welche — freien Lauf lassen.
5. *their own, &c.*, ihren eigenen übeln Launen.
6. dadurch, daß sie.
7. grob. 8. Beifall.
9. weil sie sagten.* 10. zeigten,* daß.
11. Nachdenken. 12. versehen. 13. Uebrigen.
14. Eigenschaften, welche. 15. ausgeübt.
16. Grenzen. 17. Unterschied. 18. Vorurteil.
19. treibt. 20. sich selbst loben. 21. wegen.
22. *noble, &c.*, der edlen Ausübung.
23. sich einbilden. 24. erhabenen. 25. umhin.
26. hinzuzufügen. 27. mäßigen.
28. Liebe, welche. 29. hegen gegen.
30. ablassen in. 31. Sorgfalt.
32. Pflicht — gegen. 33. höchsten. 34. Grad.
35. *I would have you*, ich möchte, daß Sie.
36. Täuschungen. 37. schwer.
38. *to their, &c.*, als sie überraschend sind.
39. Anzahl. *The countess of Bute had 13 daughters.*
40. Art. 41. zu ertragen.

42. *has a great share in*, eine große Rolle bei dem Schmerz — spielt. 43. desselben.
44. zu lindern. 45. alles Unglück, welches.
46. auf der Fantasie gegründet.
47. oder dadurch vergrößert wird.
48. *strictly speaking*, um es genau auszudrücken.
49. wirkliches. 50. Uebel. 51. empfindlicher.
52. Schmerz. 53. Leiden. 54. bedeutend.
55. vermindert. 56. klar, daß. 57. Kummer.
58. *is owing to*, von unserer Leidenschaft herrührt.
59. da. 60. Empfindung.
61. verschwindet, wenn diese vorüber ist.
62. welche ich vergaß.* 63. gewöhnlich bei.
64. Schönheiten.
65. *take great pains*, bemühen sich sehr.
66. überreden. 67. häßlich. 68. Mädchen.
69. *never fails to believe*, stets glaubt, daß es.
70. rührt her von. 71. Neid. 72. sie hat.
73. *much in the wrong*, sehr unrecht.
74. richtigen. 75. zeigen.
76. *how far*, in wie weit. 77. Vorzug.

be over¹ or under valued. It is the common doctrine² of (what are called)² good books, to inspire³ a contempt⁴ of beauty, riches, greatness⁵, &c.. which has done⁶ as much mischief⁶ among the young of our sex as an over⁷ eager desire of them. Why they should not look⁸ on those things as blessings⁹ where they are bestowed¹⁰, though not necessities¹¹ that¹² it is impossible to be happy without, I cannot conceive. I am persuaded¹³ the ruin of Lady F— M— was¹⁴ in a great measure owing¹⁴ to the notions¹⁵ given¹⁶ her by the good people that had¹⁷ the care of her. 'Tis true, her circumstances and your daughters' are very different: they should be taught¹⁸ to be content with privacy¹⁹, and yet not neglect good fortune, if it should be offered²⁰ them.

I am²¹ afraid, I have tired²² you with my instructions²³. I do not give them as believing²⁴ my age has furnished²⁵ me with superior²⁶ wisdom, but in compliance²⁷ with your desire, and being²⁸ fond of every opportunity that gives a proof of the tenderness²⁹ with which I am ever, Your affectionate mother. *M. Wortley.*

1. How do people commonly educate their children?

2. What is a fatal mistake? — 3. Under what are vices often hid?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 75.

4. What did Lady M— often see ladies do?

5. What are generally recommended to young persons, and what are the consequences?

6. What is the one real evil? — 7. What is the other mistake in mothers?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 76.

8. What is the common doctrine of good books?

9. What was the ruin of Lady F— M—?

LV. The Earl of Chesterfield to His Son.

London, Nov. 20th, 1753.

My dear Friend,

Two mails³⁰ are³¹ now due³¹ from Holland, so that I have no letter from you to acknowledge³²; but that, you know by long experience, does³³ not hinder my writing³³ to you: I always receive your letters with pleasure; but I mean³⁴, and endeavour³⁵, that you should receive mine with some profit³⁶; preferring³⁷ always your advantage to my own pleasure.

If you find yourself well³⁸ settled³⁸ and naturalized³⁹ at Manheim, stay there some time, and do not leave⁴⁰ a certain for an uncertain good⁴¹: but if you think you shall be as well⁴², or better

1. over or under valued, zu hoch oder zu niedrig geschätzt.

2. Lehre von dem, was man — nennt.

3. einzulösen. 4. Verachtung der.

5. Bornehmheit.

6. as &c., eben so viel Unheil angestiftet.

7. over eager desire of them, zu große Begierde nach demselben. 8. ansehen.

9. Segen. 10. geschenkt. 11. Nothwendigkeiten.

12. that it is impossible to be happy without, ohne welche man nicht glücklich sein könnte (s. § 89. C. 198 d. Grammatik).

13. fest überzeugt, daß.

14. was &c. owing to, rührte größten Theils von — her. 15. Ideen.

16. ihr von — beigebracht wurden.

17. had the care of her, für ihre Erziehung zu sorgen hatten.

18. gelehrt.* 19. Zurückgezogenheit.

20. dargeboten. 21. am afraid, befürchte.

22. ermüdet. 23. Belehrung.

24. weil ich glaube, daß. 25. versehen.

26. vorzügliche. 27. in Uebereinstimmung.

28. being fond of, da ich liebe. 29. Bärtlichkeit.

30. Posten. 31. fehlen jetzt. 32. beantworten.

33. does not, &c., verhindert nicht, daß ich — schreibe. 34. es ist mein Wunsch.

35. mein Bestreben. 36. Nutzen.

37. da ich stets — vorziehe.

38. behaglich. 39. einheimisch.

40. gebe nicht — auf. 41. Gut.

42. sich eben so gut.

established¹ at Munich, go there as soon as you please²; and if disappointed³, you can always return to Manheim. I mentioned, in a former letter, your⁴ passing the Carnival at Berlin, which, I think, may be both useful and pleasing⁵ to you; however, do as you will; but let me know what you resolve⁶. That King and that country have, and will have, so great a share⁷ in the affairs of Europe, that they are⁸ well worth being⁹ thoroughly known⁹.

Whether, — where you are now, or ever may be hereafter¹⁰, — you speak French, German, or English most, I earnestly recommend to you a particular attention to the propriety¹¹ and elegance¹² of your style: employ¹³ the best words you can find in the language, avoid¹⁴ *cacophony*¹⁵, and make your periods¹⁶ as harmonious as you can. I need¹⁷ not, I am sure, tell you, what you must often have felt¹⁸, how much the elegance of diction¹⁹ adorns²⁰ the best thoughts, and palliates²¹ the worst. In the House of Commons, it is almost every thing²²; and indeed, in every assembly²³, whether public or private. Words, which are the dress²⁴ of thoughts, deserve, surely, more care²⁵ than clothes, which are only the dress of the person, and which, however, ought to have their share⁷ of attention. If you attend²⁶ to your style in one language, it will give you a habit²⁷ of attending²⁸ to it in every other, and if you once speak French or German very elegantly²⁹, you will afterwards speak English so much the better for³⁰ it. I repeat³¹ it to you again, for at least the thousandth time; exert³² your whole³³ attention now in acquiring³⁴ the ornamental³⁵ parts³⁵ of character. People know very little of the world, and talk³⁶ nonsense³⁷, when they talk of plainness³⁸ and solidity unadorned³⁹; they will do⁴⁰ in nothing: mankind has been long out⁴¹ of a state of nature, and the golden age of native⁴² simplicity³⁸ will never return. Whether⁴³ for⁴³ the better or the worse, no⁴⁴ matter; but we are refined⁴⁵; and plain⁴⁶ manners, plain dress, and plain diction, would as⁴⁷ little do in life, as acorns⁴⁸, herbage⁴⁹, and the water of the neighbouring spring⁵⁰ would do at table. Some people are just come⁵¹, who interrupt⁵² me in the middle of my sermon⁵³; so I must wish you good night. *Chesterfield.*

1. What king and country will have a great share in the affairs of Europe?

2. What does Lord Chesterfield most earnestly recommend?

3. What are words, and what do they deserve?

4. What will the attending to style in one language give?

5. When people talk of plainness, &c., what do they know?

6. What would as little do in life as acorns, &c. at table?

1. zu Hause finden. 2. wollen. 3. getäuscht.
4. *your passing*, daß Sie — zubringen sollten.
5. angenehm. 6. beschließen. 7. Antheil.
8. *are well worth*, wohl verdienen.
9. *being*, &c., durch und durch gekannt zu werden.
10. nachher. 11. Richtigkeit.
12. Schönheit. 13. bedienen Sie sich der.
14. vermeiden Sie. 15. Hebelklang.
16. Sätze. 17. brauche. 18. empfunden.
19. Styls. 20. schmückt. 21. beschönigt.
22. Alles. 23. Versammlung.
24. Einleidung, Anzug.
25. Sorgfalt. 26. auf — achten.
27. die Gewohnheit.

28. *of attending to it*, darauf zu achten.
29. schön. 30. *for it*, deswegen.
31. wiederhole. 32. wenden Sie. 33. ganze.
34. auf die Erwerbung.
35. des zur Zierde dienenden Theils.
36. sprechen. 37. Unsinn. 38. Einfachheit.
39. ungeschmückt. 40. gelten. 41. ausgetreten.
42. ursprünglich. 43. ob zum.
44. *no matter*, thut nichts zur Sache.
45. verfeinert. 46. einfache.
47. *as little do*, eben so wenig taugen.
48. Eicheln. 49. Kräuter. 50. Brunnen.
51. gekommen. 52. stören. 53. Predigt.

LVI. Devouring¹ Books.

It is recorded² of Madame de Staël-Holstein, that before she was fifteen years of age she had "*devoured*" 600 novels in three months, so that she must have read³ more than six a-day⁴ upon⁵ an average⁵. Louis XVI., during the five months and seven days of his imprisonment⁶ immediately preceding⁷ his death, read 157 volumes, or one a-day. If this species⁸ of gluttony⁹ is pardonable¹⁰ in circumstances like those of Louis, it is less so in those of a young lady of fourteen or fifteen. No one can have time for reflection¹¹ who reads at¹² this rapid rate¹², and, whatever¹³ may¹⁴ be thought¹⁴, these *devourers* of books are guilty¹⁵ of abusing¹⁶ nature to an extent¹⁷ as much greater than those who overcharge¹⁸ their stomachs as¹⁹ the intellectual²⁰ powers²¹ are higher than the animal²² propensities²³. Thousands of young people spend their time in perpetual reading, or rather in *devouring* books. It is true, the food²⁴ is light; but it occupies²⁵ the mental faculties for the time in fruitless efforts²⁶, and operates²⁷ to exclude²⁸ food of a better quality.

Annals of Education.

1. How many books had Madame de Staël Holstein *devoured* before she was fifteen?
2. How many volumes did Louis XVI. read during the five months of his imprisonment?
3. Of what are these *devourers* of books guilty?

LVII. Arabic Proverbs.

1. Sometimes the tongue cuts²⁹ off the head.
2. If your friend be honey, do not eat³⁰ him altogether.
3. The provisions³¹ suffer³² when the cat and the mouse live on good terms³³.
4. When there are many captains, the ship sinks.
5. Borrowed³⁴ dresses³⁵ give no warmth.
6. When you pass³⁶ through the country of the one-eyed³⁷; make yourself one-eyed.
7. The best companions when you sit,³⁸ are good books.
8. The worst kind³⁹ of men are those who do not care⁴⁰ when men see them⁴¹ doing wrong.
9. Honour yourself, and you will be honoured; despise yourself, and you will be despised.
10. The mother of the murdered sleeps, but the mother of the murderer does not sleep.
11. Sciences are locks, and inquiry⁴² the key to⁴³ them.
12. He that passes through the onions⁴⁴, or their peel⁴⁵, will smell of⁴⁶ them.

1. das Verschlingen von. 2. erzählt. 3. gelesen.*
 4. täglich (s. Reg. I. S. 388 d. Gramm.).
 5. upon, &c., im Durchschnitt.
 6. Gefangenschaft. 7. vor. 8. Art.
 9. Gefräßigkeit. 10. verzeihlich — unter.
 11. Nachdenken. 12. at this, &c., so schnell.
 13. was — auch. 14. may, &c., man — denken mag.
 15. schuldig. 16. eines Mißbrauchs gegen.
 17. to an extent as much greater than, in einem um so höheren Grade.
 18. überladen. 19. als. 20. geistige.
 21. Vermögen. 22. sinnlichen.

23. Neigungen. 24. Nahrung.
 25. nimmt — in Anspruch. 26. Anstrengung.
 27. wirkt um. 28. auszuschließen.
 29. schneidet.* 30. essen* Sie.
 31. Nahrungsmittel. 32. leiden.
 33. live on good terms, auf freundschaftlichem Fuße leben. 34. geborgte. 35. Kleider.
 36. reisen. 37. Einäugigen. 38. sitzen.*
 39. Art. 40. do not care, sich nicht kümmern.
 41. them, &c., daß sie unrecht thun.
 42. Nachforschung. 43. dazu.
 44. Zwiebeln. 45. Schale. 46. darnach riechen.

LVIII. The old Man's Comforts¹, and how He gained² them².

You are old, Father William, the young man cried³,
The few locks⁴ which are left⁵ you are gray;
You are hale⁶, Father William, a hearty⁷ old man,
Now tell me the reason⁸, I pray⁹.

In the days of my youth¹⁰, Father William replied¹¹,
I remember'd that youth would fly¹² fast,
And abused¹³ not my health and my vigour¹⁴ at first,
That¹⁵ I never¹⁶ might need them at last.

You are old, Father William, the young man cried,
And pleasures with youth pass¹⁷ away,
And yet you lament¹⁸ not the days that are gone¹⁹,
Now tell me the reason, I pray.

In the days of my youth, Father William replied,
I remember'd that youth could not last²⁰;
I thought²¹ of the future, whatever I did,
That²² I never might grieve²² for the past²³.

You are old, Father William, the young man cried,
And life must²⁴ be hastening away;
You are cheerful²⁵, and love²⁶ to converse²⁶ upon death,
Now tell me the reason, I pray.

I am cheerful, young man, Father William replied,
Let²⁷ the cause thy attention engage²⁷,
In the days of my youth I remember'd my God!
And he has not forgotten²⁸ my age.

Southey.

LIX. Inattention²⁹.

In most cases³⁰ our habits³¹ of³² inattention may be traced³³ to a want³⁴ of curiosity³⁵; and therefore such habits are to be corrected³⁶, not by endeavouring³⁷ to force the attention in particular³⁸ instances³⁰, but³⁹ by gradually⁴⁰ learning⁴¹ to place⁴² the ideas which we wish to remember⁴³ in an interesting point⁴⁴ of view.

Dugald Stewart.

1. Trost.
2. ihn erlangte. 3. rief — aus.
4. Haarlocken. 5. (übrig) geblieben.
6. gesund. 7. frischer, munterer. 8. Grund.
9. bitte. 10. Jugend. 11. erwiederte.
12. schnell dahinfliegt.
13. mißbrauchte. 14. Kraft. 15. damit.
16. *I never might need them*, ich sie nicht — entbehre.
17. *pass away*, vergehen. 18. beklagen Sie sich nicht.
19. verschwunden. 20. dauern. 21. dachte an.
22. *that, &c.*, damit ich mich nie um — zu grämen hätte. 23. Vergangenheit.
24. *must be, &c.*, eilt schnell dahin.

25. heiter. 26. sprechen gern über.
27. *let — engage*, schenke der Ursache deine Aufmerksamkeit. 28. vergessen.
29. Unaufmerksamkeit. 30. Fällen.
31. Gewohnheit.
32. *of inattention*, unaufmerksam zu sein.
33. zurückgeführt. 34. Mangel.
35. Wißbegierde.
36. *are to be corrected*, müssen gebessert werden.
37. durch einen Versuch. 38. besondern.
39. *but by*, sondern dadurch, daß man.
40. allmählig. 41. lernt.* 42. zu stellen.
43. man sich erinnern will.
44. *point of view*, Gesichtspunkt.

D. Historical Pieces, &c.

LX. Queen Elizabeth and the Countess of Nottingham.

The grief¹ or compunction² of Queen Elizabeth for³ the death of the Earl of Essex, with⁴ which she long maintained⁵ a severe⁶ struggle⁷, was⁸ generally understood at the time to have rapidly⁹ completed the overthrow of powers, which the advances¹⁰ of old age¹¹ and an accumulation¹² of cares¹³ and anxieties¹⁴ had already undermined¹⁵. "Our queen," writes an English correspondent to a Scotch nobleman in the service¹⁶ of James, "is troubled¹⁷ with a rheum¹⁸ in her arm, which vexeth¹⁹ her very much, besides²⁰ the grief she hath conceived²¹ for my Lord Essex's death. She sleepeth not so much by day as she used²²; neither²³ taketh rest by night. Her delight²⁴ is to sit in the dark, and sometimes with shedding²⁵ tears²⁵ to bewail²⁶ Essex."

A remarkable anecdote, published²⁷ in "Osborn's Traditional Memoirs of Queen Elizabeth," puts²⁸ the fact of Elizabeth's deep repentance²⁹ beyond³⁰ all doubt. The Countess of Nottingham, who was a relation³¹, but no friend, of the Earl of Essex, being³² on her death bed, entreated³³ to see the queen, declaring³⁴ that she had something to confess³⁵ to her, before she could die in peace³⁶.

On³⁷ her majesty's arrival³⁸, the countess produced³⁹ a ring, which she said the Earl of Essex had sent to her after his condemnation⁴⁰ with an earnest request⁴¹ that she would deliver⁴² it to the queen, as the token⁴³ by which he implored⁴⁴ her mercy; but which, in obedience⁴⁵ to her husband, to whom she had communicated the circumstance, she had hitherto⁴⁶ withheld⁴⁷, for which she intreated⁴⁸ the queen's forgiveness⁴⁹.

On seeing⁵⁰ the ring, Elizabeth instantly recognized⁵¹ it as one which she had presented⁵² to her unhappy favorite when he departed⁵³ for⁵⁴ Cadiz, with the tender⁵⁵ promise, that of whatever⁵⁶ crime his

1. Kummer. 2. Gewissensbisse. 3. wegen.
4. gegen. 5. behauptete. 6. harten. 7. Kampf.
8. *was generally understood at the time to have*, wurde damals allgemein als der Grund angesehen, welcher.
9. *rapidly completed the overthrow*, schnell die Abnahme der Kräfte — vollendete.
10. das Vorrücken. 11. des hohen Alters.
12. Anhäufung.
13. Sorgen. 14. Besorgnissen.
15. untergraben. 16. Dienste. 17. geplagt.
18. Fluß. 19. quält (über die Endung *th*, oben s. Anmerk. 5, S. 222 d. Grammatik).
20. neben. 21. empfindet. 22. zu thun pflegte.
23. *neither taketh rest*, auch hat sie keine Ruhe.
24. Vergnügen.

25. Thränenvergießen. 26. zu beweinen.
27. veröffentlicht. 28. setzt. 29. Reue.
30. außer. 31. Verwandte. 32. als — lag.
33. bat sie. 34. indem sie erklärte.
35. bekennen. 36. Frieden.
37. als. 38. ankam. 39. zog — hervor.
40. Verurtheilung. 41. Bitte.
42. übergeben möchte. 43. Zeichen, wodurch.
44. ihre Gnade ansuchte.
45. aus Gehorsam gegen. 46. bisher.
47. vorenthalten hatte. 48. ersuchte.
49. Verzeihung. 50. beim Erblicken.
51. erkannte. 52. gegeben, geschenkt.
53. abreiste. 54. nach. 55. dem zärtlichen.
56. *of whatever crime*, was auch immer das Verbrechen sei, wessen.

enemies might accuse¹ him, or whatever offences² he might commit³, on⁴ his returning to her that pledge⁵, she would either pardon him or admit⁶ him at least⁷ to justify⁸ himself in her presence⁹. Transported¹⁰ at once¹¹ with grief and rage, on learning¹² the barbarous infidelity¹³ of which the earl had been the victim¹⁴ and herself the dupe¹⁵, the queen shook¹⁶ in her bed the dying countess, and vehemently¹⁷ exclaiming¹⁷, that God might forgive her, but she never could, flew¹⁸ out of the chamber.

Returning¹⁹ to her palace, she surrendered²⁰ herself without resistance to the despair²¹ which seized²² her heart on this fatal and too late²³ disclosure²⁴.

Hence²⁵, says Miss Aikin, in her "Memoirs of the Court of Queen Elizabeth," her refusal²⁶ of medicine, and almost of food²⁷; hence her obstinate²⁸ silence, interrupted only by sighs²⁹, groans³⁰, and broken³¹ hints of a deep sorrow³², which she cared³³ not to reveal; hence her days and nights seated³⁴ on the floor sleepless, her eyes fixed³⁵; in short³⁶, all those heart-rending³⁷ symptoms of incurable — mortal³⁸ anguish³⁹, which conducted⁴⁰ her in the space⁴¹ of twenty days to the lamentable⁴² termination⁴³ of a long life of power, prosperity and glory.

1. What overthrew the powers of Elizabeth's mind?
2. What did the Countess of Nottingham do when on her death bed?
3. What did the Countess produce on the arrival of her Majesty?
4. What did Elizabeth recognize on seeing the ring?

NB, Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 81.

5. What did the Queen do on learning the infidelity of which the Earl of Essex had been the victim?
6. What did the Queen do on returning to her palace?
7. What conclusion does Miss Aikin draw from Queen Elizabeth's chagrin and grief?

LXI. Affected⁴⁴ Honesty⁴⁵.

Look⁴⁶ out of your door⁴⁶, — take⁴⁷ notice of that man: see what disquieting⁴⁸, intriguing⁴⁹ and shifting⁵⁰, he⁵¹ is content to go through⁵¹, merely⁵² to be⁵³ thought a man of plain-dealing⁵⁴ — three grains⁵⁵ of honesty would save⁵⁶ him all this trouble —
Sterne.

1. beschuldigen, anklagen. 2. Vergehen.
3. er sich auch zu Schulden kommen ließe.
4. *on his returning*, wenn er ihr — zurück-
schickte, so. 5. Pfand. 6. zulassen.
7. wenigstens. 8. sich — zu rechtfertigen.
9. Gegenwart. 10. außer sich. 11. zumal vor.
12. als sie erfuhr. 13. Treulosigkeit.
14. Opfer. 15. die Betrogene.
16. schüttelte.* 17. heftig ausrufend.
18. flog, stürzte sie.
19. als sie — zurückkehrte. 20. gab — hin.
21. Verzweiflung. 22. ergriff. 23. späten.
24. Mittheilungen. 25. daher.
26. Verweigerung —; man ergänze „zu nehmen“.
27. Nahrung. 28. hartnäckiges.
29. Seufzer. 30. Stöhnen.

31. *broken hints*, unvollständige Hindeutungen auf. 32. Kummer.
33. *cared not to reveal*, nicht mittheilen wollte.
34. sitzend. 35. auf einen Fleck gerichtet.
36. kurz. 37. herzerreißenden. 38. tödtlichen.
39. Seelenangst. 40. führte.
41. Zeitraum. 42. beklagenswerth.
43. Schluß. 44. geheuchelte. 45. Ehrlichkeit.
46. *look out, &c.*, sehet zur Thür hinaus.
47. *take notice of*, beobachtet.
48. Unruhe er sich unterwirft.
49. welcher Kniffe. 50. welcher Kunstgriffe.
51. *he is, &c.*, er sich bedient. 52. nur.
53. *to be thought*, um für einen — gehalten zu werden. 54. ehrlichen.
55. Gran. 56. ersparen.

LXII. The Siege¹ and Conquest² of Constantinople.

While Mahomet, April 6th, 1453, threatened³ the capital⁴ of the East, the Greek emperor implored⁵ with fervent⁶ prayers the assistance of earth, and heaven. But the invisible powers⁷ were deaf⁸ to his supplications; and Christendom beheld⁹ with indifference the fall of Constantinople, while¹⁰ she derived¹⁰ at least¹¹ some¹² promise¹² of supply¹³ from the jealous¹⁴ and temporal¹⁵ policy of the Sultan of Egypt. Some states were too weak¹⁶, others too remote; by some the danger¹⁷ was considered as imaginary, by others as inevitable¹⁸: the western princes were involved¹⁹ in their endless and domestic²⁰ quarrels²¹; and the Roman pontiff²² was exasperated²³ by the falsehood or obstinacy²⁴ of the Greeks. Instead²⁵ of employing²⁶ in their favour the arms²⁷ and treasures of Italy, Nicholas the Fifth had foretold²⁸ their approaching²⁹ ruin; and his honour was engaged³⁰ in the accomplishment³¹ of his prophecy. Perhaps he was softened³² by the last³³ extremity of their distress; but his compassion was tardy³⁴; his efforts were faint³⁵ and unavailing³⁶; and Constantinople had fallen, before the squadrons³⁷ of Genoa and Venice could sail³⁸ from their harbours. Even the princes of the Morea and of the Greek Islands affected³⁹ a cold neutrality; the Genoese colony of Galata negociated⁴⁰ a private treaty⁴¹; and the Sultan indulged⁴² them in the delusive⁴³ hope, that by his clemency⁴⁴ they might survive⁴⁵ the ruin of the empire. A plebeian⁴⁶ crowd⁴⁶, and some Byzantine nobles, basely⁴⁷ withdrew⁴⁷ from the danger of their country; and the avarice⁴⁸ of the rich denied⁴⁹ the emperor, and reserved⁵⁰ for the Turks, the secret treasures which might⁵¹ have raised⁵¹ in their defence whole armies of mercenaries⁵². The indigent⁵³ and solitary⁵⁴ prince prepared however to sustain⁵⁵ his formidable⁵⁶ adversary⁵⁷; but if⁵⁸ his courage were equal⁵⁹ to the peril, his⁶⁰ strength was inadequate⁶¹ to the conquest. In the beginning of the spring, the Turkish vanguard⁶² swept⁶³ the towns and villages as far as the gates of Constantinople, submission⁶⁴ was

1. Belagerung.
2. Eroberung. 3. bedrohte.
4. Hauptstadt des Morgenlands. 5. ersuchte.
6. inbrünstigem. 7. Mächte.
8. taub gegen. 9. betrachtete *
10. sie erhielt aber. 11. wenigstens.
12. eine unzuverlässige Versprechung.
13. der Unterstützung.
14. eifersüchtigen.
15. zeitlichen, wankelmüthigen.
16. schwach. 17. Gefahr.
18. unvermeidlich. 19. verwickelt.
20. innern, einheimischen.
21. Zwistigkeiten, Fehden.
22. Papst. 23. aufgebracht.
24. Halsstarrigkeit. 25. anstatt.
26. anzuwenden. 27. Waffen, Soldaten.
28. prophezeit. 29. herannahenden Untergang.
30. engaged in, daran gesetzt, daß.
31. in Erfüllung ginge. 32. erweicht.
33. by the last extremity of their distress, durch ihre ganze verzweifelte Lage.
34. langsam. 35. schwach. 36. unwirksam.

37. Flotten. 38. segeln.
39. blieben kalt neutral. 40. unterhandelte um.
41. einen geheimen Vertrag.
42. ließ sie sich schmeicheln.
43. trügerischen.
44. Milde, Gnade. 45. überleben.
46. eine Menge Plebejer.
47. zogen sich niederträchtig — zurück.
48. Habgucht, Geiz. 49. versagte.
50. bewahrte für.
51. hätten auf die Beine bringen können.
52. Miethsoldaten. 53. arme.
54. vereinzelt.
55. den Kampf gegen — auszuhalten.
56. furchtbaren. 57. Gegner.
58. wenn auch.
59. were equal to the peril, sich mit der Gefahr messen konnte.
60. his strength was, so waren doch seine Kräfte.
61. inadequate to the conquest, zum Erringen des Sieges nicht gewachsen.
62. Vortrab. 63. verheerte.
64. die Unterwürfigen.

spared¹ and protected; whatever² presumed³ to resist⁴ was exterminated⁵ with fire and sword. The Greek places on the Black Sea, Mesembria, Acheloum, and Bizon, surrendered⁶ on the first summons⁷; Selybria alone deserved⁸ the honours of a siege or blockade⁹; and the bold¹⁰ inhabitants, while they were invested¹¹ by land, launched¹² their boats, pillaged¹³ the opposite coast oft Cyzicus; and sold their captives¹⁴ in the public market. But on the approach¹⁵ of Mahomet himself all was silent and prostrate¹⁶: he first halted¹⁷ at the distance of five miles; and from thence advancing¹⁸ in battle¹⁹ array, planted²⁰ before the gate of St. Romanus the imperial standard²¹; and on the sixth day of April, formed²² the memorable²³ siege of Constantinople.

In her last decay²⁴, Constantinople was still peopled with more than a hundred thousand inhabitants; but these numbers²⁵ are found in the accounts²⁶, not of war²⁷, but²⁸ of captivity²⁹; and they mostly consisted³⁰ of mechanics, of priests, of women, and of men devoid³¹ of that spirit³² which even³³ women have sometimes exerted³⁴ for the common safety. I can suppose, I could almost excuse the reluctance³⁵ of subjects³⁶ to serve³⁷ on a distant frontier³⁸, at³⁹ the will of a tyrant; but the man who dares⁴⁰ not expose his life in the defence⁴¹ of his children and his property⁴², has lost in society the first and most active⁴³ energies⁴⁴ of nature, and scarcely⁴⁵ deserves⁴⁶ the name⁴⁷ of man.

The last speech⁴⁸ of Palaeologus was the funeral-oration⁴⁹ of the Roman empire: he promised, he conjured⁵⁰, and he vainly⁵¹ attempted⁵¹ to infuse⁵² the hope which was extinguished⁵³ in his own mind. In this world all was comfortless⁵⁴ and gloomy⁵⁵, and neither the gospel⁵⁶ nor the church have proposed⁵⁷ any conspicuous⁵⁸ recompense⁵⁹ to the heroes who fall in the service⁶⁰ of their country. But the example of their prince, and the confinement⁶¹ of a siege, had armed⁶² these warriors⁶³ with the courage of despair, and the pathetic⁶⁴ scene is described by the feelings⁶⁵ of the historian Phranza, who was himself present at this mournful assembly. They wept⁶⁶, they embraced, regardless⁶⁷ of their families and fortunes, they devoted⁶⁸ their lives; and each commander, departing⁶⁹ to his station,

1. verschont.
2. Alles was.
3. sich erdreistete.
4. Widerstand zu leisten.
5. vernichtet.
6. übergaben sich.
7. Aufforderung.
8. verdiente sich.
9. Blockade.
10. kühnen, tapfern.
11. belagert.
12. stachen mit — in die See.
13. plünderten.
14. Gefangenen auf.
15. Annäherung.
16. niedergeschlagen.
17. er ließ zuerst — Halt machen.
18. vorrückend.
19. battle array, Schlachtordnung.
20. pflanzte — auf.
21. Standarte, Fahne.
22. fing — an.
23. denkwürdige.
24. Verfall.
25. Zahlen sind nicht — zu finden.
26. auf den Listen.
27. Kriege.
28. sondern.
29. Sklaverei.
30. bestanden — aus.
31. denen es — fehlte.
32. Muth.
33. sogar.
34. gezeigt.
35. Unwilligkeit.
36. Unterthanen.

37. Militärdienst zu thun.
38. Grenze.
39. at the will of, auf Befehl.
40. dares not expose his life, sein Leben nicht in Gefahr setzen will.
41. Vertheidigung.
42. Eigenthums.
43. thätigste.
44. Kraft, Energie.
45. kaum.
46. verdient.
47. the name of man, einen Mann genannt zu werden.
48. Rede.
49. Grabrede.
50. beschwor.
51. versuchte vergebens.
52. einzusüßen.
53. erlösen.
54. trostlos.
55. traurig.
56. Evangelium.
57. versprochen.
58. irgend eine außerordentliche.
59. Belohnung, Vergeltung.
60. im Dienste.
61. Einsperrung.
62. ausgerüstet.
63. Krieger.
64. rührende.
65. Gefühle.
66. weinten.*
67. ohne Rücksicht auf ihre Familien und Vermögensumstände.
68. weihten.
69. sich hinbegebend auf.

maintained¹ all night a vigilant² and anxious watch³ on the rampart⁴. The emperor, and some faithful companions, entered the dome of St. Sophia, which in a few hours was⁵ to be converted⁶ into a mosch; and devoutly⁷ received, with tears and prayers, the sacrament⁸ of the holy communion⁸. He reposed⁹ some moments in the palace, which resounded¹⁰ with cries and lamentations¹¹; solicited¹² the pardon of all whom he might have injured¹³; and mounted¹⁴ on horseback¹⁵ to visit the guards¹⁶, and explore¹⁷ the motions of the enemy. The distress¹⁸ and fall of the last Constantine are more glorious than the long prosperity¹⁹ of the Byzantine Caesars.

In the confusion²⁰ of darkness an assailant²¹ may sometimes succeed; but in this great and general attack²², the military judgment and astrological knowledge of Mahomet advised²³ him to expect the morning, the memorable twenty-ninth of May, in the fourteen hundred and fifty-third year of the Christian era. The preceding²⁴ night had been strenuously²⁵ employed²⁶: the troops, the cannon, and the facines²⁷ were advanced²⁸ to the edge²⁹ of the ditch³⁰, which in many parts presented³¹ a smooth³² and level³³ passage to the breach³⁴; and his four-score³⁵ galleys almost touched³⁶ with their prows³⁷ and their scaling-ladders³⁸, the less defensible³⁹ walls of the harbour⁴⁰. Under⁴¹ pain of death⁴¹, silence was enjoined⁴²: but the physical laws of motion and sound⁴³ are⁴⁴ not obedient⁴⁴ to discipline or fear; each individual might suppress⁴⁵ his voice and measure his foot-steps⁴⁶; but the march and labour⁴⁷ of thousands must inevitably⁴⁸ produce a strange confusion of dissonant⁴⁹ clamours⁵⁰, which reached⁵¹ the ears of the watchmen⁵² of the towers. At day-break, without the customary⁵³ signal of the morning gun⁵⁴, the Turks assaulted⁵⁵ the city by⁵⁶ sea and land; and the similitude⁵⁷ of a twined or twisted thread has been applied to the closeness and continuity of their line of attack⁵⁷. The foremost⁵⁸ ranks consisted of the refuse⁵⁹ of the host⁶⁰, a voluntary crowd⁶¹ who fought⁶² without order or command; of⁶³ the feeble-

1 hielt. 2. strenge. 3. Wache.
4. Wall. 5. *was to be*, werden sollte.
6. umgewandelt. 7. andächtig.
8. das heilige Abendmahl.
9. ruhte sich — aus. 10. wiederholte.
11. Beßlagen. 12. bat um.
13. Unrecht gethan haben könnte.
14. stieg. 15. zu Pferd. 16. Wachtposten.
17. auszuspähen.
18. Bedrängniß, Unglück. 19. Glück.
20. Verwirrung.
21. *an assailant may — succeed*, kann es einem Angreifer — gelingen.
22. Angriff.
23. *advised him to expect*, riethen ihm — abzuwarten. 24. vorhergehende.
25. mit aller Anstrengung.
26. zugebracht. 27. Fackeln.
28. vorgeführt bis an. 29. Rand.
30. Grabens. 31. darbot. 32. freien.
33. ebenen. 34. Bresche.
35. *four-score galleys*, achtzig Galeeren.
36. rührten. 37. Bordentheilen.

38. Sturmleitern.
39. haltbare, vertheidigungsfähige Mauern.
40. Hafens. 41. bei Todesstrafe.
42. befohlen, geboten.
43. Klang. 41. gehorchen — nicht.
45. unterdrücken. 46. Schritte bemessen.
47. Arbeit. 48. unvermeidlich.
49. mißlingenden. 50. Lärm, Töne.
51. erreichte.
52. *watchmen of the towers*, Thurmwächter.
53. gewohnte. 54. Kanone.
55. griffen — an.
56. *by sea, &c.*, von der See- und Landseite an.
57. *and the similitude of a twined or twisted thread has been applied to the closeness and continuity of their line of attack*, und man hat die Dichtigkeit und ununterbrochenen Zusammenhang ihrer Angriffskolonnen mit einem gedrehten oder gezwirnten Faden verglichen.
58. vordersten. 59. aus dem Auswurf.
60. Heeres. 61. Haufen.
62. kämpfte.* 63. aus.

ness¹ of age² or childhood, of peasants and vagrants³, and of⁴ all who had joined⁵ the camp in the blind hope of plunder and martyrdom⁶. The common⁷ impulse⁸ drove⁹ them onwards to⁹ the wall: the most audacious¹⁰ to climb¹¹ were instantly precipitated¹²; and not a dart¹³, not a bullet¹⁴, of the Christians was idly¹⁵ wasted on the accumulated¹⁶ throng¹⁷. But their strength and ammunition¹⁸ were exhausted¹⁹ in this laborious²⁰ defence²¹: the ditch was filled with the bodies of the slain²²; they supported²³ the footsteps²⁴ of their companions²⁵; and of this devoted²⁶ vanguard, the death was more serviceable²⁷ than the life. Under their respective²⁸ Bashaws and Sanjaks, the troops of Anatolia and Romania were successively²⁹ led³⁰ to the charge³¹; their progress³² was various³³ and doubtful³⁴; but, after a conflict³⁵ of two hours, the Greeks still maintained³⁶ and improved³⁷ their advantage³⁸; and the voice of the emperor was heard, encouraging³⁹ his soldiers to achieve⁴⁰, by a last effort⁴¹, the deliverance⁴² of their country. In that fatal moment, the Janizaries arose⁴³, fresh, vigorous, and invincible⁴⁴. The Sultan himself on horseback, with an iron mace⁴⁵ in his hand, was the spectator⁴⁶ and judge⁴⁷ of their valour: he was surrounded by ten thousand of his domestic⁴⁸ troops, whom he reserved⁴⁹ for the decisive⁵⁰ occasion⁵¹; and the tide⁵² of battle was directed⁵³ and impelled⁵⁴ by his voice and eye. His numerous ministers⁵⁵ of justice⁵⁵ were posted⁵⁶ behind the line, to urge⁵⁷, to restrain⁵⁸, and to punish⁵⁹: and if danger⁶⁰ was in the front⁶¹, shame and inevitable⁶² death were in the rear⁶³ of the fugitives⁶⁴. The cries⁶⁵ of fear and of pain were drowned⁶⁶ in the martial music of drums, trumpets, and atabals⁶⁷; and experience has proved⁶⁸, that the mechanical operation⁶⁹ of sounds⁷⁰, by⁷¹ quickening the circulation of the blood and spirits⁷², will act⁷³ on the human machine more forcibly⁷⁴ than the eloquence⁷⁵ of reason and honour. From the lines⁷⁶, the galleys, and the bridge, the Ottoman artillery thundered on⁷⁷ all sides; and the camp⁷⁸ and city, the Greeks and Turks, were involved⁷⁹ in a cloud⁸⁰ of smoke⁸⁰, which could only be dispelled⁸¹ by the final⁸² deliverance⁸³ or destruction of the Roman

1. Schwäche. 2. des Alters. 3. Vagabunden.
4. of all, aus allen denjenigen.
5. sich dem Lager angeschlossen hatten.
6. Märtyrertodes. 7. gewöhnliche.
8. Impuls. 9. trieb sie vorwärts gegen.
10. kühnsten. 11. zu erklettern.
12. hinuntergeschleudert. 13. Wurfspieß.
14. Kugel.
15. *was idly wasted*, wurde unnütz verschwendet auf (d. h. die nicht trafen).
16. zusammengebrängten. 17. Haufen.
18. Kriegsvorrath. 19. erschöpft.
20. angestregten. 21. Vertheidigung.
22. Getödteten. 23. dienten.
24. zu Fußtritten für. 25. Kameraden.
26. aufopfernden Vortrab. 27. nützlicher.
28. betreffenden. 29. nach einander.
30. geführt. 31. Angriff. 32. Erfolg.
33. veränderlich. 34. zweifelhaft.
35. Kampf. 36. behaupteten. 37. benutzten.
38. Vortheil. 39. aufmunternd. 40. zu bewirken.
41. Anstrengung. 42. Befreiung.

43. erhoben sich. 44. unüberwindlich.
45. eisernen Kolben. 46. Zuschauer.
47. Richter. 48. Haustruppen.
49. aufbewahrt. 50. entscheidende.
51. Gelegenheit, Augenblick. 52. Strom.
53. geleitet. 54. vorwärts getrieben.
55. Gerechtigkeitsdiener. 56. aufgestellt.
57. um anzuspornen. 58. zurückzuhalten.
59. zu bestrafen. 60. Gefahr. 61. Fronte.
62. so waren Schande und unvermeidlicher.
63. im Rücken. 64. Fliehenden.
65. Geschrei. 66. erstickt, übertäubt durch.
67. maurische Trommel. 68. bewiesen.
69. Wirkung. 70. Töne, Klänge.
71. *by quickening*, dadurch, daß sie — beschleunigt.
72. den Geist belebt.
73. *will act*, wirkt. 74. kräftiger.
75. Beredsamkeit der Vernunft.
76. Schlachtlinien. 77. nach — hin.
78. Lager. 79. umhüllt. 80. Rauchwolke.
81. zerstreut. 82. endliche.
83. Befreiung.

empire. The single¹ combats² of the heroes of history or fable amuse our fancy³ and engage⁴ our affections; the skilful⁵ evolutions of war may inform⁶ the mind, and improve⁷ a necessary, though pernicious⁸ science. But in the uniform⁹ and odious picture of a general assault¹⁰, all is blood and horror and confusion; nor¹¹ shall I strive, at the distance¹² of three centuries and a thousand miles, to delineate¹³ a scene of¹⁴ which there could be no spectators, and of¹⁵ which the actors¹⁶ themselves were incapable¹⁷ of forming¹⁸ any just¹⁹ or adequate²⁰ idea.

The immediate²¹ loss of Constantinople may be ascribed²² to the bullet, or arrow²³, which pierced²⁴ the gauntlet²⁵ of John Justiani. The sight²⁶ of his blood, and the exquisite²⁷ pain, appalled²⁸ the courage of the chief, whose arms and counsels²⁹ were the firmest rampart³⁰ of the city. As he withdrew³¹ from his station³² in quest³³ of a surgeon, his flight³⁴ was perceived and stopped³⁵ by the indefatigable³⁶ emperor. "Your wound," exclaimed Palaeologus "is slight³⁷; the danger is pressing³⁸; your presence is necessary; and whither³⁹ will you retire⁴⁰?" "I will retire," said the trembling Genoese, "by the same road⁴¹ which God has opened to the Turks;" and at these words he hastily passed through one of the breaches⁴² of the inner wall. By this pusillanimous⁴³ act⁴³, he stained⁴⁴ the honours of a military life; and the few days which he survived⁴⁵ in Galata, or the isle of Chios, were embittered by his own and the public⁴⁶ reproach⁴⁷. His example was imitated⁴⁸ by the greatest part of the Latin auxiliaries⁴⁹, and the defence began to slacken⁵⁰ when the attack⁵¹ was pressed⁵² with redoubled⁵³ vigour. The number of the Ottomans was fifty, perhaps a hundred, times superior⁵⁴ to that of the Christians; the double walls were reduced⁵⁵ by the cannon to a heap⁵⁵ of ruins: in a circuit⁵⁶ of several miles, some places must be found more easy⁵⁷ of access⁵⁷, or more feebly⁵⁸ guarded⁵⁸; and if the besiegers could penetrate⁵⁹ in a single point, the whole city was irrecoverably⁶⁰ lost. The first who deserved⁶¹ the Sultan's reward⁶² was Hassan the Janizary, of gigantic stature and strength. With his scimitar in one hand and his buckler⁶³ in the other, he ascended⁶⁴ the outward⁶⁵ fortification: of the thirty Janizaries, who were emulous⁶⁶ of his valour, eighteen

1. einzelne. 2. Kämpfe.
3. Fantasie. 4. fesseln — Zuneigung.
5. geschickten. 6. unterrichten.
7. vervollkommen. 8. verderbliche.
9. gleichförmigen. 10. Bestürmung.
11. *nor shall I strive*, auch will ich mich nicht bestreben. 12. Entfernung.
13. zu schildern.
14. *of which there could be no*, wovon es hätte keine Zuschauer geben können.
15. *of which*, wovon. 16. Handelnden.
17. nicht im Stande waren.
18. zu bilden. 19. richtige.
20. angemessene. 21. unmittelbare.
22. zugeschrieben. 23. Pfeil. 24. durchbohrte.
25. Panzerhandschuh. 26. Anblick.
27. schreckliche. 28. dämpfte.
29. Ratschläge. 30. festeste Schutzwehr.
31. sich — zurückzog.* 32. Posten.

33. um — zu suchen. 34. Flucht.
35. aufgehalten. 36. unermüdlichen.
37. unbedeutend. 38. dringend. 39. wohin.
40. sich zurückziehen. 41. Wege.
42. Brechen. 43. feigherzige Handlung.
44. befleckte. 45. nachher — lebte.
46. öffentliche. 47. Vorwürfe.
48. nachgeahmt. 49. Hülfsstruppen.
50. erschlaffen. 51. Angriff. 52. fortgesetzt.
53. verdoppelter Kraft. 54. größer als.
55. *reduced to a heap of ruins*, in einen Schutthaufen verwandelt.
56. Umkreis. 57. leichter zugänglich.
58. schwächer bewacht. 59. durchbringen.
60. unwiederbringlich. 61. verdiente.
62. Belohnung. 63. Schild. 64. erstieg er.
65. äußere Festungswerk.
66. *were emulous of his valour*, mit ihm in Tapferkeit wetterten.

perished¹ in the bold adventure. Hassan and his twelve companions had reached² the summit; the giant was precipitated³ from the rampart⁴; he rose⁵ on one knee, and was again oppressed⁶ by a shower⁷ of darts⁸ and stones. But his success⁹ had proved that the achievement¹⁰ was possible: the walls and towers were instantly covered¹¹ with a swarm of Turks; and the Greeks, now driven¹² from the vantage¹³ ground, were overwhelmed¹⁴ by increasing¹⁵ multitudes¹⁶. Amidst¹⁷ these multitudes, the emperor, who accomplished¹⁸ all the duties¹⁹ of a general and a soldier, was long seen, and finally lost. The nobles who fought²⁰ round²¹ his person, sustained²² till their last breath, the honourable names of Palaeologus* and Cantacuzene**: his mournful²³ exclamation was heard, "Cannot there be found a Christian to cut²⁴ off²⁴ my head?" and his last fear was that of falling²⁵ alive²⁶ into the hands of the infidels²⁷. The prudent²⁸ despair of Constantine cast²⁹ away²⁹ the purple³⁰: amidst the tumult³¹ he fell, by an unknown hand, and his body was buried under a mountain of the slain³². After his death, resistance³³ and order were no more: the Greeks fled³⁴ towards³⁵ the city; and many were pressed³⁶ and stifled³⁷ in the narrow pass of the gate³⁸ of St. Romanus. The victorious Turks rushed³⁹ through the breaches of the inner wall, and as they advanced⁴⁰ into the streets, they⁴¹ were soon joined⁴¹ by their brethren, who had forced⁴² the gate Phenar on the side of the harbour. In the first

* To render this history more comprehensible to young readers, it may not be superfluous to add here, that Dracoses or *Palaeologus* Constantine, the last of the Greek emperors, succeeded to the throne in 1449. He was killed, as above stated, in bravely defending Constantinople against Mohamed II., who, in 1453, besieged the city with 300,000 men. The heroic valour displayed by Constantine or Palaeologus in this unequal contest demands our admiration; but valour was of no avail, the city was taken by storm, and thus ended the Greek empire, but perhaps not for ever.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

** John Cantacuzenus, emperor of Constantinople. After filling several important offices, he was proclaimed emperor by the nobles and soldiery; and he endeavoured to heal the wounds which five years of civil war had inflicted on the state; but the jealousy of Palaeologus, the rebellion of his own son, and other disasters, induced him to resign the crown and retire to a monastery, where he employed himself in literary labours. He died in 1411, being more than 100 years old; and he may be considered as one of the greatest among the successors of Constantine. A descendant of this famous monarch, Prince Cantacuzene, a Greek patriot, was one of the first to join Ypsilanti in 1821, when declaring for the liberty of Greece.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

1. gingen — zu Grunde. 2. erreicht.
3. hinabgeschleudert. 4. Wall, Zinnen.
5. erhob* sich auf. 6. erdrückt.
7. Hagel. 8. Wurfspeisen.
9. Erfolg. 10. die Ausführung.
11. bedeckt. 12. vertrieben.*
13. the vantage ground, ihrer vortheilhaften Stellung. 14. überwältigt.
15. von der sich vermehrenden.
16. Menge. 17. unter. 18. erfüllte, leistete.
19. Pflichten, Dienste. 20. fochten.*
21. um — herum. 22. bewährten.

23. trauriger. 24. abzuschneiden.*
25. zu fallen. 26. lebendig.
27. Ungläubigen. 28. fluge, vorsichtige.
29. veranlaßte ihn — wegzuerwerfen.
30. Purpur (das Sinnbild königlicher Würde).
31. Tumult, Getümmel. 32. Todten, Gefallenen.
33. Widerstand. 34. flohen.*
35. nach, gegen — zu. 36. zerdrückt. 37. erstickt.
38. Thores. 39. stürzten ungestüm. 40. vorrückten.
41. they were soon joined by their brethren, stießen bald ihre Waffenbrüder ihnen zu.
42. genommen, erstürmt.

heat¹ of the pursuit², about two thousand Christians were put³ to the sword; but avarice⁴ soon⁵ prevailed over cruelty⁵; and the victors acknowledged⁶, that they should immediately have given quarter⁷, if the valour of the emperor and his chosen⁸ bands had not prepared⁹ them for a similar opposition in every part of the capital. It was thus, after a siege of fifty-three days, that Constantinople, which had defied¹⁰ the powers of Chosroes, the Chagan, and the caliphs, was irretrievably¹¹ subdued¹² by the arms of Mahomet the Second. Her empire¹³ only had been subverted¹⁴ by the Latins: her religion was trampled¹⁵ in the dust¹⁶ by the Moslem conquerors.

Gibbon.

1. What did the Greek emperor implore, and with what success?
2. In what were the western Princess involved, and how did the Roman Pontiff act?
3. What did the Genoese colony negotiate?
4. What did the indigent and solitary prince prepare to do?
5. What happened in the beginning of spring?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 83.

6. What places surrendered? — 7. Where did Mahomet first halt?
8. On what day did the siege of Constantinople commence?
9. With how many, and with what sort of inhabitants was Constantinople peopled?
10. What has the man lost who dares not expose his life in defence of his children?
11. What was the last speech of Palaeologus, and what was comfortless?
12. What historian has described the pathetic scene?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 84.

13. What are more glorious than the prosperity of the Byzantine Caesars?
14. In what year was the assault begun? — 15. How many galleys had Mahomet?
16. What similitude has been applied to the closeness of their lines?
17. Of what did the foremost ranks consist?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 85.

18. With what was the ditch filled?
19. What was the emperor's voice heard doing?
20. Where was the sultan, and by whom was he surrounded?
21. In what were the cries of fear drowned, and what has experience proved?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 86.

22. What amuses our fancy, and in what is *all blood and horror*?
23. To what may the immediate loss of Constantinople be ascribed?
24. What did Palaeologus exclaim, and what was the reply of the Genoese?
25. Was his example imitated? — 26. Were the Ottomans superior to the Christians?
27. Who was the first to deserve the Sultan's reward?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 87.

28. Where was the emperor long seen?
29. What was Palaeologus' exclamation?
30. After the death of the emperor what happened?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf S. 88.

31. How long did the siege last?
32. What was trampled in the dust?

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hitze, Eifer. 2. Verfolgung. | 8. ausgewählten. 9. vorbereitet. |
| 3. <i>were put to the sword</i> , mußten ungefähr — über die Klinge springen. 4. Habgier. | 10. Troß geboten. |
| 5. herrschte bald über die Grausamkeit. | 11. unwiederbringlich. |
| 6. sagten, gaben zu. | 12. unterjocht. 13. Herrschaft. |
| 7. Quartier, Lebensverschöpfung. | 14. umgestürzt. 15. zertreten. |
| | 16. Staub. |

LXIII. Mary, Queen of Scots.

To¹ all the charms¹ of beauty, and the utmost² elegance of external form³, Mary adding⁴ those accomplishments⁵ which render⁶ their impressions⁷ irresistible⁸, was⁹ polite, affable¹⁰, insinuating¹¹, sprightly¹², and capable¹³ of speaking and writing with equal ease¹⁴ and dignity¹⁵; sudden¹⁶, however, and violent in all her attachments¹⁷, because her heart was warm and unsuspecting¹⁸; impatient¹⁹ of contradiction, because she had been accustomed from her infancy to be treated²⁰ as a queen; no stranger²¹, on some occasions, to dissimulation²², which, in that perfidious²³ court²³ where she received²⁴ her education, was reckoned²⁵ among the necessary arts²⁶ of government; not insensible²⁷ to flattery, or unconscious²⁸ of that pleasure with which almost every woman beholds²⁹ the influence of her own beauty. Formed³⁰ with the qualities³¹ that we love, not with the talents that we admire, she was an agreeable woman, rather³² than an illustrious³³ queen. The vivacity of her spirit, not sufficiently³⁴ tempered³⁵ with sound judgment³⁶, and the warmth of her heart, which was not at all times under the restraint³⁷ of discretion³⁸, betrayed³⁹ her both into *errors*⁴⁰ and *crimes*⁴¹. To say that she was most⁴² unfortunate⁴², will not account⁴³ for that long and almost uninterrupted⁴⁴ succession⁴⁵ of calamities which befell⁴⁶ her; we must likewise add⁴⁷, that she was often imprudent⁴⁸. Her passion for Darnley was rash⁴⁹, youthful, and excessive⁵⁰. And though the sudden transition⁵¹ to the opposite extreme was the natural effect⁵² of her illrequited⁵³ love, and of his ingratitude, insolence, and brutality; yet neither these, nor Bothwell's artful⁵⁴ address and important services⁵⁵, can justify⁵⁶ her attachment to that nobleman. Even⁵⁷ the manners⁵⁷ of the age, licentious⁵⁸ as they were, are no apology⁵⁹ for this unhappy passion; nor⁶⁰ can they induce us to look⁶¹ on that tragical and infamous⁶² scene (the murder of her husband Darnley) which followed upon⁶³ it, with less abhorrence⁶⁴. Humanity will draw⁶⁵ a veil⁶⁶ over this part of her character, which it cannot approve⁶⁷ and may, perhaps prompt⁶⁸ some to impute⁶⁹ her actions to her situation⁷⁰, more than to her

- | | | | | |
|--|------------------------|-------------------|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Mit allen Reizen. | 2. größten. | 3. Gestalt. | 37. Raume, Gewalt. | 38. Besonnenheit. |
| 4. verband Mary. | | | 39. verleiteten. | 40. sowohl zu Irrthümer als. |
| 5. Bildung und Kenntnisse. | | | 41. Verbrechen. | 42. höchst unglücklich. |
| 6. machen. | 7. Eindruck. | | 43. account for, erklären. | |
| 8. unwiderstehlich. | 9. sie war. | | 44. ununterbrochene. | 45. Reihenfolge. |
| 10. leutselig. | 11. einschmeichelnd. | | 46. begegnete.* | 47. hinzufügen. |
| 12. lebhaft. | 13. konnte. | 14. Leichtigkeit. | 48. unbesonnen. | 49. rasch, übereilt. |
| 15. Würde. | 16. rasch, jedoch. | | 50. übertrieben. | 51. Uebergang. |
| 17. Zuneigungen, Anhänglichkeiten. | 18. arglos. | | 52. Folge. | 53. schlecht vergoltenen. |
| 19. impatient of contradiction, des Widerspruchs ungeduldig, weil. | | | 54. artful address, schlaue Geschicklichkeit. | |
| 20. behandelt. | 21. nicht unbewandert. | | 55. Dienste. | 56. rechtfertigen. |
| 22. Verstellungskunst. | | | 57. sogar die Sitten. | 58. zügellos. |
| 23. treulosen Hof (in Frankreich). | | | 59. Entschuldigung. | |
| 24. erhielt. | 25. gezählt. | | 60. nor can they induce us, auch können sie uns nicht dahin bringen (überreden). | |
| 26. Regierungskünsten. | 27. unempfindlich für. | | 61. zu betrachten. | 62. schändliche. |
| 28. unbewußt. | 29. betrachtet. | 30. ausgerüstet. | 63. upon it, darauf. | 64. Abscheu. |
| 31. Eigenschaften. | 32. eher. | | 65. ziehen.* | 66. Schleier. |
| 33. erhabene. | 34. hinlänglich. | | 67. billigen. | 68. veranlassen. |
| 35. gezügelt. | 36. Verstand. | | 69. zuzuschreiben. | 70. Lage. |

disposition¹: and to lament² the unhappiness of the former rather than accuse³ the perverseness⁴ of the latter. Mary's sufferings⁵ exceed⁶, both in degree⁷ and duration, those tragical distresses⁸ which the fancy has feigned⁹ to excite¹⁰ sorrow and commiseration; and while we survey¹¹ them, we are apt¹² altogether¹³ to forget her frailties¹⁴; we think¹⁵ of her faults¹⁶ with less indignation¹⁷, and approve¹⁸ of our tears, as if they were shed¹⁹ for a person who had²⁰ attained much nearer to pure virtue²⁰.

With regard²¹ to the queen's person, a circumstance²² not to be²³ omitted in writing the history of a female²⁴ reign²⁴, all contemporary²⁵ authors agree²⁶ in ascribing²⁷ to Mary the utmost beauty of countenance²⁸ and elegance of shape²⁹ of which the human form³⁰ is capable³¹. Her hair was black; though, according³² to the fashion³³ of the age³⁴, she frequently wore³⁵ borrowed³⁶ locks, and of different colours. Her eyes were a dark grey, her complexion³⁷ was exquisitely fine³⁸ and her hands and arms remarkably³⁹ delicate⁴⁰, both⁴¹ as to shape and colour. Her stature was of a height⁴² that rose⁴³ to the majestic. She danced, walked⁴⁴, and rode⁴⁵ with equal grace. Her taste⁴⁶ for music was just⁴⁷, and she sang and played on the lute with uncommon skill⁴⁸. Towards⁴⁹ the end of her life she began to grow⁵⁰ fat⁵⁰: and her long confinement⁵¹, and the coldness of the house in which she was imprisoned⁵² brought⁵³ on a rheumatism, which deprived⁵⁴ her of the use⁵⁵ of her limbs. "No man," says Brantome, "ever beheld⁵⁶ her person without admiration and love, or will read her history without sorrow⁵⁷."

Robertson.

1. What did Mary add to the charms of beauty?
2. What was she in her attachments, and why?
3. Of what was she impatient, and why?
4. To what was she no stranger, and why? — 5. With what was she formed?
6. What betrayed her into errors and crimes?
7. What was her passion for Darnley?
8. What cannot justify her attachment to Bothwell?
9. For what are the manners of the age no apology?
10. Over what will humanity draw a veil, and to what will it prompt some?

NB. Obige 10 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 90.

11. While we survey her sufferings, what are we apt to forget?
12. Describe Mary's person, her hair, her eyes, her stature?
13. What does Brantome say?

- | | | | |
|---|------------------|--|-----------------------|
| 1. Neigungen. | 2. beklagen. | 29. Zierlichkeit der Gestalt, deren. | 30. Körper. |
| 3. beschuldigen. | 4. Verfehrtheit. | 31. fähig. | 32. nach. |
| 5. Leiden. | 6. übertreffen. | 33. Mode. | |
| 7. Größe. | | 34. der damaligen Zeit. | 35. trug.* |
| 8. Unglücksfälle. | 9. erdichtet. | 36. geborgte, falsche. | 37. Gesichtsfarbe. |
| 10. zu erregen. | 11. betrachten. | 38. schön. | 39. merkwürdig. |
| 12. geneigt. | 13. gänzlich. | 40. zart. | |
| 14. Schwächen. | | 41. both as to shape, sowohl in der Form als auch. | 42. Größe. |
| 15. sehen — an. | 16. Fehler. | 43. sich zum — erhob. | 44. ging. |
| 17. Entrüstung. | 18. billigen. | 45. saß zu Pferd, ritt. | 46. Geschmack. |
| 19. vergossen. | | 47. gut, richtig. | 48. Geschicklichkeit. |
| 20. ein viel tugendhafteres Leben geführt hätte. | | 49. gegen (s. Anmerk. 4. S. 355 d. Gramm.). | |
| 21. hinsichtlich. | 22. Umstand. | 50. corpulent zu werden. | 51. Gefangenschaft. |
| 23. not to be omitted in writing, welcher nicht vergessen werden dürfte, wenn man — schreibt. | | 52. eingesperrt. | 53. zog* ihr — zu. |
| 24. female reign, Regentin, Königin. | | 54. beraubte. | 55. Gebrauch. |
| 25. gleichzeitigen. | | 56. hat je — gesehen. | |
| 26. stimmen darin überein, daß | | 57. Kummer. | |
| 27. besaß. | 28. Gesicht. | | |

LXIV. The Painter who Endeavoured¹ to please Everyone.

A celebrated painter of antiquity² resolved³ one day to paint a picture⁴ the most perfect⁵ imaginable⁶. He had already become celebrated and excelled⁷ in his art⁸; but in this case⁹, endeavouring¹⁰ to surpass¹¹ any¹² thing he had ever done before, he formed¹³ the project¹⁴ to paint one¹⁵ entirely without defect¹⁶. The picture being¹⁷ finished¹⁷, and not considering¹⁸ himself a sufficient judge, he exhibited¹⁹ it in the market place, and begged the spectators²⁰ to give their opinion²¹, by marking²² with a pencil, which he had left for²³ the purpose²³, all the defects¹⁶ they could possibly discover²⁴.

Every one marked that which appeared²⁵ to him faulty²⁶; and the painter coming in the evening to take home his picture, perceived²⁷ to his great astonishment, that almost every feature²⁸ of the face, and every fold²⁹ of the drapery²⁹ had been disapproved³⁰ of. However, having a good opinion of his own talents, he had the courage to make a second trial³¹.

The next day he again exhibited¹⁹ his painting⁴ to the public³² eye, and begged the spectators²⁰, to mark with the pencil, as the day before, those parts³³ which they considered most excellent; but when he came in the evening to examine it, he found that the public had approved³⁴ of every lineament²⁸.

This shows³⁵ clearly, that he who pleases the one, may³⁶ displease the other, and that it is a folly³⁷ for an author, whoever he may be, to aspire³⁸ to please every one.

1. What did the painter resolve to do?
2. *Why* and *where* did the painter exhibit his picture?
3. What did he beg the spectators to do?
4. When the painter came in the evening, what did he perceive?
5. What did he do the next day, and what was the consequence?
6. What does the fate of the picture clearly show?

LXV. Eloquence³⁹.

Great is the power of eloquence; but never is it so great as when it pleads⁴⁰ along with nature⁴⁰, and the culprit⁴¹ is a child strayed⁴² from his duty⁴³, and returned⁴⁴ to it⁴⁵ again with tears.

Sterne.

1. versuchte. 2. Vorzeit. 3. entschloß sich.
4. Bild. 5. vollkommenste.
6. was man sich nur denken konnte.
7. zeichnete sich — aus.
8. Kunst. 9. Fall.
10. da er sich bestrebte. 11. zu übertreffen.
12. *any thing*, Alles was. 13. faßte.
14. Entschluß. 15. ein Bild.
16. Fehler. 17. als — beendet war.
18. *not considering himself a sufficient*, da er sich nicht als hinlänglicher Kunststrichter betrachtete. 19. so stellte — aus.
20. Zuschauer. 21. Meinung.
22. dadurch, daß sie — bezeichneten.

23. *for &c.*, zu diesem Zweck.
24. entdecken. 25. schien.
26. fehlerhaft. 27. bemerkte.
28. Zug. 29. Falte des Gewandes.
30. gemißbilligt. 31. Versuch.
32. öffentlichen. 33. Stellen, Theile.
34. gebilligt. 35. zeigt.*
36. kann. 37. Thorheit für einen Schriftsteller.
38. darnach zu trachten.
39. Beredsamkeit.
40. *pleads, &c.*, im Einklang mit der Natur spricht. 41. Angeklagte.
42. welches von — abgewichen. 43. Pflicht.
44. zurückgekehrt. 45. zu derselben.

E. Biographical and Historical Pieces, &c.

LXVI. Nelson. The Battle¹ of Trafalgar, &c.

On the 21st of October, 1805, was fought² the famous battle of Trafalgar, between the English, and the combined³ fleets of France and Spain, in which Nelson fell a sacrifice⁴ to his country's glory⁵.

"The death of Nelson," says Dr. Southey, "was felt in England as something⁶ more than a public calamity; men started⁷ at the intelligence⁸ and turned⁹ pale¹⁰, as if they had heard of the loss¹¹ of a dear friend. An object¹² of our admiration and affection¹³, of our pride and of our hopes, was suddenly¹⁴ taken¹⁵ from us; and it seemed¹⁶ as if we had never, till¹⁷ then, known¹⁸ how deeply we had loved and revered¹⁹ him.

"So perfectly, indeed, had he performed²⁰ his part²¹, that the maritime²² war²³, after the battle of Trafalgar, was considered²⁴ at²⁵ an end; the fleets of the enemy were not merely²⁶ defeated²⁷ but²⁸ destroyed²⁸; new navies²⁹ must be built³⁰, and a new race of seamen³¹ reared³² for³³ them, before the possibility of³⁴ their invading our shores could again be contemplated. It was not, therefore, from any selfish³⁵ reflection³⁶ upon³⁷ the magnitude³⁸ of our loss¹¹ that we mourned³⁹ for him; the general sorrow⁴⁰ was of a higher character. The people of England grieved⁴¹ that funeral⁴² ceremonies⁴², public monuments⁴³, and posthumous⁴⁴ rewards, were all which they could now bestow⁴⁵ upon him whom the king, the legislature, and the nation, would alike⁴⁶ have delighted to honor; whom⁴⁷ every tongue would have blessed⁴⁸; whose presence⁴⁹ in every village through which he might⁵⁰ have passed, would have wakened⁵¹ the church⁵² bells, have given schoolboys a holiday, have drawn⁵³ children from their sports⁵⁴ to gaze⁵⁵ upon him, and "old men from the chimney⁵⁶ corner" to look⁵⁷ upon Nelson ere they died.

1. Schlacht bei. 2. geliefert. 3. vereinigen.
4. als Opfer. 5. für den Ruhm. 6. etwas.
7. erschrecken. 8. Nachricht. 9. wurden.
10. bleich. 11. Verlust. 12. Gegenstand.
13. Liebe. 14. plötzlich. 15. entrißen.
16. schien. 17. bis dahin. 18. gewußt.
19. verehrt. 20. vollbracht. 21. Werk.
22. See. 23. Krieg. 24. betrachtet.
25. at an, als zu. 26. bloß. 27. geschlagen.
28. sondern auch vernichtet.
29. Flotten. 30. gebaut.
31. ein neues Geschlecht von Matrosen.
32. herangebildet.
33. for them, dafür (s. Reg. X S. 450 d. Gramm.).
34. before the possibility of their invading our shores could again be contemplated, ehe man

es wieder für möglich halten könnte, daß sie unsere Küsten angreifen.
35. eigennütigen. 36. Betrachtung.
37. über. 38. Größe. 39. betrauern.
40. Kummer, Trauer. 41. war betrübt.
42. Begräbnißfeierlichkeiten. 43. Denkmäler.
44. posthumous rewards, Belohnung nach dem Tode. 45. verleihen, erzeugen.
46. would alike have delighted to honor, in gleichem Maße entzückt gewesen wären zu ehren.
47. ihn welchen. 48. gesegnet. 49. Gegenwart.
50. might have passed, er passirt wäre.
51. erweckt. 52. Kirchenglocken.
53. gelockt. 54. Spielen.
55. to gaze upon, um — anzuschauen.
56. Kaminecke. 57. um — anzusehen.

"The victory¹ of Trafalgar was celebrated², indeed, with the usual forms³ of rejoicing, but they were without joy⁴, for such⁵ already was the glory⁶ of the British navy⁷, through Nelson's surpassing⁸ genius, that it seemed scarcely⁹ to receive¹⁰ any addition from the most signal¹¹ victory that ever was achieved¹² upon the seas; and the destruction of this mighty fleet, by which all the maritime schemes¹³ of France were totally frustrated¹⁴, hardly¹⁵ appeared¹⁵ to add¹⁶ to our security or strength; for while Nelson was living, to watch¹⁷ the combined squadrons¹⁸ of the enemy, we felt ourselves as secure¹⁹ as now, when they were no longer in existence.

"There was reason²⁰ to suppose²¹ from the appearances²² upon opening²³ the body, that in the²⁴ course of nature, he might have attained²⁵, like his father, to a good²⁶ old age. Yet he²⁷ could not be said to have²⁸ fallen prematurely²⁸ whose work was done²⁹: nor³⁰ ought he to be lamented, who died so full of honours, and at the height³¹ of human fame⁶. The most triumphant³² death is that of the martyr; the most awful, that of the martyred³³ patriot; the most splendid³⁴, that of the hero in the hour of victory; and if the chariot and the horses of fire had been vouchsafed³⁵ for Nelson's translation³⁶, he could scarcely have departed³⁷ in a brighter blaze³⁸ of glory."

The British fleet consisted³⁹ of twenty-seven sail⁴⁰ of the line and four frigates. The combined⁴¹ fleets, of thirty-three, and seven large frigates. Their superiority⁴² was greater in size⁴³ and weight⁴⁴ of metal than in numbers. They had 4000 troops on board; and the best riflemen⁴⁵ who could be procured⁴⁶, many of them Tyrolese (by one of whom the hero was shot), were dispersed⁴⁷ through the ships. Before the battle commenced, Nelson retired⁴⁸ to his cabin⁴⁹ and wrote⁵⁰ the following prayer⁵¹: — "May the great God, whom I worship⁵², grant⁵³ to my country, and for⁵⁴ the benefit of Europe in general, a great and glorious victory; and may no misconduct⁵⁵ in⁵⁶ any one tarnish⁵⁷ it; and may humanity after victory be the predominant⁵⁸ feature in the British fleet! For⁵⁹ myself individually,

1. Sieg. 2. gefeiert.
3. *usual forms of rejoicing*, gewöhnlichen Freudenbezeugungen.
4. Freude. 5. denn so groß. 6. Ruhm.
7. Marine.
8. unübertrefflichen Genie. 9. kaum.
10. *to receive any addition*, irgend eine Vergrößerung desselben (des Ruhms) erhalten zu haben.
11. außerordentlichsten. 12. errungen.
13. Pläne. 14. vereitelt. 15. schien kaum.
16. zu vermehren. 17. zu bewachen.
18. Geschwader. 19. eben so sicher.
20. Grund vorhanden. 21. zu vermuthen.
22. *from the appearances*, dem Anschein nach — zu urtheilen.
23. beim Oeffnen des Körpers.
24. *in the course of nature*, nach dem Laufe der Natur. 25. erreichen.
26. *a good old age*, schönes hohes Alter.
27. *he could not be said*, konnte man nicht sagen, daß derjenige (s. Red. II. S. 477 d. Gramm.).

28. frühzeitig gefallen sei. 29. vollbracht.
30. *nor ought he to be lamented*, auch sollte man denjenigen nicht beweinen.
31. auf dem Gipfel. 32. siegreichste.
33. gemarterten. 34. glorreichste.
35. gewährt. 36. Ueberfahrt nach Jenseits.
37. hinscheiden. 38. Flamme. 39. bestand aus.
40. *sail of the line*, Linienschiffen.
41. vereinigten. 42. Ueberlegenheit lag mehr.
43. Größe.
44. *weight of metal*, Schwere der Kanonen.
45. Scharfschützen. 46. man hätte verschaffen können.
47. zerstreut. 48. zog sich in — zurück.
49. Kajüte. 50. schrieb. 51. Gebet.
52. diene. 53. gewähren.
54. *for the benefit*, zum Nutzen.
55. schlechtes Benehmen.
56. *in any one*, Seitens irgend Jemanden.
57. denselben beflecken.
58. hervorragenden Zug.
59. *for myself individually*, was meine eigene Person anbelangt.

I commit¹ my life to Him that¹ made me; and may His blessing² alight³ on my endeavours⁴ for serving⁵ my country faithfully! To Him I resign⁶ myself, and the just⁷ cause⁸ intrusted⁹ to me to defend¹⁰. Amen, amen, amen!"

Lord Nelson ordered¹¹ his ship, the Victory, to be¹² carried¹² along¹³ side his old antagonist¹⁴, the Santissima Trinidad, where he was exposed¹⁵ to a severe¹⁶ fire¹⁷ of musketry¹⁷; and not having the precaution¹⁸ to cover¹⁹ his coat, which was decorated with his star and other badges²⁰ of distinction, he became²¹ an object for the riflemen placed²² purposely²³ in the tops²⁴ of the Bucentaur, which lay on his quarter²⁵. In the middle of the engagement²⁶, a musket-ball struck²⁷ him on the left shoulder, and passing²⁸ through²⁸ the spine²⁹, lodged³⁰ in the muscles of his back³¹. He lived just long enough to be³² acquainted with³² the number of ships (twenty) that had been captured³³, and his last words were "I have done my duty³⁴, I praise³⁵ God for³⁶ it."

It was the ninth of January, 1806, that the remains³⁷ of Horatio Viscount Nelson were deposited³⁸ in the cathedral of St. Paul's. The funeral³⁹, undertaken⁴⁰ at the public expense⁴¹, was one of the most solemn⁴² and magnificent spectacles⁴³ ever beheld⁴⁴ in this country (England), and was duly⁴⁵ honored by the presence⁴⁶ of seven princes of the blood (des Geblüts), and a vast number of naval officers, peers and commoners⁴⁷.

It is not easy for words to do⁴⁸ justice to the memory⁴⁹ of the brave and patriotic Nelson. He who wishes to give a detail⁵⁰ of his exploits⁵¹, must transcribe⁵² the pages⁵³ of our naval history; and he who is anxious⁵⁴ to do⁴⁸ justice to his merits⁵⁵ by description, must write with the same spirit⁵⁶ with which he fought⁵⁷. The laurels⁵⁸ which he had won at St. Vincent, and at Aboukir, were sufficient⁵⁹ to have⁶⁰ ensured⁶⁰ lasting⁶¹ renown⁶²: with that renown, and the honors which foreign⁶³ countries had vied⁶⁴ with his own⁶⁵ in bestowing⁶⁶ upon him, he might have retired to the enjoyment⁶⁷ of honorable repose⁶⁸ for the remainder⁶⁹ of his days; but mutilated⁷⁰ as he was in person, having but one leg, one eye, and one arm, and covered with wounds, he rose⁷¹ superior⁷² to pain, Inactivity⁷³ afforded⁷⁴ no enjoyment to his noble and patriotic spirit,

1. vertraue — der mich geschaffen hat.
2. Segen. 3. begleiten. 4. Streben.
5. zu dienen. 6. übergebe. 7. gerechte.
8. Sache. 9. welche — anvertraut ist.
10. zu vertheidigen. 11. befahl.
12. daß man — bringe.
13. along side, an die Seite.
14. Gegners. 15. ausgesetzt. 16. hitziges.
17. Musketenfeuer. 18. Vorsicht.
19. bedecken. 20. Ehrenzeichen. 21. wurde.*
22. gestellt. 23. absichtlich. 24. Masten.
25. Windviering. 26. Treffens. 27. traf.*
28. indem sie (die Kugel) — durchging.
29. Rückgrat. 30. setzte sie sich. 31. Rückens.
32. um — zu erfahren. 33. erbeutet.
34. Pflicht. 35. lobe. 36. darum.
37. Ueberreste. 38. beigelegt.
39. Begräbnißfeier. 40. unternommen* auf.

41. Kosten. 42. feierlichsten.
43. Schauspiele. 44. gesehen.*
45. gebührend. 46. Gegenwart.
47. Nichtadeligen.
48. to do justice, Gerechtigkeit — widerfahren zu lassen. 49. Andenken.
50. ausführlichen Bericht.
51. Heldenthaten. 52. abschreiben.
53. Blätter. 54. welcher eifrig wünscht.
55. Verdienst. 56. Geiste.
57. focht,* kämpfte. 58. Lorbeeren.
59. hinreichend um. 60. zu sichern.
61. dauernden. 62. Ruhm.
63. fremde. 64. gewetteifert.
65. eigenen. 66. schenken, übertragen.
67. Genuß. 68. Ruhe. 69. Rest.
70. verstümmelt. 71. stand er da.
72. erhaben über. 73. Unthätigkeit. 74. gewährte

whilst¹ his country continued² to be threatened² by her inveterate³ enemies. A new and glorious opportunity soon offered⁴. The combined fleets of France and Spain, confiding⁵ in their superior⁶ numbers, ventured⁷ to quit⁸ the harbour of Cadiz, and their proud⁹ and well-disposed¹⁰ line¹¹ of battle presented⁴ to Nelson the long sought¹² object¹³ of his most ardent¹⁴ wishes. He quickly executed¹⁵ his plan of attack¹⁶, and, nobly seconded¹⁷ by the magnanimous¹⁸ Collingwood and all the fleet, assailed¹⁹ the ships of his enemies with an impetuosity²⁰ which was irresistible²¹. The effect was something²² superior²² to conquest²³; it was a storm of such desolating²⁴ destruction²⁵, that, as Villeneuve, the gallant French admiral, confessed²⁶, it seemed the work of supernatural²⁷ agents²⁸, rather than of men.

In the moment of victory the conqueror fell. He who had braved²⁹ death in every form³⁰, to increase the renown³¹ of his country and to maintain³² its ascendancy³³, nobly died while the cannon's roar³⁴ and the shouts³⁵ of triumph confirmed³⁶ the ardent¹⁴ wishes and confident³⁷ predictions³⁸ which he felt, when he gave the memorable³⁹ signal to his gallant companions⁴⁰ in arms⁴⁰, "England expects⁴¹ that every man this day will do his duty⁴²."

Honours and rewards⁴³ were munificently⁴⁴ bestowed⁴⁵ on the surviving⁴⁶ relations⁴⁷ of the hero, and an earldom⁴⁸ was perpetuated⁴⁹ in the family of Nelson, of which his brother was the first possessor⁵⁰. A monument was afterwards voted⁵¹ by parliament, and many of the principal cities⁵² and towns⁵² of the United Kingdom voted a similar memorial⁵³ of his unparalleled⁵⁴ merit⁵⁵. Foremost⁵⁶ among these, although last in⁵⁷ point of time as regards its erection⁵⁸, is the noble⁵⁹ column⁶⁰ in Trafalgar Square, London; a monument which, while it records⁶¹ the glorious deeds of him, whose memory it is especially⁶² intended⁶³ to honour, will long be regarded⁶⁴ as a worthy⁶⁵ memento⁵³ of the prowess⁶⁶ of the British navy⁶⁷, and an incentive⁶⁸ to future deeds⁶⁹ of heroism.

1. so lang. 2. bedroht wurde.
3. erbittertsten.
4. bot sich bald dar.
5. sich vertrauend auf. 6. überlegene.
7. wagten es. 8. zu verlassen.
9. stolze, imponierende.
10. geschickt aufgestellte.
11. *line of battle*, Schlachtlinie.
12. gesuchten.* 13. Gegenstand.
14. heissesten.* 15. führte — aus.
16. Angriffsplan. 17. hochherzig unterstützt.
18. edelmüthigen. 19. griff er — an.
20. Ungezügelt. 21. unwiderstehlich.
22. mehr als. 23. ein Sieg.
24. zerstörenden. 25. Verheerung.
26. sagte. 27. übernatürlichen.
28. Macht. 29. getrogt.
30. Gestalt um. 31. Ruhm.
32. erhalten, behaupten 33. Vorrang.
34. Kanonendonner. 35. Jubelgeschrei.
36. verkündeten und bestätigten die Erfüllung.
37. die zuversichtlichen.
38. Ueberzeugung. 39. denkwürdige.

40. Waffenbrüdern. 41. erwartet.
42. Pflicht, Schuldigkeit. 43. Belohnungen.
44. freigebig. 45. geschenkt, verliehen.
46. überlebenden. 47. Verwandten.
48. der Grafen = Titel (wobei aber, wie es in England bei solchen Gelegenheiten stets üblich ist, das Besitzthum eines Grafen verbunden ist).
49. auf immer — gestiftet.
50. Besitzer. 51. bewilligt.
52. *city*, sei sie groß oder klein, ist jede Stadt, wo ein Bischof seinen Sitz hat; alle andern Städte, ob sie 10,000 oder 500,000 Einwohner fassen, sind bloß *towns*.
53. Denkmal. 54. unvergleichlichen.
55. Verdienste. 56. als Erste.
57. *in point of time*, hinsichtlich der Zeit.
58. Errichtung. 59. prächtige.
60. Säule. 61. beurfundet.
62. besonders. 63. beabsichtigt.
64. betrachtet. 65. würdiges.
66. Tapferkeit. 67. Marine. 68. Sporn.
69. Heldenthaten.

THE THANKSGIVING¹ OFF² CAPE TRAFALGAR.

Upon³ the high, yet gently rolling wave⁴,
 The floating⁵ tomb⁶ that heaves⁷ above the brave⁸,
 Soft⁹ sighs the gale⁹ that late¹⁰ tremendous roared¹¹,
 Whelming¹² the wretched¹³ remnants¹⁴ of the sword¹⁵,
 And the cannon's peaceful thunder calls¹⁶
 The victor¹⁷ bands to mount¹⁸ their wooden-walls¹⁹,
 And from the ramparts²⁰, where their comrades fell,
 The mingled²¹ strain²² of joy and grief to swell²³:
 Fast²⁴ they ascend²⁵, from stem²⁶ to stern²⁶ they spread²⁷,
 And crowd²⁸ the engines²⁹ whence the lightning sped³⁰:
 The white-robed³¹ priest his upraised³² hands extends³³,
 Hushed³⁴ is each voice, attention leaning³⁵ bends³⁵:
 Then from each prow³⁶ the grand hosannas rise,
 Float³⁷ o'er the deep, and hover³⁸ to the skies³⁹.
 Heaven fills each heart; yet Home⁴⁰ will oft⁴¹ intrude,
 And tears of love, celestial joys exclude⁴².
 The wounded man, who hears the soaring⁴³ strain²²,
 Lifts⁴⁴ his pale visage⁴⁵ and forgets his pain;
 While parting⁴⁶ spirits⁴⁷ mingling⁴⁸ with⁴⁹ the lay,
 On⁵⁰ hallelujahs wing⁵¹ their⁵² heavenward way. *Southey.*

1. What famous battle was fought on 21st Oct. 1805?
2. How was the death of Lord Nelson felt in England?
3. For what did the people of England grieve?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 93.

4. Which is the most triumphant death? — the most awful? — the most splendid?
5. Of how many sail did the British fleet consist, and how many the combined?
6. What was the purport of the hero's prayer?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 94.

7. To what is it not easy for words to do justice?
8. Describe Lord Nelson's professional character.

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 95.

9. What were bestowed on Nelson's relations?
10. What public monument more particularly demands attention; and in what light will it be regarded?

LXVII. Conscience⁵³.

The pain which conscience gives⁵⁴ the man who has already done wrong⁵⁵, is soon got⁵⁶ over⁵⁶. Conscience is a coward⁵⁷, and those faults⁵⁸ which it has not strength⁵⁹ enough to prevent⁶⁰, it seldom has justice⁶¹ enough to accuse⁶². *Goldsmith.*

1. Dankfagung. 2. auf der Höhe von.
3. auf. 4. Wogen. 5. schwimmende.
6. Grab. 7. sich hebt. 8. Tapfern.
9. sanft weht der Wind. 10. lezt hin.
11. fauste. 12. verschlingend.
13. Unglücklichen, welche. 14. verschont waren.
15. vom Schwerte. 16. ruft. 17. siegreichen.
18. zu besteigen. 19. hölzernen Mauern (Schiff).
20. Brustwehre. 21. um die vermischten.
22. Töne. 23. mit anzuschwellen.
24. schnell. 25. steigen sie auf.
26. vom Vorder- zum Hintertheil des Schiffes.
27. verbreiteten sie sich. 28. drängen sich an.
29. Maschinen (Kanonen).
30. hervorstoß. 31. weißgekleidete.
32. aufgehoben. 33. streckt — aus.

34. still. 35. beugt sich vorwärts.
36. Schiff (Vorderteil des Schiffes).
37. schwebt über. 38. steigt empor gen.
39. Himmel. 40. Heimat.
41. will oft intrude, drängt sich oft darein.
42. schließen — aus.
43. emporschwebenden. 44. erhebt.
45. Gesicht. 46. hinscheidende.
47. Seelen. 48. einstimmend.
49. with the lay, im Lobgesang. 50. auf.
51. schwingen sie sich empor.
52. their heavenward way, gen Himmel.
53. das Gewissen. 54. verursacht. 55. Unrecht.
56. überwunden. 57. Feigling.
58. Fehler. 59. Kraft. 60. vermeiden.
61. Gerechtigkeit. 62. anzuklagen.

LXVIII. Hogarth.

William Hogarth, a truly¹ great and original painter¹ of life and manners², was born in London, in 1698, and bound³ apprentice³ to an engraver⁴ of arms on⁵ silver plate. About 1720 he set⁶ up for himself, and his first employment was to engrave coats⁷ of arms⁷ and shop⁸ bills. He next⁹ undertook¹⁰ to execute plates for booksellers, the chief¹¹ of which are the prints¹² to Hudibras. His first performance¹³ as a painter was a representation¹⁴ of Manstead Assembly, the portraits being¹⁵ taken from life. In 1730 he married a daughter of Sir James Thornhill: shortly after¹⁶ which he embellished¹⁷ the gardens of Vauxhall with some excellent paintings¹⁸, for which the proprietor complimented¹⁹ him with a perpetual²⁰ ticket²¹ of admission²¹. In 1733 appeared²² his "Harlot's²³ Progress²³," prints¹² which stamped²⁴ his reputation, and were followed by other moral histories and satirical representations¹⁴ of vice and folly²⁵, such as the "Rake's²⁶ Progress," "Marriage à-la-Mode," "Industry and Idleness," &c., all admirably executed²⁷. Soon after the treaty²⁸ of Aix-la-Chapelle he went to France, and while at Calais began to sketch²⁹ a drawing²⁹ of the gate of the town, for which he was taken³⁰ up, but was soon released³¹. On³² his return he commemorated³³ the affair³⁴ in his excellent print¹², "O the Roast Beef of Old England." In 1753 he published³⁵ his "Analysis³⁶ of Beauty," in³⁷ which he was assisted by Dr. Hoadly. In 1757 he became sergeant-painter³⁸ to the king; but though he had arrived³⁹ at⁴⁰ wealth and eminence⁴¹, yet, from⁴² being destitute of the advantages⁴³ of a liberal⁴⁴ education, he was inordinately⁴⁵ vain⁴⁶ of his talents, and affected to despise⁴⁷ every kind⁴⁸ of knowledge which he did not possess himself. He was also remarkably absent⁴⁹, of which the following is an instance⁵⁰. — On⁵¹ setting up his carriage he paid⁵² a visit to the Lord Mayor, and having⁵³ protracted his stay till⁵³ a heavy shower⁵⁴ came on, he⁵⁵ was let out by a different door from that by which he⁵⁵ entered, and⁵⁶ unmindful⁵⁶ of his carriage, he set⁵⁷ off on foot, got⁵⁸ home⁵⁸ wet⁵⁹ to

1. wirklich großer und originaler Maler.
2. Sitten. 3. in die Lehre gethan.
4. engraver of arms, Wappenstecher.
5. on silver plate, auf Silbergeschirr.
6. he set up for himself, gründete er ein eigenes Geschäft. 7. Familienwappen.
8. Firmazettel. 9. nachher.
10. undertook to execute plates, verfertigte er Kupferplatten. 11. vorzüglichsten.
12. Kupferstiche. 13. Werk. 14. Darstellung.
15. being taken from life, wovon — nach dem Leben gemalt wurden.
16. after which, darauf. 17. schmückte er.
18. Gemälden. 19. beehrte. 20. beständigen.
21. Einlaßkarte. 22. erschien.
23. „das Leben eines schlechten Mädchens.“
24. begründeten. 25. Thorheit.
26. „das Leben eines Liederlichen.“
27. ausgeführt. 28. Friedensvertrag.
29. eine Skizze — zu entwerfen.
30. taken up, verhaftet.
31. wieder freigelassen. 32. nach.

33. verewigte. 34. Sache.
35. gab — heraus. 36. Analyse.
37. in which, wobei. 38. Hofmaler.
39. gelangte.
40. at wealth, zum Reichthum.
41. Berühmtheit, Ruhm.
42. from being destitute, da es ihm — fehlte.
43. Vortheilen. 44. guten.
45. über die Maßen. 46. eitel. 47. verachten.
48. every kind of knowledge, alle Kenntnisse.
49. zerstreut. 50. Beispiel.
51. on setting up his carriage, als er es zuerst dahin brachte, seine eigene Equipage zu halten.
52. machte.
53. having, &c., da er blieb, bis.
54. Regenguß herankam.
55. he was let out by, &c., und da man ihn zu einer andern Thüre als die, zu der er eingegangen war, hinausließ.
56. so, ohne an — zu denken.
57. sett off on foot, brach er auf zu Fuß.
58. gelangte nach Hause. 59. naß bis auf.

the skin, and when asked¹ where he had left the carriage, said that he had forgotten it. Hogarth was a contemporary² of *Smollet*, *Fielding*, *Goldsmith*, *Burke*, *Johnson*, *Pope*, *Chesterfield*; *Lady Mary Montague*, *Lord Chatham*, &c. &c. He died in 1762, and was interred in the church-yard of Chiswick. The works of Hogarth have been frequently published³ not only in England but also on the Continent, and Lichtenberg in Germany has rendered⁴ their author every justice⁴ by his admirable descriptions. Indeed, even at the moment of our writing this notice of the painter's life, there are different editions⁵ of them in⁶ the course of publication⁶ in London.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

1. When and where was Hogarth born? — 2. What was his first employment?
3. What was his first performance as a painter? — 4. What appeared in 1733?
5. What happened to H— in Calais? — 6. How did he commemorate the affair?
7. What did he become in 1757?
8. What were the consequences of his want of education?
9. What happened to Hogarth on paying a visit to the Lord Mayor?

NB. Obige 9 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 98.

10. Who were his contemporaries, when did he die, and where was he interred?

LXIX. Otway (ottueh).

On the 14th of April, in 1685, extreme⁷ indigence⁸, attended⁹ by deep mental¹⁰ anguish¹¹, brought¹² to his grave, in the thirty-fourth year of his age, that eminent¹³ English dramatic writer, Thomas Otway:

“Kindred¹⁴ spirits¹⁵, pitying¹⁶ shall relate¹⁷
Poor Otway's sorrows, and lament¹⁸ his fate¹⁹.”

His tragedies of “The Orphan²⁰,” and “Venice Preserved²¹,” contain some of the finest specimens²² of impassioned²³ poetry to be found in our language. The heart that does not melt²⁴ at the distresses²⁵ of his “Orphan” must be hard indeed! But though Otway possessed in some eminent²⁶ degree²⁷ the rare talent of writing to²⁸ the heart, yet he was not always successful²⁹ in his dramatic compositions.

Dr. Johnson gives this account³⁰ of his death. “He died in a manner³¹ which I am³² unwilling³² to mention³³. Having been compelled³⁴ by his necessities³⁵ to contract³⁶ debts³⁶, and hunted,³⁷ it is supposed, by terriers³⁸ of the law, he retired³⁹ to a public-house⁴⁰ on Tower-Hill, where he died of want⁴¹; or, as it is related¹⁷ by one of his biographers, by⁴² swallowing⁴², after a long

1. als er gefragt wurde. 2. Zeitgenosse.
3. herausgegeben.
4. alle Gerechtigkeit widerfahren lassen.
5. Ausgaben. 6. in, &c., unter der Presse.
7. äußerste. 8. Noth. 9. begleitet von.
10. geistiger. 11. Niedergeschlagenheit.
12. brachte. 13. berühmten.
14. verwandte. 15. Geister.
16. mit Bedauern. 17. erzählen.
18. beklagen. 19. Schicksal. 20. die Waise.
21. gerettete. 22. Proben.
23. leidenschaftlicher.

24. gerührt wird von.
25. Bedrängnissen. 26. hohen. 27. Grad.
28. zum. 29. glücklich. 30. Bericht über.
31. auf eine Weise. 32. nicht gern.
33. erwähne. 34. gezwungen.
35. Bedürfnissen. 36. Schulden zu machen.
37. gejagt.
38. by terriers of the law, von den (Häschern des Gesetzes) Gerichtsdienern.
39. flüchtete er sich. 40. Wirthshaus.
41. aus Mangel.
42. dadurch, daß er — verschlang.

fast, a piece¹ of bread, which charity² had supplied³. He went⁴ out, as it is reported⁵, almost naked, in⁶ the rage of hunger⁶, and finding a gentleman in a neighbouring coffee-house, asked⁷ him for⁸ a shilling; the gentleman gave him a guinea; and Otway, going away, bought a roll⁹, and was¹⁰ choked¹⁰ with the first mouthful. All this, I hope, is not true; but that indigence¹¹, and its concomitants¹¹, sorrow and despondency¹², brought him to the grave, has never been denied¹³." The Doctor adds¹⁴, that "Otway had not much cultivated¹⁵ versification¹⁶, nor¹⁷ much replenished¹⁸ his mind¹⁹ with general knowledge. His principal power²⁰ was²¹ in moving the passions, to which²² Dryden, in his latter years, left²³ an illustrious testimony²³. He appears²⁴ by²⁴ some of his verses²⁵ to have been a zealous²⁶ loyalist²⁷, and had²⁸, what in those²⁹ times was the common³⁰ reward³¹ of loyalty³²: he lived and died neglected³³!"

1. When and at what age did Otway die?

2. What are the titles of his two most successful tragedies?

3. To what was Otway's death said to be owing?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 99.

4. What does the Doctor add?

LXX. The Black-Hole³⁴ at Calcutta.

"There was a lurking³⁵ devil in his sneer³⁶,
That raised³⁷ emotions both of rage³⁸ and fear;
And where his frown³⁹ of hatred⁴⁰ deeply fell,
Hope withering⁴¹ fled⁴² — and Mercy⁴³ sigh'd⁴⁴ farewell!"

Byron.

No son had been born to⁴⁵ Aliverdi, king of Bengal, and now that Zamder Hamed his favorite⁴⁶ nephew was dead, he adopted as his successor⁴⁷ Zamder's son Mirza Mohud. It was an injudicious⁴⁸ choice⁴⁹, and totally⁵⁰ unauthorized⁵¹ even by⁵² the rights⁵³ of seniority⁵³, for Zamder Hamed himself was only the second son of Hodgee, and his elder brother survived⁵⁴ him. But the great affection which Aliverdi bore⁵⁵ to the father was transferred⁵⁶ to the son, whom he had⁵⁷ for⁵⁸ some years educated in his own palace, where, instead⁵⁹ of correcting⁶⁰ the evil dispositions⁶¹ of his nature, he suffered⁶² them to increase by overweening⁶³ indulgence⁶⁴.

1. Stück. 2. Milbthätigkeit. 3. gereicht.
4. ging.* 5. *as it, &c.*, wie man sagt.
6. in Hungerswuth. 7. bat. 8. um.
9. Laib Brod. 10. erstickte.
11. Armut und ihre Begleiter.
12. Verzagtheit. 13. geläugnet.
14. fügt hinzu. 15. gepflegt. 16. Versbaukunst.
17. auch — nicht sehr. 18. bereichert.
19. Geist. 20. Macht.
21. *was in moving the passions*, bestand darin, die Leidenschaften zu erregen.
22. worüber.
23. *left an, &c.*, ein glänzendes Zeugniß ablegte.
24. scheint nach — zu urtheilen. 25. Gedichte.
26. eifriger. 27. Anhänger des Königs.
28. es wurde ihm zu Theil.
29. *in those times*. in der damaligen Zeit.

30. gewöhnliche. 31. Lohn. 32. Treue.
33. vernachlässigt.
34. das schwarze (dunkle) Loch.
35. lauernder. 36. Hohnlächeln.
37. Empfindungen sowohl der — erregte.
38. Wuth. 39. mürrischer Blick.
40. des Hasses. 41. welkende. 42. entfloh.
43. Barmherzigkeit. 44. seufzte.
45. dem. 46. Lieblingsneffe. 47. Nachfolger.
48. unkluge. 49. Wahl. 50. gänzlich.
51. unberechtigt. 52. nach dem.
53. Erstgeburtsrecht. 54. überlebte.
55. hegte gegen. 56. auf — übertragen.
57. ließ. 58. *for some*, einige — lang.
59. anstatt. 60. zu verbessern.
61. Neigungen. 62. ließ, erlaubte.
63. übermäßige. 64. Nachsicht.

Born without compassion¹, it was one of the amusements of Mirza Mohud's childhood² to torture³ birds and animals; and taught⁴ by his minions⁵ to regard⁶ himself as placed⁷ above the infirmities⁸ of human nature, his innate⁹ cruelty, hardened¹⁰ by habit¹¹, rendered¹² him as¹³ insensible¹³ to the sufferings¹⁴ of his own species¹⁵ as¹⁶ to those of the brute¹⁷ creation. In conception¹⁸ he was not slow¹⁹ but absurd²⁰; obstinate²¹, sullen²², and impatient of contradiction²³; yet, notwithstanding his insolent contempt²⁴ of mankind²⁵, native²⁶ cowardice²⁷ and the confusion of his ideas rendered¹² him suspicious²⁸ of all who approached²⁹ him, excepting his favorites, who were buffoons³⁰ and profligate³¹ men, raised³² from the rank of menial³³ servants³³ to be his companions. With these he lived in the indulgence³⁴ of every³⁵ species³⁵ of intemperance³⁶ and debauchery³⁷, more especially in drinking spirituous³⁸ liquors³⁸ to excess³⁹, which inflamed⁴⁰ his passions, and impaired⁴¹ the little understanding with which nature had endowed⁴² him. He had⁴³, however⁴⁴, cunning⁴⁵ enough to carry⁴⁶ himself with much demureness⁴⁷ in the presence of Aliverdi, whom no one ventured⁴⁸ to inform⁴⁹ of his real character, for⁵⁰ in despotic states the sovereign is always the last to hear what it concerns⁵¹ him most to know.

Such was the prince who, in the year 1756, succeeded⁵², under the title of Suraja Dowla, to the Soubahdarry⁵² of Bengal. The first use which he made of power⁵³ was to issue⁵⁴ orders for the seizure⁵⁵ of all the effects belonging⁵⁶ to his aunt, the widow of his senior uncle, and the daughter of Aliverdi. He was baffled⁵⁷ in this project by the timely flight⁵⁸ of Kissendas, her principal agent, who took⁵⁹ shelter⁵⁹ with his mistress's treasures in Calcutta. His next measure⁶⁰ was to march an army towards Purneah, where the son of his second uncle governed as Nabob, with the avowed⁶¹ intention of depriving⁶² him of his dignity⁶³ and his life. But he had not reached⁶⁴ farther than Raje Mahl, when intelligence⁶⁵ of the escape⁶⁶ of one of his victims⁶⁷ reached⁶⁸ him, and roused⁶⁹ to the highest pitch⁷⁰ the antipathy⁷¹ which he had long harboured⁷² against the English. A messenger⁷³ was instantly despatched⁷⁴ to remonstrate⁷⁵ with⁷⁶ the government, who, entering the city in dis-

1. Mitleidsgefühl. 2. Kindheit.
3. zu quälen. 4. gelehrt.*
5. Schmeichlern. 6. zu betrachten.
7. gestellt. 8. Schwächen. 9. angeborne.
10. noch grausamer gemacht durch.
11. Gewohnheit. 12. machte.
13. eben so gefühllos. 14. gegen das Leiden.
15. of his own species, seiner Mitmenschen.
16. as to those, wie gegen das.
17. of the brute creation, der Thiere.
18. in conception he was not, seine Fassungs-
- kraft war nicht. 19. schlecht.
20. abgeschmact. 21. halsstarrig.
22. mürrisch. 23. Widerspruch.
24. Verachtung der. 25. Menschheit.
26. angeborne. 27. Feigheit.
28. argwöhnisch auf. 29. näherten.
30. Hanswürste. 31. verworfene.
32. erhoben. 33. Hausgesinde.
34. Genuß. 35. jeder Art. 36. Unmäßigkeit.
37. Ausschweifung. 38. geistiger Getränke.

39. im Uebermaß. 40. entflammte.
41. verschlimmerte. 42. begabt.
43. besaß. 44. jedoch.
45. Schlaueit. 46. benehmen.
47. Anstand. 48. es — wagte.
49. bekannt zu machen. 50. denn.
51. es ihm am meisten Noth thut zu wissen.
52. succeeded to the Soubahdarry, auf den Thron
- von Bengal gelangte.
53. seiner Macht. 54. erlassen.
55. Beschlagnahme. 56. welche — gehörte.
57. vereitelt. 58. Flucht.
59. Schutz suchte. 60. Maßregel.
61. erklärten. 62. berauben.
63. Würde. 64. gefangt.
65. Nachricht. 66. Entkommen.
67. Opfer. 68. erreichte.
69. erhöhte, bis. 70. Grad.
71. Haß. 72. gehegt. 73. Botschafter.
74. fortgeschickt um.
75. Vorstellungen zu machen. 76. bei.

guise¹ was refused² an audience by the authorities*. This insult³ added⁴ fresh fuel to the fire⁴ of Suraja's indignation⁵. He halted⁶ his columns, turned⁷ them furiously⁸ against the factory of Cossimbuzar, of which⁹, as¹⁰ well as of the person of its chief, Mr. Wells, he made¹¹ himself master¹¹, and paying no¹² heed to the deprecatory¹³ addresses¹³ which now poured¹⁴ in from Calcutta, he pushed¹⁵, with rapid¹⁶ strides¹⁷, upon¹⁸ the Presidency itself.

It will be recollected that the city of Calcutta was one of the first belonging¹⁹ to the English in India, which the jealousy²⁰ of the native²¹ powers permitted them to strengthen²² by a fort²³. The castle²⁴ in question²⁴, afterwards recognised²⁵ by²⁶ the name of Fort William, was of the meanest²⁷ description. It was situated²⁸ near the river, about midway between the northern and southern extremities²⁹ of the Company's territory, and consisted³⁰ of four weak bastions³¹ mounting³² ten guns³³ each, with curtains³⁴ composed of brick³⁵, and only four feet in thickness. Terraces³⁶ constructed³⁷ from the roofs³⁸ of chambers formed³⁹ the top⁴⁰ of the ramparts⁴¹, and the windows of the chambers themselves supplied⁴² the place of embrasures⁴³, while the whole were either overlooked⁴⁴, or seriously⁴⁵ incommoded⁴⁵ by dwelling-houses, store-rooms⁴⁶, and other structures⁴⁷ erected close to the line⁴⁸ of the ditch. It is true that the English had begun, of late, to add⁴⁹ to the respectability of the defences⁴⁹, for they received intimation⁵⁰ so early as the beginning of April, that a renewal⁵¹ of war with France was inevitable⁵², but the progress⁵³ made was so trifling⁵⁴ when Suraja Dowla marched towards them, that they could not flatter⁵⁵ themselves with⁵⁶ being in any condition to stand⁵⁷ a siege. In like manner the garrison, though consisting⁵⁸ nominally of two hundred and sixty-four regulars⁵⁹ and two hundred and fifty militia, could⁶⁰ boast of no more than one hundred and seventy-four Europeans, scarcely ten of whom had ever seen other service⁶¹ than that of the parade, while there was not an officer within⁶² the walls competent⁶³ to direct⁶⁴ the movements of a company in the presence of an enemy. Their case⁶⁵, however⁶⁶, admitted⁶⁷ of no alleviation⁶⁷.

1. *in disguise*, verkleidet.
2. *was refused*, so wurde ihm — verweigert.
3. Beleidigung.
4. *added, &c.*, goß frisches Del ins Feuer.
5. Entrüstung. 6. ließ — Halt machen.
7. richtete. 8. wütend. 9. deren.
10. *as, &c.*, sowohl als auch.
11. *made, &c.*, er sich bemächtigte.
12. *paying no heed*, sich nicht bekümmern um.
13. Bittschreiben. 14. herströmten.
15. marschierte. 16. schleunigen. 17. Schritten.
18. auf die Präsidenschaft selbst los.
19. gehörend. 20. Eifersucht.
21. einheimischen. 22. zu verstärken.
23. Festung. 24. die fragliche Burg.
25. bekannt. 26. unter.
27. schlechtesten Art. 28. gelegen.
29. Grenzen. 30. bestand aus.
31. Bollwerken. 32. jedes mit — versehen.
33. Kanonen. 34. Zwischenwällen, Courtinen.
* seitens der Behörden.

35. von Backstein. 36. Terrassen. 37. bestehend.
38. Dächern. 39. bildeten. 40. Scheitel, Gipfel.
41. Brustwehre. 42. versehen.
43. Schießscharten. 44. überschaut, beherrscht.
45. sehr gefährdet. 46. Waarenlager.
47. Gebäude errichtet dicht an dem.
48. *line of the ditch*, Festungsgraben.
49. *to add to, etc.*, die Festungsbauten zu verstärken. 50. Nachricht. 51. Erneuerung.
52. unvermeidlich. 53. Fortschritt.
54. gering. 55. sich nicht schmeicheln.
56. *with being in any condition*, daß sie im Stande seien.
57. eine Belagerung auszuhalten.
58. bestehend. 59. regulären Truppen.
60. *could boast of*, doch waren darunter.
61. Dienst.
62. *within the walls*, innerhalb der Festung.
63. fähig. 64. zu leiten. 65. Lage. 66. jedoch.
67. *admitted of, &c.*, war nicht zu bessern.

After trying¹ every method to soften² the Soubhadar³ but without effect, they determined to trust⁴ to their own valour⁵ for safety⁶, and arming⁷ about fifteen hundred natives with matchlocks⁸, they made⁹ such general dispositions¹⁰ as appeared¹¹ to their inexperience¹² the best adapted¹³ to ensure success¹⁴.

On the 18th. of June, 1756, the outposts¹⁵ were furiously assailed¹⁶. They were defended with some courage but little skill¹⁷, and they were all carried¹⁸ in the short space¹⁹ of a few hours. As the garrison had trusted²⁰ mainly²¹ to the resistance²² which these detached²³ batteries were²⁴ expected to offer, their consternation²⁵ became excessive, when they found themselves cooped²⁶ up²⁶ within the walls of the fort; and the alarm²⁷ soon spreading²⁸, all ranks²⁹ ceased³⁰ to calculate³¹ except³² upon³³ the best and speediest³⁴ means³⁵ of securing³⁶ a retreat³⁷. There lay in the river more than sufficient tonnage³⁸ to remove³⁹ in good order all the European inhabitants from Calcutta; but the panic⁴⁰ which prevailed⁴¹ in the place soon extended⁴² to the fleet, and the ships began one by⁴³ one to slip⁴⁴ their cables⁴⁴. All was now confusion and dismay⁴⁵ on shore⁴⁶. Men, women, and children rushed⁴⁷ indiscriminately⁴⁸ to the water's⁴⁹ edge, and boats pushed⁵⁰ off so soon as there were people enough to direct⁵¹ them, while the entreaties⁵² of such⁵³ as were left behind either failed⁵⁴ to reach⁵⁵ the fugitives⁵⁶ or were shamefully⁵⁷ disregarded⁵⁸. Nor⁵⁹ can it be forgotten, that among those who precipitately⁶⁰ abandoned⁶¹ the place, were Mr. Drake (drehf), the governor, Mr. Macket, Captain-commandant Minchin (minſchſn), and Capitain Grant. These gentlemen, overcome⁶² by a sense of personal danger, threw themselves into two of the last boats which quitted⁶³ the fort, and left Mr. Holwell and Mr. Pearks, with one hundred and ninety men, to provide⁶⁴, as⁶⁵ they best might⁶⁵, for their own safety.

The horrible tragedy to which this disgraceful flight gave⁶⁶ rise⁶⁶, is still familiar⁶⁷ to the imagination of every English reader⁶⁸. After using⁶⁹ every imaginable⁷⁰ effort⁷¹ to bring back⁷² even⁷³ one vessel for their removal⁷⁴ — after hoisting⁷⁵ flags⁷⁶ by day and

1. nachdem sie — versucht hatten. 2. besänftigen.
3. König. 4. sich — zu verlassen. 5. Tapferkeit.
6. um Sicherheit. 7. indem sie — bewaffneten.
8. Puntens Flinten. 9. trafen.
10. Anstalten. 11. schienen. 12. Unerfahrenheit.
13. geeignet. 14. den Erfolg zu sichern.
15. Vorposten. 16. angegriffen.
17. Geschicklichkeit. 18. genommen, erobert.
19. Zeitraum. 20. sich — verlassen.
21. hauptsächlich auf. 22. Widerstand.
23. Außenwerke (detachirte Batterien).
24. *were expected to offer*, man erwartete, daß — leisten würden, so. 25. Bestürzung.
26. eingesperrt. 27. Schrecken.
28. da — sich bald verbreitete.
29. Klassen der Bevölkerung. 30. hörten — auf.
31. an etwas Anderes zu denken. 32. als.
33. an. 34. schnellste. 35. Mittel.
36. sich — zu sichern. 37. Rückzug.
38. Schiffe. 39. um — wegzubringen.
40. panische Schrecken. 41. vorherrschte.
42. verbreitete sich bald auf.

43. eines nach dem andern.
44. *to slip, &c.*, ihren Ankertau auslaufen zu lassen. 45. Bangigkeit.
46. Ufer. 47. stürzten. 48. unter einander.
49. *water's edge*, dicht ans Ufer.
50. stießen ab. 51. zu leiten.
52. Bitten. 53. flehen. 53. Derjenigen, welche.
54. verfehlten. 55. die Ohren — zu erreichen.
56. Fliehenden. 57. schändlicherweise.
58. nicht beachtet. 59. *nor can it*, auch kann es nicht.
60. über Hals und Kopf.
61. preisgaben (verließen).
62. ergriffen von einem Gefühl.
63. von — abgingen. 64. zu sorgen.
65. *as, &c.*, um so gut sie könnten.
66. *gave rise*, Veranlassung gab.
67. frisch in der Erinnerung. 68. Lesers.
69. nachdem sie — gemacht hatten.
70. jeden erdenklichen. 71. Versuch — um.
72. zurückzubringen. 73. wäre es nur.
74. um sie aufzunehmen. 75. nachdem sie — aufgezogen (aufgehört) hatten. 76. Flaggen.

throwing¹ up blue lights by night — the remains² of the garrison beheld³ themselves attacked on all sides by the Soubahdar's troops. Mr. Holwell did every thing that man could do to encourage⁴ and cheer⁵ them, but they had lost all heart⁶, and the ramparts⁷ were won⁸. Some now cast⁹ themselves head long¹⁰ from the bastions¹¹, to be cut¹² to pieces by the enemy's horse¹³ which scoured¹⁴ the open country; a few, creeping¹⁵ along¹⁶ the slime¹⁷ of the river, escaped; but one hundred and forty-six wretches¹⁸ were taken, and preserved¹⁹ to endure²⁰ a fate which, for²¹ misery, has seldom been paralleled²². They were thrust²³ into²³ a room twenty feet square²⁴, with only two small windows, both of which were obstructed²⁵ by a viranda²⁶, and the door²⁷ being locked upon them²⁷, they were left²⁸ to their despair.

It was the²⁹ very height of summer²⁹, and the night more than usually sultry³⁰ even³¹ for that season. The excessive pressure³² of their bodies, one against another, and the intolerable heat which prevailed³³, soon convinced³⁴ the prisoners that it was impossible to live through³⁵ the night, and violent³⁶ efforts³⁷ were made to burst³⁸ the door, but without effect, for it opened inwardly³⁹. Many now began to give⁴⁰ loose to desperation, though Mr. Holwell, who had planted⁴¹ himself near one of the windows, contrived⁴² for a brief⁴³ space⁴³ to restrain⁴⁴ them, by representing⁴⁵ that their only hope lay⁴⁶ in continuing⁴⁷ as⁴⁸ much as possible in a state⁴⁹ of tranquillity both of body and mind. He then addressed⁵⁰ himself to the officer who commanded the guard⁵¹, an old Jemadar, who bore⁵² some marks⁵³ of humanity in his countenance, and promised him a thousand rupees⁵⁴ in the morning, provided⁵⁵ he would separate⁵⁶ his prisoners into two chambers. "The old man," says Mr. Orme (orm), "went to try⁵⁷, but, returning in a few minutes said it was impossible, when⁵⁸ Mr. Holwell offered him a larger sum, on which⁵⁹ he retired⁶⁰ once more, and returned with the fatal sentence⁶¹, that no relief⁶² could be expected, because, the Nabob was⁶³ asleep, and no one dared⁶⁴ to wake him."

In⁶⁵ the mean time⁶⁵ every minute had increased the sufferings of the captives⁶⁶. The first effect of their confinement⁶⁷ was a profuse⁶⁸ and continued perspiration⁶⁹, producing⁷⁰ before long⁷⁰ an

1. aufsteigen ließen. 2. Uebrigen.
3. sahen sich. 4. ermunthigen. 5. ermuntern.
6. Muth. 7. Wälle. 8. erobert.
9. warfen. 10. hauptlings.
11. Bollwerken um in. 12. gehauen.
13. Reiterei. 14. durchstreifte.
15. krochen. 16. längs. 17. Schlamm.
18. unglückliche wurden gefangen.
19. aufbewahrt. 20. erleiden.
21. for misery, was Qualen anbelangt.
22. erreicht. 23. hineingedrängt in.
24. im Quadrat. 25. versperrt. 26. Altan.
27. the door being locked upon them, da die Thür verschlossen wurde.
28. überlassen. 29. Hochsommer. 30. schwül.
31. sogar. 32. Druck. 33. vorherrschte.
34. überzeigte. 35. hindurch. 36. gewaltige.
37. Versuche. 38. aufzubrechen. 39. einwärts.
40. to give loose, sich — hinzugeben.

41. gestellt. 42. gelang es. 43. kurze Zeit.
44. zu beruhigen.
45. dadurch, daß er ihnen vorstellte.
46. darin liege, daß sie. 47. bleiben.
48. as much as, so sehr als.
49. Zustand. 50. wandte sich.
51. Wache. 52. hatte. 53. Spuren.
54. Rupie (eine ostindische Silbermünze von ungefähr 2 Sch. 4 Pence = 2 M. 40 S an Werth).
55. vorausgesetzt, daß. 56. trennen, theilen.
57. ging um es zu versuchen. 58. dann.
59. worauf. 60. sich nochmals entfernte.
61. Bescheid. 62. Hülfe.
63. was asleep, schlafe. 64. es wagen dürfte.
65. in, &c., mittlerweile. 66. Gefangenen.
67. Einsperrung. 68. übermäßiger.
69. Schweiß.
70. welcher in Kurzem — hervorbrachte.

intolerable thirst, which in¹ its turn was succeeded by excruciating² pains³ in the chest³, and a feeling of absolute⁴ suffocation⁵. Every effort was now made to obtain⁶ an increase of air and space⁷. The wretched⁸ men tore⁸ off their clothes, and waved⁹ their hats backwards and forwards, but these movements afforded¹⁰ no relief¹¹, and it was proposed that they should all sit¹² on their hams¹² at¹³ the same time, and, after remaining¹⁴ a little time in this posture¹⁵, should rise¹⁶ again together. It was a fatal expedient¹⁷, for at every movement some proved¹⁸ unable¹⁸ to recover¹⁹ themselves¹⁹, and, being²⁰ trodden under foot²⁰ by their companions, perished²¹ miserably. Fresh attempts²² were now made, and with redoubled fury²³, to force²⁴ the door; these likewise failed, and there arose²⁵ a wild and unearthly²⁶ cry²⁷, over²⁸ which²⁸ one word, that of water — water, alone could be heard²⁹. The Jemadar, who really pitied³⁰ his captives, strove³¹ to gratify³² them, and caused³³ skins³⁴ filled with water to be placed³⁵ against the windows, but the apertures³⁶ were too narrow to admit³⁷ them, and the sole³⁸ consequence was an increase³⁹ of suffering, by a further exclusion⁴⁰ of air. Their senses⁴¹ now forsook many of the captives. They raved⁴², fought, and struggled⁴³ to reach⁴⁴ the skins³⁴, tearing⁴⁵ each other down, and trampling⁴⁶ the fallen to death, while the soldiery⁴⁷ without⁴⁸ held their torches⁴⁹ on high that they might witness⁵⁰ the horrible spectacle. But it is unnecessary⁵¹ to continue the narrative⁵² farther. Let⁵³ it suffice to state⁵⁴, that when the Soubahdar next morning commanded⁵⁵ the dungeon⁵⁶ to be⁵⁷ cleared, the door was found choked⁵⁸ up with the dead; for⁵⁹ out of the whole number imprisoned not more than twentythree individuals survived⁶⁰ the horrors of the night.

It so happened⁶¹ that intelligence⁶² of these disastrous events⁶³ reached Madras at⁶⁴ a moment when a combination⁶⁵ of fortunate accidents⁶⁶ had placed⁶⁷ at the disposal⁶⁸ of the Presidency both a fleet and an army adequate⁶⁹ to avenge⁷⁰ the sufferings of their countrymen.

Gleig's History of British India.

1. Whom did Aliverdi adopt? — 2. What sort of a choice was it?

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 100.

1. *which in its turn was succeeded by*, auf welchen — folgten.
2. marternde. 3. Brustschmerzen. 4. gänzlicher.
5. Erstickung. 6. um — zu erhalten.
7. des Raumes. 8. unglücklichen Menschen rissen — ab.
9. weheten mit. 10. gewährten. 11. Erleichterung.
12. sich an den Boden — niedersehten (hocken, huckesehen) sollten.
13. zu gleicher Zeit.
14. sie — blieben. 15. Stellung.
16. alle zusammen aufstehen.
17. Ausweg, Hilfsmittel.
18. waren — nicht im Stande.
19. sich zu erheben.
20. *being*, &c., da sie zu Füßen getreten waren.
21. kamen sie elend um. 22. Versuche.
23. Wuth. 24. zu sprengen.
25. es entstand, erhob sich.
26. jämmerliches. 27. Geschrei. 28. wobei.
29. gehört.* 30. bemitleidete. 31. versuchte.

32. zu befriedigen.
33. ließ (s. Reg. XIV. S. 484 d. Grammatik).
34. Häute. 35. stellen. 36. Deffnungen.
37. um sie durchzulassen. 38. einzige.
39. Vermehrung. 40. Ausschließung.
41. *their senses now forsook many*, &c., viele der Gefangenen verloren jetzt den Verstand.
42. rasten. 43. rangen um.
44. zu erreichen. 45. niederreißend.
46. traten. 47. Soldaten.
48. draußen. 49. Jackeln. 50. sehen.
51. unnöthig. 52. Erzählung.
53. *let it suffice*, es ist genügend.
54. zu sagen. 55. Befehl gab, daß man.
56. das Gefängniß.
57. *to be cleared*, räume. 58. verrammelt.
59. denn von. 60. überlebten. 61. traf sich.
62. Nachricht. 63. Begebenheiten. 64. zu.
65. Vereinigung. 66. Zufällen. 67. gestellt.
68. zur Verfügung. 69. hinreichend.
70. zu rächen.

3. Without what was Mirza Mohud born, and what were his amusements?
4. Describe his conception, character, &c. — 5. With whom, and how did he live?
6. Of what had he enough?
7. Who is the last to hear any thing in despotic states?
8. What was the first use he made of his power?
9. What was his next measure?
10. What roused his antipathy against the English, and what did he do?

NB. Obige 8 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 101.

11. What was the consequence of the insult offered to Suraja Dowla's messenger?
12. What will be recollected? — 13. Describe the castle.
14. What had the English begun to do, and of what had they received intimation?
15. Of what did the garrison consist?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 102.

16. What did the English determine to do?
17. When were the outposts assailed, and how were they defended?
18. What lay in the river? — 19. What did men, women, and children do?
20. How many men were left behind?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 103.

21. What did Mr. Holwell do?
22. How many were taken and where were they thrust?
23. What time of the year was it? — 24. Describe the state of the men in prison.
25. What was offered to the old Jemadar, and what was the consequence?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 104.

26. What was proposed once more, and what was the consequence?
27. When the attempt to force the door failed, what arose?
28. What did the Jemadar cause to be done, and what was the consequence?
29. What forsook many of the captives, and what did the soldiery do?
30. How many of the prisoners survived? — 31. What happened to reach Madras?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 105.

LXXI. Excessive¹ Politeness.

Queen Elizabeth was² once making² a journey in England; and on her approaching³ the city of Coventry, the mayor, with a numerous cavalcade⁴, went out to meet her. On their return they had⁵ to pass through a wide brook⁶, and the mayor's horse being⁷ thirsty, attempted⁸ several times to drink, but his cavalier prevented him. The queen observing⁹ it, said to him, Pray, Mr. Mayor, permit your horse to drink. — The mayor, bowing¹⁰ very humbly, replied¹¹, Madam, it would be the height¹² of presumption¹² for¹³ my unworthy horse to drink, before your Majesty's royal¹⁴ steed¹⁴ had satisfied¹⁵ his thirst.

1. What did queen Elizabeth say to the Mayor? — 2. What was the Mayor's reply?

LXXII. The Abuse¹⁶ of Authority¹⁷.

Oh, 'tis excellent,
To have¹⁸ a giant's strength¹⁹; but it is tyrannous,
To use²⁰ it like a giant. Shakspeare.

1. übertriebene. 2. machte. 3. sich — näherte.
4. Reiterzug. 5. mußten. 6. Bach.
7. da — war. 8. so versuchte es.
9. welche es bemerkte.
10. sich verbeugend. 11. erwiderte.

12. höchste Vermeßtheit.
13. wenn. 14. königliches Roß.
15. befriedigt.
16. Mißbrauch. 17. Gewalt. 18. zu besitzen.
19. Kraft. 20. gebrauchen.

LXXIII. The Death¹ of Don Carlos.

At eleven o'clock, on the evening of the 18th. January, 1568, Philip II. descended² the stairs³, wearing⁴ armour over his clothes, and his head protected⁵ by a helmet. He was accompanied⁶ by the duke of Feria, captain of the guard, with four or five other lords⁷, and twelve privates⁸ of the guard. The king ordered the valet⁹ to shut¹⁰ the door, and allow¹¹ no one to enter. The nobles⁷ and the guards¹² then passed into the prince's chamber; and the duke of Feria, stealing¹³ softly to the head¹⁴ of the bed, secured¹⁵ a sword and dagger¹⁶ which lay there, as well as a musket loaded¹⁷ with two balls. The prince slept¹⁸ with as¹⁹ many precautions²⁰ as a highway man²¹, with his sword and dagger by²² his side, and a loaded musket within²³ reach, ready²⁴ at any moment for action²⁴. Carlos roused²⁵ by the noise²⁶, started²⁷ up, and demanded who was there. The duke, having²⁸ got possession of the weapons²⁹, replied, "It is the council³⁰ of state." Carlos, on³¹ hearing this, leaped²⁷ from his bed, and uttering³² loud cries and menaces³³, endeavoured³⁴ to seize his arms²⁹. At this moment, Philip, who had prudently³⁵ deferred³⁶ his entrance till³⁷ the weapons were mastered³⁸, came³⁹ forward, and bade⁴⁰ his son return⁴¹ to bed and remain quiet. The prince exclaimed⁴², "What does⁴³ your majesty want⁴³ of me?" "You will soon learn⁴⁴," said his father, and at the same time ordered⁴⁵ the windows and doors to be strongly secured⁴⁶, and the keys of the latter to be⁴⁷ delivered to him. All the furniture⁴⁸ of the room, with which Carlos could commit⁴⁹ any violence⁴⁹, even the andirons⁵⁰, were removed⁵¹. The king, then⁵² turning to⁵² Feria, told him that "he committed⁵³ the prince to his especial charge⁵⁴, and that he must guard him well." Addressing⁵⁵ next the other nobles, he directed⁵⁶ them "to serve the prince with all proper respect, but to execute none of his orders without reporting⁵⁷ them to himself; finally, to guard him faithfully, under⁵⁸ penalty of being held as traitors."

At⁵⁹ these words Carlos exclaimed, "Your majesty had⁶⁰ better kill me than keep me prisoner. It will be a great scandal to the kingdom. If you do not kill me, I will make⁶¹ away with myself."

1. Tod des. 2. stieg — herab.
3. Treppe. 4. er trug Harnisch über.
5. war geschützt.
6. begleitet von. 7. Edelknechte.
8. Gemeinen (Soldaten). 9. Bedienten.
10. zu schließen. 11. Niemand zu erlauben.
12. Gardesoldaten.
13. leise — schleichend. 14. an das Haupt.
15. nahm Besitz. 16. Dolch.
17. geladen. 18. schlief. 19. eben so viel.
20. Vorsicht. 21. Straßenräuber.
22. an. 23. in seinem Bereich.
24. jeden Augenblick kampfbereit.
25. erweckt. 26. Lärm. 27. sprang auf.
28. der — in Besitz genommen hatte.
29. Waffen. 30. Staatsrath.
31. als E — dieses hörte.

32. ein lautes Geschrei — ausstieß.
33. Drohungen. 34. versuchte — zu ergreifen.
35. klugerweise. 36. mit — zögerte.
37. bis. 38. gesichert. 39. trat hervor.
40. befohl. 41. zurückzukehren.
42. rief aus. 43. does want, wollen.
44. erfahren. 45. befohl er.
46. stark zu befestigen. 47. zu übergeben.
48. Möbel. 49. irgend eine Gewaltthat begehen.
50. sogar die Feuerböcke. 51. entfernt.
52. sich dann an — wendend.
53. übergebe. 54. Aufsicht.
55. nachher — anredend.
56. befohl. 57. zu berichten.
58. bei Strafe für Verräther gehalten zu werden.
59. bei. 60. thäten.
61. mich selbst umbringen.

"You will do no¹ such thing," said the king; "for that would be the act of a madman²." "Your majesty," replied Carlos, "treats³ me so ill, that you force me to this extremity⁴. I am not mad, but you drive me to despair!" Other words passed⁵ between the monarch and his son, whose voice was so broken by sobs⁶ as⁷ to be scarcely audible.

Having⁸ completed his arrangements⁹, Philip, after¹⁰ securing a coffer which contained the prince's papers, withdrew¹¹ from the apartment. That night, the duke of Feria, the count of Lerma, and Don Rodrigo de Mendoza, eldest son of Ruy Gomez, remained in the prince's chamber. Two lords, out¹² of the six named¹³ for the purpose, performed¹⁴ the same duty¹⁵ in rotation¹⁶ each succeeding¹⁷ night. From¹⁸ respect to the prince, none of them were allowed to¹⁹ wear their swords in his presence. His meat²⁰ was cut up²⁰ before it was brought into his chamber, as²¹ he was allowed²¹ no knife at his meals. The prince's attendants²² were all dismissed, and most of them afterwards²³ provided for²³ in the service of the king. A guard of twelve halberdiers were stationed²⁴ in the passages²⁵ leading to the tower in which the apartment of Carlos was situated²⁶. Thus all communication²⁷ from without was cut off; and, as he was unable to²⁸ look from his strongly barricaded windows, the unhappy prisoner, from that time, remained as dead to the world as if he had been buried²⁹ in the deepest dungeon³⁰ of Simancas.

Philip's queen, Isabella, and his sister Joanna, who seem³¹ to have been deeply³² afflicted by³³ the course taken with³³ the prince, made ineffectual³⁴ attempts to be allowed to visit him in his confinement³⁵; and when Don John of Austria came to the palace dressed³⁶ in a mourning³⁷ suit, to testify³⁸ his grief³⁹ on the occasion, Philip coldly rebuked⁴⁰ his brother, and ordered him to change⁴¹ his mourning for⁴² his ordinary dress.

Philip could not be⁴³ persuaded to mitigate⁴⁴ in any degree the rigor⁴⁵ of his son's confinement, which produced⁴⁶ the effect to⁴⁷ have been expected on⁴⁷ one of his fiery, ungovernable⁴⁸ temper. At first he was thrown⁴⁹ into a state bordering⁵⁰ on frenzy, and, it is said, more than once tried⁵¹ to make away with himself⁵¹. As he found that thus⁵² to beat against the bars⁵² of his prison-house

1. Nichts der Art. 2. Wahnsinnigen.
3. behandeln. 4. Extrem, äußersten Mittel.
5. wurden — gewechselt.
6. Schluchzen. 7. daß sie kaum hörbar wurde.
8. als — vollendet hatte.
9. Anordnungen.
10. nachdem — in Besitz genommen hatte.
11. zog sich — zurück. 12. out of the, von den.
13. ernannten. 14. verfahren.
15. Dienst. 16. abwechselungsweise.
17. alle andere Nacht.
18. aus Achtung gegen. 19. tragen.
20. Essen (Fleisch) wurde geschnitten.
21. da ihm — erlaubt. 22. Dienerschaft.
23. wurden nachher versorgt.
24. aufgestellt. 25. Gängen, welche führten.
26. gelegen. 27. Verbindung von außen.

28. hinaus zu sehen.
29. vergraben. 30. Kerker.
31. scheinen. 32. sehr betrübt.
33. über das Verfahren gegen.
34. unwirksame Versuche.
35. Gefangenschaft. 36. gekleidet.
37. Trauer-Anzug. 38. um — zu bezeigen.
39. Kummer. 40. gab — einen kalten Verweis.
41. zu tauschen.
42. mit seinem gewöhnlichen Anzug.
43. überredet werden. 44. zu lindern.
45. Strenge. 46. hervorbrachte.
47. die auf — zu erwarten war.
48. unbeugsamen. 49. versetzt.
50. welcher an Wahnsinn grenzte.
51. versuchte er sich umzubringen.
52. sich so gegen das Gitter — zu schlagen.

was¹ only to add² to his distress³, he resigned⁴ himself in sullen⁵ silence to his fate⁶, — the sullenness⁷ of despair. In his indifference⁸ to all around him, he ceased⁹ to take an interest in his own spiritual¹⁰ concerns. Far¹¹ from using¹¹ the religious books put¹² into his possession¹², he would attend¹³ to no act of devotion¹³, refusing¹⁴ even to confess, or to admit¹⁵ his confessor into his presence.

The mental¹⁶ excitement under which he labored¹⁷, combined¹⁸ with the want¹⁹ of air and exercise, produced²⁰ its natural effect upon his health. Every day he became²¹ more and more emaciated²¹; while the fever, which had so long preyed²² upon his constitution, now burned in his veins with greater fury than ever. To²³ allay the intolerable heat, he resorted²⁴ to such desperate expedients²⁵ as seemed to²⁶ indicate, says the Papal nuncio, that if debarred²⁷ from laying violent hands on himself²⁷, he would accomplish²⁸ the same end²⁸ in a slower way, but no less sure. He deluged²⁹ the floor with water, not³⁰ a little to the inconvenience³¹ of the companions of his prison, and walked³² about for hours, half naked, with bare feet, on the cold pavement³³. He caused³⁴ a warming-pan³⁴ filled with ice and snow to³⁵ be introduced³⁶ several times in³⁶ a night into his bed, and let it remain there for³⁷ hours together. As if this were not enough, he would³⁸ gulp down such draughts³⁸ of snow-water as³⁹ distance any achievement on record in the annals of hydropathy³⁹. He pursued⁴⁰ the same mad⁴¹ course in⁴² respect to what he ate. He would⁴³ abstain from food⁴³ an incredible number of days, — some writers say three, others, seven days,* — and then, indulging⁴⁴ in proportion to his former abstinence⁴⁵, would⁴⁶ devour a pastry of four patridges⁴⁷, with all the paste⁴⁸, at a⁴⁹

* Another authority swells the number to nine days? and a third — one of Philip's cabinet ministers — has the assurance to prolong the prince's fast to eleven days, in which he allows him, however, an unlimited, quantity of cold water. "Ansi se determino de no comer y en esta determinacion passaron onze dias sin que bastasen persuasiones ni otras diligencias a que tomase cosa bevida ni que fuese para salud sino agua fria." *Carta de Francisco de Erasso.*

1. diene nur.
2. zu vermehren. 3. Unglück.
4. übergab er sich.
5. düstern Stillschweigen. 6. Schicksal.
7. die Düsterteit.
8. Gleichgültigkeit gegen.
9. hörte er auf. 10. Seelenheil.
11. weit davon — zu gebrauchen.
12. die ihm gegeben wurden.
13. an keiner Andachtshandlung Theil nehmen.
14. und weigerte sich sogar.
15. erscheinen zu lassen. 16. geistige.
17. litt. 18. in Verbindung mit.
19. Mangel an.
20. brachte hervor.
21. wurde er immer magerer und schwächer.
22. an — gezehrt.
23. um — zu stillen.
24. nahm er seine Zuflucht.
25. Mittel. 26. anzudeuten.

27. verhindert, sich selbst Gewalt anzuthun.
28. dasselbe Ziel erreichen — auf.
29. überschwemmte. 30. nicht wenig.
31. zum Mißbehagen. 32. ging herum.
33. Pflaster. 34. ließ er eine Wärmflasche.
35. hineinlegen.
36. des Nachts. 37. Stunden lang.
38. pflegte er eine solche Quantität — hinunter zu schlucken.
39. daß es alle Großthaten, welche in den Urkunden der Hydropathen zu finden sind, weit hinter sich läßt.
40. setzte — fort.
41. tolle Verfahren.
42. hinsichtlich dessen,
43. enthielt sich der Nahrung.
44. sich seiner Genuß — überlassend.
45. Enthaltbarkeit. 46. verzehrte er.
47. Rebhühnern. 48. Teig.
49. at a sitting, auf ein Mal.

sitting, washing¹ it down with three gallons² or more of iced³ water!*

No constitution could long withstand⁴ such violent assaults⁵ as these. The constitution of Carlos gradually sunk under them. His stomach, debilitated⁶ by long inaction, refused to perform⁷ the extraordinary tasks⁸ that were imposed upon it⁸. He was attacked⁹ by incessant vomiting¹⁰; dysentery set¹¹ in; and his strength rapidly¹² failed. The physician, Olivares, who alone saw the patient, consulted with his brethren¹³ in the apartments of Ruy Gomez. Their remedies¹⁴ failed to restore¹⁵ the exhausted energies¹⁵ of nature; and it was soon evident¹⁶ that the days of Carlos were numbered.

Nor¹⁷ was Carlos allowed the society of his amiable stepmother, the queen, nor of his aunt Joanna, to¹⁸ sweeten, by their kind attentions, the bitterness of death. It was his sad¹⁹ fate to die, as he had lived throughout²⁰ his confinement²⁰, under the cold gaze²¹ of his enemies. Yet he died at²² peace with all; and some of the last words that he uttered²³ were to forgive his father for his imprisonment, and the ministers — naming²⁴ Ruy Gomez and Espinosa in particular — who advised him to it.

Philip, however, took²⁵ the occasion, when Carlos lay asleep²⁶ or insensible, to enter the chamber; and, stealing²⁷ softly behind the prince of Eboli and the grand-prior, Antonio de Toledo, he stretched²⁸ out his hands towards²⁹ the bed, and, making³⁰ the sign of the cross, gave the parting³¹ benediction to his dying son.

Carlos now grew³² rapidly more feeble, having³³ scarcely strength enough left to³⁴ listen to the exhortations³⁵ of his confessor, and with low, indistinct murmurings³⁶ to³⁷ adore the crucifix which he held constantly in his hand. On the twenty-fourth of July, soon after midnight, he³⁸ was told it³⁸ was the Vigil of St. James³⁹. Then suddenly rousing⁴⁰, with a gleam⁴¹ of joy on his countenance, he intimated⁴² his desire for⁴² his confessor to⁴³ place the holy taper⁴⁴ in his hand: and feebly beating⁴⁵ his breast, as⁴⁶ if to invoke⁴⁶ the mercy of Heaven on his trans-

* Yet Carlos might have found warrant for his proceedings, in regard to the use of snow and iced water, in the prescriptions of more than one doctor of his time. At that epoch the snow and iced water-cure was the fashion of the day, at present we are satisfied with the cold water-cure. At that time the sheets³ were cooled with snow, in our days, we cool them with water from the spring. There is but little new under the sun.

1. schwemmte es hinunter. 2. zwölf Flaschen.
3. Betttücher. 4. widerstehen, aushalten.
5. Angriffe. 6. geschwächt. 7. zu vollführen.
8. Aufgaben, welche ihm auferlegt wurden.
9. ergriffen. 10. Erbrechen.
11. gesellte sich dazu. 12. nahm schnell ab.
13. Kollegen. 14. Heilmittel.
15. die erschöpften Kräfte wieder herzustellen.
16. klar.
17. dem C. wurde nicht einmal — erlaubt.
18. um — zu versüßen. 19. trauriges Schicksal.
20. während seiner ganzen Gefangenschaft.
21. Blick. 22. im Frieden.
23. aussprach. 24. indem er besonders — nannte.

25. benützte die Gelegenheit.
26. im Schläfe oder bewusstlos.
27. fachte — schleichend. 28. streckte — aus.
29. gegen. 30. machte er.
31. scheidenden Segen. 32. wurde.
33. *having left*, es blieb ihm — übrig.
34. zuzuhören. 35. Ermahnungen.
36. Murmeln. 37. anzubeten.
38. wurde ihm mitgetheilt, daß.
39. es der Vorabend des heiligen Jakob sei.
40. sich plötzlich zusammenraffend. 41. Strahl.
42. deutete er seinen Wunsch daß. 43. lege.
44. Kerze. 45. sich auf die Brust schlagend.
46. als wenn er — erflehen wollte.

gressions¹, he fell back, and expired without a groan². — “No Catholic,” says Nobili, “ever³ made a more Catholic end.”

A few days before his death, Carlos is⁴ said to have made a will⁴, in which, after imploring⁵ his father's pardon and blessing⁶, he commended his servants to his care⁷, gave⁸ away a few jewels to two or three friends, and disposed⁹ of the rest of his property in¹⁰ behalf of sundry¹¹ churches and monasteries. Agreeably¹² to his wish, his body was wrapped¹³ in a Franciscan robe¹⁴, and was soon afterward laid in a coffin covered with black velvet and rich brocade. At seven o'clock, that same evening, the remains¹⁵ of Carlos were borne from the chamber where he died, to their place of interment, the convent of San Domingo Real, where Carlos had desired that his ashes might be laid. The king did not accompany the procession. Slowly it defiled through the crowded streets, where the people gave audible utterance to their grief, as they gazed on the funeral pomp, and their eyes fell on the bier (bihr) of the prince, who, they had fondly hoped, would one day sway the sceptre of Castile; and whose errors, great as they were, were forgotten in his unparalleled misfortunes.

It cannot be denied¹⁶, that suspicions of¹⁷ foul play to¹⁷ Carlos were not only current¹⁸ abroad, but¹⁹ were entertained even¹⁹ by persons of rank at²⁰ home, — where it could not be safe to²¹ utter them. Among others, the celebrated Antonio Perez, one of the household²² of the prince of Eboli, informs us, that, “as the king had found Carlos guilty²³ of high-treason, he was condemned to death by casuists²⁴ and inquisitors. But in²⁵ order that the execution of this sentence²⁶ might not be brought too palpably²⁷ before the public, they²⁸ mixed for four months together²⁸ a slow poison in his food.”

Thus, in the morning of his life, at²⁹ little more than twenty-three years of age, perished³⁰ Carlos, prince of Asturias. No one of his time came into the world under so brilliant³¹ auspices; for he was heir to the noblest empire in Christendom; and the Spaniards, as they discerned³² in his childhood some³³ of the germs³³ of future greatness in his character, looked³⁴ confidently forward³⁴ to the day when³⁵ he should rival the glory of³⁵ his grandfather, Charles the Fifth. But he was born under an evil³⁶ star, which counteracted³⁷ all the gifts of fortune, and turned³⁸ them into a curse³⁹. His naturally wild and headstrong⁴⁰ temper was

1. Sünden, Vergehen. 2. ein Stöhnen.
3. hatte je mehr als guter Katholik das Leben geendet.
4. soll Carlos ein Testament gemacht haben.
5. nachdem er um — erfleht. 6. Segen.
7. Schuß. 8. gave away, verschenkte.
9. verfügte über das Uebrige.
10. zu Gunsten. 11. mehrerer. 12. gemäß.
13. gehüllt. 14. Gewand.
15. Leiche, Ueberreste. 16. verleugnet.
17. wegen Ungerechtigkeit, Grausamkeit gegen.
18. im Ausland im Umlauf war.
19. sondern auch, daß sogar — denselben (Verdacht) hegten.
20. im Inland (Spanien).

21. ihn auszusprechen. 22. Hofstaat.
23. des Hochverraths schuldig.
24. Casuisten, Gewissenslehrer. 25. damit.
26. Urtheilsspruch. 27. handgreiflich, deutlich.
28. mischte man vier Monate lang.
29. in einem Alter von wenig mehr als.
30. ging — zu Grunde, starb.
31. so glänzenden Aussichten. 32. bemerkten.
33. etwas von dem Keim.
34. blickten vertrauensvoll nach.
35. wo er, hinsichtlich des Ruhms mit — rivalisiren würde. 36. bösen Stern.
37. entgegenwirkte. 38. verwandelte.
39. Fluch. 40. eigensinniges.

exasperated¹ by disease; and, when² encountered² by the distrust and alienation² of him who had the control³ of his destiny, was⁴ exalted into a state of frenzy, that furnishes⁵ the best apology for his extravagances⁶, and vindicates⁷ the necessity of⁸ some measures, on⁹ the part of his father, to¹⁰ restrain them. Yet, can those who reject¹¹ the imputation¹² of *murder*, acquit¹³ that father of inexorable¹⁴ rigour towards his child in¹⁵ the measures which he employed¹⁶, or of the dreadful responsibility¹⁷ which attaches¹⁸ to the consequences of them¹⁸!

Prescott.

1. What did Philip II. do in 1568? — 2. By whom was he accompanied?
3. What did the king order? — What did the duke of Feria do?
5. What did Carlos do? — 6. What did Philip do?
7. What did the prince exclaim, and what did the father say?
8. What were removed? — 9. What did the king tell Feria?
10. What did Carlos exclaim, and what did the king say?

NB. Obige 10 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 107.

11. What did Carlos reply? — 12. What was done with his meat?
13. Where was a guard placed? — 14. What did Philip's queen do?
15. What could Philip not be persuaded to do? — 16. Into what was Carlos thrown?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 108.

17. To what did he resign himself?
18. What did the mental excitement produce? — 19. What did he become?
20. What did he do to allay the intolerable heat? — 21. What did he deluge?
22. What did he cause to be done? — 23. From what would he abstain?

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 109.

24. What did Olivares do? — 25. What was Carlos not allowed?
26. What was his sad fate? — 27. What were his last words?
28. What did Philip do? — 29. What did Carlos now grow?
30. Describe his death.

NB. Obige 7 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 110.

31. What cannot be denied? — 32. When did Carlos perish?
33. To what was he heir?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 111.

LXXIV. The most valuable Part of every Man's Education.

The most valuable¹⁹ part²⁰ of every²¹ man's education is that which he receives²² from himself, especially²³ when the active²⁴ energy of his character makes ample amends for²⁵ the want²⁶ of a more finished²⁷ course of study²⁸.

1. erbittert.
2. als es von dem Mißtrauen und Entfremdung — begegnet wurde.
3. Lenkung seines Schicksals.
4. so wurde er in einen Zustand der Raserei versetzt.
5. darbietet. 6. Tollheiten.
7. rechtfertigt. 8. einiger Maßregeln. 9. seitens.
10. um denselben Gehalt zu thun.
11. verwerfen. 12. Beschuldigung des Mords.
13. freisprechen.

14. von der unerbittlichen Strenge gegen.
15. in the, hinsichtlich der.
16. anwandte. 17. Verantwortlichkeit.
18. mit den Folgen derselben verbunden ist.
19. werthvollste. 20. Theil.
21. eines jeden. 22. erhält, bekommt.
23. hauptsächlich. 24. thätige.
25. makens ample amends for, reichlich ersetzt.
26. Mangel. 27. vollendetern.
28. course of study, Studiums.

LXXV. Agha Mahomed Khan, Shah of Persia.

Agha Mahomed Khan, the founder¹ of the Kajar dynasty, was uncle of the late² Shah. He waded³ through seas of blood to reach⁴ the throne; and the early part of his reign⁵ was distinguished⁶ by continual conflicts with the legitimate⁷ heir⁸, Jaffier Khan, and his son, Lootf Ali Khan, who were at length taken⁹ prisoners⁹ and suffered¹⁰ the most horrible barbarities¹¹ from the usurper¹², and with them terminated¹³ the Zund family. Of his two brothers, who materially¹⁴ assisted¹⁵ him to the possession of the empire, one of them, of¹⁶ whom he was afraid¹⁶ as a competitor¹⁷, he ordered his eyes to be scooped out¹⁸; and the other, Jaffier Kouli Khan, to whom he was more particularly¹⁹ indebted²⁰ for his musnud, or throne, he decoyed²¹ to the capital, on²² the pretence²² of giving him the government of Ispahan, where he was barbarously murdered under the portico of a new palace by hired²³ assassins²⁴; and some accounts²⁵ say, in the presence of the late² Shah, then called²⁶ Baba Khan, to whom he said, loading²⁷ him with abuse²⁸, "It is for you that I have done this; the gallant²⁹ spirit which animated³⁰ that body³¹ would never have permitted³² my crown to rest³³ on your head in peace. Persia would³⁴ have been distracted³⁴ with internal wars; to avoid³⁵ these consequences, I have acted³⁶ with shameful ingratitude, and have sinned deeply³⁷ against God and man".

The blackest hypocrisy³⁸ was conspicuous³⁹ in this Shah, and his⁴⁰ conscience was seared as with a hot iron⁴⁰. At Kerman, where the inhabitants had rebelled against him, and sheltered⁴¹ one of his opponents, Lootf Aly, he laid⁴² a contribution⁴² upon them of so many sacks of⁴³ eyes. It is said that more than seven thousand people were thus mutilated⁴⁴ to make⁴⁵ up the quantity; and they now relate the circumstance in Persia as an undoubted⁴⁶ fact, that as the eyes were brought⁴⁷ on trays⁴⁸ and thrown⁴⁹ down on the ground before him, he turned⁵⁰ them over⁵⁰ with the end of his whip⁵¹, gloating⁵² in his barbarity⁵³.

It were endless to narrate all the circumstances⁵⁴ of his bloody deeds⁵⁵; nay, they are scarcely known⁵⁶, and they display⁵⁷ such a dark map⁵⁸ of human depravity⁵⁹, that one shudders⁶⁰ at the monster. Building⁶¹ towers⁶¹ of human heads, they⁶² say, was nothing uncommon, and one of them now exists at Ispahan.

1. Gründer. 2. verstorbenen. 3. wadete.
4. erreichen. 5. Regierung. 6. berüchtigt.
7. gesetzmäßigen. 8. Erben.
9. gefangen genommen. 10. erlitten.
11. Grausamkeiten. 12. Thronräuber.
13. endete. 14. wesentlich. 15. verhasst.
16. of whom, &c., vor welchem er sich — fürchtete.
17. Mitbewerber. 18. to be, &c., daß man ihm die Augen ausstechte.
19. besonders. 20. verdankte. 21. verlockte.
22. unter dem Vorwand. 23. gemietheten.
24. Mordmörder. 25. Berichte. 26. genannt.
27. indem er — überhäufte. 28. Schimpfreden.
29. hochherzige. 30. belebte. 31. Körper.
32. es erlaubt. 33. daß — ruhe.
34. would, &c., wäre in Verwirrung gerathen.

35. um — vorzubeugen. 36. gehandelt.
37. sehr. 38. Heuchelei. 39. hervorragend.
40. his conscience, &c., in seinem Gewissen hatte er so zu sagen ein Brandmahl.
41. Zuflucht gewährten,
42. laid a — upon, &c., legte — eine Brand-
schätzung auf. 43. voll Augen.
44. verstümmelt um. 45. zusammenzubringen.
46. unbezweifelte. 47. gebracht.
48. auf Präsentierteller. 49. niedergeworfen.
50. drehte sie um. 51. Peitsche.
52. schwelgend. 53. Grausamkeit.
54. Einzelheiten. 55. Thaten.
56. bekannt.* 57. stellen — dar.
58. Bild. 59. Verderbtheit. 60. schaudert vor.
61. Thürme aus — zu bauen. 62. sagt man.

The Shah was brave¹, as well as cruel; he displayed² both these qualities in Georgia, which had revolted³ during his reign, from⁴ their dependance on Persia to that of Russia. The inhabitants of Tiflis were visited⁵ with his fiery⁶ vengeance; and in it was committed⁷ the usual barbarities of fire and sword, driving⁸ thousands of the natives into captivity⁹, binding¹⁰, and throwing their priests¹⁰ into the river, destroying¹¹ their churches, wasting¹² their habitations. The Mahomedan historian of this Monarch, to convey¹³ some idea of the sufferings of the poor inhabitants, says, "that on this glorious occasion¹⁴, the valiant¹⁵ warriors of Persia gave to the Georgian unbelievers¹⁶ a specimen¹⁷ of what they were¹⁸ to expect¹⁸ on the day¹⁹ of judgement."

An expedition²⁰ against Sheshah proved²¹ to be the last of Agha Mahomed Shah's military undertakings. Two of his servants quarrelled²²; their noise disturbed him in his tent²³, and he immediately ordered them²⁴ to be put to death²⁴. After great entreaties²⁵ on the part²⁶ of his grand vizier, Hadje Ibrahim, whom, if²⁷ any one, he respected²⁷, the execution was postponed²⁸ till the following morning. The men, rendered²⁹ desperate by their sentence³⁰, which they knew would be carried³¹ into effect³¹, determined³² on destroying³³ the tyrant. Either his days or theirs were numbered³⁴; and reckless³⁵ of consequences they entered the tent of the King whilst he slept³⁶. Alarmed at the noise of destroying³³ the sentinel, which was the work of a moment, the Shah sprang from his couch³⁷, and struggled³⁸ hard for his life, promising pardon to his assailants; it is even³⁹ said, that rendered²⁹ desperate by his position⁴⁰, he cut⁴¹ down⁴¹ one of them; but the other plunged a poinard⁴² into his heart, and afterwards cut⁴³ off his head and displayed⁴⁴ it to the troops in the camp. Thus fell, by a deserved fate⁴⁵, certainly the greatest tyrant that Persia had ever nourished⁴⁶ on her soil⁴⁷, and a blot⁴⁸ to human nature, such as history, perhaps, in her varied⁴⁹ pages⁴⁹, Roman or Grecian, will⁵⁰ scarcely again present us with⁵⁰; it was a lust⁵¹ of blood, a wantonness⁵² of cruelty insatiable⁵³.

Some are of opinion, that the latter acts⁵⁴ of the Shah's life indicated⁵⁵ insanity⁵⁶, since⁵⁷ he was subject to fits⁵⁷. "Cut⁵⁸ out

* The tyrant has been admirably depicted by Mr. Morier in his "Zhorab," or "the Hostage."

1. tapfer. 2. legte — an den Tag.
3. sich empörte.
4. from their dependance on, und von ihrer Abhängigkeit an — übertraten.
5. heimgesucht. 6. feurigen. 7. verübt.
8. driving, wobei — geschleppt. 9. Sklaverei.
10. binding, &c., ihre Priester wurden gebunden und — geworfen. 11. zerstört.
12. verwüstet. 13. um — zu geben.
14. Gelegenheit. 15. tapferen.
16. Ungläubigen. 17. Vorgeschnack.
18. zu erwarten hätten.
19. on the day, &c., beim jüngsten Gericht.
20. Kriegszug. 21. proved to be, war.
22. stritten mit einander. 23. Zelt.
24. them to, &c., daß man sie hinrichte.
25. Bitten. 26. seitens.

27. if any one, &c., wenn er Jemand achtete, so war er es. 28. bis — aufgeschoben.
29. rasend gemacht.
30. Verurtheilung. 31. ausgeführt.
32. entschlossen sich. 33. umzubringen.
34. gezählt. 35. unbekümmert. 36. schlief.*
37. Ruhebett. 38. rang, kämpfte.
39. sogar. 40. Lage. 41. haute — nieder.
42. Dolch. 43. schnitt ab.* 44. zeigte.
45. Schicksal. 46. genährt. 47. Boden.
48. Schandfleck. 49. bunten Blättern, Urkunden.
50. will scarcely, &c., uns kaum einen aufzuweisen hat. 51. Gelüsten nach.
52. muthwillige. 53. unersättliche.
54. Handlungen. 55. deuteten auf. 56. Wahnsinn.
57. since, &c., da er Anfällen der Fallsucht unterworfen war. 58. schneide.

his eyes," was the order of the day for the most trifling¹ offence², which order was immediately obeyed, and the poor wretches had³ to grope through³ the remainder⁴ of their days in darkness. Such⁵ facts⁵ are stated⁶ to show what absolute⁷ power the sovereign possesses in Persia, and what⁸ the mind of the man-monster is capable⁹ of, when loosened¹⁰ to his own unbridled¹¹ passions. I am not more astonished at¹² the conception¹³ of his sanguinary decrees, than I am at¹⁴ the execution of them¹⁴, that a nation should be so awed¹⁵ by one individual as¹⁶ to massacre each other¹⁶ at¹⁷ his dictation.

Sir John Malcolm's History of Persia.

1. Through what did Agha Mahomed Khan wade, and by what was his reign distinguished?
2. What did he order to be done with one of his brothers?
3. And what did he do with the other?
4. What did Agha Khan say to his son the late Shah, then called Baba Khan?
5. What contribution did he lay on the Kermans? — What was nothing uncommon?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 113.

7. What does the Mahomedan Historian say?
8. Who quarrelled, and what did the Shah order to be done?
9. By whom was the Shah killed and how? — 10. Of what are some of opinion?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 114.

11. What was the order of the day?

LXXVI. Queen Elizabeth.

There are few great personages in history who have been more exposed¹⁸ to the calumny¹⁹ of enemies, and the adulation²⁰ of friends, than Queen Elizabeth; and yet there is scarcely any²¹ whose reputation²² has been more certainly²³ determined by the unanimous²⁴ consent²⁴ of posterity. The unusual length of her administration²⁵, and the strong features²⁶ of her character, were able²⁷ to overcome²⁸ all prejudices; and obliging²⁹ her detractors³⁰ to abate³¹ much of their invectives³², and her admirers somewhat of their panegyrics³³, have at last, in spite³⁴ of political factions, and what is more, of religious animosities³⁵, produced³⁶ a uniform judgment³⁶ with regard³⁷ to her conduct. Her vigour³⁸, her constancy³⁹, her magnanimity⁴⁰, her penetration⁴¹, vigilance⁴², address⁴³, are allowed⁴⁴ to merit⁴⁵ the highest praises, and appear⁴⁶ not to have been surpassed⁴⁷ by any person that ever filled a throne: a conduct⁴⁸ less rigorous⁴⁹, less imperious⁵⁰, more sincere, more indul-

1. geringste. 2. Vergehen.
3. mußten — herumtappen. 4. übrigen.
5. diese Thatfachen. 6. angeführt um.
7. unbeschränkte. 8. wozu. 9. fähig.
10. losgelassen. 11. ungezügelt. 12. über.
13. Erfindung, Erfinden.
14. at the, &c., daß man sie ausführte.
15. in Furcht gehalten.
16. as to &c., daß sie einander erwürgten.
17. auf seinen Befehl. 18. ausgesetzt.
19. Verleumdung. 20. Schmeicheleien.
21. irgend eine (große Person). 22. Ruf.
23. more certainly determined, mit mehr Bestimmtheit — festgesetzt.
24. allgemeine Zustimmung der Nachwelt.
25. Herrschaft. 26. Züge. 27. im Stande.
28. beseitigen, beseugen.

29. dadurch, daß sie (Elizabeth's Herrschaft und Charakter nämlich) — nöthigen.
30. Verleumder. 31. abzulassen.
32. Schmähungen. 33. Lobreden. 34. trotz.
35. Erbitterung, Feindseligkeiten.
36. produced, &c., ein gleichförmiges Urtheil — hervorgerufen.
37. hinsichtlich ihrer Handlungsweise. 38. Geistesstärke. 39. Beständigkeit, Beharrlichkeit.
40. Hochherzigkeit.
41. Scharfsinn.
42. Wachsamkeit. 43. Geschicklichkeit.
44. are allowed, gesteht man, daß.
45. verdienen. 46. scheinen.
47. übertreffen.
48. Benehmen, Handlungsweise.
49. streng. 50. gebieterisch.

gent¹ to her people, would have been requisite² to form a perfect³ character. By the force of her mind she controlled⁴ all her more active⁵ and stronger qualities, and prevented⁶ them from running⁷ into excess: her heroism was exempt⁸ from temerity⁹, her frugality¹⁰ from avarice¹¹, her friendship from partiality, her active¹² temper¹³ from turbulency¹⁴ and a vain ambition: she guarded¹⁵ not herself with equal care¹⁶ or equal success¹⁷ from lesser infirmities; the rivalship¹⁸ of beauty, the desire¹⁹ of admiration, the jealousy of love, and the sallies²⁰ of anger.

Her singular²¹ talents²² for government²² were founded²³ equally²⁴ on her temper²⁵ and on her capacity²⁶. Endowed²⁷ with a great²⁸ command over self, she soon obtained²⁹ an uncontrolled³⁰ ascendant³¹ over her people; and while she merited³² all their esteem by her real virtues, she also engaged³³ their affections³⁴ by her pretended³⁵ ones. Few sovereigns of England succeeded³⁶ to the throne in³⁷ more difficult circumstances; and none ever conducted³⁸ the government with such uniform³⁹ success⁴⁰ and felicity. Though unacquainted⁴¹ with the practice⁴² of toleration⁴³, the true secret for managing⁴⁴ religious factions, she preserved⁴⁵ her people, by her superior⁴⁶ prudence⁴⁷, from those confusions⁴⁸ in which theological controversy⁴⁹ had involved⁵⁰ all the neighbouring nations; and though her enemies were the most powerful princes of Europe, the most active⁵¹, the most enterprising⁵², the least scrupulous⁵³, she was able⁵⁴ by her vigour to make deep impressions⁵⁵ on their states: her own greatness meanwhile⁵⁶ remained⁵⁷ untouched and unimpaired⁵⁸.

The wise ministers and brave⁵⁹ warriors who flourished under her reign share⁶⁰ the praise of her success⁶¹, but instead of lessening⁶² the applause⁶³ due⁶⁴ to her, they⁶⁵ make great addition to⁶⁵ it. They owed⁶⁶ all of them their advancement to her choice⁶⁷; they were supported⁶⁸ by her constancy⁶⁹, and with all their abilities⁷⁰ they were never able to acquire⁷¹ any undue⁷² ascendant⁷³ over her. In her family, in her court, in her kingdom, she remained equally⁷⁴ mistress⁷⁵: the force⁷⁶ of the tender⁷⁷ passions⁷⁸ was great over her, but the force of her mind was still superior⁷⁹; and the combat⁸⁰ which her victory visibly⁸¹ cost her, serves⁸² only

1. nachsichtiger gegen. 2. nöthig — um.
3. vollkommenen. 4. beherrschte.
5. thätigern. 6. verhinderte. 7. auszuarten.
8. frei. 9. Tollkühnheit. 10. Sparsamkeit.
11. Geiz. 12. lebhaftes. 13. Temperament.
14. Heftigkeit. 15. bewachte. 16. Sorgfalt.
17. Glück, Erfolg. 18. Nebenbuhlerei.
19. Verlangen nach. 20. Ausbrüche.
21. seltene. 22. Herrschertalente.
23. gegründet. 24. zugleich auf.
25. Gemüth. 26. Fähigkeiten. 27. begabt.
28. *great command over self*, großen Macht der Selbstbeherrschung. 29. gewann.
30. unbeschränkte. 31. Gewalt. 32. verdiente.
33. fesselte. 34. Liebe, Anhänglichkeit.
35. vorgeblichen. 36. bestiegen. 37. unter.
38. leitete. 39. gleichmäßigen.
40. Erfolg und Glück. 41. fremd.
42. in der Ausübung. 43. der Duldsamkeit.

44. *for managing*, religiösen Parteien zu beherrschen. 45. schützte. 46. überlegenere.
47. Klugheit. 48. Wirren. 49. Streitigkeiten.
50. verwickelt. 51. thätigsten.
52. unternehmendsten. 53. gewissenlosesten.
54. im Stande. 55. Eindrücke.
56. mittlerweile. 57. unangetastet.
58. unverletzt. 59. tapferen. 60. theilen.
61. Glücks, Erfolgs. 62. zu vermindern.
63. Lob, welches. 64. gebührt.
65. *they make, &c.*, vermehren sie dasselbe bedeutend. 66. verdanken. 67. Wahl.
68. aufrecht erhalten.
69. Festigkeit, Beharrlichkeit.
70. Fähigkeiten. 71. zu gewinnen.
72. ungebührlichen. 73. Einfluß.
74. gleich. 75. Herrin. 76. Gewalt.
77. zarten. 78. Leidenschaften. 79. größer.
80. Kampf. 81. sichtbar. 82. dient.

to display¹ the firmness² of her resolution, and the loftiness³ of her ambitious sentiments⁴.

The fame of this princess, though it has⁵ surmounted⁶ the prejudices⁶ both⁷ of faction and bigotry, yet⁸ lies still exposed⁸ to another prejudice, which is more durable⁹ because more natural, and which, according¹⁰ to the different views¹¹ in which we survey¹² her, is capable¹³ either of exalting¹⁴ beyond¹⁵ measure¹⁵, or diminishing¹⁶ the lustre¹⁷ of her character. This prejudice is founded¹⁸ on the consideration¹⁹ of her sex²⁰. When we contemplate¹² her as a woman, we are²¹ apt to be struck²¹ with the highest admiration of her great qualities and extensive²² capacity²³; but we are²⁴ also apt²⁴ to require²⁵ some more softness²⁶ of disposition²⁷, some greater lenity²⁸ of temper, some of those amiable weaknesses²⁹ by which her sex²⁰ is distinguished³⁰. But the true method³¹ of estimating her merit³², is to lay aside³³ all these considerations³⁴, and consider her merely as a rational³⁵ being placed³⁶ in authority³⁶, and entrusted³⁷ with the government of mankind. We may find it difficult to reconcile³⁸ our fancy to her³⁸ as a wife or a mistress³⁹; but her qualities as a sovereign, though with some considerable exceptions⁴⁰, are the object of undisputed⁴¹ applause and approbation.

Hume.

1. What were able to overcome all prejudices?

2. What merit the highest praise?

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 115.

3. What did she do by the force of her mind? — 4. With what was she endowed?

5. From what did she preserve her people? — 6. Who were her enemies?

7. Who share the praise of her success? — 8. Where was she equally mistress?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 116.

9. What do we feel when we contemplate her as a woman?

10. Which is the true method of estimating her merit?

LXXVII. Solomon and Sheba.

A Rabbin once told me an ingenious⁴² invention, which in the Talmud is attributed⁴³ to Solomon.

The power of the monarch had spread⁴⁴ his wisdom to the remotest⁴⁵ parts of the known⁴⁶ world. Queen Sheba, attracted⁴⁷ by the splendour⁴⁸ of his reputation, visited this poetical king at his own court; there, one day, to exercise⁴⁹ the sagacity⁵⁰ of the monarch,

1. zeigen. 2. Festigkeit. 3. Erhabenheit.
4. Gefinnungen.
5. sich über — erhoben hat.
6. Vorurtheile. 7. sowohl der Parteien.
8. yet lies, &c., so ist er (der Ruhm) doch noch — ausgesetzt. 9. dauernder.
10. den verschiedenen — nach. 11. Ansichten.
12. betrachten. 13. im Stande ist.
14. zu erheben. 15. über die Maßen.
16. oder zu vermindern. 17. Glanz.
18. gegründet auf. 19. Umstand.
20. Geschlechts.
21. we are apt to be struck, so sind wir — erfüllt. 22. umfassenden.
23. Talente, Fähigkeiten.

24. are, &c., fühlen uns auch geneigt.
25. zu verlangen. 26. Zartheit.
27. Charakters. 28. Sanftmuth.
29. Schwächen. 30. ausgezeichnet.
31. Art. 32. Verdienst. 33. bei Seite.
34. Rücksichten. 35. vernünftiges.
36. placed, &c., mit Gewalt bekleidet.
37. anvertraut.
38. to reconcile, &c., sie — zu denken.
39. Geliebte. 40. Ausnahmen.
41. unbestritten. 42. sinnreiche.
43. zugeschrieben. 44. den Ruf — verbreitet.
45. entferntesten. 46. bekannten.
47. angezogen. 48. Glanz.
49. um — zu prüfen. 50. Scharfsinn.

Sheba presented¹ herself at the foot of the throne: in each hand she held a wreath²; the one was composed³ of natural, and the other of artificial, flowers. Art, in the labour⁴ of the mimetic⁵ wreath, had exquisitely emulated⁶ the lively hues⁷ of nature; so that, at the distance it⁸ was held by the queen for the inspection⁸ of the king, it was deemed⁹ impossible for him to decide, as¹⁰ her question imported¹⁰, which wreath² was the production of nature, and which the work of art. The sagacious Solomon seemed perplexed¹¹; yet to be vanquished¹², though in a trifle¹³ by a trifling¹⁴ woman, irritated his pride. The son of David, he who had written treatises¹⁵ on the vegetable¹⁶ productions¹⁶ "from the cedar to¹⁷ the hyssop¹⁸," to acknowledge¹⁹ himself outwitted²⁰ by a woman, with shreds²¹ of paper and glazed²² paintings! The honor of the monarch's reputation for²³ divine sagacity²⁴ seemed diminished, and the whole Jewish Court looked²⁵ solemn²⁶ and melancholy. At length an expedient²⁷ presented²⁸ itself²⁸ to the king; and one it²⁹ must be³⁰ confessed³⁰ worthy of the naturalist³¹. Observing³² a cluster³³ of bees³³ hovering³⁴ about a window; he commanded that it should be opened; it was opened; the bees rushed (flogen) into the court, and alighted³⁵ immediately on one of the wreaths, while³⁶ not a single one fixed³⁵ on the other. The baffled³⁷ Sheba had one more reason, to be astonished at the wisdom of Solomon.

This would make³⁸ a pretty poetical tale³⁹. It would yield⁴⁰ an elegant description, and a pleasing moral; that *the bee only rests* on the natural beauties and never *fixes* on the *painted*⁴¹ flowers, however⁴² inimitably⁴² the colours may be laid⁴³ on. Applied⁴⁴ to the ladies this would give⁴⁵ it pungency⁴⁵. In the "Practical Education" of the Edgeworths', the reader will find a very ingenious conversation founded⁴⁶ on this story.

J. D'Israeli.

1. What had the power of the monarch done? — 2. Who visited the king?

NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 117.

3. What did Sheba do, and what did her question import?
4. How did the Jewish Court look? — 5. What presented itself to the king?
6. Describe the expedient. — 7. What would this story yield?

LXXVIII. Suffer not your Spirits to be Subdued.

Suffer not⁴⁷ your spirits⁴⁸ to be⁴⁹ subdued by⁵⁰ misfortunes⁵¹; but⁵², on the contrary⁵³, steer right onward⁵⁴, with a courage greater than your fate⁵⁵ seems to allow⁵⁵.

1. erschien. 2. Kranz. 3. gemacht.
4. Bearbeitung. 5. nachgeahmten.
6. nachgeeifert. 7. Farben. 8. in der er von der Königin zur Ansicht — gehalten wurde.
9. betrachtet. 10. wie ihre Frage es verlangte.
11. verlegen. 12. besiegt.
13. kleinlichen Sache. 14. spitzfindige.
15. Abhandlungen über. 16. Pflanzenreich.
17. bis zum. 18. Psop. 19. einzugestehen.
20. überlistet. 21. Schnitzeln.
22. lackirten Bildern. 23. wegen.
24. göttlichen Scharfsinns. 25. sah — aus.
26. ernst. 27. Hülfsmittel. 28. bot sich — dar.
29. man. 30. gestehen. 31. Naturforschers.

32. da er — bemerkte. 33. Bienenschwarm.
34. welcher um — flog. 35. setzten sich.
36. wogegen. 37. bereitete. 38. geben. 39. Erzählung.
40. gewähren. 41. bemalten.
42. wie unnachahmbar auch immer.
43. aufgelegt. 44. bezogen.
45. pikant machen. 46. begründet.
47. leide nicht daß. 48. Geist.
49. niedergeschlagen werde.
50. durch 51. Unglück.
52. sondern. 53. im Gegentheil.
54. *steer, &c.*, steuere geradezu.
55. Schicksal zu erlauben scheint.

LXXIX. The Fly¹ and the Spider².

Fresh was the breath³ of morn; "the busy⁴ breeze⁴,
As poets tell⁵ us, whisper'd through the trees,"
And swept⁶ the dew-clad⁷ blossoms with wings so light!
Phoebus got⁸ up and made a blazing⁹ fire,
That gilded¹⁰ every country house and spire¹¹,
And smiling¹², put on his looks so bright¹².

On this fair¹³ morn¹⁴, a spider who had set¹⁵,
To catch¹⁶ a breakfast his old waving¹⁷ net,
With curious¹⁸ art upon a spangled¹⁹ thorn,
At length, with gravely²⁰, squinting²¹, longing²² eye,
Near him beheld²³ a pretty, plump²⁴ young fly,
Humming²⁵ her little orisons²⁶ to morn.

"Good morrow, dear Miss Fly," quoth²⁷ gallant Grim²⁷;
"Good morrow, Sir," replied²⁸ Miss Fly to him:
"Walk²⁹ in, Miss, pray, and see what I'm about³⁰:"
"I'm much oblig'd t'you, Sir," Miss Fly rejoined³¹,
"My eyes are both so very good, I find,
That I can plainly³² see the whole without³³."

"Fine weather, Miss" — "Yes, very, very fine,"
Quoth²⁷ Miss, — "prodigious³⁴ fine indeed:"
"But why so coy³⁵," quoth Grim, "that you decline³⁶
To put³⁶ within³⁷ my bower³⁸ your pretty head?"
"Tis simply this,"
Quoth cautious³⁹ Miss,
"I fear you like my pretty head so well,
You'd⁴⁰ keep⁴⁰ it for yourself, Sir, — who⁴¹ can tell⁴¹?"

"Then let me squeeze⁴² your lovely hand, my dear,
And prove⁴³ that all your fears are foolish⁴⁴, vain⁴⁵."
"I've a sore⁴⁶ finger, Sir; nay⁴⁷ more, I fear
You really⁴⁸ would not let it go again."
"Poh, poh! child, pray dismiss⁴⁹ your idle dread⁵⁰:
I would not hurt⁵¹ a hair of that sweet head;
Well then, with one kind kiss of friendship meet⁵² me:"
"La, Sir," quoth Miss, with seeming⁵³ artless⁵⁴ tongue,
"I fear our salutation would be long;
So loving⁵⁵ too, I fear that you would eat me."

So saying, with a smile she left the rogue⁵⁶,
To weave⁵⁷ more lines⁵⁸ of death⁵⁸, and plan⁵⁹ for prog⁶⁰.

Walcot.

1. fliege. 2. Spinne. 3. Duft.
4. geschäftige Lüftchen. 5. sagen.*
6. berührte. 7. Thau benetzten.
8. stand auf. 9. helles, flammendes.
10. vergoldete. 11. Kirchturmsspiße.
12. put on his looks, &c., lächelnd, sah er ganz
fröhlich aus.
13. schönen. 14. Morgen.
15. aufgespannt. 16. um — zu fangen.
17. wogendes. 18. geschickter. 19. perlenden Hagedorn.
20. ernstem. 21. schielendem. 22. gierigem.
23. sah. 24. fette. 25. summend. 26. Gebet.
27. sagte der galante Grimbart.
28. erwiderte. 29. treten sie herein.
30. ich da mache. 31. versehte. 32. deutlich.

33. von außen. 34. wunderschön.
35. zimperlich, spröde.
36. nicht hereinstecken wollen. 37. in.
38. Laube. 39. vorsichtige.
40. daß Sie ihn behalten wollen.
41. wer weiß. 42. brücken.
43. beweisen. 44. thöricht.
45. eitel. 46. wehen.
47. nay more, überdies. 48. wirklich.
49. weg mit. 50. Furcht. 51. krümmen.
52. kommen Sie mir entgegen. 53. scheinbar.
54. schuldloser. 55. liebevoll. 56. Schelm.
57. zu weben. 58. Todtengewebe.
59. Pläne zu schmieden nach. 60. Beute.

LXXX. A Hint¹ to Physicians how² to Acquire² Celebrity.

At Madame C—'s to-day, I made the acquaintance of the celebrated Dr. P—. He is a very interesting old man; and, though infirm³ in body, his mind is as fresh and his vivacity as unimpaired⁴, as if he had not⁵ numbered⁵ forty instead of eighty summers.

I am⁶ partial⁶ to the society of clever⁷ medical men, for⁸ the opportunities⁹ afforded¹⁰ them¹⁰ of becoming¹¹ acquainted¹¹ with human nature, by studying¹² it under all the phases¹³ of illness, convalescence, and on the bed of death, when the real character is exposed¹⁴ unveiled¹⁵ from the motives¹⁶ that so often shadow¹⁷, if not¹⁸ give it a false character¹⁸, in the days of health, render¹⁹ their conversation very interesting.

I have observed, too, that the knowledge of human nature thus²⁰ attained²⁰ neither hardens²¹ the heart nor blunts²² the sensibility²², for⁸ some of the most kind-natured men I ever knew, were also the most skilful²³ physicians and admirable²⁴ surgeons. Among these, is Mr. Guthrie, of London, whose rare²⁵ dexterity²⁶ in his art I have often thought may be in a great²⁷ degree²⁷ attributed²⁸ to this very²⁹ kindness of nature²⁹, which has induced³⁰ him to bestow³¹ a more than usual attention to acquiring³² it, in order to abridge³³ the sufferings³⁴ of his patients.

In operations on the eye, in which he has gained³⁵ such a justly³⁶ merited³⁶ celebrity, I have been told by those from whose eyes he had removed³⁷ cataracts³⁸, that his precision³⁹ and celerity⁴⁰ are so extraordinary as⁴¹ to appear⁴¹ to them little⁴² short of miraculous⁴².

Talking⁴³ on this subject with Dr. P— to-day, he observed, that he considered⁴⁴ strength of mind and kindness of heart indispensable⁴⁵ requisites⁴⁶ to form a surgeon; and that it was a mistake⁴⁷ to suppose that these qualities⁴⁶ had any other than a salutary⁴⁸ influence on his nerves.

"It braces⁴⁹ them, Madame," said he; "for pity⁵⁰ towards the patient induces⁵¹ an operator to perform⁵² his difficult task⁵³ *con amore*, in order to relieve⁵⁴ him."

Dr. P— has nearly lost his voice, and speaks in a low⁵⁵ but distinct whisper⁵⁶. Tall⁵⁷ and thin, with a face pale as marble, but

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Wink für. 2. wie man zu — gelangt.
 3. gebrechlich. 4. unvermindert.
 5. <i>not numbered</i>, erst — durchlebt (gezählt).
 6. ich habe eine Vorliebe. 7. gescheidten.
 8. denn. 9. Gelegenheit.
 10. welche ihnen geboten wird.
 11. bekannt zu werden.
 12. dadurch, daß sie (die Aerzte) dieselbe studieren.
 13. Schattirungen.
 14. bloßgestellt wird. 15. unverschleiert.
 16. Beweggründen. 17. beschatten.
 18. <i>if not give it a false character</i>, und denselben (den Charakter) — nicht selten in ein falsches Licht stellen.
 19. machen. 20. auf diese Weise erworben.
 21. weder — verhärtet.
 22. noch das Gefühl abstumpft.
 23. geschicktesten.</p> | <p>24. bewunderungswürdigsten Wundärzte.
 25. seltene. 26. Geschicklichkeit.
 27. im hohen Grade. 28. zugeschrieben.
 29. <i>very, &c.</i>, Gutmüthigkeit selbst.
 30. veranlaßt. 31. zu schenken.
 32. auf die Aneignung derselben.
 33. abzukürzen. 34. Leiden. 35. sich erworben.
 36. wohl verdiente. 37. entfernt. 38. den Staar.
 39. Bestimmtheit. 40. Schnelligkeit.
 41. <i>as, &c.</i>, daß sie — schienen.
 42. <i>little, &c.</i>, als an das Wunderbare gränzend
 43. als ich — sprach. 44. betrachtete.
 45. unerläßliche. 46. Eigenschaften.
 47. Irrthum. 48. heilsamen. 49. stärkt.
 50. Mitleid gegen. 51. veranlaßt.
 52. vollziehen. 53. Aufgabe.
 54. zu helfen; Linderung zu verschaffen.
 55. leisem. 56. Wispern. 57. groß und mager.</p> |
|---|---|

full of intelligence¹ he looks² when bending³ on his gold-headed⁴ cane⁴, the very *beau idéal* of a physician of *la Vieille Cour*, and he still⁵ retains⁵ the costume of that epoch. His manner, half jest⁶ and half earnest, gives an idea of what⁷ that⁸ of the Philosopher⁹ of Ferney must have been when in a good humour¹⁰, and adds¹¹ piquancy¹² to his narrations. Madame C—, who is an especial favorite of his, and who can draw¹³ him out in conversation better than any one else, in paying¹⁴ him a delicate and well-timed¹⁵ compliment on his celebrity, added¹⁶, that few had ever so well merited it.

“Ah! Madame, celebrity is not always accorded¹⁷ to real merit¹⁸,” said he, smiling. “I have before told Madame, that mine — if I may be permitted to recur¹⁹ to it¹⁹ — was gained²⁰ by an artifice²¹ I had recourse²² to, and without which, I firmly believe I should have remained unknown.”

“No, no! my dear Doctor,” replied Madame C—; “your merit must have, in time, acquired²⁰ you the great fame you²³ enjoy²³.” The Doctor laughed heartily, but persisted²⁴ in denying²⁵ this; and the lady urged²⁶ him, to relate me the plan he had so successfully²⁷ pursued²⁸ in abridging²⁹ his road to Fortune. He seemed flattered by her request, and by my desire³⁰ for his compliance with it³⁰, and commenced as follows: —

I came from the country, Mesdames, with no inconsiderable³¹ claims³² to distinction³³ in my profession. I had studied it *con amore*, and urged³⁴ by the desire that continually haunted³⁵ me of becoming a benefactor to mankind — ay! ladies, and still more anxious³⁶ to relieve³⁷ your fair and gentle sex from those ills³⁸ to which the delicacy of your frames³⁹ and the sensibility of your minds⁴⁰ so peculiarly⁴¹ expose you⁴¹ — I came to Paris with little money and few friends, and those few possessed no power to forward⁴² my interest.

“It is true, they recommended me to such of their acquaintance as⁴³ needed⁴³ advice: but whether, owing to the season’s being⁴⁴ a peculiarly⁴⁵ healthy one⁴⁵, or that the acquaintances of my friends enjoyed⁴⁶ an unusual portion of good health, I was seldom called⁴⁷ on to attend them⁴⁷; and, when I was, the remuneration⁴⁸ offered⁴⁸ was proportioned⁴⁹, not to the relief⁵⁰ afforded⁵⁰, but to the want⁵¹ of fame of him⁵² who⁵³ lent it.

1. Geist. 2. sieht aus. 3. sich stützend.
4. Stocf mit goldenem Knopf.
5. behält immer noch. 6. Scherz. 7. von der.
8. was, die des.
9. *Philosopher of Ferney*: “*Voltaire*.”
10. gut aufgelegt. 11. macht. 12. pikant.
13. *draw him out*, ihn — verlocken.
14. dadurch, daß zu gleicher Zeit als sie — macht.
15. gutangebrachtes. 16. hinzufügte.
17. zugetheilt. 18. Verdienst.
19. davon zu sprechen. 20. erworben.
21. Kunstgriff.
22. zu welchem ich meine Zuflucht nahm.
23. dessen Sie sich erfreuen.
24. beharrte darauf. 25. zu verläugnen. 26. drang in ihn. 27. erfolgreich. 28. angewendet hatte, um. 29. abzukürzen.

30. *desire, &c.*, Wunsch, daß er einwillige.
31. unbedeutende. 32. Ansprüche auf.
33. Auszeichnung. 34. angetrieben.
35. verfolgte, begleitete. 36. eifrig bemüht.
37. zu befreien. 38. Uebeln. 39. Körperbaues.
40. Gemüths.
41. *so peculiarly, &c.*, Sie besonders aussetzen.
42. zu fördern. 43. welche — bedurften.
44. *whether, owing, &c.*, ob es war, daß die Saison, Jahreszeit — war.
45. besonders gesund.
46. sich — erfreuten.
47. *called on, &c.*, zu ärztlichem Beistand gerufen.
48. gegebene Honorar. 49. berechnet.
50. der geleisteten Hülfe gemäß.
51. Mangel. 52. desjenigen.
53. *who lent it*, der dieselbe geleistet hatte.

"My purse diminished¹ even² more rapidly than my hopes, though they, too, began to fade³; and it was with a heavy heart that I took my pen to write home⁴ to those dear friends, who believed that Paris was a second *El Dorado*, where all who sought⁵ — must find — Fortune.

"At length, when one night stretched⁶ on my humble⁷ bed, and sleepless from the cares⁸ that pressed⁹ heavily on my mind, it occurred¹⁰ to me that I must put some plan in action for¹¹ getting myself known¹¹; and one suggested¹² itself, which I next day adopted¹³.

"I changed¹⁴ one of the few remaining *louis d'or* in my purse, and sallying¹⁵ forth¹⁵ into one of the most popular¹⁶ streets, I wrote down the addresses of some of the most respectable-looking¹⁷ houses, and going¹⁸ up to a porter¹⁹, desired²⁰ him to knock at the doors named, and inquire²¹ if the celebrated Doctor P— was there, as his presence was immediately required²² at the hotel of the *Duc de*—.

"I despatched²³ no less than twenty messengers through the different streets on the same errand²⁴, and having²⁵ succeeded²⁵ in persuading²⁶ each that it was of the greatest importance that the celebrated Doctor P— should be found, they persuaded the owners²⁷ of the houses of the same necessity.

"I persevered²⁸ in this system for a few days, and then tried²⁹ its efficacy at night, thinking that, when knocked³⁰ up from their beds³⁰, people would be³¹ sure to be more impressed with³¹ the importance of a doctor in³² such general request³².

"My scheme³³ succeeded. In a few days, I was repeatedly called³⁴ in by various patients, and liberal³⁵ fees³⁶ poured³⁷ into the purse of the celebrated Dr. P—. Unfortunately my practice, although every day multiplying³⁸ even beyond³⁹ my most sanguine⁴⁰ hopes, was entirely confined⁴¹ to the *bourgeoisie*; and though they paid well, my ambition pointed⁴² to higher⁴³ game, and I longed⁴⁴ to feel the pulse of *la haute noblesse*, and to ascertain⁴⁵ if the fine porcelain, of⁴⁶ which I had heard they were formed⁴⁷, was indeed as much superior⁴⁸ to the delf⁴⁹ of which the *bourgeoisie* are⁵⁰ said to be manufactured⁵⁰, as⁵¹ I was led to believe⁵¹.

"Luckily for me, the *femme de chambre* of a grand lady

1. verminderte sich. 2. sogar. 3. schwinden.
4. nach Hause. 5. suchten.*
6. ausgestreckt auf. 7. bescheidenen.
8. Sorgen. 9. drückten, lasteten.
10. kam es mir in den Sinn.
11. for, &c., um mich bekannt zu machen.
12. fiel mir ein. 13. dessen ich mich — bediente.
14. wechselte. 15. begab mich muthig.
16. belebtesten. 17. ansehnlichsten.
18. ging auf — zu. 19. Lohnbedienten.
20. befahl. 21. sich zu erkundigen.
22. nöthig, verlangt. 23. schickte.
24. Botschaft. 25. da es mir gelungen war.
26. zu überreden. 27. Eigenthümer.
28. beharrte. 29. versuchte.
30. knocked up, &c., von ihren Betten aufgeschreckt.

31. be sure, &c., fester überzeugt sein von.
32. in such, &c., welcher in solcher Nachfrage stand. 33. Kunstgriff.
34. gerufen. 35. freigebiges. 36. Honorar.
37. strömte. 38. sich vermehrend.
39. über — hinaus. 40. kühnsten.
41. beschränkt auf. 42. zielte meine — auf.
43. higher game, (edleres Wild), vornehmere Patienten.
44. sehnte mich darnach.
45. mich zu überzeugen ob.
46. of which, woraus. 47. gemacht.
48. vorzüglicher sei, als. 49. Steingut.
50. are said, &c., fabricirt sein soll (s. Reg. II. S. 477 d. Grammatik).
51. as I was, &c., wie man mich hat glauben machen wollen.

fancied¹ herself ill¹, mentioned² the fancy² to her friend, who was one of my patients, and who instantly advised her to consult the celebrated Dr. P—, adding³ a lively account⁴ of the extent⁵ of my practice⁶ and the great request⁷ I was in.

“The *femme de chambre* consulted me, described symptoms enough to baffle⁸ all the schools of medicine in France, so various⁹ and contradictory¹⁰ were they; and I, discovering that she¹¹ had really nothing the matter with her¹¹, advised what I knew would be very palatable¹² to her, — namely, a very nutritious¹³ *regime*¹⁴, as much air and amusement as was possible in her position¹⁵, and gave her a prescription¹⁶ for some gentle¹⁷ medicine, to prevent¹⁸ any evil effect from the luxurious fare¹⁹ I had recommended.

“I was²⁰ half tempted²⁰ to refuse²¹, the fee²² she slipped into my hand, but I recollected that people never value²³ what they get for²⁴ nothing, and so I pocketed²⁵ it.

“In a few days, I was sent²⁶ for²⁶ to the Hotel — to attend²⁷ the *Duchesse de* — the mistress of the said *femme de chambre*. This was an event²⁸ beyond²⁹ my hopes, and I determined to profit by³⁰ it. I found the Duchess suffering³¹ under³¹ a malady³² — if malady it could be called³³ — to which³⁴ I have since discovered, grand ladies are peculiarly³⁵ subject³⁵; namely, a superfluity of *embonpoint*³⁶, occasioned by luxurious habits³⁷ and the want³⁸ of exercise³⁹.

“I am very much⁴⁰ indisposed⁴⁰, Doctor,” lisped⁴¹ the lady, “and your prescription¹⁶ has done my *femme de chambre* so much good, that I determined to send for you. I am so very ill⁴⁰, that I am⁴² fast losing my shape⁴²; my face, too, is no longer the same; and my feet and hands are not to be⁴³ recognized⁴³.”

“I drew⁴⁴ out my watch, felt her pulse, looked⁴⁵ grave⁴⁵, inquired⁴⁶ — though it was useless, her *embonpoint*³⁶ having⁴⁷ revealed it⁴⁷ — what were her general habits³⁷ and *regime*¹⁴; and then having written a prescription¹⁶, urged⁴⁸ the necessity of her abandoning⁴⁹ *café au lait*, rich *consommés*, and high-seasoned⁵⁰ *entrées*⁵¹; recommended early⁵² rising⁵² and constant exercise³⁹; and promised that a strict⁵³ attention to my advice would soon restore⁵⁴ her health, and with⁵⁵ it her shape⁵⁶.

1. fancied, &c., bildete sich ein, daß sie krank sei.

2. erwähnte ihre vermeinte Krankheit.

3. hinzufügend. 4. Bericht. 5. Größe.

6. Praxis.

7. request I was in, Nachfrage nach mir.

8. verwirren. 9. verschieden.

10. widersprechend.

11. she had, &c., daß ihr wirklich nichts fehlte.

12. angenehm.

13. nahrhafte. 14. Diät.

15. Lage. 16. Recept. 17. leichte.

18. vorzubeugen. 19. Kost, welche.

20. was, &c., kam halb in Versuchung.

21. nicht anzunehmen. 22. Honorar, welches sie — hingeleiten ließ. 23. schätzen. 24. umsonst.

25. steckte ich es ein.

26. geholt. 27. Beistand — zu leisten.

28. Begebenheit. 29. über alle.

30. by it, davon. 31. leidend an.

32. Krankheit. 33. genannt.

34. welcher, wie.

35. besonders unterworfen.

36. Wohlbeleibtheit. 37. Lebensweise.

38. Mangel an. 39. Bewegung.

40. sehr unwohl. 41. lispete.

42. am fast, &c., auf einmal ganz unförmlich werde. 43. zu erkennen.

44. zog* — heraus.

45. machte ein ernstes Gesicht.

46. erkundigte mich.

47. having, &c., da — mir sagte.

48. drang ich auf — daß sie. 49. aufgabe.

50. starkgewürzten. 51. Zwischengerichte.

52. das Frühaufstehen. 53. genaue.

54. wiederherstellen. 55. auch damit.

56. ihre frühere schöne Gestalt.

"I was¹ told to call² every day until further orders; and I, pleading³ the excess of occupation³ which would render⁴ my daily visits to her so difficult⁴, consented to make them⁵, only⁶ on condition⁷ that my fair patient was⁸ to walk⁹ with me every day six times round the garden of her hotel; for I guessed¹⁰ she was too indolent to persevere¹¹ in taking¹² exercise, if left to herself.

"The system I pursued¹³ with her succeeded¹⁴ perfectly. I was then a very active¹⁵ man, and I walked so fast that I left the Duchess every day, when our promenade ended, bathed¹⁶ in a copious¹⁷ perspiration¹⁸; which, aided¹⁹ by the medicine and sparing²⁰ *regime*, soon²¹ restored her figure²¹ to its former symmetry.

"At her hotel, I daily met²² ladies of the highest rank and distinction, many of whom were²³ suffering²³ from a similar cause, the same annoyance²⁴ for which the Duchess consulted me; and I then discovered that there is no malady, however²⁵ grave²⁵, so distressing²⁶ to your sex²⁷, ladies, or for the²⁸ cure of which² they are so willing to submit²⁹ to the most disagreeable *regime*, as for aught³⁰ that impairs³¹ their personal beauty.

"When her female friends saw the improvement³² effected in the appearance³³ of the Duchess by my treatment³⁴, I was consulted by them all, and my fame and fortune rapidly increased³⁵. I³⁶ was proclaimed to be³⁶ the most wonderful physician, and to have³⁷ effected³⁷ the most extraordinary cures; when, in truth, I only consulted Nature, and aided³⁸ her efforts³⁹.

"Shortly after this period, a grand lady, an acquaintance of one of my many patients among the *noblesse*, consulted me; and here the case was wholly⁴⁰ different *to*⁴¹ that of the *Duchesse*, for this lady had grown⁴² so thin that wrinkles⁴³ — those most frightful of all symptoms of decaying⁴⁴ beauty — had⁴⁵ made their appearance⁴⁵. My new patient told me that, hearing⁴⁶ that hitherto⁴⁷ my great celebrity had⁴⁸ been acquired⁴⁸ by the cure⁴⁹ of obesity⁵⁰, she feared it was useless to consult me about⁵¹ a disease of so opposite⁵² a nature, but even⁵³ still⁵³ more distressing⁵⁴.

"I inquired into⁵⁵ her habits and *regime*. Found that she took⁵⁶ violent exercise⁵⁶; was abstemious⁵⁷ at table; drank strong green tea and coffee without cream or milk; disliked⁵⁸ nutritious food⁵⁹; and, though she sat⁶⁰ up late, was an early riser⁶⁰.

1. *I was told*, man sagte mir.

2. *to call*, daß ich — kommen sollte.

3. *I pleading, &c.*, ich, indem ich vorgab, daß ich so sehr in Anspruch genommen sei.

4. *render, &c.*, daß es schwierig sein würde, sie täglich zu besuchen. 5. es zu thun. 6. bloß.

7. unter der Bedingung. 8. sollte. 9. gehen.

10. vermuthete, daß. 11. darin zu beharren.

12. sich — zu machen. 13. verfolgte. 14. gelang.

15. hurtiger. 16. gebadet. 17. tüchtigen.

18. Schweiß. 19. unterstützt. 20. mageren.

21. *soon, &c.*, verließ ihrer Figur bald — wieder.

22. traf. 23. litten. 24. Plage.

25. wie gefährlich auch immer. 26. schrecklich.

27. Geschlecht. 28. *the cure, &c.*, deren Kur.

29. sich — zu unterwerfen.

30. für die Kur irgend einer Krankheit, welche.

31. beeinträchtigt. 32. Besserung. 33. Aussehen.

34. Behandlung. 35. vermehrten sich.

36. *I was, &c.*, man rühmte mich als.

37. daß ich — gemacht hatte. 38. unterstützte.

39. Anstrengungen. 40. ganz.

41. Statt "*to*" sollte es hier "*from*" heißen (siehe D. S. 442 u. Anmerk. 44 b. S. 441 d. Gramm.)

42. geworden. 43. Runzeln. 44. hinweisenden.

45. *had, &c.*, sich gezeigt hatten.

46. da sie gehört hatte. 47. bisher.

48. erworben sei. 49. durch das Kurieren.

50. Wohlbeleibtheit, so. 51. wegen.

52. entgegengesetzter. 53. doch noch.

54. schrecklicher. 55. nach.

56. zu viel Bewegung machte. 57. enthaltjam.

58. mochte keine. 59. Speisen.

60. sich spät zu Bette legte, stand sie früh auf.

"I ordered¹ her the frequent use² of warm baths, and to³ take all that I had prohibited⁴ the Duchess; permitted only gentle⁵ exercise in a carriage; and, in⁶ short⁶, soon⁷ succeeded⁷ in rendering⁸ the thin lady plump⁹ and rosy¹⁰, to the great joy of herself, and to the wonder of her friends.

"This treatment¹¹, which was only¹² what¹² any one possessed¹³ of common sense¹³ would have prescribed¹⁴ in such a case, extended¹⁵ my fame far and wide. Fat and thin ladies flocked¹⁶ to me for advice, and not only liberally rewarded¹⁷ the success of my system, but sounded¹⁸ my praises¹⁹ in all quarters.

"I became the Doctor *à la mode*, soon amassed²⁰ an independence²⁰, and, though not without a confidence in my own skill²¹ — for I have never lost any opportunity of improvement²² in my profession²² — I must confess that I still²³ retain the conviction²³ that the celebrated Doctor P— would have had little chance²⁴, at least for many years, of acquiring²⁵ either²⁵ fame or wealth, had he not employed²⁶ the means²⁷ I have confessed²⁸ to you, ladies."

I cannot do²⁹ justice²⁹ to this *spirituel* old man's mode³⁰ of telling³¹ the story, or describe the fineness³² of his arch³³ smile while recounting³⁴ it.

The Countess of Blessington.

1. What render the conversation of medical men interesting?

2. Who were the most kind-natured men the Countess of B— ever knew?

3. What are indispensable requisites to form a surgeon?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 120.

4. To what is celebrity not always accorded?

5. With what did the Doctor come from the country?

6. To whom was the Doctor recommended by his friends, and what was the consequence?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 121.

7. What diminished? — 8. What occurred to him as he lay on his bed?

9. What did the Doctor change, and what did he do afterwards?

10. What did he despatch? — 11. Did the scheme succeed?

12. What did the Doctor long for, and what did he wish to ascertain?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 122.

13. What did he advise the *femme de chambre*, and what was he half tempted to do?

14. Under what malady was the *Duchesse* suffering?

15. What did the Doctor urge her to abandon, and what did he recommend?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 123.

16. On what conditions did the Doctor consent to pay a visit every day?

17. Whom did he meet at her hotel, and what did he discover?

18. Describe the thin *Duchesse*. — 19. What did she tell the Doctor?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 124.

20. What did he order, and what was the consequence?

21. What did Doctor P— become, and what did he amass?

22. What does he confess that he still retains?

1. verordnete. 2. Gebrauch.
3. daß sie — nehmen sollte. 4. verboten.
5. leichte. 6. mit einem Wort.
7. bald gelang es mir. 8. herzustellen.
9. wohlgenährt. 10. blühend.
11. Behandlungsweise.
12. bloß die war, welche.
13. *possessed of*, &c., der nur gewöhnlichen Menschenverstand besaß. 14. verordnet.
15. verbreitet. 16. kamen schaarenweise.
17. belohnten sie. 18. posaunten. 19. lob.

20. *amassed*, &c., häufte ich Geld genug zusammen, um mich unabhängig zu machen.
21. Geschicklichkeit.
22. *of improvement*, &c., mich in meinem Berufe zu vervollkommen.
23. *still retain*, &c., ich immer noch fest überzeugt bin. 24. Hoffnung. 25. zu erlangen.
26. angewendet. 27. die Mittel, welche.
28. gerade erzählt habe. 29. Gerechtigkeit thun.
30. Art. 31. zu erzählen. 32. Feinheit.
33. schalkhaften. 34. er es erzählte.

LXXXI. On Ghosts¹.

Dr. Fowler, bishop of Gloucester, in² the early part² of the eighteenth century, was³ a believer in apparitions³. The following conversation of the Bishop with Judge⁵ Powel is recorded⁴:

"Since I saw you," said the lawyer⁵, "I have had ocular⁶ demonstration⁷ of the existence⁸ of nocturnal apparitions."

"I am glad you⁹ are become a convert to truth⁹; but do you say actual¹⁰ ocular demonstration? Let me know the particulars¹¹ of the story."

"My Lord, I will. It was, let me see, last Thursday night, between the hours of eleven and twelve, but nearer the latter than the former, as I lay sleeping¹² in my bed, I was suddenly awakened¹³ by an uncommon noise¹⁴, and heard something coming¹⁵ up stairs¹⁵ and stalking¹⁶ directly towards my room; the door flying¹⁷ open, I drew¹⁸ back¹⁹ my curtain¹⁹, and saw a faint²⁰ glimmering²¹ light enter²² my chamber."

"Of a blue colour no doubt."

"The light was of a pale²³ blue, my lord, and followed by a tall²⁴ meagre²⁵ personage, his locks hoary²⁶ with age²⁶, and clothed²⁷ in a long loose²⁸ gown²⁹, a leathern girdle³⁰ was about his loins³¹, his beard thick and grisly³², a large fur³³ cap³³ on his head, and a long staff in his hand. Struck³⁴ with astonishment, I remained for some time motionless³⁵ and silent; the figure advanced³⁶, staring³⁷ me full in the face³⁷: I then said, Whence and what art thou?"

"What was the answer — tell me — what was the answer?"

"The following was the answer I received: — I am watchman³⁸ of the night³⁸, an't³⁹ please your honour³⁹, and made⁴⁰ bold⁴⁰ to come up stairs to inform the family of⁴¹ their street door's being⁴² open, and that if it were not soon shut⁴³, they would probably be robbed before morning."

1. What was Dr. Fowler? — 2. What did Judge Powel say?

3. Of what was the bishop glad and what did he beg Judge P. to let him know?

4. By what was the judge awaked, and what did he hear and see?

5. Describe the light and the apparition. — 6. What was the answer?

1. über Gespenster. 2. *in the, &c.*, im Anfang.
3. *was a, &c.*, glaubte an Geistererscheinungen.
4. wird wie folgt erzählt. 5. Richter.
6. augenscheinliche. 7. Beweise.
8. *of the existence, &c.*, daß es nächtliche Erscheinungen gibt.
9. *you are become, &c.*, daß Sie zur Wahrheit bekehrt sind. 10. wirkliche.
11. die Einzelheiten. 12. schlafend.
13. aufgeweckt. 14. Lärm.
15. *coming up, &c.*, die Treppe heraufkommen.
16. mit großen Schritten — zuschreitend.
17. flog auf. 18. ich zog.*

19. meinen Bettvorhang zurück. 20. schwaches.
21. schimmerndes. 22. in — hereinkommen.
23. blassen. 24. großen. 25. mager.
26. grau vor Alter. 27. gekleidet.
28. weiten. 29. Gewand. 30. Gürtel.
31. Lenden. 32. graulich. 33. Pelzmütze.
34. erstarrt vor. 35. regungslos.
36. näherte sich.
37. *staring, &c.*, mir fest ins Gesicht starrend.
38. der Nachtwächter.
39. *an't, &c.*, Euer Gnaden zu dienen.
40. ich bin so frei gewesen. 41. daß. 42. sei.
43. zugemacht.

F. Orations¹ and Harangues (harangs)¹.

LXXXII. General Wolfe to his Army before Quebec, 1759.

I congratulate you, my brave countrymen and fellow-soldiers², on the spirit³ and success⁴ with which you have executed⁵ this important part of our enterprise⁶. The formidable⁷ heights⁸ of Abraham are now surmounted⁹, and the city of Quebec, the object¹⁰ of all our toils¹¹, now stands in full view¹² before you. A perfidious¹³ enemy, who have dared¹⁴ to exasperate¹⁵ you by their cruelties, but¹⁶ not to oppose¹⁶ you on equal¹⁷, ground¹⁷, are now constrained¹⁸ to face¹⁹ you on the open plain²⁰, without ramparts²¹ or entrenchments²² to shelter²³ them.

You know too well the forces²⁴ that²⁵ compose²⁵ their army, to dread their superior²⁶ numbers. A few regular troops from old France, weakened²⁷ by hunger and sickness, who, when fresh, were unable²⁸ to withstand²⁹ British soldiers, are their general's chief dependence³⁰. Those numerous companies of Canadians, insolent, mutinous³¹, unsteady³², and ill-disciplined, have exercised³³ his utmost³⁴ skill³⁴ to keep them together³⁵ to this time; and as soon as their irregular ardour³⁶ is damped by one firm fire, they will instantly turn³⁷ their backs³⁷, and give you no further trouble¹¹ except³⁸ in the pursuit³⁸. As for those savage³⁹ tribes⁴⁰ of Indians, whose horrid yells⁴¹ in the forests have struck⁴² many a bold⁴³ heart with affright⁴², terrible as they are with the tomahawk and scalping-knife⁴⁴ to⁴⁵ a flying and prostrate⁴⁶ foe⁴⁷, you have experienced⁴⁸ how little their ferocity⁴⁹ is to be⁵⁰ dreaded⁵⁰ by resolute men upon fair⁵¹ and open ground: you can now only consider them as the just objects⁵² of a severe revenge⁵³ for the unhappy fate⁵⁴ of many slaughtered⁵⁵ countrymen.

1. Ein "Oration" ist eine feierliche durchdachte öffentliche Rede; ein "Harangue" dagegen ist eine nicht durchdachte, meistens aber eine stürmische, deklamatorische, aufmunternde Rede.
2. Kriegs-Kameraden.
3. Muth. 4. Erfolg. 5. vollführt.
6. Unternehmens. 7. furchtbaren.
8. Anhöhen. 9. überstiegen. 10. Ziel.
11. Mühen. 12. Ansicht. 13. treuloher.
14. sich erkühnt. 15. erbittern.
16. *but, &c.*, — welcher aber es nicht wagte, Euch — zu begegnen.
17. gleichem Fuße. 18. gezwungen.
19. zu treffen. 20. Ebene. 21. Brustwehr.
22. Verschanzungen. 23. sich zu schützen.
24. Streitkräfte. 25. woraus — besteht als.

26. größere. 27. geschwächt. 28. unfähig.
29. widerstehen. 30. Hoffnung.
31. aufrehrerisch. 32. wankelmüthig.
33. auf die Probe gestellt.
34. höchste Geschicklichkeit.
35. zusammenzuhalten.
36. Muth. 37. den Rücken zeigen.
38. *but, &c.*, außer um sie zu verfolgen.
39. wilden. 40. Stämme. 41. Geheul.
42. *struck with affright*, Furcht eingejagt.
43. tapferes. 44. Skalpmesser. 45. gegen.
46. geschlagenen. 47. Feind. 48. erfahren.
49. Wildheit, Wuth. 50. zu befürchten.
51. gleichen. 52. Gegenstände. 53. Rache.
54. Schicksal.
55. ermordeten, niedergemezelt.

This day puts¹ it into your power² to terminate the fatigues³ of a siege⁴, which has so long employed⁵ your courage and patience. Possessed⁶ with a full confidence⁷ of the certain success⁸ which British valour must gain⁹ over such enemies, I have led¹⁰ you up these steep¹¹ and dangerous rocks¹², only¹³ solicitous¹³ to show¹⁴ you the foe within¹⁵ your reach. The impossibility of a retreat¹⁶ makes no difference in the situation¹⁷ of men resolved to conquer or die: and believe me, my friends, if the conquest could be bought¹⁸ with the blood of your general, he would most cheerfully¹⁹ resign²⁰ a life which he has long devoted²¹ to his country*. *Aikin.*

1. On what did General Wolfe congratulate his fellow-soldiers?

2. Describe the numerous companies of Canadians.

3. What were the British soldiers to consider the Indians?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 127.

4. What is put into their Power? — What does the impossibility of retreat make?

6. What did General Wolfe say he would most cheerfully resign, and for what?

LXXXIII. Lord Chatham to the British House of Peers:

in reply²² to Lord Suffolk, Secretary of State, who had asserted²³ that the employment²⁴ of Indians in the War against the British Americans, besides²⁵ its policy²⁶ and necessity, was allowable²⁷ on the principle²⁸, that it was perfectly²⁹ justifiable²⁹ to use³⁰ all means which God and Nature had put³¹ into our hands.

I am astonished, I am shocked³² to hear such principles confessed³³; to hear them avowed³⁴ in this house, or even in this country. My Lords, I did not intend to have encroached³⁵ again on your attention, but I cannot repress³⁶ my indignation. I feel myself impelled³⁷ to speak. My Lords, we³⁸ are called upon as members of this house, as men, as Christians, to protest against such horrible barbarity³⁹. "That God and Nature have put into our hands!" What ideas of God and Nature that noble lord may entertain⁴⁰, I know not; but I know that such detestable principles are equally⁴¹ abhorrent⁴² to religion and humanity. What! to attribute⁴³ the sacred sanction⁴⁴ of God and Nature to the massacres⁴⁵ of the Indian scalping-knife⁴⁶! to the Cannibal torturing⁴⁷,

* General Wolfe, like Nelson, died in the moment of victory. Just as the city of Quebec was taken on 13th Sept. 1756, he received a ball in the wrist and another in the body which obliged him to be carried to the rear. There, while in the agonies of death, being roused by the sound of "They run!" he eagerly asked "Who run?" and being told the French, he exclaimed, "I thank God and die contented." *J. S. S. R.*

1. stellt. 2. Macht. 3. Beschwerden.
4. Belagerung. 5. in Anspruch genommen.
6. erfüllt von. 7. Ueberzeugung.
8. Erfolgs. 9. erringen.
10. led up, hinauf geführt. 11. steilen.
12. Felsen. 13. und war bloß darauf bedacht.
14. zu zeigen.
15. within your reach, in Eurem Bereich.
16. Rückzug. 17. Lage. 18. erkaufte werden.
19. freudig. 20. verzichten auf. 21. geweiht.
22. Erwiderung auf. 23. behauptet.
24. Anwendung. 25. außer. 26. Staatsklugheit

27. zulässig. 28. unter dem Grundsatz.
29. vollkommen zu rechtfertigen.
30. zu gebrauchen. 31. gelegt.
32. erschrocken. 33. daß man sich zu — bekenne.
34. daß man dieselben gestehe, anerkenne.
35. in Anspruch zu nehmen.
36. unterdrücken. 37. angetrieben.
38. we are called upon, es ist unsere Pflicht.
39. Grausamkeit. 40. hegen. 41. gleich.
42. unverträglich mit. 43. beizumessen.
44. Verordnung, Genehmigung. 45. Missetheilen.
46. Skalpmessers. 47. quälend.

murdering, devouring¹, drinking the blood of his mangled² victims! Such notions³ shock⁴ every precept⁵ of morality, every feeling of humanity, every sentiment⁶ of honour. These abominable⁷ principles, and this more abominable avowal⁸ of them⁸, demand⁹ the most decisive¹⁰ indignation¹¹. I call¹² upon that right reverend¹³, and this most learned¹⁴ bench¹⁵, to vindicate¹⁶ the religion of their God, to support¹⁷ the justice¹⁸ of their country. I call upon the bishops to interpose¹⁹ the unsullied²⁰ sanctity²¹ of their lawn²²; — upon the judges to interpose the purity²³ of their ermine²⁴; — to save us from pollution²⁵. I call upon the honour of your lordships to reverence²⁶ the dignity of your ancestors, and to maintain²⁷ your own. I call upon the spirit²⁸ and humanity of my country, to vindicate¹⁶ the national character. I invoke²⁹ the genius of the constitution. From the tapestry³⁰ that adorns³¹ these walls, the immortal ancestor³² of this noble lord frowns³³ with indignation at³⁴ the disgrace³⁵ of his country. In vain³⁶ did he defend the liberty and establish³⁷ the religion of Britain against all enemies, if these worse³⁸ than inquisitorial³⁹ cruelties are endured⁴⁰ among us. To send⁴¹ forth⁴¹ the merciless⁴² cannibal thirsting for blood! — against whom? — your Protestant brethren? to lay⁴³ waste⁴³ their country, to desolate⁴⁴ their dwellings, to extirpate⁴⁵ their race and name by the aid⁴⁶ and instrumentality⁴⁷ of these horrible hell-hounds of war! Spain can no longer boast⁴⁸ preeminence⁴⁸ in barbarity. She armed⁴⁹ herself with blood-hounds to extirpate the wretched⁵⁰ natives of Mexico; but we, more ruthless⁵¹, loose⁵² the dogs of war against our countrymen in America, endeared⁵³ to us by every tie⁵⁴ that should sanctify⁵⁵ humanity. My Lords, I am old and weak, and unable⁵⁶ to say more; but my feelings and indignation were too strong to say⁵⁷ less. I could not have slept⁵⁸ this night in my bed, nor⁵⁹ reposed⁶⁰ my head upon my pillow, without giving⁶¹ vent to my eternal abhorrence⁶² of such enormous⁶³ and preposterous⁶⁴ principles.

1. At what was Lord Chatham astonished?
2. What could he not repress?
3. What were the Lords called upon to do?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 128.

1. verschlingend. 2. verstümmelten.
3. Ideen. 4. beleidigen, verstoßen gegen.
5. Lehre. 6. Grundsatz.
7. verabscheuungswürdigen.
8. Bekenntung derselben.
9. fordern. 10. entschiedenste.
11. Entrüstung. 12. fordere — auf.
13. ehrwürdige. 14. gelehrte.
15. Versammlung.
16. zu rechtfertigen, vertheidigen.
17. zu unterstützen. 18. Gerechtigkeit.
19. mit — ins Mittel zu treten.
20. unbefleckte. 21. Heiligkeit.
22. Gewandes.
23. Reinheit. 24. Hermelins.
25. Entehrung. 26. zu ehren.
27. aufrecht zu erhalten.
28. Geist, Gemeinfinn.
29. beschwöre.

30. Tapeten. 31. schmücken. 32. Ahnherr.
33. blickt — mit Entrüstung herab. 34. auf.
35. Schande. 36. umsonst. 37. befestigt.
38. schlechter. 39. inquisitorischen.
40. geduldet. 41. auszuschießen.
42. unbarmherzigen. 43. verwüsten.
44. veröden. 45. zu vertilgen.
46. Hülfe. 47. Mitwirkung.
48. sich des Vorrangs rühmen.
49. bewaffnete sich. 50. elenden.
51. grausamer. 52. lassen — los.
53. theuer sind.
54. Band. 55. heiligen.
56. nicht im Stande.
57. als daß ich weniger sagen konnte.
58. schlafen.* 59. noch. 60. ruhen.
61. giving vent to, Luft zu machen.
62. Abscheu vor. 63. ungeheueren.
64. verkehrten.

4. What did Lord Chatham call upon the learned bench to vindicate?
5. And what were the Bishops, and what the judges called upon to do?
6. Who frowns from the tapestry, and what did he defend in vain?
7. Of what can Spain no longer boast?

NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 129.

LXXXIV. Queen Elizabeth to her Forces¹ at Tilbury in 1588.

My loving people; We² have been persuaded² by some that are careful³ of our safety, to take⁴ heed⁴ how we commit⁵ ourself to armed⁶ multitudes⁷, for⁸ fear of treachery⁹; but I assure you, I do not desire to live to distrust¹⁰ my faithful and loving people. Let¹¹ tyrants fear: I have always so behaved¹² myself, that, under¹³ God, I have placed¹⁴ my chief¹⁵ strength and safeguard¹⁶ in the loyal hearts and good will of my subjects. And therefore, I am come among you at this time, not for my recreation or sport¹⁷, but¹⁸ being resolved¹⁸ in the midst and heat of the battle¹⁹, to live or die among you all; and to lay down for my God, and for my kingdom, and for my people, my honour and my blood — even²⁰ in the dust. I know I have but the body of a weak²¹ and feeble²² woman; but I have the heart of a king, and a king of England too; and think²³ foul scorn that Parma, or Spain, or any prince of Europe, should dare²⁴ to invade²⁵ the borders²⁶ of my realms²⁷; to which²⁸, rather than²⁸ any dishonour should grow²⁹ by me, I myself will take³⁰ up arms³⁰, I myself will be your general, your judge, and the rewarder³¹ of every one of your virtues in the field. I know already, by your forwardness³², that you have deserved³³ rewards and crowns; and we do assure you, on the word of a prince, they shall be duly³⁴ paid³⁵ you. In the mean time, my lieutenant-general (lifenent-ſſchenn'rl) shall be in my stead³⁶, than whom³⁷ never prince commanded more noble and worthy subject; nor³⁸ do I doubt, by your obedience³⁹ to my general, by your concord⁴⁰ in the camp⁴¹ and your valour in the field, we shall shortly⁴² have⁴³ a famous victory over the enemies of my God, my kingdom, and my people.

English History.

1. What did Queen Elizabeth assure her people?
2. In whom did she place her strength? — 3. Why did she come among her troops?
4. What body and what heart had she? — 5. Of what did she think foul scorn?
6. What did she already know? — 7. Over whom did she soon hope to have a victory?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Truppen. 2. es ist uns — angerathen. | 24. sich erdreisten. |
| 3. um — besorgt. 4. uns in Acht zu nehmen. | 25. einen Einfall zu machen. 26. Grenzen. |
| 5. anvertrauen. 6. bewaffneten. 7. Menge. | 27. Reiches. |
| 8. aus. 9. Verrätherei, Hinterlist. | 28. und eher als daß — demselben. |
| 10. um — zu mißtrauen. 11. mögen. | 29. entstehen. 30. zu den Waffen greifen. |
| 12. so benommen. 13. nach. | 31. Belohner. 32. Eifer. 33. verdient. |
| 14. ich — gesetzt habe. 15. Hauptmacht. | 34. gebührend. 35. bezahlt. |
| 16. Schutz, Schirm. 17. Zeitvertreib. | 36. Stelle vertreten. |
| 18. but &c., sondern weil ich entschlossen bin. | 37. than whom never, und nie — als er. |
| 19. Kampfes. 20. sogar. 21. schwachen. | 38. nor, &c., auch zweifle ich nicht, daß. |
| 22. gebrechlichen. | 39. Gehorsam gegen. 40. Eintracht. |
| 23. think foul scorn, verschmähe es. | 41. Lager. 42. bald. 43. erringen. |

G. Narrative, Pathetic, and other Pieces.

LXXXV. The Sedar¹, and Leopard Hunt².

I received a letter addressed to me at Calcutta, from a friend at Berhampore, stating³ that several robberies⁴ had taken⁵ place⁵ in my household⁶ during my absence, and that my sedar-bearer¹, on whom I could rely⁷, had begged of my friend to write to me to return⁸ as soon as possible.

This information reached⁹ me as I lay on my couch¹⁰, completely worn¹¹ with the fatigues of the day previous¹²; for I had been with some brother-officers¹³ to Barrakpore, to see a hunt by¹⁴ leopards — a sight¹⁵ the most curious that I ever beheld¹⁶ in India. These animals are so tame, that they range¹⁷ at large¹⁷, and actually sleep beside¹⁸ their keeper¹⁹. This I can vouch²⁰ for²⁰, as I have seen it. They protect²¹ him with the same fidelity that a dog would defend²² his master, if any stranger should approach²³ him during his slumbers. This I particularly know, as I unfortunately went to awake him, unaware²⁴ of his faithful guardians²⁵, and nearly paid the penalty²⁶ of my folly. The keeper¹⁹, however, started²⁷ up, and called²⁸ them off²⁸. They obeyed with the docility²⁹ of domestic³⁰ animals³⁰, and fell³¹ behind³¹ at³² his word of command³². They belong, I believe, to the Governor-General for³³ the time being, and are kept³⁴ in the park of the government house. It was here that I saw them run³⁵ down a deer. Never in my life have I beheld¹⁶ any thing so graceful as their movements, or so rapid³⁶ as their speed³⁷. Considerably swifter³⁸ than greyhounds³⁹, they bounded along, and soon brought⁴⁰ down⁴⁰ their game⁴¹. Fatigued with the excitement⁴² of this beautiful sport⁴³, I returned to Calcutta, and, as I have mentioned, was lying on my couch when the information, conveyed⁴⁴ by my friend at Berhampore, arrived. No time, however, was to be⁴⁵ lost⁴⁵; so starting²⁷ up, I ordered my palanquin to be⁴⁶ brought⁴⁶, determined⁴⁷ on travelling⁴⁸ up the one hundred and sixteen miles by bearers⁴⁹. This mode of proceeding⁵⁰ may appear strange⁵¹ to Europeans, who will scarcely believe the rapidity with

1. indischer Kammerdiener.
2. Jagd. 3. mich benachrichtigend.
4. Diebstähle. 5. stattgefunden. 6. Hause.
7. verlassen. 8. zurückzukehren.
9. gelangte zu mir, empfing ich.
10. Ruhebett. 11. abgemattet. 12. vorher.
13. Waffenbrüder. 14. mit. 15. Anblick.
16. gesehen* hatte.
17. range, &c., frei herumlaufen.
18. an der Seite. 19. Jägers, Hüters.
20. verbürgen. 21. schützen. 22. vertheidigen.
23. nähern. 24. unbewußt. 25. Beschützer.
26. Strafe. 27. sprang auf. 28. rief sie weg.

29. Gelehrigkeit. 30. Hausthiere.
31. zogen* sich hinter ihm zurück.
32. at his, &c., auf sein Geheiß.
33. for the time being, zeitweiligen.
34. gehalten. 35. run down, fangen.
36. rasch, flink. 37. Schnelligkeit.
38. flüchtiger. 39. Windspiele.
40. fingen sie. 41. Beute. 42. Aufregung.
43. Jagd. 44. mitgetheilt.
45. zu verlieren. 46. daß man — bringe..
47. da ich entschlossen war.
48. zurückzulegen. 49. mittelst Träger.
50. zu reisen. 51. sonderbar.

which such a journey is accomplished¹. By² the river, on account of the current³, seven days are required⁴ to arrive at Berhampore; by land, it only takes twenty-eight hours. The bearers, like post-horses, are relieved⁵ every twelve or fifteen miles. Each relay⁶ consists of eight men, who shift⁷ the burden to each other⁷ at the end of about every league⁸. The others trot⁹ alongside¹⁰ to rest themselves, the whole party singing and jolting¹¹ on at¹² the rate of about four miles and a half an hour. During the night the disengaged¹³ bearers carry torches¹⁴, to scare¹⁵ away the wild beasts. The fire-flies¹⁶ buzzing¹⁷ about, like innumerable stars, add¹⁸ to the beauty of the picture, and render¹⁹ this scene most romantic and picturesque (malerisch); though I must confess the uneasy²⁰ motion, the broiling²¹ of the sun in this luxurious, coffin-like²² conveyance²³, and the fear of a voracious²⁴ tiger, or other savage monster, take away²⁵, in my opinion, all the charms²⁶ which would otherwise²⁷ gild²⁸ this mode of travelling²⁹.

At day-break on the second morning, (for I had halted³⁰ a few hours at Aghardeep,) I arrived in the cantonments³¹, and entered my house, which stood in an extensive³² barrack-square³³.

After³⁴ breakfasting most luxuriously on Bombay ducks (a small salt fish, something like³⁵ the European caplin,) the sable fish, (closely resembling³⁵ our salmon), and snipes³⁶, which are here far more plentiful than sparrows³⁷ in England, I secretly sent³⁸ for the WISE MAN of the place to come³⁹ and discover the thief; then, ordering the servants to fall in⁴⁰, in a row⁴⁰, under the verandah⁴¹, I quietly and confidently awaited his arrival. I had often seen his powers⁴² tested⁴³, and never knew them fail. I am⁴⁴ aware⁴⁴ that my countrymen will smile at my credulity⁴⁵; but, as I have the conviction⁴⁶ from personal and constant observation⁴⁷, I do not hesitate⁴⁸ to assert, that his manner of discovering⁴⁹ crime, though the simplest, was the most wonderful that I ever beheld⁵⁰. The present instance⁵¹ served to strengthen my belief.

In every bazaar or village in India there exists a *wise man*, a sort of half-priest, half-conjurer⁵², who predicts⁵³ events, tells⁵⁴ fortunes⁵⁴, secures families, and discovers crimes⁵⁵. These individuals are looked⁵⁶ upon with great⁵⁷ awe⁵⁷ by the natives, and are often found useful in the last⁵⁸ instance by Europeans.

1. gemacht. 2. zu Wasser.
3. Strömung. 4. erforderlich. 5. abgelöst.
6. Ablösung, Relai.
7. shift, &c., die Last mit einander abwechseln.
8. Poststunde. 9. traben.
10. nebenher. 11. vorwärts marschierend.
12. at the rate of about, durchschnittlich ungefähr.
13. freien. 14. Jackeln. 15. zu verschrecken.
16. Johanniskäfer. 17. summend. 18. erhöhen.
19. machen. 20. unbehagliche.
21. das Braten. 22. fargähnlichen.
23. Fuhrwerk. 24. freßgierigen. 25. benimmt.
26. Reize. 27. sonst. 28. so schön machen würde.
29. diese Art zu reisen. 30. Halt gemacht.
31. Kantonen. 32. großen. 33. Kasernenplatz.
34. nachdem ich ein ausgezeichnetes Frühstück aus

Bombay-Enten — bestehend, zu mir genommen hatte. 35. sehr ähnlich.
36. Wasserschnepfen. 37. Sperlinge.
38. sent for, schickte geheim nach.
39. daß er komme.
40. to fall in, &c., sich in eine Reihe zu stellen.
41. Altan. 42. Geschicklichkeit.
43. auf die Probe gestellt. 44. ich weiß.
45. Leichtgläubigkeit. 46. Ueberzeugung.
47. Beobachtung. 48. so nehme ich keinen Anstand.
49. zu entdecken. 50. gesehen. 51. Fall.
52. Halbherenmeister. 53. vorher sagt.
54. wahr sagt. 55. Verbrechen.
56. angesehen. 57. einer heiligen Scheu.
58. in the last instance, in dem letzten Fall (nämlich bei Verbrechen).

On the arrival of the magician, he made¹ the men form² circle around him; then, uttering³ some prayers, he produced⁴ a small bag of rice, and taking out a handful, gave it to the man nearest⁵ to him, and desired⁶ him to chew⁷ it, while he continued to recite⁸ certain prayers, or incantations⁹. In a moment or two he held¹⁰ a plate¹¹ to the man, and desired⁶ him to spit¹² out the grain¹³. He did so: it was well chewed, and the man instantly declared¹⁴ innocent. Another and another succeeded¹⁵. At length, he came to one of my favourite servants — one whom¹⁶ I never suspected¹⁷. On taking the rice, the man seemed dreadfully convulsed¹⁸. He ground¹⁹ his teeth, and worked²⁰ hard to masticate⁷ it; but all in vain. When he rendered¹² it on the plate¹¹, the grain¹³ was uncrushed²¹, unchewed²². The WISE MAN instantly proclaimed¹⁴ him to be the thief; upon which, the servant, falling on his knees, confessed the crime and detailed²³ a series of thefts²⁴, for which I had suspected¹⁷, and even punished, others. By²⁵ his own showing²⁶, he must have been the greatest rascal²⁷, the greatest scoundrel alive²⁷. He had, however, lived long with me; so I contented²⁸ myself with instantly dismissing²⁹ him.

In the evening I was sitting at whist, when I was called³⁰ out by my sedar-bearer, whom I before mentioned as one of the most faithful³¹ creatures in existence. He begged of me instantly to set³² out for Moorshedabad — a distance of about ten miles, in order to see a cousin of mine, who had sent me a verbal³³ message³³ by a *punee* (a foot-runner), requesting³⁴ my instant attendance³⁴, as³⁵ he had met with a serious accident³⁵. When I asked³⁶ to see the servant, I found he was already gone; and, when I expressed³⁷ my astonishment that he had not even sent me a *chit* (note), my bearer³⁸ assured me the accident³⁹ had deprived⁴⁰ him of the power of writing⁴¹; but that he earnestly solicited⁴² me to lose no time in setting³² out. Of course⁴³ I did not hesitate ordering⁴⁴ my palanquin out once more. Though sadly⁴⁵ tired, I started⁴⁶ off, after⁴⁷ making an apology⁴⁷ to my friends for thus abruptly⁴⁸ leaving them. On my arrival at Moorshedabad, I hurried to the bungalow⁴⁹ of my relative. Here I found the world fast asleep; and, amongst others, my cousin. He was perfectly well, and slumbering most comfortably⁵⁰. On being awoke, he positively⁵¹ denied having⁵¹ sent any messenger whatever to me, and had met³⁵ with no accident, nor was ever better in his life.

1. ließ. 2. sich — stellen. 3. hermurmelnd.
4. zog er — hervor.
5. welcher — am nächsten war. 6. befaß.
7. zu kauen. 8. herzusagen. 9. Zaubersprüche.
10. reichte. 11. Teller. 12. auszuspeien.
13. Reiskörner. 14. für — erklärt.
15. folgte darauf. 16. auf den.
17. Verdacht hatte. 18. erschüttert, beunruhigt.
19. knirschte. 20. bemüht sich sehr. 21. ungequetscht.
22. ungekaut. 23. beichtete umständlich.
24. Diebstähle. 25. nach. 26. Geständniß.
27. Schurke, der größte Spitzbube von der Welt.
28. begnügte ich mich damit.
29. ihn sogleich fortzujagen. 30. hinausgerufen.

31. treuesten. 32. abzureisen nach.
33. mündliche Botschaft. 34. *requesting my, &c.*, mit der Bitte, daß ich sogleich komme.
35. *as he had met with, &c.*, da ihm ein bedeutendes Unglück zugestoßen sei. 36. verlangte.
37. ausdrückte. 38. *Sedar*, Kammerdiener.
39. Unfall. 40. beraubt. 41. des Schreibens.
42. bat. 43. natürlicher Weise.
44. zu befehlen, daß man — wieder bringe.
45. schrecklich. 46. brach auf. 47. *after, etc.*, nachdem ich mich bei — entschuldigt hatte.
48. plötzlich. 49. Wohnung, strohbedeckten Hütte.
50. behaglich. 51. *positively, etc.*, verleugnete auf's Bestimmteste, daß er — hatte.

The deception thus practised¹ on² me, staggered³ me so much, that, in spite⁴ of every remonstrance⁵, I borrowed a relay⁶ of bearers⁶, and set out on my instant return⁷ home.

On re-entering my quarter, I found all quiet and still as the grave. I aroused⁸ some of the sleeping-servants; and, having⁹ obtained⁹ a light, asked for¹⁰ the sedar-bearer, determined to make¹¹ an example of the rascal for having thus played¹² off a practical¹³ joke¹³ on me. None of the others, however, knew where he was; so I proceeded¹⁴ to my bed-room, resolved to punish him in the morning. As I passed¹⁴ through my dressing-room, I perceived¹⁵ my drawers¹⁶ open; I examined them, and found that a suit¹⁷ of my clothes¹⁷ had been extracted¹⁸: and, by a turban I found lying near, I discovered that they had been taken by the sedar. That a man, whom I had hitherto looked¹⁹ upon¹⁹ as incorruptibly²⁰ honest, should thus act²¹, was a matter of the greatest surprise. That one, who had ever been considered as the most faithful of my servants, should thus, suddenly turn²² thief, annoyed²³, and disappointed²³ me. But, what puzzled²⁴ me more than all²⁵ was, that my people declared he had been seen to enter this room early in the evening, but most²⁶ positively²⁶ had not passed²⁷ out again. Tired²⁸ with conjecture²⁸, I went into my sleeping apartment.

I started²⁹ back²⁹ with surprise. Upon the bed lay a figure, the very³⁰ counterpart of myself³⁰. My heart³¹ misgave me as I rushed³² forward, and tore³³ a handkerchief from the features of my other self³⁴, who so³⁵ closely resembled me³⁵, as he appeared³⁶ stretched on my bed, that my followers³⁷ kept staring³⁸ at me, and then at the figure before them, as if doubtful³⁹ of my identity⁴⁰.

As the covering⁴¹ was removed, I perceived the countenance of my sedar. He was fast asleep. I attempted in anger⁴² to awake him. He was a corpse⁴³. Stone⁴⁴ dead before me was stretched³⁶ my late⁴⁵ favourite⁴⁶ servant. On⁴⁷ a close⁴⁷ examination I found a sharp-pointed instrument (probably poisoned⁴⁸) thrust⁴⁹ into his heart, from which it was still⁵⁰ undrawn⁵⁰. I could not decipher⁵¹ the dreadful mystery.

Presently one of my kidmutgars⁵² rushed⁵³ up. He held a leaf in his hand on which some characters⁵⁴ in Hindostanee had been traced⁵⁵

1. begangen. 2. gegen.
3. hatte mich so stutzig gemacht. 4. trotz.
5. Widerreden. 6. acht Palankinträger.
7. Rückreise nach Hause. 8. weckte auf.
9. bekommen hatte. 10. fragte ich nach.
11. to make an example of the rascal, an dem Schufte ein Warnungsbeispiel zu geben, weil er.
12. gespielt. 13. praktischen Scherz, Streich.
14. ging. 15. bemerkte — daß.
16. Kommode.
17. a suit, etc., einer meiner Anzüge.
18. herausgenommen.
19. betrachtet. 20. unbestechlich.
21. handeln. 22. werden.
23. ärgerte und täuschte.
24. puzzled me more, mir unerklärlicher.
25. all was, alles andere erschien, war.

26. ganz bestimmt. 27. herausgekommen.
28. tired, etc., der Vermuthungen müde.
29. schrak zurück vor.
30. the very, etc., welcher mein wirklicher Doppelgänger war.
31. my heart misgave me, ich ahnete etwas Böses.
32. eilte. 33. riß — weg. 34. Ich.
35. so closely, etc., der mir so ähnlich sah.
36. as he, etc., wie er ausgestreckt — lag.
37. Gefolge. 38. starrten — an.
39. zweifelten an. 40. Identität.
41. Bedeckung. 42. Zorn. 43. Leiche.
44. Stein- (mause-) todt. 45. vormaliger.
46. Lieblingsdiener. 47. bei einer genauen.
48. vergiftet. 49. gestoßen.
50. woraus es noch nicht gezogen.
51. enträthseln. 52. Dienern.
53. stürzte herein. 54. Worte. 55. geschrieben.

(as usual) with a pin¹. I sent for my *munchee* (interpreter), who thus translated them:

"Beloved master! a plot² was formed³ this day by the man whom you this day discovered⁴ to be⁵ a thief, to murder you. It was too well planned³ for⁶ you to escape. I was⁷ too solemnly sworn⁷ to dare⁸ to reveal⁹ it to you! Pardon me, beloved master! but I ventured¹⁰ to deceive you. I took your place: and have felt happy to die for you! May the God of the white man make you happy!"

The riddle¹¹ was solved¹². The delinquent¹³, thinking he had completed¹⁴ his deed of blood, had fled¹⁵. I provided¹⁶ for the family of my attached¹⁷ servant. Not one of his fellows¹⁸, however, seemed astonished at¹⁹ the act. They appeared to look²⁰ upon such devotion²¹ as a matter²² of course. For myself, I never can, I never will, forget the fidelity of my devoted "sedar."

H. R. Addison.

1. What did the letter which Mr. A— received state?
2. Where had Mr. A— been, and what had he seen?
3. Where do the leopards sleep, and what do they do?

NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 131.

4. How long does it take from Calcutta to Berhampore by water, and how long by land?
5. Describe the mode of travelling by bearers.
6. What takes away the charms of travelling?
7. Whom did Mr. Addison send for? — 8. Who exists in every bazaar or village?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 132.

9. What did the magician do on his arrival, and what did he give to the man next him?
10. How did the favorite servant act on taking the rice?
11. When the *wise man* proclaimed him to be the thief, what did he do?
12. What happened in the evening as Mr. Addison was sitting at whist?
13. What did Mr. Addison find on arriving at Moorshedabad?

NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 133.

14. What did he find on returning to his quarters, and what did he determine to do?
15. What did he perceive on passing through his dressing-room?
16. What did Mr. A— do on entering his sleeping apartment?
17. What lay upon the bed, and what did Mr. A— do?
18. What did Mr. A— perceive when the covering was removed?
19. What did he find on a close examination?

NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 134.

20. What did the *kidmutgar* bring?
21. What were the contents of the letter?
22. How did the other servants regard this act?

LXXXVI. Hope²³.

The miserable have no other medicine,
But²⁴ only²⁵ Hope.

Shakspeare.

1. Stednadel. 2. Komplott. 3. gemacht.
4. entdeckten.
5. *to be a thief*, daß er ein Dieb sei.
6. *for you to escape*, als daß Sie entkommen konnten.
7. *I was too, &c.*, man hat mir einen zu feierlichen Eid abgenommen.
8. als daß ich es wagen dürfte.
9. zu entdecken. 10. wagte es.

11. Räthsel. 12. gelöst. 13. Verbrecher.
14. vollbracht. 15. geflohen.* 16. sorgte.
17. ergebenen. 18. Mitdienern.
19. *at the act*, über diese Handlungsweise.
20. anzusehen. 21. Ergebenheit.
22. *as a matter of course*, als etwas ganz natürliches, ganz in der Ordnung.
23. Hoffnung. 24. als.
25. allein.

LXXXVII. Character of the British Soldier.

Colonel (forrnel) Napier, in his History of the Peninsular War, writes thus: — "That the British infantry soldier is more robust¹ than the soldier of any other nation, can scarcely be doubted² by those who, in 1815, observed³ his powerful frame⁴, distinguished amidst⁵ the united armies of Europe; and notwithstanding his habitual⁶ excess in drinking, he sustains⁷ fatigue, and wet, and the extremes of cold and heat, with incredible⁸ vigour⁹. When completely disciplined, (and three years are required¹⁰ to accomplish¹¹ this), his port¹² is lofty¹³, and his movements free; the whole world cannot produce¹⁴ a nobler specimen¹⁵ of military bearing¹², nor¹⁶ is the mind¹⁷ unworthy of the outward¹⁸ man. He does not, indeed, possess that presumptuous¹⁹ vivacity which would lead²⁰ him to dictate²¹ to his commanders, or²² even to censure²³ real errors²⁴, although²⁵ he may perceive²⁵ them; but he is observant²⁶, and quick to comprehend²⁷ his orders, full²⁸ of resources²⁸ under difficulties, calm and resolute²⁹ in danger, and more than usually obedient and careful³⁰ of his officers in moments of imminent³¹ peril³¹.

"It has been asserted³² that his undeniable³³ firmness³⁴ in battle is the result³⁵ of a phlegmatic constitution, uninspired³⁶ by moral feeling. Never was³⁷ a more stupid calumny³⁸ uttered³⁹. Napoleon's troops fought in bright⁴⁰ fields, where every helmet caught⁴¹ some beams⁴² of glory: but the British soldier conquered under the cold shade of aristocracy: no honours awaited⁴³ his daring⁴⁴, no despatch gave his name to the applauses⁴⁵ of his countrymen, — his life of danger and hardship⁴⁶ was uncheered⁴⁷ by hope, his death unnoticed⁴⁸.

"Did⁴⁹ his heart sink, therefore⁴⁹? Did he not endure⁵⁰ with surpassing⁵¹ fortitude the sorest⁵² of ills, sustain⁵³ the most terrible assaults⁵⁴ in battle unmoved, and with incredible energy overthrow⁵⁵ every opponent⁵⁶, at all times proving⁵⁷ that while no physical military qualification⁵⁸ was⁵⁹ wanting⁵⁹, the fount⁶⁰ of honour was also full and fresh within him?

"The result⁶¹ of a hundred battles, and the united testimony⁶² of impartial⁶³ writers⁶⁴ of different nations, have given the first place, amongst the European infantry, to the British; but, in a comparison

1. kräftiger. 2. bezweifelt.
3. beobachteten. 4. Gestalt. 5. mitten unter.
6. gewohnten. 7. erträgt, hält — aus.
8. unglaublicher. 9. Kraft, Ausdauer.
10. erforderlich. 11. dieses zu vollenden.
12. Haltung. 13. stolz, muthig.
14. vorweisen. 15. Muster.
16. auch — nicht. 17. Geist.
18. the outward man, des Aeußeren.
19. vermessene. 20. verleiten.
21. Vorschriften zu machen.
22. or even, nicht einmal.
23. zu tadeln. 24. Fehler.
25. although, &c., wenn er sie auch bemerkt.
26. aufmerksam. 27. begreifen.
28. full of, &c., äußerst erfinderisch, Hülfquellen auszumitteln.

29. entschlossen. 30. besorgt um.
31. der drohenden Gefahr. 32. behauptet.
33. unlängbare. 34. Festigkeit, Muth.
35. Folge. 36. unbegeistert. 37. hat man.
38. Verläumdung. 39. ausgesprochen.
40. glänzenden. 41. empfing. 42. Strahlen.
43. harrten. 44. tapferen Thaten.
45. Lobpreisung. 46. Entbehrung.
47. nicht erheitert. 48. blieb unbeachtet.
49. did his, &c., verlor er deshalb den Muth?
50. ertrug. 51. vortrefflicher.
52. schlimmsten. 53. hielt er nicht — aus.
54. Angriffe. 55. überwältigte er nicht.
56. Gegner. 57. beweisend.
58. Eigenschaft. 59. ihm fehlte. 60. Quelle.
61. Erfolg, Resultat. 62. Zeugniß.
63. vorurtheilsfreier. 64. Schriftsteller.

between the troops of France and England, it would be unjust not to admit¹ that the cavalry of the former stands higher in the estimation² of the world."

1. How long does it take to thoroughly discipline a British soldier?
2. What are his predominant qualities?
3. What calumny is here characterised as "stupid?"
4. What is said respecting the British soldier's fortitude, — and what does it prove?

LXXXVIII. The Blind Boy.

O say! what is that thing call'd³ light,
Which⁴ I must ne'er enjoy⁴;
What are the blessings⁵ of the sight⁶,
O tell your poor blind boy!

You talk⁷ of wond'rous things you see,
You say the sun shines bright⁸;
I feel him⁹ warm, but how can he
Or¹⁰ make it day or night?

My day or night myself I make,
Whene'er¹¹ I sleep or play;
And could I ever keep¹² awake¹³
With me 'twere always day.

With heavy sighs¹⁴ I often hear
You¹⁵ mourn my hapless¹⁶ woe¹⁶,
But sure with patience I can bear¹⁷
A loss¹⁸ I ne'er can know¹⁹.

Then let not what I cannot have
My cheer²⁰ of mind destroy;
While thus I sing, I am a king,
Although a poor blind boy.

Colley Cibber.

LXXXIX. How many Minds were formed in Secrecy?

How many minds²¹ — almost²² all the great ones²³ — were formed²⁴ in secrecy²⁵ and solitude, without knowing²⁶ whether²⁷ they should ever make²⁸ a figure or not! All²⁹ they knew was, that they liked³⁰ what³¹ they were about, and gave³² their whole souls to it³³.

1. einzugestehen. 2. Meinung. 3. genannt.
4. dessen ich mich nie erfreuen darf.
5. Glückseligkeit. 6. des Gesichts, des Sehens.
7. sprechen. 8. hell. 9. sie (die Sonne).
10. es Tag oder Nacht machen. („or" wird öfters wie hier, von den Dichtern statt "either" gebraucht.)
11. so oft. 12. bleiben. 13. wach.
14. Seufzern.
15. you mourn, daß Sie — beklagen.
16. unglückliches Schicksal. 17. ertragen.
18. einen Verlust den. 19. kennen.

20. cheer of mind, Frohsinn.
21. Geister. 22. beinahe.
23. die großen (s. Reg. XIV. S. 431 d. Grammatik). 24. ausgebildet.
25. Zurückgezogenheit.
26. ohne zu wissen (s. Reg. LIX. S. 525 der Grammatik).
27. ob. 28. make a figure, in der Welt glänzen.
29. Alles (man ergänze „was"). 30. liebten.
31. what they were about, daß, womit sie sich befaßten.
32. lenkten. 33. darauf.

XC. Our Next-door¹ Neighbour.

We are very² fond² of speculating as we walk³ through a street, on the character and pursuits⁴ of the people who inhabit⁵ it; and nothing so materially⁶ assists us in these speculations as the appearance⁷ of the house doors. The various expressions of the human countenance⁸ afford⁹ a beautiful and interesting study: but there is something in the physiognomy of street-door knockers¹⁰, almost as characteristic, and nearly as infallible¹¹. Whenever we visit a man for the first time, we contemplate the features of his knocker with the greatest curiosity, for we well know, that between the man and his knocker, there will inevitably¹² be a greater or less degree of resemblance¹³ and sympathy.

For¹⁴ instance¹⁴, there is one description¹⁵ of knocker that used¹⁶ to be common¹⁷ enough, but which¹⁸ is fast passing away¹⁸ — a large round one, with the jolly¹⁹ face of a convivial²⁰ lion smiling²¹ blandly at you²¹, as you twist²² the sides of your hair into a curl²², or pull²³ up your shirt-collar²⁴ while you are²⁵ waiting for²⁵ the door to be opened; we never saw that knocker on the door of a churlish²⁶ man so far as our experience is²⁷ concerned²⁷, it invariably²⁸ bespoke²⁹ hospitality and another bottle.

No man ever saw this knocker on the door of a small³⁰ attorney or bill-broker³¹; they always patronize³² the other lion: a heavy ferocious³³ looking³³ fellow, with a countenance expressive³⁴ of savage stupidity — a sort of grand master among the knockers, and a great favourite with the selfish³⁵ and brutal.

Then there is a little pert³⁶ Egyptian knocker, with a long thin face, a pinched-up³⁷ nose, and a very sharp chin; he is most³⁸ in vogue (wohlg) with³⁸ your government-office³⁹ people³⁹, in light⁴⁰ drabs⁴⁰ and starched⁴¹ cravats; little spare⁴², priggish⁴³ men, who are perfectly satisfied with their own opinions, and consider themselves of paramount⁴⁴ importance.

We were greatly troubled⁴⁵ a few years ago, by the innovation⁴⁶ of a new kind of knocker, without any⁴⁷ face at all⁴⁷, composed⁴⁸ of a wreath⁴⁹ depending⁵⁰ from a hand or small truncheon⁵¹. A little trouble⁵² and attention, however, enabled⁵³ us to overcome⁵⁴ this difficulty, and to reconcile⁵⁵ the new system to our favourite theory. You will invariably²⁸ find this knocker on the doors of

1. nächster. 2. lieben sehr. 3. gehen.
4. Thun und Treiben.
5. inhabit it, darin wohnen.
6. wesentlich. 7. Aussehen.
8. Antlitzes. 9. gewähren.
10. Hausthür-Klopfer. 11. untrüglich.
12. unvermeidlich. 13. Ähnlichkeit.
14. zum Beispiel. 15. Art. 16. früher.
17. allgemein — war. 18. jetzt schnell verschwindet.
19. lustigen. 20. geselligen.
21. smiling, &c., Euch holdselig anlächelnd.
22. twist the, &c., das Haar in Locken drehet.
23. heraufzieht. 24. Hemdekragen.
25. are, &c., wartet bis. 26. fäzigen.
27. reicht. 28. stets. 29. zeigte — von.
30. winzigen. 31. Wechselmäcklers.
32. begünstigen, lieben.

33. grimmig aussehender.
34. auf welchem — geprägt ist.
35. selbstfüchtigen. 36. naseweiser.
37. spitzigen.
38. most in vogue, am meisten beliebt bei.
39. Beamten.
40. hellen, chamoisfarbigen Beinkleidern.
41. gesteiften. 42. dünne.
43. superflüge.
44. überwiegender. 45. beunruhigt.
46. Einführung.
47. any, &c., irgend ein Gesicht.
48. bestehend aus. 49. Kranz.
50. hängend an. 51. Commandostab.
52. Mühe. 53. setzten uns in den Stand.
54. zu überwinden.
55. in Einklang zu bringen.

cold and formal people, who always ask you why you¹ *don't* come¹ and² never say *do!*²

Everybody knows the brass³ knocker is⁴ common to suburban⁵ villas⁵, and extensive⁶ boarding-schools⁷; and having⁸ noticed this genus⁹ we have recapitulated¹⁰ all the most prominent¹¹ and strongly¹² defined¹² species¹³.

Some phrenologists¹⁴ affirm¹⁵, that the agitation¹⁶ of a man's brain¹⁷ by different passions, produces¹⁸ corresponding¹⁹ developments²⁰ in the form of his skull²¹. Do²² not let us be understood²² as pushing²³ our theory to the length of asserting²⁴, that any alteration in a man's disposition²⁵ would produce a visible effect on the features of his knocker. Our position²⁶ merely is, that in such a case, the magnetism which must exist between a man and his knocker would induce²⁷ the man to remove²⁸, and seek some knocker, more congenial²⁹ to his altered feelings. If you ever find a man changing³⁰ his habitation without any reasonable pretext³¹, depend³² upon it³², that, although, he may not be aware of the fact himself, it is because he and his knocker are at variance³³. This is a new theory, but we venture³⁴ to launch³⁵ it³⁵, nevertheless, as being³⁶ quite as ingenious³⁷ and infallible as many thousand of the learned speculations which are daily broached³⁸ for public good³⁹ and private fortune-making.

Entertaining⁴⁰ these⁴⁰ feelings on⁴¹ the subject of knockers⁴¹, it will be readily imagined with what consternation⁴² we viewed the entire removal⁴³ of the knocker from the door of the house next⁴⁴ to the one⁴⁴ we lived in, some time ago, and the substitution⁴⁵ of a bell. This was a calamity we⁴⁶ had never anticipated⁴⁷. The bare⁴⁸ idea of⁴⁹ anybody being⁵⁰ able to exist without a knocker, appeared so wild and visionary⁵¹, that it had never for one instant entered⁵² our imagination.

We sauntered⁵³ moodily⁵⁴ from the spot, and bent⁵⁵ our steps towards Eaton Square, then just building⁵⁶. What was our astonishment and indignation to find that bells were⁵⁷ fast becoming the rule and knockers the exception! Our theory trembled beneath the shock⁵⁸. We hastened home; and fancying⁵⁹ we foresaw in the

1. besuchen Sie uns nicht.
2. *and never, &c.*, welche aber nie Jemanden einladen. 3. daß der messingene.
4. *is common to*, ganz allgemein gebraucht wird an den Thüren von.
5. Vorstadtvilla. 6. großen. 7. Kostschulen.
8. *having noticed*, da wir — erwähnt haben.
9. Gattung. 10. recapitulirt.
11. auffallendsten. 12. bezeichnetsten.
13. Arten. 14. Phrenologen, Schädellehrer.
15. behaupten. 16. Aufregung. 17. Gehirn.
18. hervorbringe. 19. entsprechende.
20. Entwicklungen. 21. Schädel.
22. *do not, &c.*, wir möchten nicht, daß man hierdurch verstehe.
23. *as pushing — to the length*, daß wir — so weit treiben.
24. zu behaupten. 25. Stimmung.
26. Behauptung. 27. veranlassen.
28. ausziehen. 29. mehr im Einklang.

30. der — ändert. 31. Grund.
32. Sie können sich darauf verlassen.
33. uneinig. 34. wagen jedoch.
35. dieselbe in die Welt zu schicken.
36. als eine, welche — ist.
37. sinnreich. 38. verbreitet.
39. das öffentliche Wohl und die Privatglückmacherei. 40. da wir solche — hegen.
41. *on the, &c.*, hinsichtlich der Klopfer.
42. Bestürzung. 43. Entfernung.
44. *next to — in*, neben dem, in welchem.
45. *the substitution, &c.*, und dessen Stelle durch eine Glocke vertreten sehen.
46. welche wir. 47. geahnt. 48. bloße.
49. daß Jemand. 50. *being able*, konnte.
51. träumerisch. 52. gekommen.
53. schlenderten. 54. traurig, nachdenklich.
55. richteten. 56. im Bau begriffen.
57. *were fast becoming*, schnell — wurden.
58. Schrecken. 59. da wir uns einbildeten, daß.

swift progress¹ of events, its entire abolition², resolved from that day forward to vent³ our speculations on our next-door neighbour's in person. The house adjoining⁴ ours on the left hand was uninhabited, and we had, therefore, plenty of leisure⁵ to observe our next-door neighbour's on the other side.

The house without the knocker was in⁶ the occupation⁶ of a city⁷ clerk, and there was a neatly-written bill⁸ in the parlour⁹ window, intimating¹⁰ lodgings for a single (ledigen) gentleman were to be¹¹ let within.

It was a neat, dull¹² little house, on the shady side of the way, with new narrow floorcloth¹³ in the passage¹⁴, and new narrow stair-carpet¹⁵ up to the first-floor¹⁶. The paper¹⁷ was new; and the paint¹⁸ was new, and the furniture was new, and all three, paper, paint, and furniture, bespoke¹⁹ the limited²⁰ means of the tenant²¹. There was a little red and black carpet in the drawing-room²², with²³ a border of flooring all the way round²³; a few stained²⁴ chairs and a pembroke²⁵ table²⁵. A pink²⁶ shell²⁶ was displayed²⁷ on each of the little side-boards²⁸, which, with the addition²⁹ of the tea-tray³⁰ and caddy³⁰, a few more shells on the mantelpiece³¹, and three peacock's feathers tastefully arranged³² above them³³, completed³⁴ the decorative³⁵ furniture of the apartment.

This was the room destined³⁶ for the reception of the single gentleman during the day, and a little back room on the same floor was assigned³⁶ as his sleeping apartment by night.

The bill⁸ had not been long in the window, when a stout³⁷ good-humoured-looking³⁸ gentleman, of about five-and-thirty, appeared as a candidate³⁹ for the tenancy⁴⁰. Terms⁴¹ were soon arranged, for the bill⁸ was taken down immediately after his first visit. In a day or two the single gentleman *came in*, and shortly afterwards his real character *came*⁴² *out*.

First of all, he displayed⁴³ a most extraordinary partiality⁴⁴ for⁴⁵ sitting up⁴⁵ till three or four o'clock in the morning, drinking whiskey⁴⁶-and-water, and smoking cigars; he then invited friends home⁴⁷, who used⁴⁸ to come at ten o'clock, and begin to get happy about the small⁴⁹ hours⁴⁹, when they evinced⁵⁰ their perfect contentment by singing songs with half a dozen verses of two lines each and a chorus of ten, which chorus used⁵¹ to be shouted forth⁵¹

1. Verlauf. 2. Abschaffung.
3. zu lenken. 4. neben dem.
5. Muße. 6. *in the, &c.*, bewohnt von.
7. Altstadt-Commiss. 8. Zettel. 9. Wohnzimmer.
10. anzeigend, daß.
11. *to be let within*, da zu vermieten sei.
12. düsteres. 13. Teppichen.
14. Eingang. 15. Stiegenteppiche bis zum.
16. Stock. 17. Tapeten. 18. Malerei.
19. zeigten von. 20. beschränkten.
21. Bewohners. 22. Gesellschaftszimmer.
23. *with a border, &c.*, wobei (da der Teppich zu klein war) ein Theil des Bodens rund um zu sehen war.
24. bemalte. 25. Ausziehtisch.
26. fleischfarbige Muschel.
27. zur Schau gestellt. 28. Schenkflische.

29. Hinzufügung. 30. Theebretts und Theebüchse.
31. Kamingesims. 32. aufgestellt.
33. darüber. 34. machten — aus.
35. die zur Zierde dienende. 36. bestimmt.
37. starker. 38. gutgelaunt aussehender.
39. Bewerber um. 40. Logis.
41. Bedingungen.
42. *came in, came out*, Wortspiel, kam herein, kam heraus, d. h. zeigte sich.
43. zeigte. 44. Vorliebe.
45. *for, &c.*, zum Aufbleiben.
46. Kornbranntwein.
47. zu sich. 48. pflegten.
49. die kleinen Stunden (nämlich 1, 2 Uhr Morgens).
50. an den Tag legten.
51. *used to be, &c.*, gejauchzt wurde.

by the whole strength of the company, in the most enthusiastic and vociferous¹ manner, to the great annoyance² of the neighbours, and the special discomfort³ of another single gentleman overhead.

Now, this was bad enough, occurring⁴ as it did⁴ three times a week on⁵ the average⁵, but this was not all; for when the company *did* go away, instead of walking quietly down the street, as⁶ any body else's⁶ company would have done, they amused themselves by making alarming⁷ and frightful noises, and counterfeiting⁸ the shrieks of persons in distress⁹; and one night, a red-faced gentleman in a white hat knocked in a most urgent¹⁰ manner at the door of the powdered-headed¹¹ old gentleman at Nr. 3, and when the powdered-headed old gentleman, who thought one of his married daughters must have been taken¹² ill¹² suddenly, had groped¹³ down stairs, and after a great deal of unbolting¹⁴ and key-turning¹⁵, opened the street door, the red-faced man in the white hat said he hoped he'd excuse his¹⁶ giving¹⁶ him so much trouble, but he'd feel obliged if he'd favour¹⁷ him with¹⁷ a glass of cold spring water, and the¹⁸ loan of¹⁸ a shilling for a cab¹⁹ to take him home, on which the old gentleman slammed²⁰ the door in his face and went up stairs, and threw the contents of his water-jug out of the window — very²¹ straight²¹, only²² it went²³ over the wrong²⁴ man; and the whole street was involved²⁵ in confusion.

A joke's²⁶ a joke; and even²⁷ practical jokes are very capital²⁸ in²⁹ their way²⁹, if you³⁰ can only get the other party to see³¹ the fun of them³¹; but the population of our street were so³² dull of apprehension³², as³³ to be quite lost to a sense of³³ the drollery³⁴ of this proceeding³⁵; and the consequence was, that our next-door neighbour was obliged to tell³⁶ the single gentleman, that unless³⁷ he gave up³⁷ entertaining³⁸ his friends at home, he really must be compelled³⁹ to part with him³⁹. The single gentleman received⁴⁰ the remonstrance⁴¹ with⁴² great good-humour⁴², and promised from that time forward, to spend⁴³ his evenings at a coffee-house — a determination which afforded⁴⁴ general and unmixed satisfaction.

The next night passed⁴⁵ off⁴⁵ very well, every body being delighted with the change⁴⁶; but on the next, the noises were renewed with greater spirit⁴⁷ than ever. The single gentleman's friends

1. lärmendste. 2. Verdruß. 3. Aerger.
4. da es sich wiederholte.
5. im Durchschnitt.
6. as any, etc., wie die — eines Jeden anderen.
7. Schrecken erregender.
8. nachahmend. 9. Noth. 10. dringende.
11. gepuderten. 12. krank geworden.
13. getappt, getastet.
14. nach sehr vielem Aufriegeln.
15. Schlüsseldrehen.
16. daß er — gemacht hatte.
17. die Gunst erzeigen möchte — zu geben.
18. ihm — zu leihen. 19. Cabriolet.
20. ihm die Thür ins Gesicht schlug.
21. ganz gerade. 22. nur. 23. fiel.
24. unrichten. 25. gebracht, gesetzt.
26. Spaß ist. 27. sogar. 28. köstliche Dinge.

29. in, etc., nach ihrer Art.
30. if you can only get, wenn man nur — dahinbringen könnte.
31. to see, etc., die Kurzweil derselben einzusehen.
32. so dull of, etc., schwachköpfig.
33. as to be, etc., daß sie gar keinen Sinn für — hatten. 34. Drolligkeit.
35. Verfahren. 36. zu sagen.
37. unless, wenn er nicht aufhörte.
38. zu bewirthen.
39. ihm wirklich kündigen.
40. nahm. 41. Ermahnung.
42. with, etc., sehr gutmüthig auf.
43. zuzubringen. 44. gewährte.
45. ging vorüber.
46. Veränderung.
47. Muth.

being¹ unable to see him in his own house every² alternate night, had come to the determination² of seeing him home³ every night; and what⁴ with the discordant⁵ greetings⁶ of the friends at the parting⁷, and⁴ the noise created⁸ by the single gentleman in⁹ his passage up stairs⁹, and his subsequent¹⁰ struggles¹¹ to get¹² off his boots, the evil¹³ was not to be¹⁴ borne¹⁴. So, our next-door neighbour gave¹⁵ the single gentleman, who was a very good lodger¹⁶ in other respects, notice¹⁵ to quit; and the single gentleman went away, and entertained his friends in other lodgings.

The next applicant¹⁷ for the vacant¹⁸ floor¹⁹, was of a very different character from the troublesome²⁰ single gentleman who had just quitted it. He was a tall, thin, young gentleman, with a profusion²¹ of brown hair, reddish whiskers, and very²² slightly developed²² mustaches. He wore²³ a braided²⁴ surtout²⁵, with frogs²⁶ behind, light gray trousers²⁷, and wash leather gloves, and had altogether rather a military appearance²⁸. So unlike²⁹ the roystering³⁰ single gentleman. Such insinuating³¹ manners, and such a delightful address³²! So seriously disposed³³, too! When he first came to look at the lodgings, he inquired most particularly whether³⁴ he was sure to be able to get a seat in the parish church³⁴, and when he had agreed³⁵ to take them³⁵, he requested³⁶ to have a list of the different local charities³⁷, as he intended to subscribe³⁸ his mite³⁸ to the most deserving³⁹ among them.

Our next-door neighbour was now perfectly happy. He had got⁴⁰ a lodger at last of just his own⁴¹ way of thinking⁴¹, a serious, well-disposed⁴² man, who abhorred⁴³ gaiety⁴⁴, and loved retirement. He took down the bill⁴⁵ with a light heart, and pictured⁴⁶ in imagination a long series of quiet Sundays, on which he and his lodger would exchange⁴⁷ mutual⁴⁸ civilities and Sunday papers⁴⁹.

The serious man arrived, and his luggage was⁵⁰ to arrive from the country next morning. He borrowed a clean shirt, and a prayer-book, from our next-door neighbour, and retired⁵¹ to rest at an early hour, requesting⁵² that he⁵³ might be called⁵³ punctually at ten o'clock next morning — not before, as he was much fatigued⁵⁴.

1. *being unable to see, etc.*, da — nicht besuchen durften.
2. *every, etc.*, alle andere Nacht, so hatten sie sich entschlossen.
3. *seeing, etc.*, ihn — nach Hause zu begleiten.
4. *theils — theils* (s. Reg. XL. S. 470. der Grammatik).
5. lärmende. 6. Abschiedsagen.
7. beim Weggehen. 8. gemacht.
9. *in his, etc.*, beim Treppensteigen.
10. nachherigen. 11. Anstrengung.
12. *get off*, abzuziehen. 13. Plage.
14. zu ertragen.
15. *gave notice to quit*, kündigte — auf.
16. Miethsman. 17. Bewerber.
18. um das leere. 19. Logis.
20. lästigen. 21. Ueberfluß an.
22. *very, etc.*, ganz unbedeutend entwickelten.
23. trug. 24. mit Borten besetzten.
25. Ueberrock.
26. Oliven (eine Art länglicher Knöpfe).

27. Beinkleider. 28. Aussehen.
29. ganz verschieden von.
30. polsternden, lärmenden. 31. einschmeichelnde.
32. Art sich vorzustellen. 33. gestimmt.
34. *whether he was sure, etc.*, ob er ganz gewiß einen Sitz in der Pfarrkirche bekommen könnte.
35. *agreed, etc.*, das Logis gemiethet.
36. bat er um. 37. Wohlthätigkeitsanstalten.
38. *to subscribe, etc.*, sein Scherflein — beizutragen.
39. verdienstvollsten darunter. 40. bekommen.
41. *own way, etc.*, eigenen Denkungsart.
42. gutgesinnten. 43. verabscheute.
44. allerlei Art. Lustbarkeit.
45. Miethzettel. 46. malte sich — vor.
47. mit einander austauschen.
48. gegenseitige. 49. Zeitungen.
50. sollte. 51. begab. 52. indem er bat, daß.
53. *he might, etc.*, man ihn — wecken möchte.
54. sehr müde.

He *was* called¹, and did not answer; he was called again, but there was no reply. Our next-door neighbour became alarmed² and burst the door open. The serious man had left the house mysteriously³; carrying⁴ with him the shirt, the prayer-book, a tea-spoon, and the bedclothes⁵.

Whether this occurrence, coupled⁶ with the irregularities⁷ of his former lodger, gave⁸ our next-door neighbour an aversion⁸ to single gentlemen, we know not; we only know that the next bill which made⁹ its appearance⁹ in the parlour window intimated¹⁰ generally, that there were furnished apartments to let¹¹ on the first floor. The bill was soon removed. The new lodgers at first attracted¹² our curiosity, and afterwards excited¹³ our interest.

They were a young¹⁴ lad¹⁴ of eighteen or nineteen, and his mother, a lady of about fifty, or it might be less. The mother wore a widow's weeds¹⁵, and the boy was also clothed in deep mourning. They were poor — very poor; for their only means¹⁶ of support¹⁶, arose¹⁷ from the pittance¹⁸ the boy earned¹⁹, by copying²⁰ writings²¹, and translating for booksellers.

They had removed²² from some²³ country place²³ and settled²⁴ in London; partly²⁵ because it afforded²⁶ better²⁷ chances²⁸ of employment²⁹ for the boy, and partly, perhaps, with the natural desire to leave a place where they had³⁰ been³⁰ in better circumstances, and where their poverty was known. They were proud under their reverses³¹, and above³² revealing their wants³³ and privations³⁴ to strangers. How bitter those privations were, and how hard³⁵ the boy worked³⁶ to remove³⁷ them, no one ever knew but themselves. Night after night, two, three, four hours after midnight, could we hear the raking³⁸ up of the scanty³⁹ fire, or the hollow and half-stifled⁴⁰ cough⁴¹, which indicated⁴² his⁴³ being still at work⁴³; and day after day, could we see more plainly, that nature had set⁴⁴ that unearthly light in his plaintive⁴⁴ face, which is the beacon⁴⁵ of her worst disease⁴⁶.

Actuated⁴⁷ we hope, by a higher feeling than mere curiosity, we contrived⁴⁸ to establish, first⁴⁸ an acquaintance⁴⁹, and then⁵⁰ a close intimacy⁵⁰, with the poor strangers. Our worst fears were

1. gerufen. 2. unruhig. 3. heimlich.
4. und nahm. 5. Bettdecke und Betttücher.
6. verbunden. 7. unordentlichen Lebensweise.
8. gave an aversion, flößten — eine Abneigung gegen — ein.
9. made, etc., erschien. 10. deutete — an.
11. zu vermietthen seien.
12. zogen — auf sich. 13. erregten sie.
14. Jüngling.
15. Witwentrauerkleider (in England sind die Trauerkleider für den verstorbenen Ehemann verschieden von denen für andere Verwandte).
16. means of, etc., Unterhaltsmittel.
17. bestand aus. 18. Kleinigkeit.
19. verdiente. 20. durch das Copiren.
21. Schriften. 22. weggezogen.
23. from some, etc., aus irgend einem Orte auf dem Lande.
24. sich — niedergelassen. 25. theils.
26. gewährte. 27. mehr. 28. Hoffnung.

29. zur Beschäftigung. 30. gelebt hatten.
31. Unglück.
32. above revealing, ihre Gefühle ließen nicht zu daß sie — mittheilten.
33. Bedürfnisse. 34. Entbehrungen.
35. angestrengt. 36. arbeitete.
37. zu entfernen, zu heben.
38. Zudecken. 39. armfeligen.
40. halberstickten. 41. Husten.
42. andeutete.
43. his being, etc., daß er immer noch arbeite.
44. dieses Licht, welches nicht von dieser Erde ist, in sein klägliches Gesicht gezeichnet (gemalt) hatte und.
45. Kennzeichen.
46. Krankheit (die Auszehrung).
47. angetrieben.
48. contrived, etc., brachten wir es dahin, daß wir zuerst. 49. bekannt.
50. then a, etc., nachher — ganz vertraut wurden.

realized; the boy was¹ sinking fast¹. Through a part of the winter, and the whole of the following spring and summer, his labours were unceasingly² prolonged³: and the mother attempted to procure⁴ needlework⁵, embroidery — any⁶ thing for bread⁶.

A few shillings now and then, were all she could earn. The boy worked steadily⁷ on; dying⁸ by minutes⁸, but never⁹ once giving utterance⁹ to complaint¹⁰ or¹¹ murmur.

One beautiful autumn evening we went to pay our customary visit to the invalid. His little remaining¹² strength had¹³ been decreasing rapidly¹³ for¹⁴ two or three days preceding¹⁵ and he was lying on the sofa at the open window, gazing¹⁶ at the setting sun. His mother had¹⁷ been reading¹⁷ the Bible to him, for she closed the book as we entered, and advanced¹⁸ to meet us¹⁸.

"I was¹⁹ telling¹⁹ William," said she, "that we must manage²⁰ to take him into the country some where, so that he may²¹ get quite well. He is not ill, you know, but he is not very strong, and has exerted²² himself too much lately." Poor thing! The tears that streamed through her fingers as she turned²³ aside²³, as if to adjust²⁴ her close widow's cap²⁴, too plainly showed²⁵ how fruitless was the attempt²⁶ to deceive herself.

We sat down by²⁷ the head²⁷ of the sofa, but said nothing, for we saw that the breath²⁸ of life was²⁹ passing²⁹ gently³⁰ but rapidly from the young form³¹ before us. At every respiration³², his heart beat more slowly.

The boy placed³³ one hand in ours, grasped³⁴ his mother's arm with the other, drew³⁵ her hastily towards³⁶ him³⁶, and fervently³⁷ kissed her cheek. There was a pause. He sunk³⁸ back³⁸ upon his pillow³⁹, and looked⁴⁰ long and earnestly in his mother's face.

"William, William!" murmured the mother after a long interval⁴¹, don't⁴² look⁴² at me so — speak to me, dear!"

"The boy smiled languidly⁴³, but an instant afterwards his features⁴⁴ resolved⁴⁵ into the same cold, solemn⁴⁶ gaze⁴⁵.

"William, dear William! rouse⁴⁷ yourself, dear; don't look⁴² at me so, love — pray don't! Oh! my God! what shall I do!" cried⁴⁸ the widow, clasping⁴⁹ her hands in agony⁵⁰ — "my dear boy! he is dying!"

1. *as, etc.*, wollte schnell dahin.
2. unaufhörlich. 3. fortgesetzt.
4. zu verschaffen. 5. Näharbeit.
6. Sticerei oder irgend etwas, um ihr Brod zu verdienen.
7. regelmäßig fort.
8. *dying, etc.*, sterbend zusehend.
9. *never once, etc.*, niemals aber stieß er eine — aus. 10. Klage.
11. noch murrte er. 12. noch übrige.
13. *had been, etc.*, war — im schnellen Abnehmen.
14. während.
15. vorher. 16. anblickend.
17. *had, etc.*, hatte gerade — vorgelesen.
18. *came, etc.*, kam uns entgegen.
19. soeben sagte. 20. es einrichten.
21. *may get, etc.*, wieder ganz wohl werde.
22. sich — angestrengt. 23. sich wegwandte.

24. *as if to adjust, etc.*, als ob sie ihre eng-
anschließende Witwenhaube ordnen wollte.
25. zeigte. 26. Versuch.
27. am obern Ende. 28. Athem, Odem.
29. verging eben. 30. leicht.
31. Gestalt. 32. Athemzug.
33. legte. 34. ergriff. 35. zog.
36. an sich. 37. inbrünstig.
38. fiel zurück. 39. Rissen.
40. blickte. 41. Schweigen.
42. siehe — nicht so an.
43. schwach. 44. Gesichtszüge.
45. *resolved into — gaze*, nahmen — Ausdruck
wieder an.
46. feierlichen.
47. ermuntere dich.
48. schrie. 49. zusammenschlagend.
50. Seelenangst.

The boy raised¹ himself by a violent² effort³, and folded⁴ his hands together — “Mother, dear, dear mother, bury⁵ me in the open fields — any where but⁶ in these dreadful streets. I should like to be where you can see — where the sun can shine upon my grave, but not in these close⁷, crowded⁸ streets; they have killed me; kiss me again mother; put⁹ your arm round my neck —”

He fell back, and a strange expression¹⁰ stole¹¹ upon his features; not of pain or suffering¹², but an indescribable fixing¹³ of every line¹⁴ and muscle.

The boy was dead.

Chas. Dickens.

1. What affords a beautiful and interesting study?
2. What does Dickens do when he visits a man for the first time?
3. What does the large round knocker with the lion's face bespeak?
4. With whom is the Egyptian knocker most in vogue?
5. What sort of people does the wreath depending from the hand denote?
NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 138.
6. What do phrenologists affirm? — 7. Why does a man change his habitation?
NB. Obige 2 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 139.
8. To whom did the house without the knocker belong?
9. Describe the house and furniture.
10. Who appeared as a candidate for the tenancy?
11. What did the single gentleman display?
NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 140.
12. What did the company amuse themselves by doing?
13. What did the red-faced gentleman in the white hat do, and what did he say?
14. And what did the powdered-headed old gentleman do?
15. What was our next-door neighbour obliged to tell the single gentleman?
16. What determination did the single gentleman's friends come to, and what was the consequence?
NB. Obige 5 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 141.
17. Who was the next applicant for the vacant floor?
18. What was our next-door neighbour now? — 19. What did the serious man request?
NB. Obige 3 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 142.
20. What had the serious man done? — 21. Who were the new lodgers?
22. Where had they come from, and why? — 23. What could we hear night after night?
24. By what were we actuated? — 25. What were realized?
NB. Obige 6 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 143.
26. What had been rapidly decreasing?
27. What did the mother say she was telling William?
28. Where did the boy place his hand? — 29. What did the mother murmur?
NB. Obige 4 Fragen beziehen sich auf Seite 144.
30. Where did the boy desire to be buried?
31. What expression stole upon his features?

XCI. A Cure for the Gout (Gicht).

“Pray, Mr. Abernethy, what is a cure for the gout?” was a question of an indolent¹⁵ and luxurious citizen. “Live upon sixpence a day — and earn¹⁶ it;” was the celebrated Doctor's pithy¹⁷ answer.

Annual Biography and obituary for 1832.

1. erhob sich. 2. großer. 3. Anstrengung.
4. faltete. 5. begrabe.
6. nur nicht. 7. engen.
8. gedrängten. 9. lege.

10. Ausdruck. 11. schlich. 12. Leidens.
13. Erstarren. 14. Zug.
15. trägen. 16. verdienen.
17. treffende.

XCII. The two Neighbours or Confidence¹ in God.

“Aux petits des oiseaux, Dieu donne la pâture.”

Two men were neighbours, and each of them had a wife and several² children, and nothing to³ support them but⁴ the labour of their hands. And one of these men was always anxious⁵, and said continually to himself: “If I die or fall⁶ ill, what shall become of my wife and children?” And this thought tormented⁷ him, and gnawed (noahð)⁸ upon his heart⁹ as the worm gnaws at the core⁹ of the fruit¹⁰ in which it lies concealed¹¹. Now, the same thought had also entered¹² into the mind of the other father, yet it caused¹³ him no uneasiness; “for¹⁴, said he, God who knows and loves all his creatures, and watches¹⁵ carefully over them, will also care¹⁶ for me and my wife and children.” And the latter lived contented and happy, while¹⁷ the former enjoyed¹⁸ no peace of mind, no internal happiness¹⁸.

One day, as he was in the fields, sad¹⁹ and dejected, he saw some birds fly²⁰ into a bush, then out²¹ of it, and soon after they returned²² to it again. And having²³ approached it, he perceived two nests quite close²⁴ to each other, and in each were several little birds, still²⁵ quite unfledged. And after he had returned to his work²⁴, he raised²⁶ his eyes from time to time, and regarded the birds coming²⁷ and going with the food for their little²⁸ ones.

Now, just at the moment, when one of the mothers was returning with her bill-full²⁹, a kite³⁰ seized her, carried her off, and the poor mother, struggling³¹ in her claws, uttered³² piercing cries. At³³ this sight, the man who was at work, felt his soul more³⁴ troubled than before: “for¹⁴, thought he, the death of the mother is the death of her little²⁸ ones. Mine³⁵ have no one either to care for them but me³⁵. What shall become of them when I am no more.” And the whole day he was gloomy³⁶ and sad, and during the night he had no repose.

The next day, having³⁷ returned to the fields, he said to himself: “I must see the little ones of this poor mother: several of them, no doubt, have³⁸ already perished.” And he took his way to the bush. And looking³⁹ into it, he saw the little birds quite well; not a single one seemed to have suffered⁴⁰. And being astonished, he hid⁴¹ himself, in order⁴² to observe what

1. Vertrauen in. 2. mehrere.
3. zu ernähren. 4. als die Arbeit.
5. ängstlich. 6. krank werde.
7. quälte. 8. nagte an. 9. Herz.
10. Frucht. 11. verborgen.
12. gekommen. 13. verursachte.
14. denn. 15. bewacht.
16. sorgen. 17. während.
18. sich keiner Ruhe des Geistes, keines innern Glücks erfreute.
19. traurig und niedergeschlagen.
20. in einen Busch hineinfliegen.
21. heraus.
22. kehrten sie zu demselben zurück.
23. als er sich demselben genähert hatte.

24. ganz dicht an.
25. immer noch ganz unbefiedert.
26. erhob. 27. wie sie kamen und gingen.
28. Kleinen. 29. Schnabelvoll.
30. Hühnerweibe ergriff sie. 31. kämpfend.
32. stieß ein durchdringendes Geschrei aus.
33. bei diesem Anblick.
34. unruhiger als vorher.
35. die Meinigen haben auch Niemand, außer mir, für sie zu sorgen.
36. betrübt und traurig.
37. nachdem — zurückgekehrt war.
38. sind schon umgekommen.
39. hineinblickend. 40. gelitten.
41. verbarg. 42. um zu sehen.

took¹ place. And in a short time, he heard a low cry, and perceived the second mother carrying, in haste, the food she had collected²; and she distributed³ it indiscriminately amongst⁴ the little ones, and there was enough for all, and the orphans were not deserted in their misery.

And the father who had placed⁵ no confidence in Providence, related to the other father, what he had seen. And the latter said to him: "Why⁶ be troubled? God never forsakes⁷ his people; his love has secrets, which we cannot comprehend⁸. Let us only have faith, hope and charity⁹, and continue¹⁰ our way in peace. If I die before you, you will be a father to my children, and if you die before I do, I will be a father to yours. And if we both die before they are¹¹ capable of providing for themselves¹¹, they will have for their father, *the Father* who is in heaven."

J. S. S. R.

XCIH. Columbus and the Egg¹².

Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza, the Grand Cardinal of Spain, invited¹³ Columbus to a banquet, where he assigned¹⁴ him the most honorable place at table, and had¹⁵ him served¹⁶ with the ceremonies which, in those punctilious¹⁷ times, were observed¹⁸ toward¹⁹ sovereigns. At²⁰ this repast²¹ is said²² to have occurred the well known anecdote of the egg. A shallow²³ courtier present²⁴ impatient of the honors paid²⁵ to Columbus, and meanly²⁶ jealous of him as²⁷ a foreigner²⁸, abruptly²⁹ asked him whether³⁰ he thought³¹ that in case³² he had not discovered the Indies, there were not other men who would³³ be capable³³ of the enterprise³⁴. To this Columbus made³⁵ no immediate reply, but, taking an egg, invited¹³ the company to make it stand³⁶ upon one end. Every one attempted³⁷ it, but in vain, whereupon he struck³⁸ it upon the table so as³⁹ to break the end, and left it standing on the broken part; illustrating⁴⁰ in this simple manner, that when he had once shown⁴¹ the way to the new world, nothing was easier than to follow it. This anecdote rests⁴² on the authority of the Italian historian Benzoni. It has been condemned⁴³ as trivial⁴⁴, but the⁴⁵ simplicity of the reproof⁴⁶ constituted⁴⁷ its severity⁴⁸, and was characteristic of the practical sagacity⁴⁹ of Columbus. The universal popularity of the anecdote is a proof of its Merit⁵⁰.

Washington Irving's Life of Columbus.

The celebrated Hogarth has published an etching illustrative of this anecdote.

1. stattfand. 2. gesammelt.
3. theilte sie ohne Unterschied.
4. unter. 5. kein Vertrauen auf — gesetzt.
6. weshalb sich beunruhigen.
7. verläßt. 8. begreifen.
9. Nächstenliebe. 10. fortsetzen.
11. im Stande sind, für sich zu sorgen.
12. Gi. 13. lud — ein. 14. anwies. 15. ließ.
16. bedienen. 17. kleinlich ceremoniellen.
18. beobachtet. 19. gegen. 20. bei. 21. Gastmahl.
22. *is said to have occurred*, soll sich ereignet haben.

23. leicht. 24. der zugegen war.
25. *paid*, welche man — erzeugte. 26. niedrig.
27. als. 28. Ausländer. 29. barsch.
30. ob. 31. dachte.* 32. Fall. 33. fähig wären.
34. Unternehmung. 35. gab. 36. es — stehen.*
37. versuchte. 38. schlug.
39. *as to break*, daß — brach. 40. darstellend.
41. gezeigt.* 42. beruht. 43. verurtheilt.
44. kleinlich. 45. in der. 46. Verweis.
47. besteht. 48. das Treffende desselben.
49. Scharfsinn. 50. Werthes.

XCIV. Wit and Humour.

Wit was originally a general name for all the intellectual powers, meaning¹ the faculty which kens², perceives, knows, understands; it was gradually narrowed³ in its signification, to express merely the resemblance between ideas; and lastly, to note⁴ that resemblance when it occasioned ludicrous⁵ surprise. Humour originally meant moisture, a signification it metaphorically retains, for it is the very juice⁶ of the mind, oozing⁷ from the brain, and enriching and fertilizing⁸ wherever it falls. Wit exists by antipathy; Humour by sympathy. Wit lashes⁹ external appearances, or cunningly¹⁰ exaggerates single foibles¹¹ into character; Humour glides into the heart of its object, looks¹² lovingly on the infirmities it detects, and represents the whole man. Wit is abrupt¹³, darting¹⁴, scornful¹⁵, and tosses¹⁶ its analogies in your face; Humour is slow and shy, insinuating¹⁷ its fun¹⁷ into your heart. Wit is negative, analytical, destructive; Humour is creative. The French are witty, the English humorous. The couplets¹⁸ of Pope are also witty, but Sancho Panza is a humourous creation. Wit, when earnest, has the earnestness of passion, seeking¹⁹ to destroy; Humour has the earnestness of affection, and would²⁰ lift up²⁰ what is seemingly low into our charity²¹ and love. Wit, bright, rapid and blasting²² as lightning, flashes²³, strikes, and vanishes in an instant. Humour, humane²⁴, softens²⁵ with mirth the ragged²⁶ inequalities of existence, promotes²⁷ tolerant views²⁸ of life, bridges²⁹ over the spaces³⁰ which separate the lofty from the lowly, the great from the humble. Old Dr. Fuller's remark, that a Negro is "the image of God cut³¹ in ebony," is humorous; Horace Smith's inversion³² of it, that the taskmaster³³ is "the image of the devil cut in ivory," is witty.

Edwin P. Whipple.

XCV. The little Bird.

One winter's night, 'twas dark and cold,
 A tiny (teini)³⁴ Bird sat shivering³⁵
 Upon the bough of an oak so old,
 That the boist'rous³⁶ wind kept quivering³⁷.
 O! loud it was, and the little bird
 Was rocked³⁸ from right to left,
 But what cared³⁹ it for the sullen⁴⁰ blast,
 Of its mate⁴¹ it was bereft.

1. und bedeutete. 2. erspäht. 3. beengt.
 4. zu bezeichnen.
 5. lächerliche, späßhafte. 6. Saft.
 7. der — langsam fließt. 8. befruchtet.
 9. geißelt. 10. schlau, listig. 11. Schwächen.
 12. schaut liebevoll. 13. verb. 14. schnell.
 15. höhnisch. 16. schleudert Einem seine Analogien in's Gesicht.
 17. ergießt (flößt) seine Fröhlichkeit Einem ins Herz.
 18. Strophen, Gedichte.
 19. und sucht zu zerstören.
 20. möchte — erheben.
 21. Mitleid. 22. zerstörend.

23. leuchtet, flammt. 24. menschenfreundlich.
 25. mildert. 26. rauhen, schroffen.
 27. befördert. 28. Ansichten.
 29. überbrückt, verbindet.
 30. Räume.
 31. in Ebenholz geschnitten.
 32. Umkehrung.
 33. Sklaventreiber.
 34. kleiner. 35. zitternd. 36. stürmische.
 37. schüttelte. 38. gewiegt, gestoßen.
 39. kümmert er sich um.
 40. mürriſchen Windstoß.
 41. seines Gefährten.

Despair was in its throbbing¹ breast,
It felt itself *alone*;
The one it had so oft carress'd,
For ever, ever gone.
A blast more fierce than all the rest
Pass'd o'er its tiny² head,
Upon the hard and frozen ground
The little Bird lay DEAD!

Oh! may I thus be swept³ away,
When kindness, friends depart⁴,
When in the world, I cannot say,
I own⁵ one loving heart;
Without a smile to cheer⁶ the way,
How oft so full of care,
Yes, may I share⁷ this lone Bird's fate,
Such is my humble pray'r.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

XCVI. The Man who had an Axe⁸ to Grind⁸.

Dr. Franklin's celebrated story of "An axe to grind," has become a proverb in these days of flattery and deceit. We insert it here with pleasure for the benefit of juvenile readers:

When I was a little boy, I remember one cold winter's day, I was accosted⁹ by a smiling man with an axe on his shoulder! "My little man," said he, "has your father a grindstone¹⁰?" "Yes, Sir," said I. "You're¹¹ a fine little fellow¹¹ — will you let me grind my axe upon it?" said he. — Pleased¹² with his compliment of "fine little fellow," "O, yes, Sir, it's down in the shop," answered I. "And will you, my man," said he, tapping¹³ me on the head, "get¹⁴ a little hot water?" How could I refuse? I ran, and soon brought a kettle full. "How old are you — what's your name?" continued he; without waiting for a reply; "I'm sure you're one of the finest boys, that I have ever seen: will you just turn¹⁵ a few minutes?" Tickled¹⁶ with this flattery, like a little fool, I went to¹⁷ work, and bitterly did I rue¹⁸ the day. It was a new axe, and I toiled¹⁹ and tugged¹⁹ till I was almost tired to death. The school bell rang, but I could not get away; my hands were blistered²⁰, and it was not yet half ground²¹. At length, however, the axe was sharpened, and the man turned to me with, "Now, you little rascal²², you have played²³ the truant²³; scud²⁴ to your school, or you'll rue¹⁸ it." Alas! thought I, it was hard enough to turn¹⁵ the grindstone, this cold day; now to be called "a little rascal," was too much. It sunk deep into my mind, and I have often thought of it since. *B. Franklin.*

1. bebenden. 2. kleinen. 3. hinweggerafft.
4. scheiden. 5. besitze.
6. erheitern.
7. möge mir dieses verlassenen Vogels Schicksal zu Theil werden.
8. Art zu schleifen.
9. angerebet. 10. Schleifstein.

11. Du bist ein netter kleiner Bursche.
12. vergnügt. 13. streicheln. 14. verschaffen.
15. den Schleifstein umdrehen.
16. gefikelt, vergnügt. 17. ans Werk.
18. bereute. 19. zog und mühte mich ab.
20. voll Blasen. 21. geschliffen. 22. Schurke.
23. geschwänzt. 24. fort gleich.

XCVII. The Loss¹ of the Royal George (ðʃɔrrɔʃɪʃ).

The Royal George was a three-decker, a ship of one hundred and twenty guns, 24 and 32 pounders, with a crew² of one thousand men. The length of her³ gun-deck⁴ was 210 feet, the breadth 56; her main-mast⁵ was 124 feet high, fore-mast⁶ 112, mizzen-mast⁷ 112, and the main yard⁸ one hundred and six feet long. She measured sixty-six feet from the kelson⁹ to the taffrail¹⁰; and, being a flag-ship¹¹, her lanterns were so big¹², that the men used¹³ to go into them to clean¹⁴ them.

In August, 1782, the Royal George had come to Spithead. She was in a very complete state¹⁵, with¹⁶ hardly any leakage, so¹⁶ that there was no occasion for the pumps to be touched¹⁷ oftener than once in every three or four days. By¹⁸ the 19th of August she had got¹⁹ six months' provisions on board, and also many tons²⁰ of shot²¹. The ship had her gallants²² up²², the blue flag of Admiral Kempenfeldt was flying²³ at the mizzen⁷, and the ensign²⁴ was hoisted²³ on the ensign-staff²⁵, — and she was²⁶ in about two days to have sailed to join²⁷ the grand fleet in the Mediterranean. It²⁸ was ascertained²⁸ that the water-cock²⁹ must be taken out and a new one put³⁰ in. The water-cock is something like the tap³¹ of a barrel³², — it is in the hold³³ of the ship on the starboard³⁴ side, and at that part of the ship called the well³⁵. To get³⁶ out the old water-cock, it was necessary to make the ship heel³⁷ so much³⁸ on her larboard³⁹ side as⁴⁰ to raise the outside of this water-cock above water. This was done at about 8 o'clock on the morning of the 19th of August. To do this, the whole⁴¹ of the guns⁴¹ on the larboard side were run⁴² out as far as they would go, and the starboard guns drawn⁴³ in a-midship⁴⁴ and secured⁴⁵ by tackles⁴⁶, two to every gun. This brought the water nearly on⁴⁷ a level⁴⁷ with the port-holes⁴⁸ of the larboard³⁹ side of the lower gun-deck⁴. The men were working⁴⁹ at this water-cock on the outside of the ship for nearly an hour, the ship remaining⁵⁰ on one side.

At about 9 o'clock A. M.⁵¹, or rather⁵² before, we had just finished our breakfast, — says the narrator, — and the last lighter⁵³, with rum on board, had come alongside⁵⁴: this vessel was a sloop⁵⁵ of about fifty tons, and belonged to three brothers, who used⁵⁶ her

1. Untergang. 2. Mannschaft.
3. seines (im Englischen wird jede Art von Schiffen als weiblichen Geschlechts betrachtet, s. Anm. 10 S. 180 d. Grammatik).
4. Berdeck. 5. Mittelmast, Hauptmast.
6. Fockmast. 7. Besanmast.
8. die große Raa (Segelstange, welche das große oder unterste Segel am Hauptmaste trägt).
9. Kielschwein. 10. Hackebord.
11. Flaggen Schiff. 12. groß. 13. pflegten.
14. um — zu reinigen. 15. guten Zustand.
16. und war so unbedeutend leck, daß.
17. zu brauchen. 18. am. 19. bekommen.
20. Tonnen (eine Tonne ist 20 Centner).
21. allerlei Art Kugeln.
22. Bramsegel gespannt. 23. aufgehißt.
24. Fahne. 25. Flaggenstock.

26. sollte. 27. um sich zu — hinzubegeben.
28. *it was, etc.*, man fand. 29. Wasserhahn.
30. hinein gesetzt. 31. Zapfen. 32. Fasses.
33. Kielraum. 34. Steuerbord.
35. Pumpenbock. 36. um — herauszuziehen.
37. sich hielten, neigen. 38. so sehr auf.
39. Backbordseite.
40. *as to, etc.*, daß die Außenseite — über das Wasser käme. 41. sämtliche Kanonen.
42. hinausgeschoben. 43. hineingezogen.
44. in die Mitte des Schiffes.
45. befestigt. 46. Tackel, Tackel.
47. auf gleiche Höhe. 48. Stückpforten.
49. arbeiteten. 50. blieb.
51. *ante meridiem*, Vormittags.
52. etwas eher. 53. Leichtschiß. 54. an die Seite.
55. Korvette. 56. gebrauchten.

to carry¹ things on board the men-of-war². She was lashed³ to the larboard side of the Royal George, and we⁴ were piped⁴ to clear⁵ the lighter⁶ and get⁷ the rum out of her⁸, and stow⁹ it in the hold¹⁰ of the Royal George. I was in the waist¹¹ of our ship, on the larboard side, bearing¹² the rum-casks over, as some men of the Royal George were aboard the sloop to sling¹³ them.

At first no danger was apprehended¹⁴ from¹⁵ the ship's being on one side¹⁵, although the water kept¹⁶ dashing¹⁶ in at the port-holes¹⁷ at every wave¹⁸; and there being mice in the lower part of the ship, they were hunted¹⁹ in the water by the men. However, by about 9 o'clock, the additional²⁰ quantity of rum on board the ship, and also the quantity of sea-water — which had dashed in at the port-holes¹⁷, brought²¹ the larboard port-holes of the lower gun-deck nearly level²¹ with the sea.

As soon as that was the case, the carpenter went on the quarter-deck²² to the lieutenant (livtenent) of the watch²³, to ask²⁴ him to give orders to right²⁵ ship, as she could not bear²⁶ it any longer. However, the lieutenant made²⁷ him a very short answer, and the carpenter went below²⁸. The captain's name was Waghorn. He was on board, but in what part of the ship I do not know; — however, captains, if anything is to be done when the ship is in harbour, seldom²⁹ interfere, but leave³⁰ it all to the officer of the watch. The lieutenant was, if I remember right, the third lieutenant; he had not joined³¹ us long; his name I do not recollect; he was a good-sized³² man, between thirty and forty years of age. The men called him "Jib-and-Foresail-Jack³³," for, if he had the watch in the night, he would³⁴ be always bothering³⁴ the men³⁵ to alter³⁶ the sails, and it was "up³⁷ jib," and "down³⁸ jib," "up foresail" and "down foresail," every minute. However, the men considered³⁹ him more of a troublesome⁴⁰ officer than a good one: and from a habit⁴¹ he had of moving⁴² his fingers about when walking⁴³ the quarter-deck, the men said he was an organ-player⁴⁴ from London, but I have no reason to suppose⁴⁵ that that was the case. The admiral was either in the cabin⁴⁶ or in his steerage⁴⁷, I do not know which; and the barber, who had been to shave⁴⁸ him, had just left⁴⁹. The admiral was a man upwards⁵⁰ of seventy; he was a thin, tall man, who stooped⁵¹ a good deal⁵¹.

As I have already stated⁵², the carpenter left the quarter-deck and went below. In a very short time he came up again, and asked the lieutenant of the watch to right⁵³ ship, repeating that the ship

1. zu bringen. 2. Kriegsschiffe.
3. mit einem Taue — festgemacht.
4. der Bootsmann piff uns zu. 5. aufzuräumen.
6. Leichtschiß. 7. bringen 8. aus demselben.
9. hineinzu thun 10. Kielraum. 11. der Kuhle.
12. und trug. 13. aufzuhissen. 14. gefürchtet.
15. daß das Schiff auf der Seite lag.
16. schlug fortwährend ein. 17. Stückpforten.
18. Welle. 19. gejagt. 20. weitere.
21. brought nearly level, brachte — beinahe eben.
22. Hintercastell. 23. Wache. 24. zu bitten.
25. to right ship, das Schiff in die rechte Lage bringen zu lassen. 26. ertragen. 27. gab.

28. hinunter. 29. mischen sich selten ein.
30. überlassen. 31. er war nicht lange bei uns.
32. von schöner Größe.
33. Klüver- und Focksegel-Hans.
34. he would be, etc., plagte er immer.
35. Matrosen. 36. ändern. 37. Klüver hinauf.
38. herunter. 39. betrachteten. 40. lästigen.
41. Gewohnheit. 42. zu bewegen.
43. auf und ab ging. 44. Orgelspieler.
45. zu vermuthen. 46. Kajüte.
47. Kammer. 48. rasiren. 49. fortgegangen.
50. über 51. der sehr gebeugt war.
52. gesagt. 53. aufrichten zu lassen.

could not bear it: but the lieutenant replied, "D—¹ ye, sir, if you can manage² the ship better than I can, you had³ better take⁴ the command." Myself and a good many more were at the waist⁵ of the ship and at the gangways⁶, and heard what passed⁷, and as we knew the danger, we began to feel aggrieved⁸, for there were some capital⁹ seamen on board, who knew¹⁰ what they were about¹⁰ quite¹¹ as well as the officers.

In a very short time, a minute or two I¹² should think¹², the lieutenant ordered the drummer to be¹³ called to beat¹⁴ to right ship. The drummer was called in a moment, but the ship was then just beginning to sink. I jumped¹⁵ off the gangway as soon as the drummer was called. There was no time for him to beat his drum, and I don't know that he had even time to get¹⁶ it. I ran down to my station¹⁷ and, by the time I had got¹⁸ there, the men were tumbling¹⁹ down the hatchways²⁰ one over another to get²¹ to their stations as soon as possible. I said to the lieutenant of our gun, whose name was Carrell, for every gun has a captain and a lieutenant (though they are only sailors), "let us try to bouse²² our gun out²² without waiting²³ for the drum, as it will help to right ship." We pushed²⁴ the gun, but it ran²⁵ back upon us, and we could not start²⁶ it. The water then rushed²⁷ in at nearly all the port-holes²⁸ of the larboard²⁹ side of the lower gun-deck, and I directly³⁰ said to Carrel, "Ned³¹, jump³² out at the port-hole; the ship is sinking, and we shall all be drowned³³." He jumped out at the port-hole into the sea: I believe he was drowned, for I never saw him afterwards. I immediately got³² out at the same port-hole, and when I had done so, I saw the port-hole as full of heads as it could cram³⁴, all trying³⁵ to get out³⁵. I caught³⁶ hold of the bower-anchor³⁷ (*boher-anch'r*), which was just above me, to prevent³⁸ my falling back again into the port-hole, and seized³⁶ hold of a woman, who was trying to get out at the same place, — I dragged³⁹ her out. The ship was full of Jews, women, and people selling⁴⁰ all sorts of things. I threw⁴¹ the woman from me, — and saw all the heads drop⁴² back again in at the port-hole, for the ship had got⁴³ so much on her larboard side, that the starboard port-holes were as upright⁴⁴ as if the men had tried⁴⁵ to get⁴⁶ out at the top⁴⁷ of a chimney⁴⁸ with nothing for their legs and feet to act⁴⁹ upon. The ship then sank in a moment. I tried⁴⁵ to swim, but I could not swim a stroke⁵⁰, although

1. für "*damm*" *ye*, sei verdammt (in englischen Büchern ist es nicht gebräuchlich, bei Schwüren, Verwünschungen u. das Wort ganz drucken zu lassen).
2. dirigiren. 3. so thäten Sie. 4. übernehmen.
5. Ruhle. 6. Durchgang, Felleerepötreppe.
7. gesprochen wurde. 8. gekränkt. 9. vorzügliche.
10. ihre Sache verstanden. 11. eben so gut.
12. glaube ich.
13. *to be called*, daß man — rufe.
14. *to beat to right ship*, damit er trommle, daß die Matrosen das Schiff aufrichten.
15. sprang. 16. zur Hand zu nehmen.
17. Platz. 18. anlangte. 19. stürzten.

20. die Luken hinunter. 21. um — zu gelangen.
22. *to bouse, etc.*, unsere Kanone auszuschieben.
23. zu warten. 24. schoben. 25. lief zurück.
26. fortbewegen. 27. stürzte. 28. Stückpforten.
29. Backbord. 30. sogleich. 31. Abkürz. v. *Edward*.
32. spring zum — hinaus. 33. ertrinken. 34. fassen.
35. *trying, etc.*, sich bemügend hinaus zu kommen.
36. ergriff. 37. Gabelanker.
38. *to prevent my*, zu verhindern, daß ich.
39. zog. 40. welche — verkauften. 41. warf.
42. zurückfallen. 43. *got so much*, sich so sehr gelegt.
44. senkrecht. 45. versucht. 46. hinauszukommen.
47. Gipfel. 48. Kamin. 49. *to act upon*, worauf — sich stützen konnten. 50. Schlag.

I plunged¹ as hard as I could with both hands and feet. The sinking of the ship drew me down so. Indeed I think I must have sunk nearly as low² as the ship did. When the ship touched³ the bottom⁴, the water boiled⁵ up a great deal, and then I felt that I could swim, and began to rise.*

When I was about half way up⁶ to the top⁷ of the water, I put my right hand on the head of a man that was nearly exhausted. He wore⁸ long hair, as many of the men at that time did; he tried⁹ to grapple¹⁰ me, and he put¹¹ his four fingers into my right shoe alongside¹² the outer edge¹² of my foot. I succeeded¹³ in kicking¹⁴ my shoe off, and, putting¹⁵ my hand on his shoulder, I shoved him away, — I then rose¹⁶ to the surface⁷ of the water.

When my head came above water, I heard the cannon ashore¹⁷ firing¹⁸ for distress¹⁸. I looked¹⁹ about me, and at the distance of eight or ten yards²⁰ from me, I saw the main-topsail-halyard-block²¹ above water; — the water was about thirteen fathoms deep, and at that time the tide was coming in. I swam to the main-topsail-halyard-block²¹, and got²² on it. The fore²³, main, and mizzen tops²³ were all above water, as were part of the bowsprit²⁴ and part of the ensign-staff²⁵, with the ensign²⁶ upon it.

In²⁷ going down, the main-yard²⁸ of the Royal George caught²⁹ the boom³⁰ of the rum-lighter³¹ and sunk³² her³², and there is no doubt that this made³³ the Royal George more upright³³ in the water, when sunk, than she otherwise³⁴ would have been, as she did not lie, much more on³⁵ her beam-ends³⁵ than small vessels often do when left dry on a bank³⁶ of mud³⁶.

When I got³⁷ on the main-topsail-halyard-block²¹, I saw the admiral's baker in the shrouds³⁸ of the mizzen-topmast³⁹, and directly after that the woman whom I had pulled⁴⁰ out of the port-hole⁴¹ came rolling by⁴²: I said to the baker, who was an Irishman, "Bob⁴³, reach out your hand and catch⁴⁴ hold of that woman; — that's the woman I pulled out at the port-hole. I dare⁴⁵ say⁴⁵ she is not dead." "I dare say she is dead enough," said he "it is of⁴⁶ no use⁴⁶ to catch hold of her." I replied, "I dare say she is not dead." He caught hold of the woman and hung⁴⁷ her head over one of the ratlins⁴⁸ of the mizzen⁴⁹ shrouds⁴⁹, and there she hung by⁵⁰ her chin; but a surf⁵¹ came and knocked⁵² her back-

1. strebte. 2. beinahe so tief. 3. berührte.
4. den Meeresgrund. 5. sprudelte hervor.
6. hinauf. 7. zur Oberfläche. 8. trug, hatte.
9. versucht. 10. fassen. 11. steckte.
12. *alongside*, &c., an die Außenseite.
13. es gelang mir. 14. abzuwerfen.
15. indem ich — legte. 16. tauchte — empor.
17. am Ufer. 18. das Notsignal geben.
19. schaute um. 20. Schritten, Ellen.
21. den großen Marssegel-Aufhißblock.
22. *got on it*, kletterte hinauf.
23. *fore*, &c., Fockstange, große Marsstange und Besanmars.
24. Bogspriet. 25. Flaggenstock. 26. Flagge.
27. *in going down*, beim Untergehen.
* emporzutauchen.

28. die große Raa (Segelstange).
29. fiel auf. 30. Leesegeßpiere.
31. des mit Rum beladenen Leichtschißes.
32. zog dasselbe mit hinunter.
33. *made — more upright*, machte, daß — gerader lag. 34. sonst.
35. auf der Seite. 36. Schlammbank.
37. gelangte. 38. in der Wandtaue.
39. der Bramstange des Besanmastes.
40. herausgezogen. 41. Stückpforte.
42. vorbei. 43. Robert, streckte — heraus.
44. *catch hold of*, fange. 45. glaube, meine.
46. nützt nichts. 47. legte. 48. Webelien.
49. Besans-Wandtaue. 50. an.
51. Brandung, Widersee. 52. schlug, warf.

wards¹, and away she went rolling over and over. The captain of a frigate which was² lying² at Spithead came up³ in a boat as fast as he could. I dashed⁴ out my left hand in the direction of the woman as a sign to him. He saw it, and saw the woman. His men left⁵ off rowing⁵, and they pulled⁶ the woman aboard their boat and laid her on one of the thwarts⁷. The captain called⁸ out to me, "My man, I must take⁹ care of those that are in more danger than you." I replied "I am safely¹⁰ moored now, Sir."

There was a seaman named Hibbs hanging by his two hands from the main-stay¹¹; and as he hung there, the sea dashed¹² over him every now and then as much as a yard¹³ deep over his head, and when he saw it coming, he roared¹⁴ out: however he¹⁵ was but a fool for¹⁵ that, for if he had kept¹⁶ quiet, he would not have wasted¹⁷ his strength, and would have been able to take¹⁸ the chance of holding on so much the longer¹⁸. The captain of the frigate then got¹⁹ all the men that were in the different parts of the rigging²⁰, including myself and the baker, into his boat, and took²¹ us on board the Victory, where the doctors recovered²² the woman, but she was very ill for three or four days. On board the Victory I saw the body of the carpenter, lying on the hearth before the galley²³ fire; some women were²⁴ trying to recover²² him, but he was quite dead.

The Captain of the Royal George, who could not swim, was saved by one of our seamen. The lieutenant of the watch²⁵ — who was the principal cause of the misfortune — I believe was drowned. The number of persons who lost their lives I cannot state²⁶ with any degree of accuracy²⁷, because²⁸ of there being²⁸ so many Jews, women, and other persons on board who did not belong²⁹ to the ship. The complement³⁰ of the ship was nominally 1000 men, but it was not quite full. Some were ashore³¹, and sixty marines³² had gone ashore that morning.

The government allowed³³ £ 5 each to the seamen who were on board, and not drowned, for the loss³⁴ of their things. I saw the list, and there were only seventy-five. A vast number of the best men were in the hold³⁵ stowing³⁶ away³⁶ the rum-casks: they must all have perished³⁷, and so must many of the men who were³⁸ slinging³⁸ the casks in the sloop³⁹. Two of the three brothers belonging to the sloop perished, the other was saved. I have no doubt that the men caught⁴⁰ hold of each other, forty or fifty together,

1. rücklings. 2. lag. 3. hinzu.
4. streckte — schnell heraus.
5. hörten auf zu rudern. 6. zogen.*
7. Dosten (Balken in einem Boote).
8. rief — zu. 9. take care of, sorgen für.
10. safely moored, sicher (geankert).
11. großen Stag (Tane). 12. schlug.
13. drei Schuh. 14. schrie er aus.
15. das war thöricht von ihm.
16. kept, etc., sich ruhig verhalten.
17. verbraucht, verschwendet.
18. um so länger anzuhalten. 19. brachte dann.

20. Tafelwerk. 21. führte, brachte.
22. zum Leben zurückbrachten.
23. Kombüsen (Schiffsflüchen-)Feuer.
24. versuchten. 25. Wache.
26. angeben. 27. Genauigkeit.
28. because, &c., weil es waren.
29. gehörten. 30. vollständige Mannschaft.
31. am Land. 32. Seesoldaten.
33. bewilligte. 34. Verlust.
35. Kielraum. 36. hinbringend, stauend.
37. umgekommen. 38. aufhielten. 39. Korvette.
40. caught hold of, faßten, ergriffen.

and drowned¹ one another¹ — those who could not swim catching hold of those who could; and there is also little doubt that as² many got³ into the launch⁴ as could⁵ cram into her⁵, hoping to save themselves in that way, and went down in her all together.

In a few days after the Royal George sunk, dead bodies would⁶ come up⁶, thirty or forty nearly at⁷ a time. Nothing was more frightful than, when the moon shed⁸ her tender⁹ beams¹⁰ over the placid¹¹ water, where so many brave men had lost their lives, to see the heads popping¹² up from under the water. A body would sometimes rise¹³ up¹³ so suddenly as¹⁴ to make one's hair stand on end¹⁴. The watermen¹⁵, there is no doubt, made a good business¹⁶ of it: they took from the bodies of the men their buckles¹⁷, money, and watches¹⁸, and then made¹⁹ fast a rope²⁰ to their heels and towed²¹ them to land.

The water-cock ought to have been put²² to rights before the immense quantity of shot²³ was put²⁴ on board; but if the lieutenant of the watch had given orders to right²⁵ ship²⁵ when the carpenter first spoke to him, nothing²⁶ amiss²⁶ would have happened²⁷, as three or four men at each tackle²⁸ of the starboard guns would very soon have boused²⁹ them all out and righted the ship. At the time this happened, the Royal George was anchored by two anchors from the head³⁰. The wind was from the north-west, — not much of it, — only³¹ a bit of a breeze³¹; and there was no sudden gust³² of wind³² to make her heel³³ just before she sunk³⁴; it was the weight of metal and the water which had dashed³⁵ in through the port-holes which sunk³⁶ her, and not the effect of the wind upon her³⁷. Indeed I do not recollect that she had even³⁸ what is called a stitch³⁹ of canvass³⁹ to keep⁴⁰ her head steady⁴⁰ as she lay at anchor.

I am now seventy-five years of age, and was about twenty-four when this happened.

The foregoing curious and highly interesting narrative⁴¹ has been communicated by *Mr. James Ingram*, who was on board at the time the Royal George sunk. We have considered it better to give it in his own simple language, as⁴² affording⁴² a more graphic⁴³ description of this extraordinary and melancholy catastrophe⁴⁴ than more beautiful language could do. At the same time it may serve the young reader as an exercise in sea terms⁴⁵.

J. S. S. Rothwell.

1. and drowned, &c., und so war der Eine an dem Ertrinken des Andern schuld.
2. so. 3. sprangen. 4. Schiffsboot.
5. could, &c., es nur fassen konnte.
6. tauchten empor. 7. zu gleicher Zeit.
8. verbreitete. 9. milden.
10. Strahlen. 11. ruhige.
12. emportauchen. 13. kam — zum Vorschein.
14. daß es Einem das Haar zu Berge stehen machte.
15. Schiffer. 16. Geschäft. 17. Schnallen.
18. Uhren. 19. banden. 20. Strick.
21. zogen. 22. put to rights, man — richten.
23. Kugeln. 24. gebracht.

25. das Schiff zu richten.
26. kein Unglück. 27. geschehen. 28. Tafel.
29. hinausgeschoben. 30. Vorderseite.
31. only a, &c., nur ein Windchen.
32. Windstoß. 33. es hielen, neigen.
34. unterging. 35. hineingeschlagen.
36. which sunk her, welche den Untergang des Schiffes verursachten. 37. dasselbe.
38. ein mal. 39. Stückchen Segel ausgespannt.
40. to keep, etc., um es gerade zu halten.
41. Geschichte.
42. da sie gewährt. 43. bezeichnendere.
44. Begebenheit. 45. Ausdrücken.

XCVIII. Arthur, Nephew of King John of England.

*Northampton. — A room in the Castle.**Enter HUBERT and two ATTENDANTS.*

- Hubert.* Heat¹ me these irons hot; and, look² thou stand
Within³ the arrass⁴; when I strike my foot
Upon the bosom of the ground, rush⁵ forth;
And bind the boy, whom you shall find with me,
Fast to the chair: be⁶ heedful, hence⁶, and watch.
Attend. I hope your warrant⁷ will bear you out the deed⁷.
Hubert. Uncleanly⁸ scruples! Fear not you: look to't⁹: — (*Exeunt Attendants*).
Young lad, come forth; I have to say with you.

Enter ARTHUR.

- Arthur.* Good morrow, Hubert.
Hubert. Good morrow, little prince.
Arthur. As¹⁰ little prince (having¹¹ so great a title
To be more prince), as may be. — You are sad.
Hubert. Indeed, I have been merrier.
Arthur. Mercy¹² on me!
Methinks, nobody should be sad but I:
Yet, I remember, when I was in France,
Young gentlemen would¹³ be as sad as night
Only¹⁴ for wantoness. By my christendom,
So¹⁵ I were out of prison, and kept¹⁶ sheep,
I should be merry as the day is long;
And so I would be here, but¹⁷ that I doubt
My uncle practises¹⁸ more harm¹⁹ to me:
He is afraid of me, and I of him:
Is it my fault that I was Geoffrey's son?
No, indeed, is't not; and I would to heaven,
I were your son, so you would love me, Hubert.
Hubert. If I talk to him, with his innocent prate²⁰,
He will awake²¹ my mercy²², which lies dead:
Therefore I will be sudden²³, and despatch²⁴. (*Aside.*)
Arthur. Are you sick, Hubert? You look pale to-day:
In sooth²⁵, I would you were a little sick:
That²⁶ I might sit all night, and watch with you:
I warrant²⁷, I love you more than you do me.
Hubert. His words do²⁸ take possession²⁸ of my bosom²⁹. —
Read here, young Arthur (*Shewing³⁰ a Paper.*)
How³¹ now foolish rheum³²! (*Aside.*)
Turning³³ despiteous torture out of door!
I must be brief³⁴; lest³⁴ resolution drop³⁵
Out at³⁵ mine eyes, in tender womanish tears. —
Can you not read it? Is it not fair³⁶ writ?
Arthur. Too fairly, Hubert, for so foul effect:
Must you with hot irons burn out both mine eyes?
Hubert. Young boy, I must.
Arthur. And will you?
Hubert. And I will.

1. mache mir dieses Eisen heiß.
2. gib Acht, daß. 3. hinter. 4. Schirm.
5. springe hervor. 6. fort und wache.
7. Befehle die That rechtfertigen werden.
8. ungerechtfertigte Bedenlichkeiten.
9. paß auf. 10. eben so.
11. indem ich — habe. 12. mein Gott!
13. pflegten. 14. bloß aus Muthwillen.
15. wenn. 16. hütete.

17. wenn ich nicht fürchtete. 18. beabsichtigte.
19. Schaden. 20. Geplauder. 21. erregen.
22. Mitleid. 23. schnell. 24. es abmachen.
25. in der That. 26. damit. 27. bin gewiß.
28. fesseln. 29. Herz. 30. zeigend.
31. was jetzt. 32. Thränen, Weichherzigkeit.
33. die grausame Tortur zur Thüre hinaus jagen.
34. sonst wird der Entschluß.
35. durch — austropfen. 36. schön geschrieben.

- Arthur. Have you the heart? When your head did¹ but ache,
I knit² my handkerchief about your brows,
(The best I had, a princess wrought³ it me),
And I did⁴ never ask⁴ it you again:
And with my hand at midnight held your head;
And, like the watchful minute to the hour
Still⁵ and anon cheer'd up the heavy time;
Saying, what lack⁶ you? And, where lies your grief⁷?
Or, what good love⁸ may I perform⁹ for you?
Many a poor man's son would have lain still,
And ne'er have spoke a loving word to you;
But you, at¹⁰ your sick¹⁰ service, had a prince.
Nay¹¹, you may think, my love was crafty¹² love,
And call it, cunning¹³: do, an¹⁴ if you will:
If heaven be pleased that you must use¹⁵ me ill,
Why¹¹, then you must. — Will you put¹⁶ out mine eyes?
These eyes, that never did nor ever shall,
So much as frown¹⁷ on you?
- Hubert. I have sworn to do it;
And with hot irons must I burn them out.
- Arthur. Ah, none¹⁸ but in this iron age would do it;
The iron of itself, though heat¹⁹ red-hot,
Approaching²⁰ near these eyes, would drink my tears
And quench²¹ his fiery indignation,
Even²² in the matter of²² mine innocence:
Nay²³, after that, consume away in rust,
But²⁴ for containing fire to harm mine eyes.
Are you more stubborn-hard²⁵ than hammer'd iron?
An¹⁴ if an angel had come to me,
And told me, Hubert should put out mine eyes,
I would have believed no tongue, but Hubert's.
- Hubert. Come forth. (*Stamps.*)
Re-enter ATTENDANTS, with Cord, Iron, &c.
Do as I bid you do.
- Arthur. O save²⁶ me, Hubert, save me! My eyes are out,
Even²⁷ with the fierce looks of these bloody men.
- Hubert. Give me the iron, I say, and bind him here.
- Arthur. Alas, what²⁸ need you be so boist'rous-rough²⁹?
I will not struggle³⁰, I will stand stone-still.
For heaven's sake, Hubert, let me not be bound!
Nay, hear me, Hubert! Drive³¹ these men away,
And I will sit as quiet as a lamb;
I will not stir, nor wince³², nor speak a word,
Nor look upon the iron angerly:
Thrust³¹ but these men away, and I'll forgive you,
Whatever torment³³ you do³⁴ put me to.
- Hubert. Go, stand within³⁵; leave me alone with him.
- Attend. I am³⁶ best pleased to be from such a deed. (*Exeunt Attendants.*)
- Arthur. Alas! I then have chid³⁷ away my friend;
He hath a stern³⁸ look, but a gentle heart: —
Let him come back that his compassion may
Give life to yours.

1. Ihnen nur wehe that. 2. band.
3. gemacht. 4. verlangte — nie.
5. immer und immer. 6. fehlt. 7. Schmerz.
8. für einen Liebesdienst. 9. thun.
10. bei Ihrem Kranksein — Ihnen zu dienen.
11. nun. 12. berechnende. 13. List, Schlaueit.
14. an if, wenn. 15. mißhandeln. 16. ausstechen.
17. finster — blicken. 18. niemand außer.
19. glühend heiß gemacht.

20. wenn es — nähert. 21. löschen.
22. wäre es nur — wegen.
23. ja sogar. 24. nur weil es.
25. hartherziger. 26. rette. 27. bloß durch.
28. warum müssen. 29. grausam, grob.
30. mich nicht sträuben. 31. schicke.
32. krümmen. 33. Qualen. 34. verursachen.
35. draußen. 36. es freut mich.
37. gescholten. 38. strengen Blick.

- Hubert.* Come, boy, prepare yourself.
Arthur. Is there no remedy?
Hubert. None, but to lose your eyes.
Arthur. O heavens! that there were but a moat¹ in yours,
 A grain, a dust, a gnat¹, a wand'ring hair,
 Any annoyance² in that precious sense!
 Then, feeling what small things are boist'rous³ there,
 Your vile intent⁴ must needs⁵ seem horrible.
Hubert. Is this your promise? Go to⁶, hold your tongue⁶.
Arthur. Hubert, the utterance⁷ of a brace⁸ of tongues
 Must needs⁹ want pleading⁹ for a pair of eyes:
 Let¹⁰ me not¹⁰ hold my tongue; let me not, Hubert!
 Or, Hubert, if you will, cut out my tongue,
 So I may keep mine eyes; O spare¹¹ mine eyes;
 Though¹² to no use, but¹² still to look on you!
 Lo, by my troth¹³, the instrument is cold,
 And would not harm me.
Hubert. I can heat it, boy.
Arthur. No, in good sooth¹⁴; the fire is dead with grief,
 Being¹⁵ create for comfort, to be used
 In undeserved extremes¹⁵: see else¹⁶ yourself;
 There is no malice in this burning coal;
 The breath of heaven hath blown his spirit out,
 And strewed repentant¹⁷ ashes on his head.
Hubert. But with my breath I can revive it, boy.
Arthur. And if you do, you will but make it blush,
 And glow with shame of¹⁸ your proceedings, Hubert:
 Nay, it, perchance, will sparkle¹⁹ in your eyes;
 And, like a dog, that is compelled to fight,
 Snatch²⁰ at his master that doth tarre²¹ him on.
 All things, that you should use to do me wrong,
 Deny²² their office: only you do lack²³
 That mercy, which fierce fire, and iron, extends²⁴,
 Creatures²⁵ of note for mercy-lacking uses²⁵.
Hubert. Well, see to live; I will not touch thine eyes
 For all the treasure that thine uncle owes²⁶:
 Yet am I sworn, and I did purpose, boy,
 With this same very iron to burn them out.
Arthur. O, now you look like Hubert! All this while
 You were disguised²⁷.
Hubert. Peace: no more. Adieu;
 Your uncle must not know but²⁸ you are dead:
 I'll fill these dogged²⁹ spies with false reports.
 And pretty child, sleep doubtless³⁰, and secure,
 That Hubert, for the wealth of all the world,
 Would not offend thee.
Arthur. O heaven! — I thank thee, Hubert.
Hubert. Silence; no more: go closely³¹ in with me;
 Much danger do³² I undergo³² for thee. (*Exeunt.*)

Shakspeare.

1. Splitter, ein Sandkorn, ein Stäubchen, eine Mücke. 2. irgend etwas Lästiges.
 3. schmerzhaft. 4. Absicht. 5. nothwendig.
 6. stille, schweige. 7. Sprache.
 8. Paar. 9. nöthig sein, um zu bitten.
 10. verlange nicht, daß ich. 11. verschone.
 12. wenn zu keinem andern Zweck, als.
 13. Treue. 14. Wahrheit.
 15. weil, indem es zum Trost erschaffen wurde, es

bei einer Grausamkeit, die ich nicht verdient habe, gebraucht wird. 16. sonst.
 17. reuige. 18. über. 19. Funken werfen.
 20. schnappen, beißen. 21. heßt.
 22. versagen. 23. ermangeln. 24. zeigt.
 25. Dinge, die ihrer Mitleidslosigkeit wegen, berüchtigt sind. 26. besitzt.
 27. verkleidet. 28. daß — nicht. 29. mürrische.
 30. furchtlos. 31. heimlich. 32. laufe.

H. Moral, Pathetic, and Descriptive Pieces.

XCIX. A Japanese Sermon¹.

Sermons in Japan are not delivered² as part of a service³ on a special day of the week, but are preached in courses⁴, the delivery⁵ occupying about a fortnight, two sermons being given each day. The audiences are composed of old people who, finding themselves near their end, wish to make their peace with heaven, and young girls who attend⁶, doubtless, with every intention of profiting, but many of whom forget every thing they have heard, as soon as they get outside the door. In front of the preacher is a reading-desk⁷, on which he lays his sermon, and in his hand he holds a fan with which, from time to time, he raps⁸ the desk⁷ to emphasize⁹ his delivery⁵, and wake the slumbering. Between the two sermons occurs¹⁰ an interval of ten minutes, introduced by the priest, with the words, "Well, let¹¹ us take a puff (of tobacco)".¹¹

The text is taken from the Chinese Classical Books, just as we take ours from the Bible. Jokes¹², stories, and pointed¹³ applications to¹³ members of the congregation are quite common in these sermons.

Môshi* says, "Benevolence is the heart of man, Righteousness¹⁴ is the path of man. How¹⁵ lamentable a thing¹⁵ is it to leave the path and go astray¹⁶, to cast¹⁷ away the heart and not know where to seek it."

The text is taken from the first chapter of Kôshi, in Môshi. Now this quality, which we call benevolence, has been the subject of commentaries by many teachers, but as these commentaries are difficult of¹⁸ comprehension, they are too hard to enter the ears of women and children. It is of this benevolence that, using¹⁹ examples and illustrations, I mean²⁰ to treat. A long time ago there lived at Kioto a great physician, called Imaôji — I forget his other name; he was a very famous man. Once²¹ upon a time a man, from a place called Kuramaguchi, advertised²² for sale a medecine, which he had compounded²³ against the cholera, and got²⁴ Imaôji to write a²⁵ puff for him. Imaôji, instead of calling the medecine in the puff a specific²⁶ against the cholera, misspelt²⁷ the word cholera, so as to make it simpler; when the man who had employed²⁸ him, went and taxed²⁹ him with this, and asked

* Môshi, the Japanese pronunciation of the name of the Chinese Philosopher *Méng-Tsu*, whom Europeans call *Mencius*.

1. Predigt. 2. gehalten. 3. Gottesdienstes.
4. Reihenfolgen. 5. Vorträge nehmen — in Anspruch. 6. beiwohnen.
7. Lesepult. 8. schlägt. 9. Nachdruck zu verleihen.
10. tritt eine Pause — ein.
11. wir wollen ein Bißchen rauchen.
12. Scherze. 13. treffende Anwandlungen in Bezug auf.
14. Rechtlichkeit. 15. wie beklagenswerth.

16. irre. 17. wegzuwerfen.
18. schwer zu begreifen. 19. mit der Anwendung von.
20. beabsichtige zu reden, predigen.
21. es war einmal. 22. welcher — zum Verkauf anzeigte.
23. zusammengebraut. 24. bat.
25. prahlerische Anzeige; Reklame.
26. probates Mittel. 27. schrieb — anders
28. beauftragt. 29. warf ihm dieses vor.

him why he had done it so? he answered with a smile, "As Kuramaguchi is an approach¹ to the capital from the country, the passers-by are but poor peasants and woodmen² from the hills; if I had written 'cholera' at³ length, they would have been puzzled⁴ by it, so I wrote it in a simple way that should pass⁵ current with every one⁵. Truth itself loses its value if people don't understand it. What does it signify how I spelt the word *cholera*, so long as the efficacy of the medicine is unimpaired?" Now was not that delightful⁶? In the same way the doctrines of the sages are mere⁷ gibberish to women and children, who do not understand them. Now my sermons are not written for the learned. I address⁸ myself to farmers⁹ and tradesmen who, hard-pressed¹⁰ by their daily business, have no time for study; with the wish to make known to them the teachings¹¹ of the sages, and carrying¹² out the ideas of my teacher, I will make my meaning pretty plain by bringing forward examples and quaint¹³ stories. Thus, by¹⁴ blending¹⁴ together the doctrines¹¹ of the Shintô, Buddhist, and other schools, we shall arrive¹⁵ at something near the true principle of things. Now positively, you must not laugh, if I introduce a light story now and then; levity¹⁶ is not my object, I only want to put things in a plain and easy manner.

Well then, the quality which we call benevolence is, in fact, a perfection, and it is this perfection which Mōshi spoke of as the heart of man. With this perfect heart, men, in serving their parents, attain¹⁵ to filial piety; in serving their masters they attain to fidelity¹⁷; and if they treat¹⁸ their wives, their brethren, and their friends in the same spirit, then the principles of the five relations¹⁹ of life will harmonize without difficulty. As²⁰ for putting perfection into practice²⁰, parents have the special duties of parents; children have the special duties of children; husbands have the special duties of husbands; wives have the special duties of wives. It is when all these special duties are performed without a fault, that true benevolence is reached, and that again is the true heart of man.

For example, take this fan²¹. Anyone who sees it, knows it to be a fan; and knowing it to be a fan, no one would think of using it as a pocket-hankerchief: the special use of a fan is for visits of ceremony, or else it is opened in order to raise a cooling breeze; it serves no other purpose. In the same way this reading-desk²² will not serve as a pillow²³; so you see a reading-desk also has its special functions for which you must use it. So if you look at your parents in the light of your parents and treat them with filial piety, that is the special duty of children. That is true benevolence, that is the heart of man. Now although you may think that when I speak in this way, I am speaking of

1. Weg. 2. Holzhauer. 3. ausführlich.
4. in Verlegenheit versetzt.
5. Jedermann verstehen. 6. köstlich.
7. nur Kauderwälsch. 8. rede mit.
9. Bauern und Handelsleute.
10. schwer bedrängt. 11. Lehren der Weisen.
12. durchzuführen. 13. finnreiche.

14. indem wir — miteinander vermengen.
15. erreichen wir Etwas. 16. Leichtfinn.
17. Treue. 18. behandeln.
19. Verhältnisse.
20. was die Ausübungen dieser Vollkommenheit betrifft.
21. Fächer. 22. Lesepult. 23. Kopfkissen.

others and not of yourselves, believe me that the heart of every one of you is pure benevolence. Now I¹ am just taking down your hearts as¹ a shopman² does goods from his shelves³, and pointing⁴ out the good and bad qualities of each: but if you will not lay what I say to your own accounts, but⁵ persist in thinking⁵ that it is⁶ all anybody's business but yours⁶, all my labour will be lost.

Listen, you who answer your parents rudely and cause them to weep; you who bring grief and trouble on your masters; you who cause your husbands to fly⁷ into passions; you who cause your wives to mourn, you who hate your younger brothers and treat your elder brothers with contempt, you who sow sorrow broadcast⁸ over the world: what are you doing but⁹ using your fans as pocket-hankerchiefs and your reading-desks as pillows? I don't mean to say there are any such persons here; still there are plenty of them to be found — say in the back-streets of India for instance. Be so good as to¹⁰ mind what I have said.

When the man that has a perfect heart does that which is imperfect, it is because his heart is warped¹¹ and turned to evil¹¹. This law holds good for all mankind. What says the old song? "When the roaring waterfall is shivered¹² by the night-storm, the moon is¹³ reflected in each scattered¹⁴ drop."* Although there is but one moon, she suffices¹⁵ to illumine¹⁶ each little scattered drop! Wonderful are the laws of heaven! So the principle of benevolence which is but one, illumines all the particles that¹⁷ make up mankind. Therefore I pray you to follow the impulses¹⁸ of your natural heart. Place it before you as a teacher, and study its precepts. Your heart is a convenient teacher to¹⁹ employ, for there is no question of paying fees²⁰, and need to go out in the heat of summer or in the cold of winter to pay visits of ceremony to your master to inquire after his health.

The duty of man has been compared by the wise men of old to a high-road. If you want to go to Yedo or to Nagasaki, if you want to go out to the front of the house or to the back of the house there is a right road to each of these places; if you do not follow the right road, scrambling²¹ over the roofs of houses and through ditches, crossing mountains and desert²² places, you will be utterly lost and bewildered²³. In the same way if a man does that which is not good, he is going astray from the high-road. It is true, that if we do not pay great attention, we shall not be able to follow the right road; fortunately we have heard by

* "The moon looks on many brooks,
The brooks see but one pale moon". — Moore.

1. hole ich Ihre Herzen herunter wie.
2. Ladendiener. 3. Waarenfächer. 4. zeige.
5. sondern darauf beharren, zu denken.
6. alle andern Menschen angeht, Sie aber nicht.
7. in Leidenschaft gerathen. 8. weit und breit.
9. anders als. 10. achte auf.

11. gekrümmt und zum Bösen gewendet.
12. zerzaust. 13. wiederstrahlt sich.
14. zerstreuten. 15. reicht hin. 16. beleuchten.
17. aus dem die Menschheit zusammengesetzt ist.
18. Antrieb. 19. zu Rathe zu ziehen.
20. Honorar. 21. klettern. 22. öde. 23. verwirrt.

tradition the words of the learned Nakazawa Dôni: I will tell you all about that in good time. It happened that once the learned Nakazawa went to preach at Iheda in the province of Sesshin, and lodged with a rich family of the lower class. The master of the house, who was particularly fond of sermons, entertained¹ the preacher hospitably, and summoned² his daughter, a girl some fourteen or fifteen years old, to wait upon him at dinner. This young lady was not only very pretty but also had charming manners; so she arranged bouquets of flowers, and made tea, and played upon the harp, and laid³ herself out³ to please the learned man by⁴ singing songs. The preacher thanked her parents for all this and said, "Really, it must be a very difficult thing to educate a young lady up⁵ to such a pitch⁵ as this." The parents carried⁶ away by their feelings replied: "Yes — when she is married, she will hardly bring shame upon her husband's family. Besides what she did now, she can weave⁷ garlands of flowers round torches⁸, and we have had⁹ her taught⁹ to paint a little." And as they began to show a little conceit¹⁰," the preacher said: "I am sure this is something out¹¹ of the common run¹¹. Of course she knows how to wash and sow, and has learned the art¹² of shampooing¹²?" The master of the house bristled¹³ up at this, and answered: "I may be very poor, but I've not fallen so low as to let my daughter learn shampooing." The learned man smiling, replied: "I think you are making a mistake, when you put¹⁴ yourself into such a rage. No matter whether her family be rich or poor, when a woman is performing¹⁵ her duties in her husband's house, she must look¹⁶ upon her husband's parents as her own. If her honoured father-in-law or mother-in-law fall ill, her being able to plait flowers, and paint pictures, and make tea, will be of no use in the sick-room. To shampoo her parents-in-law and nurse¹⁷ them affectionately, without employing¹⁸ either shampooer or servant-maid, is the right path of a daughter-in-law.

Certainly the harp and guitar are very good things in their way, but to attend to nursing¹⁷ parents is the right road of children. I do not mean to say that the harp and guitar and songs and dramas are useless things. If you listen attentively, all our songs incite¹⁹ to virtue and condemn vice. In the song called "The Four Sleeves²⁰," for instance, there is the passage: "If people knew before hand all the misery it brings, there would be less going out with young ladies to look at the flowers at night."

Please give²¹ your attention to this piece of poetry. When a young man and a young lady set²² up a flirtation²² without the consent of their parents, they think it will be all²³ very delightful²³, and find themselves very much deceived. If they knew what a sad²⁴ and cruel world this is, they would not act as they do. The quo-

1. bewirthete. 2. rief. 3. that ihr Möglichstes.
4. durch Liederfingen. 5. bis zu einem so hohen Grade — zu erziehen. 6. hingerissen.
7. flechten. 8. um Fackeln. 9. lehren lassen.
10. Eitelkeit. 11. ganz Ungewöhnliches.
12. Kunst des Körperfrottirens.

13. fuhr auf bei. 14. gerathen. 15. vollzieht.
16. ansehen. 17. pflegen. 18. zu gebrauchen.
19. ermuntern zu — auf. 20. Ärmel.
21. schenken Sie. 22. eine Liebschaft mit einander anfangen.
23. ganz entzückend. 24. traurige.

tation¹ is from a song² of remorse. This sort of thing happens³ but too often in the world.

When a man marries a wife, he thinks how happy he will be, and how pleasant it will be keeping⁴ house on his own account⁴; but, before the bottom⁵ of the family kettle has been scorched⁶ black, he will be like a man learning⁷ to swim in a field, with his ideas all⁸ turned topsy-turvy⁸, — and, contrary to all expectation, he will find the pleasure of housekeeping⁴ to⁹ be all a delusion⁹.

The poet, who wrote "The Four Sleeves", regarded it as the right path of instruction to convey a warning against vice. But the theatre, and dramas, and fashionable¹⁰ songs, — if the moral they convey¹¹ is missed¹¹, — are a very great mistake. Although you may think it very right and proper that a young lady should practice¹² nothing but the harp and guitar until her marriage, I tell you that it is not so; for if she misses¹³ the moral of her songs and music, there is the danger of¹⁴ her falling in love with some man and eloping¹⁵. While on¹⁶ this subject, I have an amusing story to tell you.

Once upon a time, a frog¹⁷, who lived at Kioto, had long been desirous of going to see Osaka. One Spring, having¹⁸ made up his mind¹⁸, he started¹⁹ off to see Osaka and all its famous places. By a series of hops on²⁰ all fours he reached a temple opposite Nishi-no-Oka, and thence by the western road he arrived at Yamazaki, and began to ascend the mountain called Tenôzan. Now it happened that a frog from Osaka had determined¹⁸ to visit Kioto, and had also ascended Tenôzan, and on the summit the two frogs met, made acquaintance, and told one another their intentions; so they began to complain about all the trouble they had gone²¹ through, and had only arrived half-way after²² all. If they went on to Osaka and Kioto their legs and loins²³ would certainly not hold²⁴ out: here was the famous mountain of Tenôzan, from the top of which the whole of Kioto and Osaka could be seen: if they stood on tiptoe²⁵ and stretched their backs and looked²⁶ at the view²⁶, they would save themselves from stiff legs. Having come to this conclusion, they both stood upon tiptoe and looked about them; when the Kioto frog said: "Really, looking²⁷ at the famous places of Osaka which I have heard so much about, they²⁸ don't seem to me to differ a bit²⁸ from Kioto. Instead of giving myself any further trouble to go on, I shall just return home." The Osaka frog, blinking²⁹ with his eyes, said, with a contemptuous smile, "Well, I have heard a great³⁰ deal of talk about³⁰ this Kioto's being³¹ as beautiful as the flowers, but it is just Osaka over again. We had better go home." And so the two frogs, bowing politely to each other, hopped off home with an important swagger³².

1. Stelle, Citate ist aus. 2. Klage lied.
3. ereignen sich. 4. ein Hausstand für sich zu führen.
5. Boden. 6. schwarz gebrannt.
7. der auf einem trockenen Felde das Schwimmen lernen möchte. 8. ganz in Verwirrung.
9. lauter Täuschung ist. 10. Modelieder.
11. Lehren nicht verstanden wird. 12. sich — üben.
13. nicht versteht. 14. sie sich — verliebt.
15. davon läuft. 16. da ich diesen Gegenstand berühre.

17. Frosch. 18. da er sich entschlossen hatte.
19. brach er auf. 20. auf allen Vieren.
21. gehabt hatten. 22. am Ende. 23. Lenden.
24. ertragen können. 25. Zehenspitzen.
26. die Aussicht betrachteten. 27. wenn ich — betrachte. 28. scheinen sie mir nicht im Geringsten verschieden. 29. blinzeln.
30. sehr viel Geschwätz gehört, daß. 31. sei.
32. Großthuererei.

Now although this is a very funny* little story, you will not understand the drift¹ of it at once. The frogs thought they were looking² in front of them², but as, when they stood upright, their eyes were in the back³ of their heads, each was looking at his native⁴ place all the while that he thought he was looking at the place to which he wished to go. The frogs stared⁵ to any amount⁵, it is true, but then they did not take care that the object looked⁶ at was the right one, and so it was that they fell into error. Please listen attentively. A certain poet says, "Wonderful are the frogs! though they march on all fours in an attitude of humility, their eyes are always turned ambitiously upwards." A delightful poem! Men, although they say with their mouths "Yes, yes. Your wishes shall be obeyed⁷: — certainly, certainly, you are perfectly right," are like frogs with their eyes turned upwards. Vain fools, meddlers⁸, ready to undertake any⁹ job, however much above their power. This is what is called in the text "casting away your heart, and not knowing where to seek for it." Although these men profess to undertake any earthly thing, when it comes to¹⁰ the point, leave them to themselves — they are unequal¹¹ to the task: and if you tell them this, they answer, "By the labour of our own bodies we earn our money, and the food¹² of¹³ our mouths¹³ is of¹⁴ our own getting¹⁴. We are under obligations to no man. If we did not depend on ourselves, how could we live in the world." There are plenty of people who use these words "*myself*" and "*my own*," thoughtlessly and at random¹⁵. How false is this belief that they profess¹⁶! If there were no system of government by superiors¹⁷, but an anarchy, then people who vaunt¹⁸ themselves and their own powers, would not stand¹⁹ for a day.

There are plenty²⁰ of men, who by the benevolence and virtue of their rulers²¹, live in a delightful²² world, and yet, forgetting the mysterious Providence²³ that watches over them, keep²⁴ on singing their own praise. Foolish egotists!" My property amounts²⁵ to five thousand ounces of silver, I may sleep with my eyes turned²⁶ up, and eat and drink and take²⁷ my pleasure, if I live five hundred or seven hundred years. — I have five ware-houses²⁸ and twenty-five other houses. I hold²⁹ other people's bills³⁰ for fifteen hundred ounces of silver." And so he dances a³¹ *fling* for joy, and has no fear that poverty could upon him for fifty or a hundred years. Minds³² like frogs with eyes in the middle of their backs! Foolhardy³³ thoughts! A trusty³⁴ castle of defence³⁴ indeed! How little can it³⁵ be depended upon³⁵! And when such men are sleeping in their beds how little can they tell³⁶ that their houses may not be burned to ashes before morning, or that they may not be swallowed³⁷ up by an earthquake. Such are the chances³⁸ of this fitful³⁹ world!

* lustige. 1. Sinn. 2. blickten vor sich hin.
3. Hintertheil. 4. Vaterstadt.
5. starrten und schauten so gut sie konnten.
6. welchen sie sahen. 7. erfüllt.
8. Raseweise. 9. Alles. 10. zur Ausführung.
11. der Aufgabe nicht gewachsen. 12. Nahrung.
13. die wir im Munde stecken. 14. verdienen wir selbst. 15. auf's gerathewohl. 16. vorgeben.
17. Vorgesetzten. 18. über sich — prahlen.

19. bestehen. 20. genug. 21. Herrscher.
22. reizenden. 23. Vorsehung. 24. fortwährend
posaunen. 25. beträgt. 26. nach oben gewendet.
27. mich belustigen. 28. Waarenlager. 29. besitze.
30. Schuldscheine. 31. einen Hopsier aus lauter
Freude. 32. das sind Geister wie. 33. thörichte.
34. feste Burg, Schloß. 35. man sich darauf ver-
lassen. 36. wissen ob. 37. verschluckt.
38. Zufälle. 39. veränderlichen.

With regard to the danger of over-confidence¹, I have a little tale² to tell you. Be so good as to wake up from drowsiness and listen attentively. There is a certain powerful murex³, the surzaye, with a very strong lid⁴ to its shell. Now this clam⁵, if it hears there is any danger astir⁶, shuts up its shell from within with a loud noise, and thinks itself perfectly safe. One day a snapper⁷ and another fish, lost⁸ in envy at this, said: "What a strong castle this is of yours, Mr. Murex; when you shut up your lid from within, nobody can so much as point a finger at you. A capital figure you make, Sir." When he heard this, the murex, stroking⁹ his beard, replied: "Well, gentlemen, although you are so good as to say so, it's nothing to¹⁰ boast of in the way of safety: still when I shut myself up thus, I do not feel much anxiety." And as he was speaking thus, with the pride that apes¹¹ humility, there came the noise of a great splash, and the murex, shutting up his lid⁴ as quickly as possible, kept quite still, and thought to himself what in the world the noise could be. Could it be a net? Could it be a fish-hook? What a bore it was always having to keep such a sharp look-out! Were the snapper and the other fish caught? he¹² wondered, and he felt quite anxious about¹³ them; however, at¹⁴ any rate, *he* was safe. And so the time passed, and when he thought all was safe, he stealthily¹⁵ opened his shell, slipped¹⁶ out his head, and looked all around him. There seemed to be something wrong, something with which he was not familiar. As he looked a little more carefully, lo and behold, there he was in a fish-monger's shop, with a card marked¹⁷ sixteen cash¹⁸ on his back! Poor shellfish! I think there are some people not unlike him to be found in China and India. How little *self*¹⁹ is to be depended upon¹⁹! There is a moral poem which says: "It is easier to ascend to the cloudy heaven without a ladder than to depend entirely on *oneself*."

This is what is meant²⁰ by the text, "If a man casts his heart from him, he knows not where to seek for it." Think twice upon every thing that you do. In all things examine your own consciences. The examination of your own hearts is above all essential.

Môshi has said, "There is the third finger. If a man's third or nameless finger be bent²¹, so that he cannot straighten²² it, although his bent finger may cause him no pain, still if he hears of some one who can cure it, he will think²³ nothing of undertaking²³ a long journey from *Shin* to *So*²⁴, to consult him upon this deformed finger; for he knows it to²⁵ be hateful to have a finger unlike those of other men: but he cares not a²⁶ jot if his heart be different from that of other men; and this is how men disregard the true order of things.

1. zu großer Zuversicht. 2. Erzählung.
3. Stachelschnecke. 4. Deckel. 5. Muschel.
6. im Anzug. 7. Schnapper.
8. außer sich vor Neid hierüber. 9. streichelnd.
10. worüber man prahlen dürfte hinsichtlich.
11. nachäfft. 12. dachte er. 13. ihretwegen.

14. dem sei wie ihm wolle. 15. verstoßenerweise.
16. steckte. 17. bezeichnet. 18. Heller.
19. man sich auf sein eigenes Ich verlassen kann.
20. angedeutet. 21. frumm. 22. nicht gerade strecken.
23. sich nichts aus — machen. 24. eine alte Grenze von China. 25. häßlich ist. 26. im Geringsten.

If a man is invited¹ out to a feast by his relations or acquaintances, when the guests are assembled, and the principal² part of the feast has disappeared, he looks all around him, with the eyeballs³ starting out³ of his head, and glares⁴ at his neighbours, and comparing⁵ the little titbits⁶ of roast fowl or fish put before them, sees that they are about half an inch bigger than those set⁷ before him⁷; then, blowing⁸ out his chest⁹ with rage, he thinks, "What¹⁰ on earth can the host be about¹⁰? Mr. Sarubê is a guest, but so am I: what does¹¹ the fellow mean by helping me so meanly?" There must be some malice¹² or ill-will here." And thus his¹³ mind is prejudiced¹³ against the host. Just be so good as to reflect upon this. Does a man show his spite¹⁴ by grudging¹⁴ a bit of roast fowl or meat? And yet in such trifles¹⁵ as these do men show how they try to¹⁶ obtain what is great, and show their dislike¹⁷ of what is little. How can men be¹⁸ conscious of shame for¹⁸ a deformed¹⁹ finger, and count²⁰ it for no misfortune that their hearts are crooked²¹? That is how they abandon²² the substance for the shadow.

Môshi severely censures the disregard²³ of the true order²⁴ of things. What mistaken and bewildered²⁵ creatures men are! What says the old song? "Hidden²⁶ far among the mountains, the tree which seems to be rotten²⁷, if its core²⁸ be still alive, may²⁹ be made²⁹ to bear³⁰ flowers." What signifies³¹ it, if the hand or the foot be deformed? The heart is the important thing. If the heart be away³², what³³ though your skin be fair, your nose aquiline³⁴, your hair beautiful³⁵? All these strike³⁶ the eye alone, and are utterly³⁷ useless. It is as if you³⁸ were to put³⁸ dust³⁹ into a gold lacquer⁴⁰ luncheon-box. This is what is called⁴¹ a fair outside, deceptive⁴² in appearance.

There the scullery=maid⁴³ has been washing the pots, and the scullion⁴⁴, Chokichi, comes up and says to her, "You've got a lot⁴⁵ of charcoal smut⁴⁵ sticking to your nose," and points⁴⁶ out to her the ugly spot⁴⁷. The scullery-maid is delighted to be told of this, and answers, "Really, whereabouts⁴⁸ is it?" Then she twists⁴⁹ a towel round her finger, and bending her head until mouth and forehead are almost on⁵⁰ a level, she squints at her nose and twiddles⁵¹ away with her fingers, as if she were the famous Gotô at⁵² work carving⁵² the ornaments of a sword-handle. "I say, Master Chokichi, is it off yet?" "Not a bit of it; you've smeared it all over your cheeks now!" "Oh, dear! oh, dear! where can it be?" and so she uses the water-basin⁵³ as a looking-glass, and washes her face clean.

1. eingeladen. 2. Haupttheil.
3. Augapfel — hervorspringend. 4. starrt — an.
5. indem — vergleicht. 6. Leckerbissen.
7. die ihm gereicht wurden. 8. bläht. 9. Brust.
10. in des Himmels Namen, woran denkt der Wirth!
11. was will der Mensch damit, daß er mich so schlecht bedient? 12. Bosheit oder Uebelwollen.
13. faßt er ein Vorurtheil. 14. Groll dadurch, daß er — mißgönnt. 15. Kleinigkeiten.
16. zu erhaschen. 17. Abneigung gegen.
18. sich schämen wegen. 19. verunstalteten.
20. halte es für kein. 21. krumm.
22. aufgeben. 23. Mißachtung. 24. Ordnung.

25. verwirrte Geschöpfe. 26. verborgen.
27. verfault. 28. Herz, Kern.
29. kann man es dahin bringen, daß er wieder.
30. trägt. 31. macht's aus. 32. fort.
33. was nützt es, daß. 34. schön gebogen.
35. glänzend. 36. fesseln. 37. ganz unnütz.
38. man — thäte. 39. Staub. 40. lackirte Imbißbüchse.
41. nennt. 42. trügerisch in ihrem Glanz.
43. Spülmagd. 44. Küchenjunge.
45. Masse Kohlenschmutz. 46. zeigt. 47. Fleck.
48. wo — denn. 49. dreht — ein Handtuch.
50. auf gerader Linie. 51. reibt und reibt.
52. beschäftigt — zu graviren. 53. Becken.

Then she says to herself, "What a dear-boy, Chokichi is!" and thinks it necessary, out of gratitude, to give him relishes¹ with his supper by² the ladleful, and thanks him over and over again. But if this same Chokichi were to come up to her and say, "Now, really, how lazy you are; I wish you could³ manage to be rather less of a shrew³;" how do you think the scullery-maid would answer then? Reflect for a moment: "Drat⁴ the boy's impudence! If I were of a bad heart or a crooked⁵ disposition, should I be here helping him? You go and be hanged! You see if I take the trouble to wash your shirts any more!" And she gets⁶ to be a perfect devil, less only the horns. There are other people besides the poor scullery-maid, who are in the same way. "Excuse me, Mr. Gundabei, but the embroidered crest⁷ on your dress of ceremony seems to be a little on one side." Mr. Grundabei proceeds⁸ to adjust his dress with great precision. "Thank you, Sir, I am ten million times obliged to you for your care. If ever there should be any matter in which I can be of service to you, I beg you will do me the favour of letting me know," and with beaming⁹ face he expresses his gratitude. Now for the other side of the picture. "Really, Mr. Grundabei, you are very foolish; you don't seem to understand at all. I beg you to be of a frank and honest heart. It really makes one quite sad to see a man's heart warped¹⁰ in this way." What is his answer? He turns his sword in his girdle ready to draw, and plays the devil's tattoo¹¹ on the hilt; it looks as if it must end in fight soon. The fact is, if you help a man in anything that has to do with a fault of the body, he takes it very kindly, and sets¹² about mending matters. If any one helps another to rectify¹³ a fault of the heart, he has to deal with a man in the dark, who flies into a rage and does¹⁴ not care to amend.

Please give¹⁵ me your attention. The master of a certain house called his servant, Chokichi, who sits dozing in the kitchen: "Here, Chokichi! the guests are all gone, come and clear¹⁶ away the wine and fish in the back-room." Chokichi rubs his eyes, and with a sulky¹⁷ answer goes into the back-room, and looking about him, sees all the nice things paraded¹⁸ on the trays¹⁹ and in the bowls. It's wonderful how his drowsiness passes away; no need for any one to hurry him now; his eyes glare²⁰ with greed as he says: Hullo! here's a lot of tempting²¹ things. There's only just one help²² of that omelette left²³ in the tray, — what a hungry lot²⁴ of guests! What's this? It's like fish rissoles²⁵;" and with this he picks²⁶ out one, and crams²⁷ his mouth full, when on one side a mess of young cuttlefish²⁸ in a Chinese porcelain bowl catches²⁹ his eye. There the little beauties sit in a circle like Buddhist priests in religious me-

1. schmackhafte Sachen. 2. Schaumlöffelvollweise.
3. weniger von einer Zänkerin wären.
4. der Teufel hole den unverschämten Burschen.
5. verschrobenen Charakter hätte. 6. wird sie zum.
7. Wappen, Orden. 8. richtet sogleich.
9. strahlenden. 10. verkehrt, verschroben.
11. Zapfenstreich auf den Griff.
12. fängt sogleich an.

13. zu bessern. 14. will sich nicht bessern.
15. schenken. 16. nimm weg. 17. mürrischen.
18. aufgestellt. 19. Präsentirteller.
20. gloßen vor Gierde. 21. anlockenden.
22. Portion. 23. übrig geblieben. 24. Paß.
25. Fischpastetchen.
26. holt — heraus. 27. stopft voll.
28. Tintenfisch. 29. fällt ihm in's Auge.

dition. "Oh dear, how nice!" and just as he is dipping his finger and thumb in, he hears his master's footstep, and knowing that he is doing wrong, he crams¹ his prize into the pocket of his sleeve. and stoops down to take away the wine-kettle and cups, and as he does this, out² tumble the cuttlefish from his sleeve. The master sees it. "What's that?" — Chokichi, pretending³ not to know what has happened, beats the mats and keeps⁴ on saying, "Come again the day before yesterday⁵! come again the day before yesterday!" But it's no use his⁶ trying to persuade his master that the little cuttlefish are spiders⁷, for they are not the least like them. There's no use in hiding things; they are sure to come to light: and so it is with the heart, its purposes will out. If the heart is enraged⁸, the dark veins stand⁹ out on the forehead; if the heart is grieved^{9b}, tears rise to the eyes; if the heart is joyous, dimples appear in the cheeks; if the heart is merry, the face smiles: thus it is that the face reflects¹⁰ the emotions of the heart. It is not because the eyes are filled with tears that the heart is sad; nor because the veins stand out on the forehead that the heart is enraged. It is the heart which leads the way in every thing. All the important sensations of the heart are apparent¹¹ in the outward appearance. In the great learning of Kôshi¹² it is written. "The truth of what is within, is written on the surface¹³." How then is the heart a thing which can be hidden? To answer when reprovèd¹⁴, to hum¹⁵ tunes when scolded, shows a diseased heart; and if this disease is not quickly taken¹⁶ in hand, it will become chronic, and the remedy¹⁷ become difficult; perhaps the disease may be so virulent¹⁸ that even Giba¹⁹ and Heujaku¹⁹ in consultation could not effect²⁰ a cure¹⁷. So, before the disease has gained strength, I invite you to the study of the moral essays entitled, *Shin-gaku* (the learning of the heart). If you once arrive at the possession of your heart as it was originally by nature, what an admirable thing that will be! In that case your conscience will point out to you even the slightest wrong²¹ bias or selfishness. There is another bad²² habit which men have, and which I must mention; so, pray listen attentively: Old and young, men and women, rich and poor, never cease grumbling²³ from morning till night. All this is²⁴ the result²⁴ of a diseased²⁵ heart. In short, for²⁶ the sake of²⁶ a very trifling²⁷ inclination or selfish²⁸ pursuit, they will do²⁹ any wrong²⁹ in trying³⁰ to effect that³⁰ which is impossible. This is want³¹ of judgment, and this brings all sorts of trouble³² upon the world. If once you gain possession of a perfect heart, knowing³³ that which is impossible to be impossible, and acknowledging³⁴ that

1. steckt. 2. herausfällt. 3. indem er vorgibt.
4. wiederholt. 5. ein Zauberspruch, um die Spinnen, welche als Unglück verkündend betrachtet werden, einzuladen, wieder in die griechischen Kalenden zu kommen. 6. daß er versucht.
7. Spinnen. 8. in Wuth.
9. treten — hervor. 9b. traurig.
10. verkündet. 11. sichtbar. 12. Confucius.
13. Oberfläche. 14. getadelt.
15. eine Arie zu summen. 16. abgeholfen.

17. Heilung. 18. bössartig. 19. Ersterer ein berühmter indischer, Letzterer ein chinesischer Arzt.
20. nicht bewirken konnten. 21. schlechter Neigung.
22. schlechte Gewohnheit. 23. zu murren.
24. kommt — her. 25. franken. 26. wegen.
27. geringen Neigung. 28. selbstsüchtigen Verlangens. 29. alles mögliche Unrecht thun.
30. indem sie suchen das zu bewirken.
31. Mangel an Verstand.
32. Plagen über. 33. und wissen. 34. anerkennen.

which is difficult is difficult, you will not attempt to spare yourself trouble* unduly*. What says the *Chin-yo* (the second Book of Confucius)? "The wise man, whether¹ his lot be cast¹ amongst rich or poor, amongst barbarians, or in sorrow, understands his position² by his own instinct." If men do not understand this, they think that the causes³ of pain and pleasure are⁴ in the body. Putting⁵ the heart on one side⁵, they earnestly strive after the comforts⁶ of the body, and launch⁷ into extravagance⁸, the end of which is miserly⁹ parsimony.

While upon this subject, I may tell you a story which was related to me by a friend of mine. It is a story which the master of a certain money-changer's¹⁰ shop used to be very fond of telling. An important part of a money-changer's business is to¹¹ distinguish between good and bad gold and silver. In the different establishments, the way of teaching the apprentices¹² this art varies¹³; however, the plan adopted by the money-changer was as follows: — At first he would show them no bad silver, but daily placed before them good money only. When they had become thoroughly familiar¹⁴ with the sight of good money, if he stealthily put a base¹⁵ coin among the good, he found that they would detect¹⁶ it immediately; they saw it as plain as you see things when you throw light on a mirror. This faculty of detecting base money at¹⁷ a glance was the result¹⁸ of having learnt thoroughly¹⁸ to understand good money. Having once been taught in this way, the apprentices would not make a mistake about a piece of base coin during their whole lives, as I have heard. I can't vouch¹⁹ for the truth of this, but it is very certain, that this principle applied to moral instruction is an excellent one: it is a most safe mode of study. However, I was further told, that if, after having thus learnt to¹¹ distinguish good money, a man followed²⁰ some other trade²¹ for six months or a year, and gave up handling²² money, he would become just like any other inexperienced person — unable to distinguish the good from the base.

Please reflect upon this attentively. If you once render yourself familiar with the nature of the uncorrupted heart, from that time forth you will be immediately conscious of the slightest inclination towards²³ bias or selfishness. And why? Because the natural heart is illumined. In one way or another, everything in this world depends upon the heart. I implore every one of you to take heed that tears fall not to your lot.

Translated from the Japanese by A. B. Mitford.

* die gebührende Mühe.

1. ob es sein Loos sei, zu leben.

2. Lage. 3. Ursachen.

4. liegen.

5. indem sie das Herz bei Seite schieben.

6. Behaglichkeiten. 7. stürzen sich.

8. Verschwendung. 9. elende Armuth.

10. Geldwechsler's Laden.

11. den Unterschied — zu kennen.

12. Lehrlinge. 13. ist verschieden.

14. vertraut. 15. schlechte Münze.

16. entdecken. 17. mit einem Blick.

18. die Folge davon, daß sie gründlich gelernt hatten.

19. behaupten. 20. betrieb.

21. Geschäft. 22. mit — zu handeln.

23. zum (schief) schlecht werden.

C. Curiosity¹ put to the Test.

Once² upon a time², a king, who was hunting³ in a forest, went³ astray. While looking for the way, he heard some persons speaking, and, on approaching the place, he saw a man and woman cutting⁴ wood. Now, the woman said to her husband: "It⁵ must be confess- ed⁵, that our good mother Eve was a great⁶ glutton, otherwise she would not have eaten the apple. If⁷ she had not disobeyed the com- mands⁷ of God, we should not be condemned to work hard every day, and earn our bread in the sweat of our brow⁸." The wood-cutter⁹ replied: "If Eve was a glutton, Adam was a great fool to do what she advised him. If I had been in his place, and you had wished me to eat of the forbidden fruit, I should have given you a good box¹⁰ on the ear¹⁰, and would not even have listened to you."

Just at this moment, the king appeared before them, and said: "It appears you are obliged to work very hard, my poor people? — Yes, Sir," replied they, for they did not know it was the king: "We labour¹¹ hard from morning till night, and yet we are often in great want¹²." — "Come with me, said the king, and you shall have plenty¹³ to eat and drink without labour." Just as he had said this, the officers of his suite¹⁴ came up, and the wood-cutter⁹ and his wife were quite delighted.

When they were in the palace, the king gave them fine clothes, a carriage, and servants; and every day they had twelve dishes¹⁵ at dinner. At¹⁶ the end of a month, instead of twelve dishes, they had twenty-four; but, in the middle of the table there was one which was covered¹⁷. The woman, who was naturally curious, wished to¹⁸ remove the cover, but a servant, who was present, told her, that the king had forbidden any one to touch¹⁹ it, and that he did²⁰ not wish her to see²⁰ what was in it.

When the servants had left the room, the husband remarked that his wife did not eat, and that she was very sad. He asked her what²¹ ailed her, and she replied she had no²² wish to eat of the fine things that were placed upon the table, but that she had a great desire²³ to have something from the covered²⁴ dish." You are very foolish, said her husband, seriously: have you not heard that the king has forbidden us to touch it? — The king! — the king is unjust, replied the wife, for, if he did not wish us to see what was in the dish, he should not have had it placed upon the table." At the same time she began to weep, and declared she would die of²⁵ grief, if her husband would not uncover²⁶ the dish.

When the husband saw his wife weeping, he was greatly touched, and, as he loved her very much, he said he would do whatever she

1. Die Neugierde auf die Probe gestellt.
2. es war einmal. 3. jagte, sich verirrte.
4. hauen. 5. man muß gestehen.
6. sehr gefräßig.
7. wäre sie nicht ungehorsam gegen die Gebote.
8. Angesichts. 9. Holzhauer.
10. tüchtige Ohrfeige.
11. arbeiten. 12. Noth. 13. genug.

14. Gefolges. 15. Gerichte zum.
16. nach Verlauf. 17. zugedeckt.
18. den Deckel wegnehmen.
19. daß man es anrühre.
20. wollte nicht, daß sie sehe.
21. was ihr fehle. 22. keine Lust habe.
23. Verlangen. 24. bedeckten Schüssel.
25. aus Gram. 26. aufdecke.

pleased, provided she would not¹ grieve. Saying these words, he uncovered the dish, and a little mouse jumped² out of it, and ran off in the chamber. They ran after it to catch it, but it hid³ itself in a little hole. At this instant the king entered the room and demanded where was the mouse: "Sire," said the husband, "my wife tormented me to see what was in the dish; I uncovered it against my will, and the mouse has escaped." — "Ah! ah!" said the king. "You said that if you had been in Adam's place, you would have given your wife a good box on the ear: you should have remembered your promise. And you, curious and gluttonous⁴ woman, you had all sorts of good things, like mother Eve, but that wasn't enough for you: you wished to eat of the forbidden dish! Begone⁵: return⁶ to your labour in the woods, and take care how you again reproach⁷ Adam and his wife with a folly which you have just committed⁸ yourselves."

J. S. S. R.

CI. Hodge (hodjch) (Rüdiger) and the Vicar (wiff'r)⁹.

Hodge, a poor honest country lout¹⁰,
Not over-stock'd¹¹ with learning,
Chanc'd¹², on a summer's eve, to meet¹²
The vicar home¹³ returning¹³.

"Ah! master Hodge," the vicar cried,
"What, still as wise as ever¹⁴?
The people in the village say
That you are wondrous clever¹⁵."

"Why¹⁶, master parson¹⁷, as¹⁸ to that¹⁸,
I beg you'll right conceive¹⁹ me,
I²⁰ do *na* brag²⁰, but yet I know
A thing or two, believe me."

"We'll (uihl) try²¹ your skill²²," the parson cried,
For²³ learning what digestion²³:
And this you'll prove, or²⁴ right or wrong,
By²⁵ solving²⁵ me a question:

Noah of old three babies²⁶ had,
Or grown-up²⁷ children rather²⁸;
Shem, Ham, and Japhet, they were call'd:
Now, who was Japhet's father?"

"Rat it²⁹!" cried Hodge, and scratch'd³⁰ his head,
That does my wits belabour³¹:
But howsomde'er³², I'll homeward run,
And *ax*³³ old Giles³⁴ (djchcilß), my neighbour."

1. daß sie sich nicht gräme.
2. sprang heraus. 3. verbarg sich.
4. gefräßige. 5. fort.
6. fehret — zurück.
7. vorwerfen. 8. begangen.
9. Landprediger.
10. Lämmel. 11. überladen. 12. traf zufällig.
13. beim Heimkehren. 14. früher.
15. geschickt. 16. nun. 17. Pfarrer.
18. was das betrifft. 19. verstehen.

20. ich prahle nicht. 21. prüfen.
22. Geschicktheit.
23. for learning, &c., und wie Sie die Gelehrsamkeit verdauen. 24. ob.
25. dadurch, daß Sie — lösen. 26. Säuglinge.
27. aufgewachsene. 28. vielmehr.
29. der Teufel hole es.
30. kratzte sich hinter den Ohren.
31. strengt — an. 32. dessenungeachtet.
33. "ax" falsch für "ask", fragen. 34. Julius.

To Giles he went and put¹ the case²
 With circumspect³ intention:
 "Thou fool," cried Giles, "I'll make it clear
 To thy dull⁴ comprehension⁵."

Three children has Tom Long, the smith,
 Or cattle-doctor⁶ rather;
 Tom, Dick, and Harry, they are call'd:
 Now who is Harry's father?"

"Adzooks⁷! I have it," Hodge replied,
 "Right well I know your lingo⁸;
 Who's Harry's father? stop — here goes!
 Why long Tom Smith, by jingo⁹."

Away he ran to find the priest
 With all his might¹⁰ and main¹¹,
 Who, with good humour, instant put¹
 The question once again:

"Noah of old three babies had,
 Or grown-up children rather;
 Shem, Ham, and Japhet, they were call'd:
 Now, who was Japhet's father?"

"I have it now, Hodge grinning¹² cried,
 I'll answer like a proctor¹³;
 Who's Japhet's father? now I know;
 Why long Tom Smith, the doctor." —

Anon.

CII. What are Doctors and Dentists¹⁴?

Pray¹⁵, Mamma, what is a Dentist?

A dentist, love, makes teeth¹⁶ of bone¹⁷,
 For those whom nature left¹⁸ without¹⁸,
 And finds provision¹⁹ for his own,
 By²⁰ pulling other people's out²⁰.

And, pray, Mamma, what is a Doctor?

Three faces²¹ wears²² the Doctor: when first sought²³
 An angel's; a God's when half the cure is wrought²⁴;
 But when complete²⁵ the cure, he seeks²⁶ his fee²⁷,
 The devil looks²⁸ less terrible than he.

CIII. Diffusion of Books.

If it be true that a wise man, like a good refiner²⁹, can gather gold out of the drossiest³⁰ volume, and that a fool will be a fool with the best book, — yea, or without a book, — there is no reason that we should deprive a wise man of any advantage to his wisdom, while we seek to restrain from a fool that which, being restrained, will be no hindrance to his folly. *Milton.*

1. stellte — vor. 2. Fall. 3. umsichtiger.
 4. trüben. 5. Fassungskraft. 6. Thierarzt.
 7. pokstaufen! 8. Gewälsch. 9. Teufel.
 10. Macht. 11. Kraft. 12. grinzend.
 13. Rechtsgelehrter. 14. Zahnärzte.
 15. bitte. 16. Zähne. 17. aus Knochen.

18. keine gelassen hat. 19. Nahrung.
 20. by pulling — out, durch das Herausreißen
 der Zähne Anderer. 21. Gesicht. 22. hat.
 23. geholt. 24. gemacht. 25. vollkommen.
 26. verlangt. 27. Honorar, Lohn. 28. sieht — aus.
 29. Goldreiniger. 30. schlechtesten Buch.

CIV. The Star¹ of Destiny.

A TRUE TALE OF THE WAR IN AFFGHANISTAN.

Orders had been issued² for³ the march of troops into Affghanistan, a large⁴ body of forces⁴ had already moved⁵ northwards, with the baggage, and were some days' march on their road towards Cabul. The last evening before the departure of the last detachment had arrived, and the officers who were⁶ to accompany it, twenty-two in number, were seated at a gay supper in a large tent. At the table, loaded⁷ with the profuse⁸ abundance⁹ of an Indian meal¹⁰, the moonlight, for it was a perfectly cloudless and most brilliant night, glanced¹¹, mixed with and overcoming¹² the artificial lights, upon the uniforms, the bright locks, and the fair complexions of the British officers, most of whom of this detachment were young men, some almost boys, contrasted¹³ with the dusky¹⁴ folds of their tent, and the dark forms of their Indian attendants¹⁵, who moved¹⁶ to and fro in their service, about the doors of the tent. One swarthy¹⁷ figure alone stood motionless, and apparently engaged¹⁸ in listening¹⁹ to every word of the gay discourse of the young soldiers, all eager²⁰ to take²¹ the field, ardent²² for honour and for excitement of any kind.

"I wish we knew a little of the fellows²³ we²⁴ are going to fight²⁴," said one young soldier: "they don't seem like any thing, we have seen yet²⁵, and they say their dialect is something quite different to²⁶ any thing we know of here. It is too bad, after all the pains I have taken at Sandhurst, and coming²⁷ out, and with my moonshee²⁸ here, to find all my trouble will be of no use²⁹ in Affghanistan, and we shall not know, when a fellow cries out, whether he is surrendering³⁰ himself, or telling you where his diamonds are hidden."

The dark figure I have spoken of advanced³¹ from the door of the tent to the circle of young Englishmen.

"Do not," said he in a solemn and thrilling³² tone, which immediately arrested³³ the attention even of the gayest and most careless of his auditors, "do not believe that the accents you will hear from the lips of an Affghan will be a prayer for mercy³⁴, or the offer of his treasures to save a life which the demons themselves watch³⁵ over³⁵; but if you knew by whom the prayers of vengeance which will burst³⁶ from Affghan lips will be heard, and who will listen with delight to those accents well known to them, you would long³⁷ for the power to make them pass from your shuddering senses³⁷.

1. Schicksals-Stern. 2. erlassen.
3. for the march of, daß — nach marschieren.
4. a large body, &c., bedeutendes Armeekorps.
5. gerückt. 6. sollten. 7. gehäuft.
8. verschwenderischen. 9. Ueberfluß.
10. Mahles. 11. schien hell. 12. überstrahlend.
13. stachen — sehr ab. 14. düstern. 15. Dienern.
16. hin und her gingen. 17. schwarzbraun.
18. beschäftigt. 19. zu belauschen. 20. eifrig.
21. zu rücken. 22. gierig. 23. Kerlen.
24. we are, &c, gegen die wir uns bald schlagen müssen. 25. bis jetzt.

26. (Siehe Anm. 41. S. 124).
27. coming out, nach der Plage der Reise von England hierher.
28. Lehrer, Dolmetscher. 29. mir Nichts nützen.
30. ergibt, die Waffen streckt.
31. trat näher. 32. durchdringenden.
33. auf sich zog. 34. Schonung.
35. über — wachen. 36. hervorbrechen.
37. you would long, &c., so würden Sie sich die Macht sehnlichst wünschen, dieselben (die Töne) von Ihren entsehten Sinnen verschwinden zu machen.

Even (fogar) the name of the city you march to is fatal¹. When Solomon the greatest king then upon the earth, repaid² Hiram, King of Tyre, for his cedar-trees and his gold with the princely gift³ of twenty cities, and they pleased not Hiram, look⁴ in the First Book of Kings in the Old Testament of the Christian Scriptures⁵, what Hiram called the gift."

The youngest of the party, William Howard (haur'd), desirous⁶ to know what⁷ was alluded to⁷, drew from his breast pocket a little bible. He had faithfully kept⁸ the last promise he had made to his mother, always to carry⁹ this little bible, her last gift³ to him, next his heart. He read in the thirteenth verse of the ninth chapter of the first Book of Kings: "What cities are these which thou hast given me, my brother? And he called them the land of Cabul unto this day." The bible young Howard's mother had given him had marginal¹⁰ notes¹⁰, in which he saw Cabul was translated, *displeasing* or *dirty*.

"Even¹¹ so; and though those cities stand in Judea, yet here in Hindostan, does¹² the same name bear the same dark signification. Listen¹³ to me, and learn what¹⁴ enemies¹⁴ you will have to deal¹⁵ with, learn the true origin off the Affghan race, the children of a mighty monarch while¹⁶ he walked¹⁷ uprightly¹⁷, and the dearly beloved heirs of the demon tongue. When Saul, the son of Kish, was chosen from his father's sons to be king over Israel, because he was the most goodly¹⁸ and the strongest of his race, his ambition, inflamed by the prize¹⁹ so easily obtained²⁰, soared²¹ to lofty and forbidden things, after his love for earthly power had been fully satisfied²². Remember the witch²³ of Endor!"

The young men looked with increasing interest and attention on this strange narrator.

"The longings²⁴ of Saul were gratified²² even here as they had been before, and he obtained power and mastery even over the demons. Night and day did his demon slaves toil²⁵ at his bidding²⁶ to build the palace his pride delighted in; it was²⁷ to excel²⁸ in riches and in workmanship²⁹, and the demon art³⁰ was tasked³¹ by their unfaltering³² master to complete it. But long was the toil, and heavy the labour his will required³³, and the days of Saul drew towards their close³⁴. To hasten³⁵ the work, he bade his eldest born, Prince Affghan, labour with the demons, to increase their exertions; and to render³⁶ him able³⁶ to communicate³⁷ with these slaves, he taught Prince Affghan the demon tongue. Yet all was far from com-

1. Unheil verkündend. 2. bezahlte.

3. Gabe, Geschenk. 4. schlagen Sie — nach.

5. Bibel. 6. der — wünschte.

7. *what was, &c.*, die Sache, worauf hingedeutet wurde. 8. gehalten.

9. bei sich zu führen. 10. Randanmerkungen.

11. ganz richtig. 12. *does bear*, hat.

13. hören Sie — an.

14. was für Feinde es sind, mit denen.

15. zu thun, kämpfen. 16. so lang.

17. rechtlich handelte. 18. schönste.

19. Preis, die hohe Stellung.

20. erhalten, errungen.

21. strebte nach.

22. befriedigt fogar. 23. Here.

24. Wünsche, Verlangen.

25. müheten sich — ab. 26. Befehl.

27. sollte. 28. Alles übertreffen.

29. Schönheit der Arbeit. 30. Kunst.

31. war tüchtig in Anspruch genommen.

32. unermüdlichen. 33. verlangte.

34. Schluß. 35. zu beschleunigen.

36. *to render, &c.*, ihn in den Stand zu setzen.

37. sich verständlich zu machen.

pletion¹, when the Angel of Death stood before Saul and demanded of him his soul. The monarch bowed² his knee before a monarch more powerful than himself, and besought of him the boon³ to spare⁴ him yet a while; to pass away from him for a season, till his palace was completed; for well Saul knew that his demon workmen would obey⁵ no presence⁶ but his own⁶. But the Angel of Death said: "Lo! to no man living have I said, thou shalt follow me, and he said nay; and thou must follow me likewise. But for⁷ thy power and thy wisdom, for it is much, and like unto mine own, will I grant⁸ thee this thing, thy earthly form shall remain unto⁹ the eye⁹ as though thy soul were in it, when it is away with me, and the demons shall believe thou livest and shall labour at thy palace."

"So the dead Saul stood, night and day, propped¹⁰ upon his staff before his palace as the living Saul had done, and the demons believed that he lived, and laboured on. But the white ants¹¹ came, and grew bold¹² as he moved not, and they devoured¹³ the wood of the staff on which the dead Saul leaned¹⁰, and the staff crumbled¹⁴ and fell down, and the dead body of King Saul fell also, then the demons saw and knew that their master was dead, and they gave one loud shout of triumph, so that such a sound was never heard before, and they fled¹⁵ home. And Prince Affghan left the unfinished palace, which he had no workmen to complete, and wandered into Affghanistan, where he founded¹⁶ a great kingdom, and all his children and his subjects spoke his tongue, which is the tongue of the demon.

"So we are to fight with the friends of the demons, who, no doubt, will lend¹⁷ their help¹⁷ to their allies, and give the word of command in this exquisite tongue which none of us understand. It is hardly fair¹⁸ play¹⁸, especially as I dare say these delightful foes¹⁹ of ours are informed first by their allies which of us are²⁰ to fall before them. We will try what mortal²¹ steel and lead will do to battle²² against their prophecies."

"At this instant," said the stranger, "the demons know well which of you will fall in battle with the Affghans; and it is granted to mortal eye to share²³ in this knowledge; the powers of nature, invisible in their origin, are²⁴ so subject in this visible world, and each of you may read his doom²⁵ of death or life for himself, and with the eye of flesh."

"Are we to see our apparitions²⁶ pass before us?" asked two or three officers at once.

The stranger without replying led the way out of the tent into the open air. All the officers followed, curious to see the end of

1. Vollendung. 2. beugte. 3. Gnade.
4. zu verschonen. 5. gehorchen.
6. *no presence*, &c., Niemand — außer ihm selbst. 7. wegen. 8. gönnen.
9. *unto*, &c., dem Auge, dem Schein nach.
10. gestützt auf. 11. Ameisen. 12. dreist.
13. fraßen. 14. zerbröckelte. 15. flohen.

16. gründete. 17. *lend*, &c., Hilfe leisten.
18. ehrliches Spiel. 19. Feinde.
20. *are to fall*, fallen sollen. 21. irdisch.
22. kämpfen. 23. Theil zu nehmen an.
24. *are so subject*, sind so weit zugänglich.
25. Bestimmung.
26. Geister.

this curious kind of eastern¹ fortune-telling², as they esteemed³ it. Words of admiration broke from some of them at the remarkable beauty of the night. Nothing could be more resplendent⁴ than the sky, every star was visible, not the slightest rack⁵ of cloud dimmed⁶ the full effulgence⁷ of light. The stranger pointed to the northern quarter of the heavens.

There is a star there," said he, "the ray⁸ of life and light from which⁸ does⁹ not reach the eye⁹ that¹⁰ will not long be quickened¹¹ by the universal principle of life. The first failing¹² in the powers¹³ of life is here; the eye that can see this star, may sparkle¹⁴ long and brightly; but for him who sees it not; the shadow of the Angel of Death lies black upon the snow of Affghanistan."

It was the "Star of Destiny" of which he spoke.

"Show us the star", was the universal cry¹⁵ from his listeners.

"You see that great bright star to which I point¹⁶?"

"Yes, distinctly; is that the Star of Destiny? we all see it."

"A little to the left of that star, just above it, is a smaller star — who sees that?"

Silence ensued; many, after a long and anxious¹⁷ gaze¹⁸, declared finally that they did not see it, and believed it was all a hoax¹⁹; several said they had a long sight, as was well known to their friends around them, they saw all the stars they were accustomed²⁰ to²⁰ as brilliantly as possible, more clearly than usual; it was impossible there should be a star in the place indicated²¹ to them; one or two, on the contrary, declared they certainly saw the star, repeatedly and clearly; there was no imposition on²² the part of the stranger, the star was certainly shining brightly, exactly in the spot²³ described, but the seers²⁴ were much in the minority²⁵.

The stranger himself expressed²⁶ surprise at the great proportion²⁷ of those who professed²⁸ themselves unable to see it. Finally, it was²⁹ agreed²⁹ that the names of each party, those who did not see, and those who saw the star, should be written down, and delivered to³⁰ the keeping³⁰ of a civilian³¹ in Bombay, that the results of the Affghanistan expedition might decide the question of the "Star of Destiny."

Of the party of twenty-two, there were found eighteen of the former and only four of the latter. The name of William Howard was in the first list. The spirits³² of the party who had a slight tincture³³ of superstition were much raised³⁴ by finding that the proportion of non-seers was so much larger. It far³⁵ exceeded³⁵ any proportion²⁷ of British officers who had hitherto fallen in open warfare³⁶ in India, and they were³⁷ too confident³⁷ in British power,

1. morgenländischer. 2. Wahrsagung. 3. ansahen.
4. glänzend. 5. Spur. 6. trübte. 7. Glanz.
8. *from which the ray*, dessen Strahl.
9. *does, &c.*, dem Auge nicht erreicht. 10. welches.
11. belebt. 12. Abnehmen, Verschwinden. 13. Kraft.
14. funkeln, leuchten. 15. Ausruf.
16. zeige. 17. ängstlichen. 18. Hinblicken.
19. Schwanf, Aufzueherei (daß man sie nur zum Besten hatte). 20. gewöhnlich sahen.

21. angedeutet. 22. *on the part*, Seitens.
23. Stelle. 24. Seher. 25. Minderzahl.
26. drückte — aus über. 27. Zahlen-Verhältniß.
28. sich als — bekannten, erklärten.
29. beschlossen. 30. *to the &c.*, zur Aufbewahrung.
31. Civilisten, Rechtsgelehrten. 32. Gemüther.
33. Anstrich. 34. aufgemuntert.
35. übertraf bei weitem. 36. Krieg.
37. *were to, &c.*, hatten ein zu großes Vertrauen.

to believe it could be realized. The faith¹ of the whole party in the prophecy being much damped by this great disproportion, which seemed to deprive² the question to be resolved³ of its probability and of its zest⁴, the whole group returned to the tent. Just at the door, William Howard looked back at the place where he had endeavoured in vain to see the "Star of Destiny."

"It is strange", said he, "but I see the star now, though I could not before, yet there was no cloud, I see it clearly and steadily⁵."

"Write down what the young man says on the sheet⁶ you leave in Bombay," said the stranger. "Your thread of life will be bruised⁷ but not broken; I rejoice in it⁸."

But four months had passed from the time I have spoken of, from the departure of this portion of the British troops for Cabul, when a wretched, solitary figure crawled⁹ in¹⁰ the utmost exhaustion¹⁰ into Jellalabad. His limbs, torn¹¹ by the hardships¹² of the road, bleeding from many wounds, his clothes rent¹³, burned by the sun, and blinded by the snow he had passed through, William Howard, the sole¹⁴ survivor of the gallant band who were cut to pieces¹⁵ at Ingdulluk, rushed¹⁶ into the arms of his fellow soldiers, which were eagerly¹⁷ opened to receive him. The first bearer¹⁸ of the dreadful tidings¹⁹ of the fate of our arms in Affghanistan, he was eagerly²⁰ questioned, but he could only assure²¹ them of the safety of four officers of his detachment, who had been given²² up²² as hostages²³ before leaving Cabul, when the surgeon enjoining²⁴ silence, commenced the examination of his wounds.

"I think none are very deep", said poor Howard; "the last ball I received from an Affghan would have shot²⁵ through my heart, but something hard in my breast-pocket here, deadened²⁶ it."

"How providential²⁷!" cried the surgeon, as he drew out the Affghan's ball from the singed²⁸ and blackened leaves of a little red Morocco book next Howard's heart.

It was the Bible his mother had given him. He sank on his knees in prayer as he kissed its pages.

Reader, for the truth of the tale I have related, I appeal²⁹ confidently to the recollections of many officers who have served in India in the Affghanistan war, and elsewhere³⁰ before it commenced. The tradition³¹ of the origin of the Affghan race and language is from their own lips: and the Indian belief³² in the "Star of Destiny," is known from the natives by many Europeans, though I purposely³³ forbear³⁴ giving any further clue³⁵ to it. The party of twenty-two officers who agreed to test³⁶ the truth of the tale they heard, in their own persons, eighteen of whom failed to see it, just before being³⁷

1. the faith — being much damped, da der Glaube — sehr vermindert war.

2. zu berauben. 3. zu lösende. 4. Reiz.

5. bestimmt 6. Bogen Papier.

7. zerquetscht. 8. in it, darüber. 9. froh.

10. in the, &c., gänzlich erschöpft.

11. zerfleischt. 12. Mühseligkeiten.

13. zerrissen. 14. einzige.

15. cut to pieces, zerhauen. 16. warf sich.

17. liebevoll. 18. Ueberbringer.

19. Nachricht. 20. mit Begierde.

21. versichern. 22. ausgeliefert. 23. Geißel.

24. befohl. 25. gegangen. 26. schwächte sie.

27. glücklich. 28. versengten.

29. berufe ich mich. 30. sonst wo.

31. Ueberlieferung, Sage. 32. Glaube.

33. vorsätzlich. 34. unterlasse. 35. Spur.

36. prüfen. 37. gerufen wurden.

called³⁷ upon active service, and four distinctly saw it, the writing down of their names, the death of those eighteen, ten by the sword, and eight by illness, the survival of their four companions — all these are true.

New Monthly Magazine.

CV. The Largest Flower, and Largest Bird.

In 1818, Doctor Arnold discovered in the island of Summatra a flower which he named the *Rafflesia Arnoldi**, and which an author has called with much justice “the magnificent Titan of the vegetable¹ kingdom¹.” The human mind had indeed never conceived² such a flower: the circumference of the full expanded³ flower is *nine feet*, — its nectarium⁴ calculated⁵ to hold⁶ nine pints, — the pistils⁷ are as large as cow’s horns, and the entire weight of the blossom computed⁵ to be 15^{lbs.} (pounds).

Temple in his recent⁸ Travels in Peru, states⁹ that he shot a condor, and from notes¹⁰ taken¹¹ on the spot¹², gives us the following dimensions¹³ of its size: “When the wings are spread¹⁴, they measure forty feet in extent, from point¹⁵ to point; the feathers are twenty feet in length, and the quill¹⁶ part eight inches in circumference.”

This almost realizes the fabled *roc* of Sinbad in the “Arabian Nights”; but its dimensions, as here given, rest on good and very recent authority.

CVI. Yorick’s Death.

A few hours before *Yorick* breathed¹⁷ his last, *Eugenius* (ju-δſchihnjeſ) stepped¹⁸ in with an intent to take his last sight and farewell of him. Upon his drawing *Yorick’s* curtain¹⁹, and asking how he felt²⁰ himself, *Yorick* looked up in his face, took²¹ hold of²¹ his hand, — and after thanking him for the many tokens²² of his friendship to him, for which he said, if it was their fate to meet hereafter²³, — he would thank him again and again, — he told him, he was²⁴ within a few hours of²⁵ giving his enemies the slip²⁶ for ever. I hope not, answered *Eugenius*, with tears trickling²⁷ down his cheek, and with the tenderest tone that ever man spoke, — I hope not, *Yorick*, said he. — *Yorick* replied with a look²⁸ up²⁸, and a gentle squeeze²⁹ of *Eugenius’s* hand, and that was all, — but it cut³⁰ *Eugenius* to the heart. — Come, — come, *Yorick* quoth³¹ *Eugenius*, wiping his eyes, and summoning³² up the man within him³², my dear lad³³, be comforted, — let not all thy spirits³⁴ and fortitude forsake thee at this crisis when thou most wantest³⁵ them; —

* *The Javanese*, with less vanity, but more correctly, call this flower: *Ambun Amboon*, that is: the flower of flowers, or the giant flower. *Ed.*

1. Pflanzenreichs. 2. vermuthet, daß es — gäbe.
3. entfalten. 4. Kelch. 5. berechnet.
6. zu fassen. 7. Pistill, Staubfäden.
8. neulich. 9. gibt an. 10. Notizen.
11. geschrieben. 12. Stelle. 13. Maß.
14. ausgebreitet. 15. Spitze. 16. Kiel, Poſe.
17. *breathed his last*, seinen letzten Athemzug that, holte. 18. kam herein.

19. Bettvorhang. 20. befände. 21. faſte.
22. Beweiſe. 23. in der anderen Welt.
24. *was within*, binnen.
25. *of giving*, würde. 26. im Stiche laſſen.
27. lieſen. 28. Blick aufwärts. 29. Druck.
30. ging. 31. ſagte.
32. *summoning up*, &c., ſich faſſend.
33. Freund. 34. Muth. 35. bedarfft.

who knows what resources¹ are in store¹, and what the power of God may yet do for thee? — *Yorick* laid his hand upon his heart, and gently shook his head. — For my part, cried *Eugenius*, crying² bitterly as he uttered the words, — I³ declare³ I know not, *Yorick*, how to part with thee; and would gladly⁴ flatter my hopes, added⁵ *Eugenius*, cheering⁶ up his voice, that there is still enough⁷ left of thee⁷ to make a bishop, and that I may live to see it. — I beseech thee, *Eugenius*, quoth *Yorick*, taking off his night-cap as well as he could with his left hand, — his right being still grasped⁸ close⁹ in that of *Eugenius*, — I beseech thee to¹⁰ take a view of¹⁰ my head. — I see nothing that ails¹¹ it, replied *Eugenius*. Then alas! my friend, said *Yorick*, let me tell you, that 'tis too bruised¹² and mis-shapen¹³ with the blows which N— and X—, and some others have so unhandsomely¹⁴ given me in the dark, that I might say with Sancho Pansa, that should I recover¹⁵, and "Mitres¹⁶ there-upon¹⁷ be suffered¹⁸ to rain down upon¹⁹ it from heaven as thick as hail, not one of them would fit²⁰ it. — *Yorick's* last breath²¹ was hanging upon his trembling lips ready to depart as he uttered this; — yet still it was uttered with something of a *Cervantic* tone; and as he spoke it, *Eugenius* could perceive a stream of lambent²² fire lighted²³ up²³ for a moment in his eyes; — faint picture of those flashes²⁴ of his spirit, which (as *Shakspeare* says of his ancestor) were²⁵ wont²⁵ to set the table²⁶ in a roar²⁷!

Eugenius was convinced from this, that the heart of his friend was broken; he squeezed his hand, — and then walked softly out of the room, weeping as he walked. *Yorick* followed *Eugenius* with his eyes to the door, — he then closed them, and never opened them more.

He lies buried in the corner of his church-yard, in the parish of N—, under a plain marble slab²⁸, which his friend *Eugenius*, by²⁹ leave²⁹ of his executors, laid upon his grave, with no more than these words of inscription³⁰, serving³¹ both for his epitaph³² and elegy³³:

Alas, poor YORICK!

Ten times a day has *Yorick's* ghost the consolation to hear the monumental³² inscription³² read with such a variety of plaintive³⁴ tones, as denote³⁵ a general pity and esteem for him; a footway crossing³⁶ the church-yard close by the side of his grave, — not a passenger³⁷ goes by without stopping to cast a look upon it, — and sighing as he walks on,

Alas, poor YORICK!

Sterne.

1. resources, &c., für Hülfe es noch gibt.
2. weinend. 3. wahrhaftig. 4. gern.
5. fügte — hinzu. 6. aufheiternd.
7. enough left of thee, genug von Dir übrig, um daraus. 8. geschlossen.
9. fest. 10. take, &c., zu besichtigen.
11. fehlt. 12. sehr gequetscht. 13. verunstaltet.
14. unziemlich. 15. mich erhole.

16. Bischofsmütze. 17. sogleich. 18. erlaubt.
19. darauf. 20. ihm passen. 21. Athemzug.
22. sanftes, vorübergehendes. 23. flammte.
24. Witzfunken. 25. pflegten.
26. Gesellschaft. 27. Gelächter. 28. Platte.
29. mit Erlaubniß. 30. Inschrift. 31. diente.
32. Grabchrift. 33. Grablied. 34. kläglich.
35. zeigen von. 36. führt durch. 37. Wanderer.

CVII. The Broken Heart.

I never heard
Of any true affection, but 'twas nipt
With care, that, like the caterpillar, eats
The leaves of the spring's sweetest book, the rose.
Middleton.

"The heart that once truly loves never forgets,
But as fondly loves on to the close." *Moore.*

It is a common practice¹ with those who have outlived the susceptibility² of early feeling, or have been brought up in the gay heartlessness of dissipated³ life, to laugh at all love stories, and to treat⁴ the tales of romantic passion as mere fictions of novelists and poets. My observations on human nature have induced⁵ me to think otherwise. They have convinced me, that however the surface⁶ of the character may be chilled⁷ and frozen⁸ by the cares of the world, or cultivated⁹ into mere smiles by the arts of society, still¹⁰ there are dormant¹¹ fires lurking¹² in the depths¹³ of the coldest bosom, which, when once enkindled, become impetuous¹⁴, and are sometimes desolating in their effects. Indeed, I am a true believer in the blind deity, and go¹⁵ to the full extent of his doctrines¹⁵. Shall I confess it? — I believe in broken hearts, and the possibility of dying of disappointed¹⁶ love. I do not, however, consider it a malady often fatal¹⁷ to my own sex; but I firmly believe that it withers¹⁸ down many a lovely woman into an early grave.

Man is the creature of interest and ambition. His nature leads him forth¹⁹ into the struggle and bustle²⁰ of the world. Love is but the embellishment²¹ of his early life, or a song piped²² in the intervals²³ of the acts²³. He seeks for fame, for fortune, for space in the world's thought²⁴, and dominion over his fellow²⁵ men. But a woman's whole life is a history of the affections²⁶. The heart is her world: it is there her ambition strives²⁷ for empire²⁸; it is there her avarice²⁹ seeks for hidden treasures. She sends forth her sympathies on³⁰ adventure; she embarks³¹ her whole soul in the traffic³² of affection; and if shipwrecked³³, her case³⁴ is hopeless — for it is a bankruptcy³⁵ of the heart.

To a man the disappointment of love may occasion some bitter pangs³⁶: it wounds some feelings of tenderness — it blasts³⁷ some prospects of felicity; but he is an active being — he can dissipate³⁸ his thoughts in the whirl²⁰ of varied occupation, or can plunge³⁹ into the tide of pleasure; or, if the scene of disappointment be too full of

1. Gewohnheit. 2. Empfänglichkeit.
3. zerstreut. 4. betrachten.
5. veranlaßt. 6. Oberfläche. 7. erstarrt.
8. abgestumpft. 9. geformt, gezwungen.
10. doch. 11. schlafend. 12. versteckt.
13. Tiefe. 14. ungestüm.
15. go to, &c., und glaube völlig alle ihre Lehren.
16. ausgetauscht.
17. tödtlich. 18. bringt. 19. hinaus.
20. Gewühl. 21. Schmuck.
22. gesungen.

23. zwischen den Akten. 24. Gedanken.
25. Nebenmenschen.
26. Liebe, Zuneigungen.
27. strebt nach.
28. Herrschaft.
29. Habgier. 30. um — aufzusuchen.
31. schiffst — ein, legt an.
32. im Handel mit. 33. gescheitert.
34. Lage, Fall. 35. Bankerott.
36. Pein, Stacheln. 37. zerstört.
38. zerstreuen. 39. sich stürzen.

painful associations¹, he can shift² his abode³ at will⁴, and, taking as⁵ it were the wings of the morning, can “fly to the uttermost⁶ parts of the earth and be⁷ at rest.”

But woman's is comparatively a fixed⁸, a secluded, and a meditative life. She is more the companion of her own thoughts and feelings; and if they are⁹ turned to ministers⁹ of sorrow, where shall she look¹⁰ for consolation? Her lot¹¹ is to be¹² wooed¹² and won; and if unhappy in her love, her heart is like some fortress that has been captured¹³, and sacked¹⁴, and abandoned¹⁵, and left desolate¹⁶.

How many bright eyes grow dim — how many soft cheeks grow pale — how many lovely forms fade¹⁷ away into the tomb, and none can tell the cause that blighted¹⁸ their lovelines! As the dove will clasp¹⁹ its wing to its sides, and cover and conceal the arrow that is²⁰ preying on its vitals²⁰, so it is²¹ the nature of woman to hide from the world the pangs of wounded affection. The love of a delicate female²² is always shy and silent. Even when fortunate, she scarcely breathes²³ it to herself; but when otherwise²⁴, she buries it in the recesses²⁵ of her bosom, and there lets it cower²⁶ and brood²⁷ among the ruins of her peace²⁸. With her the desire of her heart has failed. The great charm of existence is at an end. She neglects all the cheerful²⁹ exercises³⁰ which gladden³¹ the spirits³², quicken³³ the pulses, and send the tide³⁴ of life in healthful currents³⁵ through the veins³⁶. Her rest is broken — the sweet refreshment of sleep is poisoned by melancholy dreams — “dry sorrow drinks her blood,” until her enfeebled³⁷ frame³⁸ sinks under the slightest injury³⁹. Look⁴⁰ for her⁴⁰, after a little while, and you find friendship weeping over her untimely⁴¹ grave, and wondering that one, who but lately glow-ed⁴² with all the radiance⁴³ of health and beauty, should so speedily be brought down to “darkness and the worm.” You⁴⁴ will be told⁴⁴ of some wintry chill⁴⁵, some casual⁴⁶ indisposition, that laid⁴⁷ her low⁴⁷; — but no one knows the mental malady that previously sap-ped⁴⁸ her strength, and made her so easy a prey to the spoiler⁴⁹.

She is like some tender tree, the pride and beauty of the grove⁵⁰; graceful in its form, bright in its foliage⁵¹, but with the worm preying⁵² at its heart. We find it suddenly withering⁵³, when it should be most fresh and luxurious. We see it drooping⁵⁴ its branches to the earth, and shedding⁵⁵ leaf by leaf; until, wasted⁵⁶ and perished⁵⁷ away⁵⁷, it falls even in the stillness of the forest; and as we muse⁵⁸ over the beautiful ruin, we strive in vain to

1. Erinnerungen. 2. ändern.
3. Aufenthalt. 4. nach Belieben.
5. *as it were*, so zu sagen. 6. entferntesten.
7. *be at rest*, Ruhe finden. 8. festgesetztes.
9. *are turned, &c.*, Diener — geworden sind.
10. suchen. 11. Loos.
12. daß man sich um sie bewirbt. 13. erobert.
14. geplündert. 15. Preis gegeben. 16. verwüstet.
17. weilen dahin. 18. zu Grunde richtete.
19. drückt. 20. *is preying, &c.*, an ihrem Leben nagt.
21. liegt es in der. 22. Mädchen.
23. gesteht — ein. 24. unglücklich. 25. Tiefe.
26. fauern. 27. brüten. 28. Seelenruhe.

29. erheitend. 30. Zeitvertreib, Beschäftigung.
31. aufmuntern. 32. Gemüth. 33. beleben.
34. Fluth. 35. Strömen. 36. Adern.
37. geschwächte. 38. Gestalt.
39. nachtheiligen Einfluß. 40. sucht man sie.
41. frühzeitig. 42. blühte. 43. Glanz.
44. *you will, &c.*, man wird Ihnen erzählen.
45. Erkältung, Schauer. 46. zufällig.
47. sie tödtete. 48. untergrub.
49. Verderber, Tod. 50. des Hains.
51. Laub. 52. nagend. 53. verweltend.
54. hängend. 55. abwerfend. 56. abgezehrt.
57. vernichtet. 58. nachsinnen.

recollect the blast¹ or thunderbolt that could have smitten² it with³ decay³.

I have seen many instances⁴ of women running⁵ to waste⁵ and self-neglect⁶, disappearing gradually from the earth, almost as if they had been exhaled⁷ to heaven; and have repeatedly fancied⁸ that I could trace⁹ their death through the various declensions¹⁰ of consumption¹¹, cold, debility¹², langour¹³, melancholy, until I reached the first symptom of disappointed love. But an instance⁴ of the kind was lately told me; the circumstances are well known in the country where they happened¹⁴, and I shall but give them in the manner in which they were related.

Every one must recollect the tragical story of young E—*, the Irish patriot; it was too touching¹⁵ to be soon forgotten. During the troubles¹⁶ in Ireland he was tried¹⁷, condemned, and executed, on a charge¹⁸ of treason. His fate made a deep impression on public sympathy. He was so young — so intelligent¹⁹ — so generous — so brave — so every thing that we are apt²⁰ to like in a young man. His conduct under trial²¹, too, was so lofty²² and intrepid²³. The noble indignation with which he repelled²⁴ the charge¹⁸ of treason against his country — the eloquent vindication²⁵ of his name — and his pathetic appeal²⁶ to posterity, in the hopeless hour of condemnation — all these entered²⁷ deeply into every generous bosom, and even his enemies lamented the stern policy that dictated²⁸ his execution.

But there was one heart, whose anguish it would be impossible to describe. In happier days and fairer fortunes, he had won the affections of a beautiful and interesting girl, the daughter of a late²⁹ celebrated Irish barrister³⁰. She loved him with the disinterested fervour³¹ of a woman's first and early love. When every worldly maxim arrayed³² itself against him; when blasted³³ in fortune; when disgrace and danger darkened³⁴ around his name, she loved him the more ardently for his very sufferings. If, then, his fate could awaken the sympathy even of his foes, what must have been the agony³⁵ of her whose whole soul was occupied³⁶ by his image! Let those tell who³⁷ have had the portals³⁷ of the tomb suddenly³⁸ closed between them³⁸ and the being they most loved on earth — who have sat at its threshold, as one shut³⁹ out³⁹ in a cold and lonely world, from which all that was most lovely and loving⁴⁰ had departed⁴¹.

But then the horrors of such a grave! so frightful! so dishon-

* *Robert Emmett*, a native of Cork, who suffered the death of a traitor in 1803.

1. Windstoß. 2. getroffen.
3. mit seinem Verderben. 4. Beispiele.
5. sich grämend. 6. vernachlässigend.
7. *exhaled to heaven*, von dem Himmel hinaufgezogen. 8. mir eingeblendet.
9. nachspüren. 10. Abstufungen.
11. Auszehrung. 12. Schwäche. 13. Entkräftung.
14. sich ereigneten. 15. zu rührend um.
16. Unruhen. 17. vor Gericht gestellt.
18. auf die Anklage. 19. reich an Kenntnissen.

20. geneigt. 21. vor dem Gericht. 22. erhaben.
23. unerschrocken. 24. zurückwies.
25. Rechtfertigung. 26. Anruf an. 27. drangen.
28. vorschrieb. 29. verstorben. 30. Advokaten.
31. Wärme. 32. stellte — feindlich. 33. vernichtet.
34. drangen sich drohend. 35. Qual. 36. erfüllt.
37. *who have, &c.*, zwischen welchen — die Pforten.
38. *suddenly, &c.*, sich plötzlich verschlossen haben.
39. ausgeschlossen. 40. liebevoll.
41. hinweggerafft war.

oured! There was nothing for¹ the memory to dwell on¹ that could soothe² the pang of separation — none of these tender, though melancholy circumstances, that endear³ the parting⁴ scene — nothing to melt⁵ sorrow into those blessed⁶ tears, sent, like the dews of heaven, to revive the heart in the parting hour of anguish.

To render her widowed situation more desolate⁷, she had incurred⁸ her father's displeasure⁹ by her unfortunate attachment, and was an exile from the paternal roof. But could the sympathy and kind¹⁰ offices¹⁰ of friends have reached a spirit so shocked¹¹ and driven¹² in¹² by horror, she would have experienced no want of consolation, for the Irish are a people of quick and generous sensibilities¹³. The most delicate and cherishing¹⁴ attentions were paid¹⁵ her by families of wealth and distinction. She was led into society, and they tried¹⁶ by all kinds of occupation and amusement to dissipate¹⁷ her grief, and wean¹⁸ her from the tragical story of her loves. But it was all in vain. There are some strokes¹⁹ of calamity that scathe²⁰ and scorch²¹ the soul — that penetrate to²² the vital seat of happiness — and blast²³ it, never again to put²⁴ forth²⁴ bud or blossom. She did²⁵ not object²⁵ to frequent²⁶ the haunts²⁷ of pleasure²⁷, but she was as much alone there as in the depths of solitude. She walked about in a sad reverie, apparently unconscious of the world around her. She carried with her an inward woe that mocked²⁸ all the blandishments²⁹ of friendship, and “heeded³⁰ not the song of the charmer³¹, charm³² he never so wisely.”

The person who told me her story had seen her at a masquerade. There can be no exhibition³³ of far-gone³⁴ wretchedness more striking³⁵ and painful than to meet it in such a scene. To find it wandering like a spectre³⁶, lonely and joyless, where all around is gay — to see it dressed out in the trappings³⁷ of mirth, and looking so wan³⁸ and wo-begone³⁹, as if it had tried in vain to cheat⁴⁰ the poor heart into a momentary forgetfulness of sorrow. After strolling⁴¹ through the splendid rooms and giddy⁴² crowd⁴² with an air of utter abstraction⁴³, she sat herself down on the steps⁴⁴ of an orchestra, and looking about for some time with a vacant⁴⁵ air⁴⁵, that showed her⁴⁶ insensibility to the garish⁴⁷ scene, she began, with the capriciousness⁴⁸ of a sickly heart, to warble⁴⁹ a little plaintive⁵⁰ air⁵⁰. She had an exquisite voice; but on this occasion it was so simple, so touching, it breathed⁵¹ forth such a soul of wretchedness,

1. *for the, &c.*, wobei die Erinnerungen verweilen. 2. lindern. 3. theuer machen. 4. scheidende. 5. zu umwandeln. 6. geeignet, beglückend. 7. trostloser. 8. auf sich — gezogen. 9. Mißfallen. 10. Liebesdienst. 11. angegriffen. 12. niedergeschlagen. 13. Empfindung, Mitgefühl. 14. tröstendsten. 15. gezeigt. 16. versucht. 17. zerstreuen. 18. abzugewöhnen. 19. Schläge. 20. verzehren. 21. versengen. 22. *to the vital seat*, bis in den innersten Sitz. 23. verderben es so, daß. 24. treibt. 25. *did, &c.*, machte keine Einwendung dagegen. 26. zu besuchen.

27. *the haunts, &c.*, Vergnügungs-Orte. 28. spottete. 29. Liebkosung. 30. achtete nicht auf. 31. Zauberers, Trösters. 32. *charm he, &c.*, wenn er auch so weise (schön) tröstete. 33. Bild. 34. tiefem. 35. auffallender. 36. Gespenst ähnlich. 37. Schmuck, Putz. 38. bleich. 39. betrübt. 40. verleiten. 41. nachdem sie herumgeschlendert war. 42. die Schwindel verursachende Menge. 43. Zerstretheit. 44. Stufen. 45. gedankenloser Miene. 46. ihre Unempfindlichkeit. 47. glänzende. 48. Launenhaftigkeit. 49. zu trillern, singen. 50. Klagelied. 51. *breathed forth*, drückte — aus

that she drew a crowd mute and silent around, and melted¹ every one into tears.

The story of one so true² and tender could not but excite great interest in a country remarkable for enthusiasm. It completely won the heart of a brave officer, who paid³ his addresses³ to her, and thought that one so true to the dead could not but⁴ prove affectionate⁴ to the living. She declined⁵ his attentions, for her thoughts were irrevocably engrossed⁶ by the memory of her former lover. He, however, peristed⁷ in his suit⁸. He solicited not her tenderness⁹, but her esteem. He was assisted¹⁰ by her conviction of his worth, and her sense¹¹ of her own destitute and dependent situation; for she was existing¹² on the kindness of friends. In a word, he¹³ at length succeeded¹³ in gaining her hand, though with the solemn assurance that her heart was unalterably another's.

He took her with him to Sicily, hoping that a change of scene might wear¹⁴ out¹⁴ the remembrance of early woes. She was an amiable and exemplary¹⁵ wife, and made an effort to be a happy one; but nothing could cure the silent and devouring¹⁶ melancholy that had entered into her very soul. She wasted¹⁷ away¹⁷ in a slow, but hopeless decline¹⁸, and at length sunk into the grave, the victim of a broken heart.

It was on her that *Moore*, the distinguished Irish poet, composed¹⁹ the following lines: —

She is far from the land where her young hero sleeps,
And lovers around her are sighing:
But coldly she turns from their gaze and weeps,
For her heart in his grave is lying.

She sings the wild songs of her dear native²⁰ plains²⁰,
Every note which he loved awaking²¹,
Ah! little they think, who delight²² in her strains²³,
How the heart of the minstrel²⁴ is breaking!

He had lived for his love — for his country he died,
They were all that to life had entwined²⁵ him —
Nor²⁶ soon shall the tears of his country be dried,
Nor²⁷ long will his love stay behind him!

Oh! make her a grave where the sunbeams rest²⁸,
When they promise a glorious morrow;
They'll shine o'er her sleep, like a smile from the west,
From her own loved island of sorrow.

Washington Irving.

1. rührte — zu. 2. getreu. 3. den Hof machte.
4. but, &c., anders als sich liebevoll beweisen.
5. lehnte ab. 6. erfüllt, eingenommen.
7. beharrte. 8. Bewerbung. 9. Liebe.
10. unterstützte. 11. Bewußtsein.
12. hing — ab. 13. gelang es ihm.
14. verlöschen. 15. musterhafte.

16. zehrende. 17. zehrte ab.
18. Schwindsucht. 19. schrieb, dichtete.
20. Geburtsland. 21. erweckend.
22. sich entzücken. 23. Töne, Gesang.
24. Sängerin. 25. fesselten.
26. nor soon, nicht bald. 27. noch.
28. ruhen, scheinen.

K. Humourous, Oratorical, and Historical Pieces.

CVIII. The Hermit of Bath.*

About the time when Bath was in its glory, and that is now many years ago, a young man, an entire stranger to the country, purchased a field in the neighbourhood. The field was then of little value, a considerable portion of its area being covered with forsaken stone-quarries, while numerous heaps of rubbish, the refuse of the stone-cutter, were spread over the remainder of the land. The new comer, immediately upon the bargain being concluded, paid down the price in hard coin. The next morning he took possession of his purchase (Kaufes).

Very much to the surprise of the neighbours, he set to work vigorously by himself with a pickaxe¹ and crowbar, quarrying² stones. When he had loosened a considerable number, he piled them up into two parallel walls, and with some boughs and some straw he thatched it over. There he slept the first night. It appeared strange that a man who could pay ready money for landed property could not afford to employ a labourer, or to hire a lodging. The next day a door was put to the hut with a lock and a huge³ key; though the neighbours, who were amusing themselves with watching his proceedings, knew that it contained nothing but a miserable bed, and a few articles of the commonest earthenware (Töpferwaaren).

After he had supplied himself, by purchase, with what he considered the absolute necessities of life, he made an arrangement with an old man to supply him with food, and bring it to his hovel⁴ every day. All his absolute wants being now provided for, he confined himself entirely to his newly-acquired territory. Month after month passed. Beyond the old stone-quarries and rubbish that formed his domain he never passed. From daybreak to setting sun he was to be seen at work, clearing away heaps of stones, and making the most of the little real soil that there was. A very small part only of the land which he thus reclaimed, or formed in different odd corners of the quarries, he appropriated to the growth of potatoes, and other kitchen herbs, for his own support; and, although this could not form a tenth part of his consumption (Bedarf), the whole of the remainder he devoted to raise strawberries, gooseberries, currants, and other small fruits; while in every cleft or hole in the sides of the quarries, where a handful of earth could be placed, there sprung up a flowering plant. His dwelling increased in size, in comfort, and in grotesqueness, and it was being gradually covered over with the most beautiful creeping plants that the neighbourhood could afford;

* Um den Lernenden Gelegenheit zu geben, seine Kraft zu prüfen, folgen hier ein paar Lesestücke ohne Noten. — 1. Steinhaue und Hebel. 2. zu brechen. 3. ungeheuer. 4. Hütte.

yet no hand but his own was allowed to touch his building or to dig his ground. Added to these peculiarities, he always appeared now in a long coat, or robe, that reached nearly to his ankles, and was confined round the waist by a band; on his head he wore a small woolen cap; and he let his moustaches and beard grow.

Notwithstanding all these peculiarities, he appeared to have no wish to separate himself from his fellow-creatures. There was nobody more civil and obliging than the hermit to those who visited him. So far from being lonely, he was seldom without visitors; and although he was ready to enter into conversation with every one, he seldom permitted their gossip to interfere with his work. Indeed, with the exception of the profound mystery in which he enveloped every thing connected with his own history, he might be said to be communicative, and his conversation was lively and agreeable. All jokes upon his peculiarities he bore with good humour, and impertinent inquiries respecting his own history he generally turned lightly away with a jest.

Gradually his grounds became a lounge (*Sammelpfad*) for the neighbours. He was always at home, and always in good humour. His flowers, his fruit-trees, and his beautiful creeping shrubs were the presents of his visitors. His neighbours were indeed surprised at the large portion of his garden allotted to strawberry-plants, and other small fruits; but his reply was, that they would produce a larger amount of wholesome food than potatoe-plants. The greatest part of his visitors were ladies, who flocked from far and near to see the handsome young man (for he was not more than thirty), who wore his beard long, lived in a hermitage, and never went out of his grounds. Then he was so civil and obliging, and there was a quaintness (*Nettigkeit*) in his language, and a quickness at repartee, with a compliment occasionally prettily turned, which made his conversation very agreeable. It was evident that he had received a superior education: but this was all that any one could even guess respecting him. None of the multitudes that frequented Bath had any recollection of having ever seen his face before.

Time went on. — Spring came, and strawberries began to ripen, a little table made its appearance, upon which stood sundry plates of strawberries; while the old man who used to fetch the hermit's dinner for him, sat beside it to receive the sixpences. "Thus," said the hermit to his neighbours, "you may perceive the manner in which a greater amount of wholesome food may be derived from the strawberry-plant than from the potatoe."

The strawberries disappeared with rapidity; to eat them fresh in the garden of the hermit became the fashion of the day. New tables made their appearance in the little sequestered nooks of the stone-quarries, overshadowed as they now were by flowering shrubs and creeping plants, interspersed with evergreens and young trees. Fresh assistants to the old man were daily added, as the number of the hermit's visitors increased. It was calculated that there were more matches concocted in the hermit's garden than in all Bath

besides. Spinsters that hung heavy on hand considered it a lucky spot; husbands were thought to be as plentiful as gooseberries within those fortunate limits.

Some new luxury was added every week: lemonade, iced water, tea and Bath cakes, one by one were added to the rural tables that were placed in every convenient corner. The fruit was always supposed to be better there than in the greengrocer's or confectioner's shop. It was thought to be all fresh gathered from the plant, although as much was consumed there in a day as could by any possibility have been raised within those limits in two years. Those, however, who lived in the immediate vicinity might have seen the old man and his assistants enter very early in the morning burdened with heavy baskets. To the hermit's occupations, however, all this seemed to matter little. At every hour in the day he might be found digging and delving (*wühlen*) among the fruit, shrubs, or potatoes, or ornamenting his rustic hermitage with rough and mossy stones.

One room, however, the one he originally built, he kept constantly locked. No human being but himself had ever entered it; while the huge key belonging to the lock was constantly seen dangling at his girdle, while, amidst all the gaiety around, he wandered about with his spade or his fruit-basket, clothed in his long, inconvenient, dark-coloured robe; with small woolen cap, and curly black beard. Few, however, came to his rural feast without having some chat with their landlord; and many a burst of joyous laughter was heard to issue from the group which surrounded him. Yet seldom did any one venture to question him about himself: his answers were generally such as to turn the laugh against his questioners.

It was observed that of those that surrounded him the majority were almost always ladies. Whether it was his handsome countenance or his black curling beard that attracted them, true it was, that seldom a lady visited his hermitage without exchanging a word or two with its inhabitant, and she talked and joked on every subject save the private history of the hermit.

One, indeed, during the first season of his fêtes, for so they should be called, a merry, laughing lady, encouraged by his good humour and chatty disposition, ventured to ask him some questions respecting himself. "Lady", replied the hermit leaning on his spade, "we have all our secrets, I have mine, and you have yours. Tell me, could I not ask you a question that you would be loth to answer before this company? But I will not do it; you would be angry with me, and perhaps surprised how I came by information: besides, my friends might become afraid of me, and think I knew more than my neighbours."

Whether this was a shot at random I know not. It probably was. But, if so, it was well timed; for the lady coloured, and slipped back among her companions.

After this discomfiture of the inquisitive lady, rarely did any one venture to pry into the cause of his present mysterious existence,

although day after day, all the year round, winter and summer, his hermit's grounds presented the appearance of one continued fête. Summer-houses, with warm thatched roofs, had sprung up in various corners, and two or three comfortable rooms had been, one by one, added to the original hermitage, with sociable fire-places, and comfortable arm-chairs. Kettles of boiling water constantly bubbled upon the fire; tea, coffee, and chocolate smoked in cups upon the little round tables; muffins, crumpets, and tea-cakes were continually browning themselves before the fire.

But neither spirituous liquors, tobacco, nor even meat of any kind, were allowed to come within his charmed domain; and at nine o'clock every evening he tolled a great bell that he had hung in a rustic arch, as a sign that it was time for him to be left alone. All visitors, and even the old man and his assistants, were bundled out (*hinausgetrieben*) into the road; after which the hermit opened his secret chamber with his huge key, and retired for the evening.

For one fortnight only in the year the hermitage was left in quiet. On the 6th of April every season the hermit took his departure from his dwelling, nobody knew wherefore, nobody knew where. On the evening of that day he always made his appearance, shaven smooth like his neighbours, dressed in clothes of the ordinary fashion, but in the deepest mourning, with a broad black crape round his hat. Late in the night it was supposed that he departed on foot; for nobody ever heard of his hiring a conveyance, and nobody ever met him. At the end of the fortnight he was seen as usual at work in his garden, with a beard of some days' growth. But now nobody ever questioned him; seldom, indeed, did any one venture to allude to his having been absent. It was generally supposed that he went to perform some mournful duty; probably to pay an annual visit to the tomb of some one who had been dear to him in life.

Notwithstanding all these peculiarities, it was evident to all the world that he must be growing very rich; for everybody in Bath went to eat his strawberries and cream, and not a halfpenny did the hermit ever seem to spend. His food was chiefly potatoes and salt, while his only drink was cold water. He never employed any labourer to assist him; he worked his own land, and repaired his own dwelling. The assistants, that had been for a long time constantly employed, waited only upon his visitors; they never interfered with him.

Curiosity respecting his intentions, however, daily grew stronger and stronger among the gossips of Bath. At last one young lady could resist it no longer, and she boldly ventured to just touch upon the subject.

"You grow rich, Mr. Hermit", said she.

"Ay", he replied, "I grow rich. Every week, sometimes every day, money flows into my banker's hands; each handful is added to my previous hoard. I am now what the world calls a respectable man. I could walk the streets of Bath now, if I wished it, without any one's laughing at my beard. I am not a very bad match now.

I am still young: I have money; and, what is another important point, I am not extravagant in my expenditure. How should you like to share my hut with me?" here he dangled the ponderous key — "to preside at my cheerful board, share my potatoe with me, and drink success to our nurseries in spring water?"

The young lady coloured, and shrank behind her companions.

"It would not suit you. You would miss the balls, and the concerts, and the drums of the tattling watering places: you would dread the ridicule of your companions. Be it so. I am satisfied as I am. I know full well the object of your curiosity; you want to know why I accumulate wealth, which I do not seem to enjoy. But tell me truly, — do I not really enjoy my wealth as much as thousands that are lavish in their expenditure? I have neither gout nor rheumatism; I enjoy good health and a cheerful mind. I am dependent upon no one; I have no enemies; and, thanks to you all, fair ladies, I am in the daily enjoyment of agreeable society. This much, however, I will tell you of myself; — a time will arrive when my sojourning here must come to a close. Then; and not till then, will you all know the history of my private life; — then, and not till then, will you know the reason of the apparent mystery that now surrounds me."

And, without further noticing his fair visitors, he set to work again diligently digging and delving (*wühlen*).

"A very unsatisfactory piece of information," said one.

"Ah," said another, "he just means that, when he dies, he will bequeath us his private history."

"Which will be hawked about," said a third, "as his last dying speech and confession. I hope none of us will be cruel enough to wish him gone, that we may have a peep at his romantic history."

"What a fortune the copyright (*Verlagsrecht*) would be to a Bath bookseller!" said another.

"I dare say that there will not be much in the story after all. He just fell in love, his fair one died, and he made a vow that he would live in a hermitage and sell gooseberries for the remainder of his life."

"I readily agree with you in your supposition," said another of her companions: "but you have not touched upon the most mysterious part of the whole. What will he do with his money?"

"Ah!" responded the whole of them in one voice, "what will he do with the money?"

"I know what he ought to do," said a lady with a string of five unmarried daughters upon her arm; "marry a young lady, shave his beard, drive his curricule, and live like a gentleman, — and a gentleman I rather suspect he is, or, as one may say, has been."

About a twelvemonth after the above conversation, the hermit announced to his visitors that the time of his sojourn in the neighbourhood of Bath had nearly drawn to a close; that on the next Tuesday fortnight, if his friends and visitors would favor him with their presence, he would relate to them the history of his life, the

reason of his mysterious appearance and residence amongst them, — and he would further inform them how he intended to bestow the fortune he had accumulated. He moreover observed, that as he expected an unusually numerous attendance upon that occasion, it would be impossible for ordinary attendants to pay adequate attention to his visitors. It was his intention, therefore, to heap up his fruits, and other delicacies, in profusion in every corner, and allow all to help themselves as they thought fit.

The news spread like wildfire through the city of Bath. Several old gossips, upon hearing the hermit's announcement, hurried off, in hopes of being the first heralds of this interesting piece of news. Nothing was talked of in Bath during that fortnight but the mysterious hermit. It afforded conversation at the pumprooms; it helped out every shy young gentleman with something to say to his partner at the subscription balls. The chairmen (*Sänfeträger*), as they stood waiting in the streets, gave forth their various and discordant surmises about the rum (*feltfamen*) gentleman in the beard. Greengrocers (*Gemüsehändler*) and fruitsellers; high and low, rejoiced, in the hopes that the business of a formidable rival was about to draw to a close.

On the appointed day the hermit had provided vast stores of refreshments. Tables and seats were in corners of the grounds where they had never been seen before. The dishes of fruit and cake that were distributed around his hermitage garden were almost without limit. Before the appointed hour, visitors began to arrive in numbers exceeding the hermit's most sanguine expectation. The old man who originally carried the hermit's food to him, and had continued to be his right-hand man ever since, received a shilling from every one who passed the door. But, as the tables were heaped up with good things, every one had an opportunity of eating back his money's worth. Every moment the numbers increased. It was soon difficult for ladies to find seats; but still the garden became more and more crowded. In the principal walks, and round the hermitage, the pressure was becoming inconvenient; borders and strawberry beds began to be trampled upon; tables were upset and crockery (*Töpfergeschirr*) broken.

During all this time the hermit was nowhere to be seen; but he continued in the innermost and secret chamber of the hermitage, into which none but himself had ever entered.

The assembly became impatient; numerous inquiries were made for the hermit. Where was he? Why did he not make his appearance? At length some of the visitors ventured to knock at the door — no answer. Knock again — no answer. People began to be apprehensive that some accident might have befallen him. Hermits must die as well as their neighbours, and sudden death was not unfrequent at Bath. Many even began to think that the hermit's invitation was merely intended to be prophetic of his death, and that they had only to break open his door, and they would find the dead body of the hermit, with the history of his life and his will lying beside him.

As this opinion got blazed about, in spite of the remonstrances

of some of the quieter portion of the crowd, preparations were being made for a forcible attack upon the hermit's secret chamber. Before, however, any force had been actually used, the ponderous key was heard to turn in the huge lock of the door, and the hermit came forth, leaving for the first time in his life, the door of his mysterious chamber open behind him.

The reader, doubtless thinks that the standers-by craned (ſtrecken) their heads forward, to try to see what there was in this secret retreat. They did not do so, however, their surprise and astonishment were so much excited by the appearance of the hermit. This eminent personage presented himself to the assembled multitude newly shaved, and dressed from top to toe like a gentleman, according to the fashion of that time. He wore a plum-coloured coat, with cut-steel buttons, a very neat periwig, and a new cocked hat, with gold lace (Zressen) round it. "It* was a transmogrification with a vengeance!" as one of the standers-by observed.

The hermit stepped forth, and immediately ascended, a mound of rock-work that stood near his dwelling. When he first appeared there, little notice was taken of him, — nobody knew him; but when at length, he was recognised in his plum-coloured coat and periwig, some cheering and a general buzz ran through the assembly. Every body passing his opinion to his neighbour about the hermit's change of raiment. When these hurried observations were concluded, there was a general pause, and a silence so great that you might have heard a pin drop, so intense was the general curiosity to hear the history of the hermit.

The hermit bowed repeatedly, and then began. —

"Ladies" (here he laid his hand upon his heart), "and gentlemen, the time is now arrived for me to give you a history of my former life, and to explain to you anything that you may have considered eccentric or mysterious in my manner of living since I have resided in your neighbourhood, and to inform you how I intend to bestow the wealth, which, through your kindness, I have been able to accumulate.

"I will now begin. The reason of my letting my beard grow, — and of my wearing a long robe, with the key of the secret chamber hanging to my girdle, — the reason of my never leaving this spot, except for one fortnight in the year, — the reason of my living entirely upon vegetables and water, — the reason of my doing all these things was to create a mystery — simply and solely to create a mystery. "My reasons for wishing to envelope myself in mystery was, — that it might enable me to sell more strawberries and cream — and so make money.

"My object in wishing to amass a sum of money was — MATRIMONY."

Many an unmarried lady, and many a chaperon mother run her eye over the altered person of the hermit, from his cocked hat down to the buckles in his shoes, and discovered nothing to find fault with.

* Es war eine vertheufelte Umwandlung.

The hermit began again — “Ladies and gentlemen, my name is Smith: I am a native of a distant county. My father was a poor gentleman; he gave me a tolerable education, and died, leaving me just seventy pounds. I fell in love with a young lady who lived in the same village, who returned my affection. Her parents, however, objected, because I was poor. They declared that their daughter should never marry anybody who had less than three thousand pounds.

“I then promised that I would never ask for her hand until I was possessed of that sum; but I begged for permission to visit her once a-year, to tell her how I prospered. This was the cause of my annual disappearance for a fortnight. The deep mourning and the black crape that I assumed was merely for the purpose of throwing dust into those fascinating eyes that I now see beaming upon me from all sides.

“Ladies and gentlemen, with many thanks to you all, by your assistance I have now, with the collection of to-day, amassed nearly twice the required sum; and if the lady appoints a favourable day, by this day week, I shall be what many of you are, and the rest of you wish to be — MARRIED.”

The curtain of the hermit’s mystery was thus raised so suddenly, that the audience were left in a kind of state between surprise and disappointment. Some said, “it was a regular take-in from beginning to end;” the lady with the five daughters declared that “he was a vile hypocrite, and she had thought so all along.”

But then all this was done so neatly, and in so gentlemanly a manner, and was altogether so ridiculous, that when one old gentleman set up a laugh, everybody else began to see a great deal of fun in it, and then there was a general laughing throughout the company. At length a young dandy got upon a chair, and said, “Let us all give three cheers for the hermit before he goes.” And three cheers were merrily given.

When this had subsided, the hermit again made his appearance upon the rock-work; but this time another man stood by his side. He was a middle aged man, dressed in a blue coat, black shorts (*fürzen Beinfleibern*), and black stockings.

The hermit again addressed them. “Ladies and gentlemen, I feel it my duty to say a few words more to you before we part for ever.

“I feel myself called upon to state, that I have parted with this hermitage and grounds, with all its rights, purtenances, and privileges, to the person whom you see beside me, — a gentleman with whom many of you are well acquainted, and who has been a witness to many of your convivial hours, — in short, no less a personage than Jem, late head-waiter at the White Hart Hotel.

“He begs me further to assure you that, if you continue to visit the hermitage, you will find the fruit fresh, the cream sweet, attendance good, and charges reasonable.

“Ladies and gentlemen, allow me to present to you Jem, the present Hermit of Bath. And now farewell. Excuse my haste; my

place is booked (genommen) in the London coach, and I am fearful of being too late."

His audience were now in high good humour. His second speech was received with a merry laugh and three hearty cheers; and, as he walked down to his garden-gate, many a fair hand was extended to him, many a "good b'ye" and "wish you joy" were whispered to him by gentle voices as he went along. And when he arrived at the gate, and took off his gold-laced hat, and made his visitors his last bow, the assembled multitude gave him three cheers — again — and again — "Hurrah!"

Abraham Elder.

CIX. John Barleycorn, a Ballad.

There were three kings into¹ the east,
Three kings both great and high,
And they have sworn a solemn oath
John Barleycorn should die.

They took a plough and plough'd him
down,
Put clods² upon his head,
And they ha'e³ sworn a solemn oath
John Barleycorn was dead.

But the cheerful spring came kindly on,
And show'rs began to fall;
John Barleycorn got up again,
And sore⁴ surprised them all.

The sultry suns of summer came,
And he grew thick and strong,
His head well arm'd with pointed⁵ spears,
That no one should him wrong⁶.

The sober autumn enter'd mild,
When he grew wan and pale;
His bending⁷ joints⁸ and drooping⁹ head,
Show'd he began to fail.

His colour sicken'd¹⁰ more and more,
He faded¹¹ into¹² age¹²;
And then his enemies began
To show their deadly rage.

They'veta'en¹³ a weapon, long and sharp,
And cut him by the knee;
Then tied him fast upon a cart,
Like a rogue for¹⁴ forgery¹⁴.

They laid him down upon his back,
And cudgell'd¹⁵ him full¹⁶ sore¹⁶;
They hung him up before the storm
And turn'd him o'er¹⁷ and o'er.

They filled up a darksome pit¹⁸
With water to the¹⁹ brim²⁰.
They heaved²¹ in John Barleycorn,
There let him sink or swim.

They laid²² him out upon the floor,
To work²³ him farther woe²⁴;
And still, as signs of life appear'd
They toss'd²⁵ him to²⁶ and fro²⁶.

They wasted²⁷ o'er a scorching²⁸ flame,
The marrow of his bones;
But a miller us'd²⁹ him worst of all
For he crush'd³⁰ him between two
stones.

And they ha'e ta'en his very heart's blood,
And drunk it round and round;
And still the more and more they drank,
Their³¹ joy did more abound³¹.

John Barleycorn was a hero bold,
Of noble enterprise³²,
For if you do but taste his blood
'Twill make your courage rise³³.

'Twill make a man forget his woe,
'Twill heighten all his glee³⁴:
'Twill make the widow's heart to sing
Tho' the tear were in her e'e³⁵.

Then let us toast³⁶ John Barleycorn,
Each man a glass in hand;
And may his great posterity
Ne'er fail in old Scotland!

Robert Burns.

1. into the, im. 2. Erdschollen. 3. have.
4. sehr. 5. spitzigen. 6. Unrecht thue.
7. gebeugten. 8. Glieder. 9. sinkendes.
10. (fränkelt) wurde immer gelber.
11. bleichte. 12. vor Alter. 13. taken.
14. wegen Urkundenverfälschung.
15. prügelten. 16. gar arg. 17. um. 18. Grube.

19. bis an den. 20. Rand. 21. warfen — hinein.
22. legten, breiteten. 23. zu thun. 24. Wehe.
25. warfen. 26. hin und her. 27. zehrten.
28. versengende. 29. behandelte. 30. zermalnte.
31. their joy, desto größer wurde ihre Freude.
32. Gefinnung. 33. steigen. 34. Fröhlichkeit.
35. Auge. 36. Hanns Gerste hoch leben lassen.

CX. Monsieur Margot, or the French Professor.

— — — — Quis sapiens bono

Confidat fragili — — — Seneca.

Grammatici errant, et adhuc sub iudice est. Hor.

When I first went to Paris, I took a French master, to perfect me in the Parisian pronunciation. This "Haberdasher of Pronouns," was a person of the name of Margot. He was a tall, solemn man, with a face of the most imperturbable gravity. He would have been inestimable as an undertaker (*Leichenbesorger*). His hair was of a pale-yellow; you would have thought it had caught a bilious complaint from his complexion; the latter was, indeed, of so sombre a saffron, that it looked as if ten livers had been forced into a jaundice, in order to supply its colour. His forehead was high, bald, and very narrow. His cheekbones were extremely prominent, and his cheeks so thin, that they seemed happier than Pyramus and Thisbe, and kissed each other inside without any separation or division. His face was as sharp and almost as long as an inverted pyramid, and was garnished on either side by a miserable, half-starved whisker, which seemed scarcely able to maintain itself, amid the general symptoms of atrophy and decay. This charming countenance was supported by a figure so long, so straight, so shadowy, that you might have taken it for *the monument in a consumption!*

But the chief characteristic of the man was the utter and wonderful gravity I have before spoken of. You could no more have coaxed a smile out of his countenance, than you could out of the poker, and yet Monsieur Margot was by no means a melancholy man. He loved his joke, and his wine, and his dinner, just as much as if he had been of a fatter frame; and it was a fine specimen of the practical antithesis, to hear a good story, or a jovial expression, leap friskily out of that long, curved mouth; it was at once a paradox and a bathos — it was the mouse coming out of its hole in Ely Cathedral.

I said that this gravity was M. Margot's most especial characteristic. I forgot: — he had two others equally remarkable: the one was an ardent admiration for the chivalrous, the other an ardent admiration for himself. Both of these are traits common enough in a Frenchman, but in M. Margot their excesses rendered them uncommon. He was a most ultra specimen of *le chevalier amoureux* — a mixture of Don Quixote and the *Duc de Lauzan*. Whenever he spoke of the present tense, even *en professeur*, he always gave a sigh to the preterite, and an anecdote of Bayard; whenever he conjugated a verb, he paused to tell me that the favourite one of his female pupils was *je t'aime*.

In short, he had tales of his own good fortune, and of other people's brave exploits, which, without much exaggeration, were almost as long, and had, perhaps, as little substance as himself; but the former was his favourite topic: to hear him, one would have imagined that his face, in borrowing the sharpness of the needle, had borrowed also its attraction; — and then the prettiness of Mons. Margot's modesty!

"It is very extraordinary," said he, "very extraordinary, how much I am beloved by my fair pupils." I am not handsome, Monsieur, at least, not very; a certain air noble, (my first cousin, Monsieur, is the chevalier de Margot) and, above all, de *l'âme* in my physiognomy; the fair sex love soul, Monsieur — something intellectual and spiritual always attracts them; but yet their predilection for me is singular. Even in the house where I lodge, Monsieur, there is an English lady *en pension*, who has taken a great fancy for me."

I expressed my envy at Monsieur Margot's good fortune, and when he had sufficiently dilated upon it, he withdrew. Shortly afterwards my friend Vincent entered — "I have a dinner invitation for both of us to-day," said he; "you will come?"

"Most certainly," replied I: "but who is the person we are to honour?"

"A Madame Laurent," replied Vincent; "one of those ladies only found at Paris, who live upon any thing rather than their income. She keeps a tolerable table, haunted with Poles, Russians, Austrians, and idle Frenchmen. As yet, she has not had the happiness to be acquainted with any Englishman (though she boards one of our countrywomen), and (as she is desirous of making her fortune as soon as possible) she is very anxious of having that honour. She has heard vast reports of our wealth and wisdom, and flatters herself that we are so many ambulatory Indies: in good truth, a Frenchwoman thinks she is never in want of a fortune as long as there is a rich fool in the world."

"Madame Laurent!" repeated I, "why surely that is the name of Mons. Margot's landlady."

"I hope not," cried Vincent, "for the sake of our dinner; he reflects no credit on her good cheer —

"Who eats fat dinners, should himself be fat."

"At all events," said I, "we can try the good lady for once. I am very anxious to see a countrywoman of ours, probably the very one you speak of, whom Mons. Margot eulogizes in glowing colours, and who has, moreover, taken a violent fancy for my solemn preceptor. What think you of that Vincent?"

"Nothing extraordinary," replied Vincent; "the lady only exclaims with the moralist —

"Love, virtue, valour, yea, all human charms,
Are shrunk and centred *in that heap of bones*.
O! there are wondrous beauties *in the grave!*"

I made some punning rejoinder, and we sallied out to earn an appetite in the Tuileries for Madame Laurent's dinner.

At the hour of half-past five we repaired to our engagement. Madame Laurent received us with the most evident satisfaction, and introduced us forthwith to our countrywoman. She was a pretty, fair, shrewd looking person, with an eye and forehead which bespoke good sense, but at the same time gaiety of heart.

Presently Monsieur Margot made his appearance. Though very much surprised at seeing me, he did not appear the least jealous of

my attentions to his *inamorata*. Indeed, the good gentleman was far too much pleased with himself to be susceptible of the suspicions common to less fortunate lovers. At dinner I sat next the pretty Englishwoman, whose name was Green.

"Monsieur Margot," said I, "has often spoken to me of you before I had the happiness of being personally convinced how true and unexaggerated were his sentiments."

"Oh!" cried Mrs. Green with an arch laugh, "you are acquainted with Monsieur Margot, then?"

"I have the honour," said I. "I receive from him every morning lessons both in love and languages. He is perfect master in both."

Mrs. Green broke out into one of these peals so peculiarly British.

"Ah, *le pauvre Professeur!*" cried she. "He is too absurd!"

"He tells me," said I gravely, "that you are not quite indifferent to his merits both mental and bodily."

"Tell me, Mr. Pelham," said the fair Mrs. Green, "can you pass by this street about half-past twelve to-night?"

"I will make a point of doing so," replied I, not a little surprised by the remark.

"Do," said she, "and now let us talk of England."

When we went away, I told Vincent of my appointment.

"What!" said he, "eclipse Monsieur Margot! impossible!"

"You are right," replied I, "nor is it my hope; there is some trick afloat of which we may as well be spectators."

"*De tout mon cœur!*" answered Vincent; "let us go till then to the Duchesse de G—." I assented, and we drove to the Rue de —.

About the fixed time we took our way to the street in which Madame Laurent resided. Mean while suffer me to get rid of myself, and to introduce you, dear Reader, to my friend, Monsieur Margot, the whole of whose adventures were subsequently detailed to me by the garrulous Mrs. Green.

At the hour appointed, he knocked at the door of my fair countrywoman, and was carefully admitted. He was attired in a dressing-gown of sea-green-silk, in which his long, lean, hungry body, looked more like a river pike (*Secht*) than any thing human.

"Madame," said he, with a solemn air, "I return you my best thanks for the honour you have done me — behold me at your feet!" and so saying, the lean lover gravely knelt down on one knee.

"Rise, Sir," said Mrs. Green, "I confess that you have won my heart; but that is not all — you have yet to show that you are worthy of the opinion I have formed of you. It is not, Monsieur Margot, your person that has won me — no! it is your chivalrous and noble sentiments — prove that these are genuine, and you may command my admiration."

"In what manner shall I prove it, Madame?" said Monsieur Margot, rising, and gracefully drawing his sea-green gown more closely round him.

"By your courage, your devotion, and your gallantry! I ask but

one proof — you can give it me on the spot. You remember, Monsieur, that in the days of romance, a lady threw her glove upon the stage on which a lion was exhibited, and told her lover to pick it up. Monsieur Margot, the trial to which I shall put you is less severe. Look (and Mrs. Green threw open the window) — look, I throw my glove out into the street — descend for it.”

“Your commands are my law,” said the romantic Margot. “I will go forthwith,” and so saying, he went to the door.

“Hold, Sir!” said the lady, “it is not by that simple manner that you are to descend — you must go the same way as my glove, *out of the window.*”

“Out of the window, Madame!” said Monsieur Margot, with astonished solemnity; “that is impossible, because this apartment is three stories high, and consequently I shall be dashed to pieces.”

“By no means,” answered the dame; “in that corner of the room there is a basket, to which (already foreseeing your determination) I have affixed a rope; by that basket you shall descend. See, Monsieur, what expedients a provident love can suggest.”

“H—e—m!” said, very slowly, Monsieur Margot, by no means liking the airy voyage imposed upon him; “but the rope may break, or your hand may suffer it to slip.”

“Feel the rope,” cried the lady, “to satisfy you as to your first doubt; and, as to the second, can you — can you imagine that my affections would not make me twice as careful of your person as of my own. Fie! ungrateful Monsieur Margot! fie!”

The melancholy chevalier cast a rueful look at the basket. “Madame,” said he, “I own that I am very averse to the plan you propose: suffer me to go down stairs in the ordinary way; your glove can be as easily picked up whether your adorer goes out of the door or the window. It is only, Madame, when ordinary means fail that we should have recourse to the extraordinary.”

“Begone! Sir,” exclaimed Mrs. Green; “begone! I now perceive that your chivalry was only a pretence. Fool that I was to love you as I have done — fool that I was to imagine a hero where I now find a —”

“Pause, Madame, I will obey you — my heart is firm — see that the rope is —”

“Gallant Monsieur Margot!” cried the lady: and going to her dressing-room, she called her woman to her assistance. The rope was of the most unquestionable thickness, the basket of the most capacious dimensions. The former was fastened to a strong hook — and the latter lowered.

“I go, Madame,” said Monsieur Margot, feeling the rope; “but it really is a most dangerous exploit.”

“Go, Monsieur! and the God of St. Louis befriend you!”

“Stop,” said Monsieur Margot, “let me fetch my coat: the night is cold, and my dressing-gown thin.”

“Nay, nay, my Chevalier,” returned the dame, “I love you in that gown; it gives you an air of grace and dignity, quite enchanting.”

"It will give me my death of cold, Madame," said Monsieur Margot, earnestly.

"Bah!" said the Englishwoman: "what knight ever feared cold? Besides you mistake; the night is warm, and you look so handsome in your gown."

"Do I!" said the vain Monsieur Margot, with an iron expression of satisfaction: "if that is the case, I will mind it less; but may I return by the door?"

"Yes," replied the lady; "you see that I do not require too much from your devotion — enter."

"Behold me!" said the French master, inserting his body into the basket, which immediately began to descend.

The hour and the police of course made the street empty; the lady's handkerchief waved in token of encouragement and triumph. When the basket was within five yards of the ground, Mrs. Green cried to her lover, who had hitherto been elevating his serious countenance towards her, in sober, yet gallant sadness —

"Look, look, Monsieur — straight before you."

The lover turned round, as rapidly as his habits would allow him, and at that instant the window was shut, the light extinguished, and the basket arrested. There stood Monsieur Margot, upright in the basket, and there stopped the basket, motionless in air!

What were the exact reflections of Monsieur Margot, in that position, I cannot pretend to determine, because he never favoured me with them; but about an hour afterwards, Vincent and I (who had been delayed on the road), strolling up the street, according to our appointment, perceived by the dim lamps, some opaque body leaning against the wall of Madame Laurent's house, at about the distance of fifteen feet from the ground.

We hastened our steps towards it; a measured and serious voice, which I well knew, accosted us —

"For God's sake, gentlemen, procure me assistance; I am the victim of a perfidious woman, and expect every moment to be precipitated to the earth."

"Good Heavens!" said I, "surely it is Monsieur Margot, whom I hear. What are you doing there?"

"Shivering with cold," answered Monsieur Margot, in a tone tremulously slow.

"But what are you in? for I can see nothing but a dark substance."

"I am in a basket," replied Monsieur Margot, "and I should be very much obliged to you to let me out of it."

"Well — indeed," said Vincent (for I was too much engaged in laughing to give a ready reply), "Château-Margot has but a cool cellar. But there are some things in the world easier said than done. How are we to remove you to a more desirable place?"

"Ah," returned Monsieur Margot, "how indeed! There is, to be sure, a ladder in the porter's lodge long enough to deliver me; but

then, think of the gibes and jeers of the porter — it will get wind — I shall be ridiculed — and what is worse, I shall lose my pupils.”

“My good friend,” said I, “you had better lose your pupils than your life; and the day-light will soon come, and then, instead of being ridiculed by the porter, you will be ridiculed by the whole street!”

Monsieur Margot groaned. “Go, then, my friend,” said he, “procure the ladder! Oh, those she-devils! — what could make, me such a fool!”

Whilst Monsieur Margot was venting his spleen in a scarcely articulate mutter, we repaired to the lodge, knocked up the porter, communicated the *accident*, and procured the ladder. However, an observant eye had been upon our proceedings, and the window above was re-opened, though so silently, that I only perceived the action. The porter, a jolly, bluff, hearty-looking fellow, stood grinning below with a lantern, while we set the ladder (which only just reached the basket) against the wall.

The chevalier looked wistfully forth, and then, by the light of the lantern, we had a fair view of his ridiculous figure — his teeth, chattered wofully, and the united cold without, and anxiety within, threw a double sadness and solemnity upon his withered countenance; the night was very windy, every instant a rapid current seized the unhappy sea-green vesture, whirled it in the air, and threw it, as if in scorn, over the very face of the miserable professor. The constant recurrence of this sportive irreverence of the gales — the high sides of the basket, and the trembling agitation of the inmate, never too agile, rendered it a work of some time for Monsieur Margot to transfer himself from the basket to the ladder; at length he had fairly got out one thin, shivering leg.

“Thank God!” said the pious professor — when at that instant the thanksgiving was checked, and, to Monsieur Margot’s inexpressible astonishment and dismay, the basket rose five feet from the ladder, leaving its tenant with one leg dangling out, like a flag from a balloon.

The ascent was too rapid to allow Monsieur Margot even time for an exclamation, and it was not till he had had sufficient leisure in his present elevation to perceive all its consequences, that he found words to say, with the most earnest tone of thoughtful lamentation, “One could not have foreseen this! — it is really extremely distressing — would to God that I could get my leg in, or my body out!”

While we were yet too convulsed with laughter to make any comment upon the unlooked-for ascent of the luminous Monsieur Margot, the basket descended with such force as to dash the lantern out of the hand of the porter, and to bring the professor so precipitously to the ground, that all the bones in his skin rattled audibly!

“My God!” said he, “I am done for! — be witness how inhumanly I have been murdered.”

We pulled him out of the basket, and carried him between us into the porter’s lodge; but the woes of Monsieur Margot were not yet at their termination. The room was crowded. There was Ma-

dame Laurent, — there was the German count, whom the professor was teaching French; — there was the French viscount, whom he was teaching German; — there were all his fellow-lodgers — the ladies whom he had boasted of — the men he had boasted to: — Don Juan, in the infernal regions, could not have met with a more unwelcome set of old acquaintance than Monsieur Margot had the happiness of opening his bewildered eyes upon in the porter's lodge.

"What!" cried they all, "Monsieur Margot, is that you who have been frightening us so? We thought the house was attacked; the Russian general is at this very moment loading his pistols; lucky for you that you did not *choose* to stay longer in that situation. Pray, Monsieur, what could induce you, to exhibit yourself so, in your dressing-gown too, and the night so cold? Ar'n't you ashamed of yourself?"

All this, and infinitely more, was levelled against the miserable professor, who stood shivering with cold and fright: and turning his eyes first upon one, and then on another, as the exclamations circulated round the room.

"I do assure you," at length he began.

"No, no," cried one, "it is of no use explaining now!"

"*Mais Messieurs,*" querulously recommenced the unhappy Margot.

"Hold your tongue," exclaimed Madame Laurent, "you have been disgracing my house."

"*Mais, Madame, écoutez-moi —*"

"No, no," cried the German, "we saw you — we saw you."

"*Mais, Monsieur le Comte —*"

"Fie, fie!" cried the Frenchman.

"*Mais, Monsieur le Vicomte —*"

At this, every mouth was opened, and the patience of Monsieur Margot being by this time exhausted, he flew into a violent rage; his tormentors pretended an equal indignation, and at length he fought his way out of the room, as fast as his shattered bones would allow him, followed by the whole body, screaming, and shouting, and scolding, and laughing after him.

The next morning passed without my usual lesson from Monsieur Margot; that was natural enough; but when the next day, and the next, rolled on, and brought neither Monsieur Margot nor his excuse, I began to be uneasy for the poor man. Accordingly I sent to Madame Laurent's to inquire after him: judge of my surprise at hearing that he had, early the day after taken his departure, left his lodgings with his small possession of books and clothes, leaving only a note to Madame Laurent, enclosing the amount of his debt to her, and that no one had since seen or heard of him.

From that day to this, I have never once beheld him. The poor professor lost even the little money due to him for his lessons — so true is it, that in a man of Monsieur Margot's temper, even interest is a subordinate passion to vanity.

Bulwer.

CXI. The diverting History of John Gilpin:

Showing how he went further than he intended and came safe home again.

John Gilpin was a citizen
Of credit¹ and renown,
A train-band² captain eke³ was he
Of famous London town.

John Gilpin's spouse said to her dear,
Though wedded⁴ we have been
These twice ten tedious years, yet we
No holiday have seen.

To-morrow is our wedding-day⁵,
And we will then repair⁶
Unto⁷ the Bell at Edmonton
All in a chaise⁸ and pair.

My sister, and my sister's child,
Myself, and children three,
Will fill the chaise; so you must ride
On horseback after *we*⁹.

He soon replied, I do admire
Of womankind¹⁰ but one,
And you are she, my dearest dear,
Therefore it shall be¹¹ done.

I am a linendraper¹² bold,
As all the world doth know,
And my good friend the calendrer¹³
Will lend his horse to go.

Quoth¹⁴ Mrs. Gilpin, That's well said;
And for¹⁵ that wine is dear,
We will be furnish'd¹⁶ with our own,
Which is both¹⁷ bright and clear.

John Gilpin kiss'd his loving wife;
O'erjoy'd¹⁸ was he to find,
That, though on¹⁹ pleasure she was
bent,
She had a frugal mind.

The morning came, the chaise was
brought,
But yet was not allow'd
To²⁰ drive up to the door, lest²¹ all
Should say that she was proud.

So two doors off the chaise was²² stay'd,
While they did all get in;
Six precious souls, and all agog²³
To dash²⁴ through thick and thin.

Smack²⁵ went the whip, round went the
wheels,
Were never²⁶ folk so glad,
The stones did rattle²⁷ underneath,
As if Cheapside²⁸ were mad.

John Gilpin at his horse's side
Seiz'd²⁹ fast the flowing³⁰ mane,
And up³¹ he got, in haste to ride,
But soon came down again;

For saddle-tree³² scare reach'd had he,
His journey to begin,
When turning³³ round his head, he saw
Three customers³⁴ come in.

So down he came; for loss³⁵ of time,
Although it griev'd³⁶ him sore;
Yet loss³⁷ of pence, full well he knew,
Would trouble³⁸ him much more.

'Twas long before the customers
Were suited³⁹ to their mind,
When Betty screaming came down
stairs,
"The wine is left behind!"

Good lack⁴⁰! quoth he — yet bring it me.
My leathern belt⁴¹ likewise,
In which I bear my trusty⁴² sword,
When I do⁴³ exercise.

Now mistress Gilpin (careful⁴⁴ soul!)
Had two stone bottles found,
To hold the liquor⁴⁵ that she lov'd,
And keep⁴⁶ it safe and sound.

Each bottle had a curling⁴⁷ ear,
Through which the belt he drew,
And hung a bottle on each side,
To make his balance⁴⁸ true.

1. Ansehen und Berühmtheit. 2. Bürgerwehr.
3. auch. 4. verheirathet. 5. Hochzeitstag.
6. uns hinbegeben. 7. in die Glocke zu.
8. zweispännigen Chaise. 9. uns.
10. vom weiblichen Geschlecht. 11. geschehen.
12. tüchtiger Leinwandhändler.
13. Tuchbereiter. 14. sagte. 15. weil.
16. versehen. 17. sowohl hell. 18. entzückt.
19. das Vergnügen liebte. 20. vorzufahren.
21. aus Furcht, daß. 22. hielt an.
23. begierig. 24. zu fahren, springen.

25. smack, &c., knall ging die Peitsche.
26. je. 27. rasselten. 28. Straße in London.
29. griff fest. 30. wallende. 31. stieg — auf.
32. denn — den Sattel. 33. umdrehend.
34. Kunden. 35. Zeitverlust.
36. sehr Leid that. 37. Geldverlust.
38. betrübten. 39. ihre Wahl getroffen hatten.
40. Herr Je! 41. Gürtel. 42. treues.
43. exerciere. 44. sorgfältige. 45. Getränk.
46. aufzubewahren. 47. runden Griff.
48. Gleichgewicht recht.

Then over all, that he might be
Equipped¹ from top² to toe,
His long red cloak, well brush'd and neat,
He manfully³ did throw.

Now see him mounted⁴ once again
Upon his nimble⁵ steed,
Full slowly pacing⁶ o'er the stones
With caution and good⁷ heed.

But finding soon a smoother road
Beneath his well-shod⁸ feet,
The snorting⁹ beast began to trot,
Which galled¹⁰ him in his seat.

So, Fair and softly¹¹, John he cried,
But John he cried in vain;
That trot he came a gallop soon,
In spite of curb¹² and rein.

So stooping¹³ down, as needs he must,
Who cannot sit upright,
He grasp'd¹⁴ the mane with both his
hands,
And eke with all his might¹⁵.

His horse, who never in that sort¹⁶
Had handled¹⁷ been before,
What thing upon his back had got¹⁸
Did wonder more and more.

Away¹⁹ went Gilpin, neck²⁰ or nought;
Away went hat and wig²¹;
He little dreamt, when he set²² out,
Of running²³ such a rig.

The wind did blow, the cloak did fly,
Like streamer²⁴ long and gay,
Till loop²⁵ and button failing both,
At last it flew away²⁶.

Then might all people well discern
The bottles he had slung²⁷;
A bottle swinging at each side,
As hath been said or sung.

The dogs did bark, the children scream'd,
Up flew the windows all;
And every soul cried out, Well²⁸ done!
As loud as he could bawl²⁹.

Away went Gilpin — who³⁰ but he?
His fame³¹ soon spread around,
He carries³² weight! he rides³³ a race,
'Tis for a thousand pound!

And still³⁴ as fast as he drew near,
'Twas wonderful to view³⁵,
How in³⁶ a trice the turnpike³⁷ men
Their gates wide open threw³⁸.

And now, as he went bowing down
His reeking³⁹ head full low.
The bottles twain⁴⁰ behind his back
Were shatter'd⁴¹ at a blow.

Down ran the wine into the road,
Most⁴² piteous to be seen,
Which made his horse's flanks⁴³ to
smoke
As they had basted⁴⁴ been.

But still he seemed to carry weight,
With leathern girdle brac'd⁴⁵;
For all might see the bottle necks
Still dangling⁴⁶ at his waist.

Thus all through merry Islington
These gambols⁴⁷ he did play,
Until he came unto the Wash⁴⁸
Of Edmonton so gay;

And there he threw the wash⁴⁹ about
On both sides of the way,
Just like unto a trundling⁵⁰ mop,
Or wild goose at⁵¹ her play.

At Edmonton his loving wife
From balcony espied⁵²
Her tender husband, wond'ring much
To see how he did ride.

1. ausstaffirt. 2. Kopf bis zum Fuß. 3. männlich.
4. aufgefessen. 5. flinkes Pferd.
6. schreitend. 7. mit Acht.
8. beschlagenen 9. schnaufende. 10. quälte.
11. gemächlich. 12. Rinnfette und Zügel.
13. sich niederbückend, wie der nothwendig muß.
14. ergriff. 15. Kraft.
16. Weise. 17. geritten. 18. bekommen.
19. fort. 20. um Hals und Leben.
21. Perrücke. 22. aufbrach.
23. einen solchen Streich zu spielen.
24. Fahne. 25. Schmur.
26. hinweg. 27. angehängt.

28. Bravo. 29. schreien.
30. wer sonst als er. 31. Ruhm.
32. trägt Gewicht. 33. es ist ein Wettrennen.
34. immer als er näher kam.
35. zu sehen. 36. in einem Nu.
37. Schlagbaumleute. 38. rissen.
39. dämpfendes. 40. zwei.
41. mit einem Schlag zerschmettert.
42. höchst beklagenswerth.
43. Weichen dampfen.
44. mit Butter begossen. 45. geschnürt.
46. baumeln. 47. Luftsprünge. 48. Sumpf.
49. Wasser herum. 50. schnell umgedrehter Wisch.
51. im Spiel. 52. sah.

Stop¹, stop, John Gilpin! — Here's the
house —

They all at once did cry;
The dinner waits, and we are tir'd²;
Said Gilpin — So³ am I!

But yet his horse was not a whit⁴
Inclin'd to tarry⁵ there;
For why? — his owner⁶ had a house
Full ten miles off⁷, at Ware.

So like an arrow⁸ swift he flew,
Shot⁹ by an archer¹⁰ strong;
So did he fly — which brings me to
The middle of my song.

Away went Gilpin out of breath,
And sore¹¹ against his will,
Till at¹² his friend the calendrer's,
His horse at last stood still.

The calendrer, amaz'd to see
His neighbour in¹³ such trim,
Laid down his pipe, flew to the gate,
And thus accosted¹⁴ him:

What news? what news? your tidings
tell;
Tell me you must and shall —
Say why bare-headed you are come,
Or why you come at¹⁵ all?

Now Gilpin had¹⁶ a pleasant wit,
And loved a timely¹⁷ joke;
And thus unto¹⁸ the calendrer
In¹⁹ merry guise he spoke:

I came, because your horse would come;
And if I well forebode²⁰,
My hat and wig will soon be here,
They are upon²¹ the road.

The calendrer, right glad to find
His friend in merry²² pin,
Return'd him not a single word,
But to the house went in;

Whence straight he came with hat and
wig;

A wig that²³ flowed behind,
A hat not much²⁴ the worse for wear,
Each comely²⁵ in its kind²⁶.

He held them up²⁷, and in²⁸ his turn
Thus show'd his ready²⁹ wit,
My head is twice as big as yours,
They therefore needs³⁰ must fit.

But let me scrape³¹ the dirt away,
That hangs upon your face;
And stop and eat, for well you may
Be in a hungry case³².

Said John, It is my wedding-day,
And all the world would stare³³,
If wife should dine at Edmonton,
And I should dine at Ware.

So turning³⁴ to his horse, he said,
I am³⁵ in haste to dine;
'Twas for your pleasure you came here,
You shall go back for mine.

Ah luckless speech, and bootless³⁶
boast!
For which he paid full dear;
For while he spake, a braying³⁷ ass
Did sing most loud and clear;

Whereat his horse did snort³⁸, as he
Had heard a lion roar³⁹,
And gallop'd off with all his might,
As he had done before.

Away went Gilpin, and away
Went Gilpin's hat and wig:
He lost them sooner than at first,
For⁴⁰ why? — they were too big.

Now mistress Gilpin, when she saw
Her husband posting⁴¹ down
Into the country far⁴² away,
She pull'd⁴³ out half a crown;

1. halt. 2. müde. 3. ich bin es auch.
4. im Geringsten. 5. zu bleiben.
6. Eigenthümer. 7. entfernt.
8. Pfeil, schnell.
9. abgeschossen. 10. Bogenschütze. 11. sehr.
12. bei. 13. in einem solchen Zustand.
14. redete — an. 15. überhaupt.
16. war ein witziger Mensch.
17. einen gut angebrachten Scherz. 18. dem.
19. auf eine lustige Weise antwortete.
20. voraussehe.
21. unterwegs (auf dem Wege).

22. munterer Laune. 23. mit einer Allonge.
24. sehr abgenützt. 25. anständig, schön.
26. Art. 27. in die Höhe. 28. seinerseits.
29. bereiten Wit.
30. müssen sie nothwendig passen.
31. abfragen. 32. Zustand. 33. staunen.
34. sich — wendend. 35. ich habe Eile.
36. eitles Rühmen. 37. schreiender Esel.
38. schnaufte. 39. brüllen.
40. und warum.
41. gallopiren. 42. weit weg.
43. zog — heraus.

And thus unto the youth she said,
That¹ drove them to the Bell,
This shall be yours, when you bring back
My husband safe and well.

The youth did ride, and soon did meet
John coming back amain²;
Whom in³ a trice he tried⁴ to stop,
By⁵ catching at his rein;

But not performing⁶ what he meant,
And gladly would have done,
The frightened steed he frightened more,
And made him faster run.

Away went Gilpin, and away
Went postboy⁷ at his heels,
The postboy's horse right glad to miss
The lumb'ring⁸ of the wheels.

Six gentlemen upon the road,
Thus⁹ seeing Gilpin fly,
With postboy scamp'ring¹⁰ in the rear,
They raised¹¹ the hue and cry¹¹:

Stop thief! stop thief! a highway-man¹²!
Not one of them was mute¹³;
And all and each that pass'd that way
Did¹⁴ join in the pursuit.

And now the turnpike¹⁵ gates again
Flew open in short space;
The toll-men¹⁶ thinking as before,
That Gilpin rode a race.

And so he did, and won it too,
For he got¹⁷ first to town;
Nor¹⁸ stopp'd till where he had got up
He did again get¹⁹ down.

Now let us sing, long live the king,
And Gilpin long live he;
And, when he next doth²⁰ ride abroad,
May I be there to see!

Cowper.

CXII. England in 1685, and England in 1877.

It is time that the description of the higher classes of the English whom Charles the Second governed should draw to a close*. Yet one subject of the greatest moment still remains untouched. Nothing has as yet been said of the great body of the people, of those who held the ploughs, who tended the oxen, who toiled at the looms of Norwich, and squared the Portland stone for Saint Paul's. Nor can very much be said. The most numerous class is precisely the class respecting which we have the most meagre information. In those times philanthropists did not yet regard it as a sacred duty, nor had demagogues yet found it a lucrative trade, to expatiate on the distress of the labourer. History was too much occupied with courts and camps to spare a line for the hut of the peasant or for the garret of the mechanic. The press now often sends forth in a day a greater quantity of discussion and declamation about the condition of the

* In the preceding part of his History of England, Macaulay proves beyond doubt, that the higher classes, of the present day, are in every respect much more moral, much more humane, much more intellectual and honorable than they ever were in former times. *Ed.*

1. welcher — fuhr.
2. in Gallop. 3. in a trice, sogleich.
4. aufzuhalten suchten.
5. indem er nach dem Zügel griff.
6. indem er nicht vollbrachte.
7. dem Postknecht auf den Fersen.
8. das Kumpeln der Räder.
9. die Gilpin so fliehen sahen.

10. laufen hinter her.
11. erhoben ein lautes Geschrei.
12. Straßenräuber. 13. still, stumm.
14. schloßen sich der Verfolgung an.
15. Schlagbaumthore. 16. Zollwächter.
17. langte — an.
18. auch hielt er nicht inne bis.
19. abstieg. 20. ausreitet.

working man than was published during the twenty-eight years which elapsed between the Restoration and the Revolution. But it would be a great error to infer from the increase of complaint that there has been any increase of misery.

The great criterion of the state of the common people is the amount of their wages; and, as four fifths of the common people were, in the seventeenth century, employed in agriculture, it is especially important to ascertain what were the wages of agricultural industry. On this subject we have the means of arriving at conclusions sufficiently exact for our purpose.

It is evident that, in a country where no man can be compelled to become a soldier, the ranks of an army cannot be filled if the government offers much less than the wages of common rustic labour. At present the pay and beer money of a private in a regiment of the line amount to seven shillings and seven pence a week. This stipend, coupled with the hope of a pension, does not attract the English youth in sufficient numbers; and it is found necessary to supply the deficiency by enlisting largely from among the poorer population of Munster and Connaught. The pay of the private foot soldier in 1685 was only four shillings and eightpence a week, yet it is certain that the government in that year found no difficulty in obtaining many thousands of English recruits at very short notice. On the whole, therefore, it seems reasonable to conclude that, in the reign of Charles the Second, the ordinary wages of the peasant did not exceed four shillings a week; but that, in some parts of the kingdom, five shillings, six shillings, and, during the summer months, even seven shillings were paid. At present a district where a labouring man earns only seven shillings a week is thought to be in a state shocking to humanity. The average is very much higher; and, in prosperous counties, the weekly wages of husbandmen (*Feldarbeiter*) amount to twelve, fourteen, and even sixteen shillings.

The remuneration of workmen employed in manufactures has always been higher than that of the tillers of the soil. In the year 1680, a member of the House of Commons remarked that the high wages paid in this country made it impossible to maintain a competition with the produce of the Indian looms. An English mechanic, he said, instead of slaving like a native of Bengal for a piece of copper, exacted a shilling a day. Other evidence is extant, which proves that a shilling a day was the pay to which the English manufacturer then thought himself entitled, but that he was often forced to work for less. A ballad of that epoch describes the good old times when every artisan employed in the woollen manufacture lived as well as a farmer. But those times were past. Sixpence a day was now all that could be earned by hard labour at the loom. If the poor complained that they could not live on such a pittance, they were told that they were free to take it or leave it. Whereas in our days the average rate of wages for weavers is from two shillings and sixpence to three shillings a day.

It may here be noticed that the practice of setting children prematurely to work, a practice which the state, the legitimate protector of those who cannot protect themselves, has, in our time, wisely and humanely interdicted, prevailed in the seventeenth century to an extent which, when compared with the manufacturing system, seems almost incredible. At Norwich, the chief seat of the clothing trade, a little creature of six years old was thought fit for labour. Several writers of that time, and among them some who were considered as eminently benevolent, mention, with exultation, the fact that in that single city boys and girls of very tender age created wealth exceeding what was necessary for their own subsistence by twelve thousand pounds a year. The more carefully we examine the history of the past, the more reason shall we find to dissent from those who imagine that our age has been fruitful of new social evils. The truth is that the evils are, with scarcely an exception, old. That which is new is the intelligence which discerns and the humanity which remedies them.

When we pass from the weavers of cloth to a different class of artisans, our inquiries will still lead us to nearly the same conclusions. During several generations, the Commissioners of Greenwich Hospital have kept a register of the wages paid to different classes of workmen who have been employed in the repairs of the building. From this valuable record it appears that, in the course of a hundred and twenty years, the daily earnings of the bricklayer have risen from half a crown to four and tenpence, those of the mason from half a crown to five and threepence, those of the carpenter from half a crown to five and fivepence, and those of the plumber (*Bleiarbeiter*) from three shillings to five and tenpence.

It seems clear, therefore, that the wages of labour, estimated in money, were, in 1685, not more than half of what they now are; and there were few articles important to the working man of which the price was not, in 1685, more than half of what it is now. Beer was undoubtedly much cheaper in that age than at present. Meat was also cheaper, but was still so dear that hundreds of thousands of families scarcely knew the taste of it. In the cost of wheat there has been very little change. The average price of the quarter, during the last twelve years of Charles the Second, was fifty shillings. Bread, therefore, such as is now given to the inmates of a workhouse, was then seldom seen, even on the trencher of a yeoman or of a shopkeeper. The great majority of the nation lived almost entirely on rye, barley, and oats. All other commodities were positively dearer than at present.

Of the blessings which civilization and philosophy bring with them, a large proportion is common to all ranks, and would, if withdrawn, be missed as painfully by the labourer as by the peer. The market place which the rustic can now reach with his cart in an hour was, a hundred and sixty years ago, a day's journey from him. The streets which now afford to the artisan, during the whole

night, a secure, a convenient, and a brilliantly lighted walk was, a hundred and sixty years ago, so dark after sunset that he would not have been able to see his hand, so ill paved that he would have run constant risk of breaking his neck, and so ill watched that he would have been in imminent danger of being knocked down and plundered of his small earnings. Every bricklayer who falls from a scaffold, every sweeper of a crossing who is run over by a carriage, may now have his wounds dressed and his limbs set with a skill such as, a hundred and sixty years ago, all the wealth of a great lord like Ormond, or of a merchant prince like Clayton could not have purchased. Some frightful diseases have been extirpated by science; and some have been banished by the police. The term of life has been lengthened over the whole kingdom, and especially in the towns. The year 1685 was not accounted sickly: yet in the year 1685 more than one in twenty-three of the inhabitants of the capital died. At present only one inhabitant of the capital in forty-eight dies annually. The difference in salubrity between London of the nineteenth century and the London of the seventeenth century is very far greater than the difference between London in an ordinary season and London in the cholera.

The prisons in those times were hells on earth, seminaries of every crime and of every disease. At the assizes the lean and yellow culprits brought with them from their cells to the dock (*Gerichtshof*) an atmosphere of pestilence which sometimes avenged them signally on bench (*Richter*), bar (*Advofaten*), and jury. But on all this misery society looked with profound indifference. Nowhere could be found that sensitive and restless compassion which has, in our time, extended a powerful protection to the factory child, to the Hindoo widow, to the Negro slave, which pries into the stores and water-casks of every emigrant ship, which winces at every lash laid on the back of the drunken soldier, which will not suffer the thief in the hulks to be ill fed or overworked, and which has repeatedly endeavoured to save the life of the murderer. It is true that compassion ought, like every other feeling, to be under the government of reason, and has, for want of such government, produced some ridiculous and some deplorable effects. But the more we study the annals of the past, the more shall we rejoice that we live in a merciful age, in an age in which cruelty is abhorred, and in which pain, even when deserved, is inflicted reluctantly and from a sense of duty. Every class doubtless has gained largely by this great moral change: but the class which has gained most is the poorest, the most dependent, and the most defenceless.

It is pleasing to reflect that the public mind of England has softened while it has ripened, and that we have, in the course of ages, become not only a wiser, but also a kinder people. There is scarcely a page of the history or lighter literature of the seventeenth century which does not contain some proof that our ancestors were less humane than their posterity. The discipline of workshops, of

schools, of private families, though not more efficient than at present, was infinitely harsher. Masters, well born and bred, were in the habit of beating their servants. Pedagogues knew no way of imparting knowledge but by beating their pupils. Husbands, of decent station, were not ashamed to beat their wives.

The general effect of the evidence which has been submitted to the reader seems hardly to admit of doubt. Yet, in spite of evidence, many will still imagine to themselves the England of the Stuarts as a more pleasant country than the England in which we live. It may at first seem strange that society, while constantly moving forward with eager speed, should be constantly looking backward with tender regret. But these two propensities, inconsistent as they may appear, can easily be resolved into the same principle. That impatience, while it stimulates us to surpass preceding generations, disposes us to overrate their happiness. It is, in some, sense unreasonable and ungrateful in us to be constantly discontented with a condition which is constantly improving. But, in truth, there is constant improvement because there is constant discontent. If we were perfectly satisfied with the present, we should cease to contrive, to labour, and to save for the future. And it is natural that, being dissatisfied with the present, we should form a too favourable estimate of the past.

In truth we are under a deception similar to that which misleads the traveller in the Arabian desert. Beneath the caravan all is dry and bare: but far in advance, and far in the rear, is the semblance of refreshing waters. The Pilgrims hasten forward and find nothing but sand where, an hour before, they had seen a lake. They turn their eyes and see a lake where, an hour before, they were toiling through sand. A similar illusion seems to haunt nations through every stage of the long progress from poverty and barbarism to the highest degrees of opulence and civilization. But, if we resolutely chase the mirage backward, we shall find it recede before us into the regions of fabulous antiquity. It is now the fashion to place the golden age of England in times when noblemen were destitute of comforts the want of which would be intolerable to a modern footman, when farmers and shopkeepers breakfasted on loaves the very sight of which would raise a riot in a modern workhouse, when men died faster in the purest country air than they now die in the most pestilential lanes of our large towns, and when men died faster in the lanes of our towns than they now die on the coast of Guinea. We too shall, in our turn, be outstripped, and in our turn be envied. It may well be, in the twentieth century, that the peasant of Dorsetshire may think himself miserably paid with fifteen shillings a week; that the carpenter at Greenwich may receive ten shillings a day; that labouring men may be as little used to dine without meat as they are now to eat rye bread; that sanitary police and medical discoveries may have added several more years to the average length of human life; that numerous comforts and luxuries which are now unknown,

or confined to a few, may be within the reach of every diligent and thrifty working man. And yet it may then be the mode to assert that the increase of wealth and the progress of science have benefitted the few at the expense of the many, and to talk of the reign of Queen Victoria as the time when England was truly merry England, when all classes were bound together by brotherly sympathy, when the rich did not grind the faces of the poor, and when the poor did not envy the splendour of the rich.

Macaulay. Hist. of England.

CXIII. Hamlet's "To be, or not To be"¹.

To be, or not to be, that is the question: —
Whether it is nobler in the mind to suffer
The slings and arrows of outrageous fortune;
Or to take arms against a sea of troubles,
And, by opposing, end them? — To die, — to sleep, —
No more; — and, by a sleep, to say we end
The heart-ache, and the thousand natural shocks
That flesh is heir to, — 'tis a consummation
Devoutly to be wish'd. To die; — to sleep;
To sleep! perchance to dream; — ay, there's the rub:
For in that sleep of death what dreams may come,
When we have shuffled off this mortal coil,

1. Hamlet. Sein oder Nichtsein, das ist hier die Frage:
Ob's edler im Gemüth, die Pfeil' und Schleudern
Des wüthenden Geschicks erdulden, oder
Sich waffnend gegen eine See von Plagen,
Durch Widerstand sie enden. Sterben — schlafen —
Nichts weiter! — und zu wissen, daß ein Schlaf
Das Herzweh und die tausend Stöße endet,
Die unsers Fleisches Erbtheil — 's ist ein Ziel
Auf's innigste zu wünschen. Sterben — schlafen —
Schlafen! Vielleicht auch träumen! — Ja, da liegt's:
Was in dem Schlaf für Träume kommen mögen,
Wenn wir den Drang des Ird'schen abgeschüttelt,
Das zwingt uns still zu steh'n. Das ist die Rücksicht,
Die Elend läßt zu hohen Jahren kommen.
Denn wer ertrüg' der Zeiten Spott und Geißlung,
Des Mächtigen Druck, des Stolzen Mißhandlung,
Verschmähter Liebe Pein, des Rechtes Aufschub,
Den Uebermuth der Aemter, und die Schmach,
Die Unwerth schweigendem Verdienst erweist, —
Wenn er den Rechnungsschluß beenden könnte
Mit einem bloßen Dolch? Wer trüge Lasten
Und stöhnt' und schwigte unter Lebensmüß?
Nur daß die Furcht vor etwas nach dem Tod —
Das unentdeckte Land, von deß Bezirk
Kein Wanderer wiederkehrt — den Willen irrt,
Daß wir die Nebel, die wir haben, lieber
Ertragen als zu Unbekannten flieh'n.
So macht Gewissen Feige aus uns allen;
Der angeborenen Farbe der Entschließung
Wird des Gedankens Blässe angekränelt;
Und Unternehmungen voll Mark und Nachdruck,
Durch diese Rücksicht aus der Bahn gelenkt,
Verlieren so der Handlung Namen — Still!
Die reizende Ophelia — Nymphe, schließ'
In dein Gebet all' meine Sünden ein.

Must give us pause: there's the respect,
 That makes calamity of so long life:
 For who would bear the whips and scorns of time,
 The oppressor's wrong, the proud man's contumely,
 The pangs of despised love, the law's delay,
 The insolence of office, and the spurns
 That patient merit of the unworthy takes,
 When he himself might his quietus make
 With a bare bodkin? Who would fardels bear,
 To grunt and sweat under a weary life;
 But that the dread of something after death,
 The undiscover'd country, from whose bourn
 No traveller returns, — puzzles the will;
 And makes us rather bear those ills we have,
 Than fly to others that we know not of?
 Thus conscience does make cowards of us all;
 And thus the native hue of resolution
 Is sicklied o'er with the pale cast of thought;
 And enterprizes of great pith and moment,
 With this regard their currents turn awry,
 And lose the name of action. — Soft you, now!
 The fair Ophelia: — Nymph, in thy orisons
 Be all my sins remembered.

Shakspeare.

CXIV. Faith.

A mother had an only son, and sent him out¹ to sea:
 She was a widow, and in penury; and he must seek his fortunes.
 How often in the wintry nights, when waves and winds were howling,
 Her heart was torn with sickening² dread, and bled to see her boy.
 And on one sunny morn, when all around was comfort,
 News came, that weeks ago³, the vessel had been wrecked⁴;
 Yea, wrecked, and he was dead! they⁵ had seen him perish⁶ in his agony:
 Oh then, what agony⁷ was like to hers, — for she believed the tale.
 She was bowed⁸ and broken⁸ down with sorrow, and uncomforted in prayer;
 Many nights she mourned, and pined⁹, and had no hope but death.
 But on a day, while sorely she was weeping, a stranger broke¹⁰ upon her
 loneliness, —
 He had news to tell, that weather-beaten¹¹ man, and must not be¹² denied:
 And what were the wonder-working words that made this mourner joyous,
 That swept¹³ her heaviness¹⁴ away, and filled her world with praise?
 Her son was saved, is alive, — is near! O did she stop to question?
 No! rushing in *the force of faith*, she met him at the door!

Tupper.

1. zur. 2. peinlicher Furcht. 3. vorher.
 4. gescheitert. 5. man.
 6. in seinem Todeskampf zu Grunde gehen sehen.
 7. Seelenpein. 8. gebeugt, niedergedrückt.

9. härmte sich. 10. unterbrach.
 11. verwitterte. 12. abgewiesen.
 13. verscheuchte.
 14. Schwermuth.

CXV. Description of the Esquimaux. Coquetry at the North Pole.

The Esquimaux exhibit a strange mixture of intellect and dullness, of cunning and simplicity, of ingenuity and stupidity; few of them could count beyond five, and not one of them beyond ten, nor could any of them speak a dozen words of English after a constant intercourse of seventeen or eighteen months; yet many of them could imitate the manners and actions of the strangers, and were on the whole excellent mimics. One woman in particular of the name of Iligluik, very soon attracted the attention of our voyagers by the various traits of that superiority of understanding for which, it was found, she was remarkably distinguished, and held in esteem even by her own countrymen. She had a great fondness for singing, possessed a soft voice and an excellent ear; but, like another great singer who figured in a different society, "there was scarcely any stopping her when she had once begun;" she would listen, however, for hours together to the tunes played on the organ. Her superior intelligence was perhaps most conspicuous in the readiness with which she comprehended the manner of laying down (zu zeichnen) on paper the geographical outline of that part of the coast of America with which she was acquainted, and the neighbouring islands, so as to construct a chart (Seefarte). At first it was found difficult to make her comprehend what was meant; but when Captain Parry had discovered that the Esquimaux were already acquainted with the four cardinal points of the compass, for which they have appropriate names, he drew them on a sheet of paper, together with that portion of the coast just discovered, which was opposite to Winter Island, where they then were, and of course well known to her.

We desired her (says Captain Parry) to complete the rest, and to do it *mikkee* (small, when, with a countenance of the most grave attention and peculiar intelligence, she drew the coast of the continent beyond her own country, as lying nearly north from Winter Island. The most important part still remained, and it would have amused an unconcerned looker-on to have observed the anxiety and suspense depicted on the countenances of our part of the group, till this was accomplished, for never were the tracings of a pencil watched with more eager solicitude. Our surprise and satisfaction may therefore, in some degree be imagined, when, without taking it from the paper, Iligluik brought the continental coast short round to the westward, and afterwards to the S. S. W. (south south west), so as to come within three or four days' journey of Repulse Bay.

I am, however, compelled to acknowledge, that in proportion as the superior understanding of this extraordinary woman became more and more developed, her head (for what head, and particularly what female head, is indifferent to praise?) began to be turned by the general attention and numberless presents she received. The superior decency and even modesty of her behaviour had combined with her intellectual qualities, to raise her in our estimation far above her

companions; and I often heard others express what I could not but agree in, that for Iligluik alone, of all the Esquimaux women, that kind of respect could be entertained, which modesty in a female never fails to command in our sex. Thus regarded she had always been freely admitted into the ships, the quarter-masters at the gangway never thinking of refusing entrance to "the wise woman," as they called her. Whenever any explanation was necessary between the Esquimaux and us, Iligluik was sent for as an interpreter; information was chiefly obtained through her, and she thus found herself rising into a degree of confidence to which, but for us, she could never have attained. Notwithstanding a more than ordinary share of good sense on her part, it will not therefore be wondered at that she became giddy with her exaltation — considered her admission into the ships and most of the cabins no longer an indulgence, but a right — ceased to return the slightest acknowledgment for any kindness or presents — became listless and inattentive in unravelling the meaning of our questions, and careless whether her answers conveyed the information we desired. In short, Iligluik in February and Iligluik in April were confessedly very different persons; and it was at last amusing to recollect, though not very easy to persuade one's self, that the woman who now sat demurely in a chair, so confidently expecting the notice of those around her, and she who had at first, with eager and wild delight, assisted in cutting snow for the building of a hut, and with the hope of obtaining a single needle, were actually one and the same individual.

No kind of distress can deprive the Esquimaux of their cheerful temper and good humour, which they preserve even when severely pinched with hunger and cold, and wholly deprived for days together both of food and fuel — a situation to which they are frequently reduced. Yet no calamity of this kind can teach them to be provident, or to take the least thought for the morrow; with them, indeed, it is always either a feast or a famine. The enormous quantity of animal food (they have no other) which they devour at a time, is almost incredible. The quantity of meat which they procured between the first of October and the first of April was sufficient to have furnished about double the number of working people, who were moderate eaters, and had any idea of providing for a future day; but to individuals who can demolish four or five pounds at a sitting, and at least ten in the course of a day, and who never bestow a thought on to-morrow, at least with the view to provide for it by economy, there is scarcely any supply which could secure them from occasional scarcity. It is highly probable that the alternate feasting and fasting to which the gluttony and improvidence of these people so constantly subject them, may have occasioned many of the complaints that proved fatal during the winter; and on this account we hardly knew whether to rejoice or not at the general success of their fishery.

Sir Edward Parry's Journal.

CXVI. Antony's Funeral Oration over the Body of Cæsar.

Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears!
 I come to bury Cæsar, not praise him.
 The evil that men do, lives after them,
 The good is oft interred with their bones;
 So let it be with Cæsar. The noble Brutus
 Hath told you Cæsar was ambitious:
 If it were so, it was a grievous¹ fault;
 And grievously hath Cæsar answer'd² it².
 Here, under³ leave³ of Brutus, and the rest⁴,
 (For Brutus is an honourable man;
 So are they all, all honourable men);
 Come I to speak in⁵ Cæsar's funeral.
 He was my friend, faithful and just to me:
 But Brutus says he was ambitious;
 And Brutus is an honourable man.
 He hath brought many captives⁶ home to Rome,
 Whose ransoms⁷ did the general⁸ coffers fill:
 Did this in Cæsar seem ambitious?
 When⁹ that⁹ the poor have cried¹⁰, Cæsar hath wept¹⁰:
 Ambition should be made of sterner¹¹ stuff¹²;
 Yet Brutus says he was ambitious;
 And Brutus is an honourable man.
 You all did see that on the Lupercal,
 I thrice presented him a kingly crown;
 Which he did thrice refuse. Was this ambition?
 Yet Brutus says he was ambitious;
 And sure he is an honourable man.
 I speak not to disprove¹³ what Brutus spake,
 But here I am to speak what I do know.
 You all did love him once, not without cause,
 What cause withholds¹⁴ you then to mourn¹⁰ for him?
 O judgment¹⁵, thou art fled to brutish beasts,
 And men have lost their reason¹⁶! Bear¹⁷ with me, —
 My heart is in the coffin there with Cæsar,
 And I must pause till it comes back to me.

* * * * *

If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.
 You all do know this mantle; I remember
 The first time Cæsar ever put¹⁸ it on;
 'Twas on a summer's evening in his tent:
 That day he overcame¹⁹ the Nervii.
 Look! in this place ran Cassius' dagger through; —
 See what a rent²⁰ the envious Casca made; —
 Through this the well-beloved Brutus stabb'd²¹;
 And as he pluck'd²² his cursed steel away,
 Mark how the blood of Cæsar follow'd it!

1. schrecklicher. 2. dafür gebüßt.
 3. mit Erlaubniß. 4. Uebrigen.
 5. bei. 6. Gefangene.
 7. Lösegeld.
 8. öffentlichen Kassen.
 9. so oft.
 10. to cry bedeutet weinen mit einem kummervollen Geräusche, to weep heißt weinen = Thränen im Stillen vergießen.

11. härteren, unempfindlicheren.
 12. Zeug. 13. widerlegen.
 14. verhindert.
 15. Urteilsvermögen.
 16. Vernunft.
 17. Habet Geduld.
 18. put it on, ihn um sich hing.
 19. besiegt. 20. Riß. 21. stach.
 22. herausriß.

As¹ rushing out of doors¹ to be² resolv'd²,
 If Brutus so unkindly³ knock'd or no:
 For Brutus, as you know, was Cæsar's angel.
 Judge⁴, O ye gods! how dearly Cæsar loved him!
 This was the unkindest cut⁵ of all;
 For when the noble Cæsar saw him stab⁶,
 Ingratitude, more strong than traitor's arms⁷,
 Quite vanquish'd⁸ him; then burst his mighty heart:
 And in his mantle muffling⁹ up his face,
 Even at the base¹⁰ of Pompey's statue,
 Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell.
 Ah what a fall was there, my countrymen!
 Then I, and you, and all of us fell down,
 Whilst bloody treason flourish'd¹¹ over us.
 O, now you weep, and I perceive you¹² feel
 The dint of pity¹²; these are gracious drops.
 Kind souls! What, weep you when you but behold
 Our Cæsar's vesture¹³ wounded? Look you here!
 Here is himself, marr'd¹⁴ as you see by traitors. —

Good friends, sweet friends, let me not stir¹⁵ you up¹⁵
 To any sudden flood¹⁶ of mutiny¹⁷.
 They that have done this deed are honourable.
 What private griefs they have, alas, I know not,
 That made them do it! they are wise and honourable,
 And will, no doubt, with reason answer you.
 I come not, friends, to steal away your hearts;
 I am no orator, as Brutus is;
 But, as you know me all, a plain¹⁸ blunt¹⁹ man,
 That love my friend; and that they know full well
 That gave me public leave to speak of him:
 For I have neither wit, nor words, nor worth,
 Action, nor utterance²⁰, nor the power of speech,
 To stir¹⁵ men's blood; I only speak right on:
 I tell you that which you yourselves do know;
 Show you sweet Cæsar's wounds, poor, poor dumb mouths,
 And bid them speak for me. But were I Brutus,
 And Brutus Antony, there were an Antony
 Would ruffle²¹ up your spirits, and put a tongue
 In every wound of Cæsar, that should move
 The stones of Rome to rise²² and mutiny²².

Shakspeare.

CXVII. Variety of Knowledge.

All knowledge is of itself of some value. There is nothing so minute or inconsiderable, that I would not rather know it than not. In the same manner, all power, of whatever sort, is of itself desirable. A man would not submit to learn to hem (jäumen) a ruffle (Salz-frause) of his wife, or his wife's maid: but if a wish could attain it, he would rather wish to be able to hem a ruffle.

Boswell's Life of Johnson.

1. *as rushing, &c.*, als ob er zur Thüre hinaus-
 stürzte.
 2. *to be, &c.*, um sich zu überzeugen.
 3. ungütig. 4. urtheilet. 5. Schlag.
 6. stechen. 7. Waffen. 8. überwältigte.
 9. umbüllend. 10. Fuß. 11. herrschte.

12. *you feel, &c.*, daß Ihr wirklich Mitleid emp-
 findet. 13. Kleid.
 14. verstümmelt. 15. bewegen. 16. gewaltigen.
 17. Aufruhr. 18. einfacher. 19. gerader.
 20. Vortrag. 21. in Wallung bringen.
 22. *to rise, &c.*, sich in Aufruhr zu erheben.

CXVIII. The Babes¹ in the Wood²; A Ballad.

Now ponder³ well, you parents dear,
These wonders, which I shall write;
A doleful⁴ story you shall hear,
In time brought forth⁵ to light⁵.
A gentleman of good⁶ account⁶
In Norfolk dwelt of late⁷,
Who did in honour far surmount⁸
Most men of his estate⁹.

Sore sick he was, and like to die,
No help his life could save;
His wife by him as sick did lie,
And both possess'd¹⁰ one grave.
No love between these two was lost,
Each was to other kind,
In love they liv'd, in love they died,
And left two babes behind¹¹:

The one a fine and pretty boy,
Not passing¹² three years old;
The other a girl more young than he,
And fram'd¹³ in beauty's mould¹⁴.
The father left his little son,
As plainly doth appear,
When he to perfect age should come,
Three hundred pounds a year.

And to his little daughter Jane
Five hundred pounds in gold,
To be paid down on marriage-day,
Which might not be controul'd¹⁵.
But if the children chance¹⁶ to die,
Ere they to age¹⁷ should come,
Their uncle should possess their wealth;
For so the will¹⁸ did run¹⁹.

Now, brother, said the dying man,
Look²⁰ to my children dear;
Be good unto my boy and girl,
No friends else have they here:
To God and you I recommend
My children dear this day;
But little while be²¹ sure²¹ have we
Within this world to stay.

You must be father and mother both,
And uncle all in one;
God knows what will become of them,
When I am dead and gone.
With that bespake their mother dear,
O brother kind, quoth she,
You are the man must bring our babes
To wealth or misery:

And if you keep them carefully,
Then God will you reward;
But if you otherwise should deal,
God will your deeds regard²².
With lips as cold as any stone
They kiss'd their children small:
God bless you both, my children dear,
With that the tears did fall.

These speeches then their brother spake
To this sick couple there,
The keeping²³ of your little ones,
Sweet sister, do not fear:
God never prosper²⁴ me nor mine,
Nor²⁵ aught else²⁵ that I have,
If I do wrong your children dear,
When you are laid in grave.

The parents being dead and gone,
The children home* he takes,
And brings them straight unto his house,
Where much²⁶ of them he makes²⁶.
He had not kept these pretty babes
A twelve month and a day,
But, for their wealth, he did devise²⁷
To make²⁸ them both away²⁸.

He bargain'd with two ruffians strong,
Which were of furious mood²⁹,
That they should take these children
young
And slay³⁰ them in a wood.
He told his wife an artful tale³¹,
He would the children send,
To be brought³² up in fair London,
With one that was a friend.

1. Kinderchen. 2. Wald. 3. erwäget.
4. traurige. 5. ans Licht.
6. von Bedeutung. 7. neulich.
8. übertraf. 9. Stand.
10. hatten. 11. zurück.
12. über. 13. ein wahres Bild.
14. der Schönheit.
15. vorenthalten. 16. zufällig.
17. mündig. 18. Testament.
19. lautete. 20. Sorge für. 21. gewiß.

22. strafen. 23. wegen Fürsorge.
24. möge Gott nie — gedeihen lassen.
25. noch irgend etwas.
26. er für sie sehr gut sorgt.
27. dachte er darauf.
28. sie aus dem Wege zu räumen.
29. Charakter. * nimmt er mit sich.
30. umbringen.
31. listige Geschichte, daß.
32. um sie erziehen zu lassen.

Away then went those pretty babes
Rejoicing at that tide¹,
Rejoicing with a merry mind,
They should on cock-horse² ride,
They prate³ and prattle pleasantly,
As they rode on the way,
To those that should their butchers be,
And work their lives' decay⁴.

So that the pretty speech they had,
Made Murderers' heart relent⁵:
And they that undertook the deed,
Full sore did now repent.
Yet one of them more hard of heart,
Did vow⁶ to do his charge⁷,
Because the wretch, that hired him,
Had paid him very large.

The other won't agree thereto,
So here they fall to strife⁸;
With one another they did fight,
About the children's life:
And he that was of mildest mood,
Did slay the other there,
Within an unfrequented⁹ wood;
The babes did quake¹⁰ for fear!

He took the children by the hand,
Tears standing in their eye,
And bade them straightway follow him,
And look¹¹ they did not cry:
And two long miles he led them on,
While they for food¹² complain:
Stay here, quoth he, I'll bring you bread
When I come back again.

These pretty babes, with hand in hand,
Went wandering up and down;
But never more could see the man
Approaching¹³ from the town:
Their pretty lips with blackberries¹⁴,
Were all besmear'd¹⁵ and dyed,
And when they saw the darksome night,
They sat them down and cried.

Thus wandered these poor innocents,
Till death did end their grief,
In one another's arms they died,
As¹⁶ wanting due relief¹⁶:
No burial "this" pretty "pair"
Of any man receives,
Till Robin-red-breast¹⁷ piously
Did cover them with leaves.

And now the heavy wrath¹⁸ of God
Upon their uncle fell;
Yea, fearful fiends did haunt his house,
His conscience felt a hell:
His barns were fir'd, his goods consum'd,
His lands were barren¹⁹ made,
His cattle died within the field,
And nothing with him stay'd.

And in a voyage to Portugal
Two of his sons did die;
And to conclude, himself was brought
To want and misery:
He pawn'd and mortgag'd all his land
Ere seven years came²⁰ about²⁰,
And now at length this wicked act
Did by this means come out²¹:

The fellow, that did take in hand
These children for to kill,
Was for a robbery judg'd²² to die,
Such was God's blessed will:
Who did confess the very truth,
As here hath been display'd:
Their uncle having died in gaol²³,
Where he for debt was laid.

You that executors²⁴ be made,
And overseers²⁴ eke²⁵,
Of children that be fatherless,
And children mild and meek;
Take you example by this thing,
And yield²⁶ to each his right,
Lest²⁷ God with such like misery
Your wicked minds requite²⁸.*

Percy's Reliques of Ancient English poetry.

* This ballad is supposed to have been written about the year 1600; the words are, of course, the same as in the original, the orthography, however, has been modernized, in order to make it more easily comprehensible to young and less practised readers.

J. S. S. R.

1. Zeit. 2. Steckenpferd.
3. plappern und plaudern. 4. Ende.
5. erweichen. 6. schwor. 7. Auftrag.
8. in Streit. 9. einsam. 10. bebten.
11. Acht zu geben, daß. 12. Essen, Speise.
13. kommen. 14. Brombeere.
15. beschmiert.
16. Aus Mangel an nöthiger Hülfe.
17. Rothkehlchen. 18. Zorn.

19. unfruchtbar.
20. um waren.
21. ans Licht. 22. verurtheilt.
23. (dschehl) Gefängniß.
24. Testamentsvollstrecker und Vormünder.
25. zugleich.
26. gebet. 27. damit — nicht.
28. bestrafen.

CXIX. The Last Minstrel¹.

The way was long, the wind was cold,
 The minstrel¹ was infirm² and old;
 His withered cheek, and tresses³ gray,
 Seemed to have known a better day;
 The harp, his sole remaining joy,
 Was carried by an orphan boy;
 The last of all the bards was he,
 Who sang of Border⁴ chivalry.
 For⁵, well-a-day⁵! their date was fled,
 His tuneful⁶ brethren all were dead;
 And he, neglected and oppressed,
 Wished to be with them, and at rest.
 Old times were changed, old manners gone,
 A stranger filled the Stuarts' throne:
 The bigots of the iron time
 Had called his harmless art a crime.
 A wandering harper, scorned and poor,
 He begged his bread from door to door!
 And tuned⁷, to please a peasant's ear,
 The harp a king had loved to hear.

He passed where Newark's stately tower
 Looks out from yarrow's birchen⁸ bower:
 The minstrel gazed with wistful⁹ eye —
 No humbler resting-place was nigh.
 With hesitating step at last
 The embattled¹⁰ portal-arch he pass'd,
 Whose ponderous grate¹¹ and massy bar¹²
 Had oft rolled back the tide of war,
 But never closed the iron door
 Against the desolate and poor.
 The Duchess marked¹³ his weary pace,
 His timid mien, and reverend face,
 And bade¹⁴ her page the menials¹⁵ tell,
 That they should tend¹⁶ the old man well:
 For she had known adversity,
 Though born in such a high degree;
 In pride of power, in beauty's bloom,
 Had wept o'er Monmouth's bloody tomb!

When kindness had his wants supplied
 And the old man was gratified,
 Began to rise his minstrel pride:
 And, would the noble Duchess deign¹⁷
 To listen to an old man's strain¹⁸,
 Though stiff his hand, his voice though weak,
 He thought even yet, the sooth¹⁹ to speak,
 That if she loved the harp to hear,
 He could make music to her ear.

1. Minnefänger. 2. krank. 3. Locken.
 4. Grenz-Ritterthum. 5. denn leider.
 6. musikalische. 7. stimmte.
 8. Birkenlaube. 9. tiefsinnigem.
 10. mit Schießscharten versehenem Portal.

11. Gitter.
 12. Riegel. 13. sah, bemerkte.
 14. befahl. 15. Dienerschaft. 16. pflegen.
 17. geruhen. 18. Gesang, Lied.
 19. die Wahrheit zu sagen.

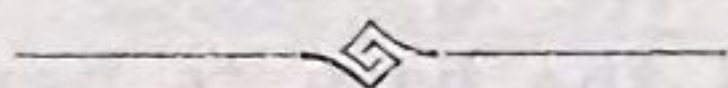
The humble boon¹ was soon obtained;
 The aged minstrel audience gained.
 But when he reached the room of state,
 Where she with all her ladies sate,
 Perchance he wished his boon denied;
 For when to tune his harp he tried,
 His trembling hand had lost the ease
 Which marks security to please:
 And scenes long past, of joy and pain,
 Came wildering o'er his aged brain —
 He tried to tune his harp in vain.
 The pitying Duchess praised its chime,
 And gave him heart, and gave him time,
 Till every string's according glee
 Was blended into harmony.
 And then, he said, he would² full fain²
 He could recall³ an ancient strain
 He never thought to sing again.
 It was not framed⁴ for village churls⁵,
 But for high dames and mighty earls⁶;
 He had played it to king Charles the Good
 When he kept court in Holyrood;
 And much he wished, yet feared, to try
 The long-forgotten melody.

Amid the strings his fingers strayed,
 And an uncertain warbling⁷ made,
 And oft he shook his hoary head;
 But when he caught the measure wild,
 The old man raised his face and smiled;
 And lighted up his faded eye
 With all a poet's ecstasy!
 In varying cadence, soft or strong,
 He swept⁸ the sounding chords along;
 The present scene, the future lot,
 His toils⁹, his wants, were all forgot;
 And while his harp responsive rung,
 'Twas thus the Latest Minstrel sung.

Walter Scott.

1. Gnade, Bitte. 2. möchte gar gern.
 3. sich erinnern. 4. gemacht.
 5. Dorfgesindel. 6. Grafen.

7. Trillern hervorbrachte.
 8. strich.
 9. Beschwerden.



Appendix.

Alphabetical list of Authors from whose works the articles contained in this book have been principally extracted, with some account of their lives and works.

- ADDISON (JOSEPH) (*see page 27*), so highly celebrated in English literature, was born in 1672, in Wiltshire. He was the friend of Steele, in connexion with whom, he published the "*Tattler, Spectator,*" and "*Guardian.*" He also wrote "*A Defence of the Christian Religion,*" &c., and his famous tragedy of "*Cato*" which was performed for 35 nights running. He died in 1719.
- ADDISON (H. R.) (*s. page 131*), a modern traveller who writes occasional articles for the Magazines.
- AIKIN (DR. JOHN) (*s. page 127*), was born in 1747 in Leicestershire. He studied surgery at Edinburgh and Medecine at Leyden. In 1792 he removed to London, devoted himself to literature, and in 1796 became the editor of the Monthly Magazine. His principal work is a "*Biographical Dictionary*" in 4to. Dr. Aikin died in 1822.
- BLESSINGTON (COUNTESS OF) (*s. page 120*), is one of the thousand modern Authoresses, some of whose works are good, some bad, and a very great number indifferent. The Countess of B—'s best works are: "*The two Friends;*" "*The Victims of Society;*" "*The Idler in Italy,*" &c. Died in Paris, 1849.
- BOSWELL (JAMES) (*s. page 200*), the friend and biographer of Dr. Johnson, of whom it may be said, that it would be as difficult to find another Boswell as another Johnson. He was born in Scotland, 1740; died, 1795.
- BOWRING (DR. JOHN) (*s. page 65*), a living author, principally known for his translations from nearly thirty languages, European and Eastern, and for his "*Contestacion á las Observaciones de D. Juan Bernardo O'Gavan, sobre la Esclavitud de los Negros.*"
- BRUYÈRE (JOHN DE LA) (*s. page 37*), an eminent French writer; author of "*Dialogues on Quietism;*" "*Theophrastus,*" translated from the Greek, &c. He was born 1644, and died, 1696.
- BULWER (LORD LYTTON) (*s. page 194*), the great Novelist, is too well known to the literary world for me to make any remark about him here. His best works are: "*The Last days of Pompeji;*" "*Rienzi;*" "*Devereux;*" "*Eugene Aram;*" "*The Caxtons.*" He has also translated Schiller's poems. Died 1873.
- BURNS (ROBERT) (*s. page 193*), a celebrated Scotch poet, whose rich humour, pathos, and energy, have never been surpassed, was born of humble parents near the town of Ayr (chr) in 1759. Burns died in 1796, in great poverty, in the 37th year of his age; but was followed to the grave by Dukes, Earls, and other nobles, and his widow and children were afterwards well provided for. Why not do something for the living man?
- BYRON (GEORGE GORDON, LORD) (*s. page 72—100*), certainly one of the greatest genius of modern days, was born in London in 1788, and died at Missolonghi 1824. His finest poems are, "*The Prisoners of Chillon;*" "*The Lament of Tasso;*" "*The Corsair;*" "*The Siege of Corinth;*" "*The Dream;*" "*Childe Harold's Pilgrimage.*"
- CAMPBELL (THOMAS) (*s. page 55*), a great modern poet, was born in Glasgow in 1777, and studied at the University of that city. His principal works are "*The Pleasures of Hope;*" "*Gertrude of Wyoming;*" "*Theodoric.*" His national and naval songs "*Ye Mariners of England;*" "*The Battle of the Baltic,*" &c., for which he received a pension, are highly qualified to awaken the sympathies of the people. He died in 1844.
- CHATHAM (WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF) (*s. page 128*), one of the most illustrious statesmen that ever graced the British Senate, was born in 1708. In 1766, he was created Earl of Chatham. He was always opposed to the coercive measures employed against America, and it was when speaking with his accustomed energy on the subject in the House of Lords, April 8, 1778, that he fell down in a convulsive fit. He died in May, 1778.

- CHESTERFIELD (PHILIPP DORMER STANHOPE, EARL OF) (*s. page 77*), was born in 1694. He was a man of brilliant talents, tainted, however, with much vanity. His principal literary works are his excellent "*Letters to his Son.*" Died, 1773.
- CIBBER (COLLEY) (*s. page 137*), a celebrated author and actor, was born in London 1671. He wrote 25 tragedies and comedies, an "*Apology for his own life;*" an "*Essay on the Character of Cicero,*" &c. Died, 1757.
- COURIER (PAUL LOUIS) (*s. page 11*), a witty and able French writer, was born in 1774. He is particularly known for his letters and for several admirable political pamphlets. He was assassinated in 1825.
- COWPER (WM.) (*s. page 201*), a distinguished poet, was born in Hertfordshire, in 1731. His principal pieces are "*The Task,*" "*Hope,*" "*Tirocinium,*" &c. He was of a delicate frame and subject to frequent attacks of melancholy and despondency. Died in 1800.
- CROXALL (REVD. DR.) (*s. page 53*), an English writer of the 18th century. His principal works are: "*Imitation of the Song of Solomon;*" "*Scripture Politics;*" "*The Royal Manual,*" and his translation of Aesop's Fables.
- DICKENS (CHARLES) (*s. page 138*), a celebrated writer of the present day, was originally brought up to the Law. His principal works are: "*Oliver Twist;*" "*Nicholas Nickleby;*" "*The Picwick Club;*" "*Master Humphry's Clock,*" &c. In his descriptions Dickens displays deep morality, much delicacy of feeling, and great truth in the delineation of Character. Died, 1870.
- D'ISRAELI (JOHN) (*s. page 117*), a writer of considerable merit. He died in 1849, at a very advanced age. He was the first who introduced the word "*Fatherland*" into the English language. His principal works are "*Curiosities of Literature,*" and "*Miscellanies of Literature,*" His son, B. D'Israeli, the celebrated Member of Parliament, has written several very interesting novels.
- DUDLEY (J. WM. WARD, EARL OF) (*s. page 73*), was a man of powerful talents, but remarkable for his absence of mind, and his habit of "thinking aloud." He was Secretary of State in 1827. He was born in 1781 and died 1833. His principal work is: his "*Letters to the Lord Bishop of Llandaff.*"
- ELDER (ABRAHAM) (*s. page 185*), a modern writer not much known.
- FRANKLIN (DR. BEN.) (*s. page 35—67*), an eminent philosopher and politician, was born at Boston, in the United States, in 1706. He was the fifteenth of seventeen children, and was brought up to the trade of a printer. In 1744 he made his discoveries in electricity, drew down the lightning from the clouds, and invented the lightning-conductor. His principal works are his "*Autobiography,*" his "*Essays,*" and his "*Philosophical Pieces.*" Died, 1790.
- GAY (JOHN) (*s. page 69*), an eminent English poet, was born in Devon, in 1688. His chief works are: his "*Poems in 2 volumes 4to;*" his "*Fables;*" "*The Beggar's Opera,*" which was first acted in 1727 and ran for 63 successive nights. He died 1732.
- GIBBON (EDWARD) (*s. page 83*), the celebrated historian, was born at Putney, near London, in 1737. He studied at Oxford, and made the Grand Tour; lived in Lausanne from 1783 till 1793, then returned to London where he died, 1794. His chief works are: "*The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire,*" and his "*Autobiography.*"
- GLEIG (REVD. G. R.) (*s. page 100*), a writer of the present day well known for his school books. His principal works are: "*Lives of the most Eminent British Commanders;*" "*Memoir of Warren Hastings, Governor-General of India;*" "*History of the British Empire in India.*"
- GOLDSMITH (OLIVER) (*s. page 54—97*), a celebrated poet, historian and essayist, was born at Pallas, in Ireland, in 1731. He was intended for the medical profession, and in his youth gave no signs of those talents which he afterwards displayed. His chief works are: the almost universally known "*Vicar of Wakefield;*" "*History of England, of Greece, of Rome;*" "*A History of the Earth and Animated Nature;*" the comedies of "*The Good-Natured Man;*" and "*She stoops to Conquer;*" Poems, &c. Died, 1774.

- GRAY (THOS.) (*s. page 71*), a celebrated English poet, was born in London, in 1716. His chief works are: "*The Progress of Poesy*;" "*The Bard*," and his "*Elegy written in a Church-yard*," a most beautiful poem. Died, 1771.
- HALL (CAPT. BASIL) (*s. page 23—38*), an excellent modern writer. His principal writings are: "*Fragments of voyages*;" "*Loo-Choo*;" "*South America*;" "*Schloss Hainfeld*," &c. Died, 1852.
- HUME (DAVID) (*s. page 47—115*), a celebrated historian, philosopher, and miscellaneous writer, was born at Edinburgh in 1711. His chief works are: "*An Inquiry concerning Human Understanding*;" "*Political Discourses*," and the "*History of England*." He died in 1776.
- IRVING (WASHINGTON) (*s. page 147—180*), a celebrated writer of our day, an American by birth. His principal works, in which he displays much humour, combined with kindness and sympathy for the whole human race, are: "*Knickerbocker's History of New-York*;" "*The Sketch Book*;" "*The Alhambra*;" "*Astoria*," &c. He died 1859.
- JEFFERSON (THOS.) (*s. page 60*), third president of the United States, was born in 1743, in Virginia. He died in 1826.
- JOHNSON (DR. SAMUEL) (*s. page 3—58*), the celebrated lexicographer, and one of the most distinguished writers of the 18th century, was born in 1709, at Lichfield, where his father was a bookseller. His principal works are: his "*Lives of the English Poets*;" his "*Dictionary of the English Language*;" "*Irene*;" "*The Rambler*;" and his excellent "*Rasselas*;" which he wrote to enable him to bury his mother, who lay dead in the house. He died 1784.
- LOCKE (JOHN) (*s. page 60*), one of the most eminent philosophers and writers of modern times, was born at Wrington, in 1632. His principal works are: an "*Essay on the Human Understanding*;" „Letters on Toleration," and a "*Treatise on Civil Government*." He died in 1704.
- LOCKHART (J. G.) (*s. page 4*), was son in-Law and Biographer of the greatest of Novel Writers, and one of the best of men, the late *Sir Walter Scott*. Lockhart's chief works are: his "*Life of Napoleon*;" "*Life of Rob. Burns*;" and of the above named *Sir W. Scott*.
- MACAULAY (LORD T. B.) (*s. page 204*), one of the most celebrated authors and best historians of the present day. His principal works are: "*Lay of ancient Rome*," "*Essays*," "*The history of England from the Accession of James I.*" &c. Died in 1859.
- MACPHERSON (JAMES) (*s. page 47*), a writer distinguished for his translations or imitations of ancient Gaelic poems, was born in Inverness, in 1738. His principal works are: "*History of Great Britain*;" and "*The Poems of Ossian*;" professedly translated from Ossian the son of Fingal, a Gaelic prince of the third century, but in the opinion of Dr. Johnson, and of most of Macpherson's cotemporaries, the whole of the prose epics were founded on traditional narratives current among the Highlanders. He died in 1796.
- MALCOLM (SIR JOHN) (*s. page 113*), a distinguished military Officer and diplomatist, was born in Scotland, in 1769. His chief works are: his "*History of Persia*;" "*Memoirs of Central India*," &c. Died in 1833.
- MAUNDERS (SAMUEL) (*s. page 25—146*), a modern compiler and writer of great merit. His chief works are: "*Treasury of Knowledge*," "*of Science*." Died, 1856.
- MILTON (JOHN) (*s. page 172*), the most illustrious of English poets, was born in London, in 1608. His principal works are: "*Comus*;" "*L'Allegro*;" "*Il Penseroso*;" "*Divorce*;" and his immortal epics "*Paradise Lost*," and "*Paradise Regained*." He died in London, in 1677.
- MITFORD (ALGERNON BERTRAM), a modern writer, Secretary to the British Legation in Japan, first known by his translations from the Japanese.
- MONTAGUE (LADY MARY) (*s. page 75*), a lady distinguished for her literary attainments, was born in 1690, in Nottinghamshire. Her complete works fill 6 Vols., and her "*Letters*" certainly place her at the head of female epistolary writers in Great Britain. She died in 1762.

- NAPIER (COL. W. F. P., C. B.) (*s. page 136*), a distinguished military officer and writer of the present day. His "*History of the War in the Peninsula*" is excellent. There were 3 brothers, Admiral, Major-General, and Colonel, all equally distinguished as authors, officers, and men. Died, 1854.
- OSSIAN the son of Fingal (*s. page 47*). See Macpherson.
- PARRY (CAPTAIN, SIR EDWARD), a celebrated explorer and navigator in the Arctic regions. In 1827 he reached the latitude of $82^{\circ} 40'$, the highest ever attained; only about 500 English miles from the Pole.
- PERCY (THOMAS) (*s. page 215*), an eminent prelate, was born at Bridgenorth in 1728. His principal works are: "*The Hermit of Warkworth*;" "*The Reliques of English Poetry*;" "*Translations from the Chinese*." Died, 1811.
- PRESCOT (WM.) (*s. page 107*), a celebrated American historian; author of "*Philipp II.*;" "*Ferdinand and Isabella*;" "*Peru, Mexico*," &c. Died, 1859.
- ROBERTSON (WILLIAM D. D.) (*s. page 90*), a celebrated historian, was born at Borthwick in 1721. His chief works are: a "*History of Scotland*;" "*History of Charles V.*;" "*History of America*," &c. He died in 1793.
- ROTHWELL (J. S. S.) (*s. page 4—7—61—98—148—170*), author of the present work, &c. &c.
- SCOTT (SIR WALTER) (*s. page 217*), one of the most celebrated English Novelists, was born at Edinburgh, in 1771. Of his numerous works, both in prose and verse, we can only name "*Ivanhoe*," "*Waverley*," "*Lay of the Last Minstrel*." Died, 1832.
- SHAKSPEARE (WILLIAM) (*s. page 106—135—156—209—213*), the most illustrious dramatic poet, not only of England, but of the world at large, was born at Stratford-upon-Avon, in 1564, and died there on his 52nd birth day, in 1616. He wrote 37 tragedies and comedies, the insuperable merits of which, are too well known to the German public through the Genius of Schlegel, to require any notice of them here.
- SOUTHEY (ROBERT) (*s. page 80—93*), late poet laureate of England, equally distinguished as poet, historian, and biographer, was born in Bristol in 1774. His principal works are: his "*History of Brazil*;" "*The Peninsular War*;" "*Life of Nelson*;" "*Book of the Church*;" "*The Doctor*." He died in 1843.
- STEELE (SIR RICH'D.) (*s. page 63*), a celebrated essayist and dramatic writer was born in Dublin, in 1676. His chief works are: "*The Funeral, or Grief a-la-Mode*;" "*The Tender Husband*," &c. Died, 1729.
- STERNE (LAWRENCE) (*s. page 82—92—178*), a divine, and miscellaneous writer of a very singular and original cast, was born in 1713 at Clonmel in Ireland. His principal works are: "*The History of a Watch-Coat*;" "*Tristram Shandy*;" a "*Sentimental Journey*;" "*Sermons*." Died, 1768.
- STEWART (DUGALD) (*s. page 80*), an eminent philosopher and metaphysician, was born at Edinburgh, in 1753. His chief works are: "*Philosophy of the Human Mind*;" "*Outlines of Moral Philosophy*," &c. Died, 1828.
- SWIFT (DR. JONATHAN) (*s. page 11*), dean of St. Patrick's, a celebrated political, satirical, and miscellaneous writer, was born at Dublin in 1667. His chief works are: "*Gulliver's Travels*;" "*The Tale of a Tub*," &c. Died, 1745.
- THOMSON (JAMES) (*s. page 8*), a distinguished and highly popular poet, was born at Ednam, in Scotland, in 1700. His principal works are: "*The Seasons*;" and his tragedies of "*Sophonisba*;" "*Agamemnon*;" "*Tancred and Sigismunda*;" "*Coriolanus*." He died in 1748.
- TUPPER (MARTIN) (*s. page 210*), an excellent poet of the present day. His "*Proverbial Wisdom*," &c., are very good.
- WALCOT (DR. JOHN) (*s. page 117*), a humorous and satirical poet, better known by the name of Peter Pindar, was born in 1783, in Devonshire. His chief works are: "*Lyric Odes to the Royal Academicians*;" and the "*Lousiad*." He died blind in 1819.
- WHIPPLE (E. P.) (*s. page 148*), a modern American writer.

Von Herrn Professor Rothwell sind im Verlage von Julius Grubert in München folgende Hilfsmittel zur Erlernung der englischen Sprache erschienen:

Vollständige, theoretisch=praktische Grammatik der englischen Sprache. Nach dem gegenwärtigen Standpunkte der Wissenschaft. Mit vielen, das gründliche Studium außerordentlich erleichternden praktischen Beispielen, erklärenden Anmerkungen und Aufgaben; nebst beigelegter englischer Aussprache. Für Lehranstalten und zum Selbststudium. Nach einem neuen Systeme bearbeitet. Zwölfte vermehrte und verbesserte Auflage. 1875. gr. 8. geh. M. 4. 60.

Schlüssel zu den Aufgaben in der vollständig theoretisch=praktischen Grammatik der englischen Sprache. Wissenschaftlich bearbeitet. Zweite Auflage. 1875. gr. 8. geh. M. 1. 20.

Vereinfachte, theoretisch=praktische Schulgrammatik der englischen Sprache. Mit zahlreichen Aufgaben, Beispielen und beigelegter Aussprache. Für das Privatstudium, besonders aber für Gymnasien, höhere Mädchenschulen und andere Lehranstalten. Siebente verbesserte Auflage. 1875. gr. 8. M. 2. 50.

Erstes Lehrbuch der englischen Sprache. Nach einer verbesserten leichten Methode, mit Berücksichtigung der Grundlage der Grammatik und beigelegter Aussprache. Zum Schul- und Privatunterricht. Dritte sehr vermehrte und verbesserte Auflage. 1880. 8. geh. M. 1. 50.

Englisches Uebersetzungsbuch und Briefsteller. Enthaltend stufenmäßige Aufgaben über alle Theile der Sprache, Muster zu Privatbriefen, eine vollständige Handelskorrespondenz, gerichtlichen Dokumente, Anekdoten, Erzählungen, die Prosodie und eine vergleichende Uebersicht der acht Hauptsprachen Europa's. Mit Anmerkungen und erläuternden Beispielen. Dritte umgearbeitete und verbesserte Auflage. 1872. gr. 8. geh. M. 3. —.

New English and German Dialogues. Neue englische und deutsche Gespräche, mit beigelegter Aussprache nach den besten Orthoëpisten Englands, stetem Bezug auf die Regeln der Grammatik, Sprichwörtern, Anglicismen &c. Zur Erleichterung des Studiums beider Sprachen. Zwölfte vermehrte und verbesserte Auflage. 1879. 8. geh. M. 2. 30.
Gebunden. M. 2. 70.

The English-Reader: A Key to the English Language and Literature. A choice Miscellany of Anecdotes, Moral Tales, Narratives, Travels, Historical Pieces, Biographies, Fables, Letters, etc., selected from the best modern Authors. Fourteenth Edition. 1881. gr. 8. geh. M. 1. 70.

A select Collection of the Beauties of Modern English Poetry, with a Biography and Copious German Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 1844. 12. geh. M. 2. —.

My own Story-Book. Pretty little Stories, Tales, Fables, and Rhymes for the instruction and amusement of good little Children of 5 to 9 years of age. Original and select. Elegant cart. M. 2. 20.
In engl. Einband M. 2. 80.

Pearls of English Literature. Selected by a female hand. With a preface by Professor Rothwell. Elegant geh. M. 1. 40.
In engl. Einband M. 2. 20.

Trade is odious, or the Woman who was ashamed of her Profession. A Comediy in five Acts, by Mariano Jose de Larra. Translated from the Spanish and elucidated with notes for the use of Germans by J. S. S. Rothwell. 1854. 8. geh. M. —. 80.

The Parasite, or the Art to make one's Fortune. A Comedy in five Acts. Translated from Schiller's imitation of the French by J. S. S. Rothwell. 1858. 8. geh. M. —. 80.

Nach Professor **Rothwell's System** bearbeitet sind im Verlage von **Jul. Grubert** in München folgende **Lehrbücher der französischen Sprache** erschienen und durch alle Buchhandlungen zu beziehen:

Thorville, S. S., wissenschaftliche, vollständige, theoretisch = praktische **Grammatik der französischen Sprache**. Nach dem Rothwell'schen interlocutorischen System und nach den besten Autoritäten bearbeitet, mit vielen Aufgaben versehen, durch zahlreiche Beispiele erläutert und von mehr als 1200 erklärenden Anmerkungen begleitet. 1853. gr. 8. geh. M. 4. 80.

Thorville, S. S., **Nouveau manuel de la conversation française et allemande**. — **Neues Handbuch der französischen und deutschen Conversations-sprache**, enthaltend eine reiche Sammlung der gebräuchlichsten Wörter, Gespräche zur Erläuterung aller Redetheile, vertrauliche Gespräche über alle Verhältnisse des Lebens, Sprüchwörter, Germanismen und Gallicismen. Zur Erleichterung des Studiums beider Sprachen, auch als Dolmetscher für Reisende. Dritte verbesserte Auflage. 1879. 8. geh. M. 2. —.
Gebunden. M. 2. 40.

Thorville, S. S., **le Lecteur-Français**, ou introduction à la langue et à la littérature françaises. — **Der französische Leser**, oder Einleitung zu der französischen Sprache und Literatur. Enthaltend eine Auswahl Anekdoten, moralische Erzählungen, Fabeln, Reisebeschreibungen, historische Stücke, Briefe etc., 1853. gr. 8. geh. M. 2. 30.

Im gleichen Verlage ist ferner erschienen:

Bihn, A. Paul, praktisch = theoretischer **Lehrgang der englischen Handelskorrespondenz** nach Robertson's Methode. Für den Schul-, Privat- und Selbstunterricht bearbeitet. Zwei Theile. Mit einer (lithogr.) Schrifttafel. 1867. gr. 8. geh. M. 2. 70.
1. Theil: Die Korrespondenz im Wechselgeschäft M. 1. 20.
2. Theil: Die Korrespondenz im Waarengeschäft. M. 1. 50.



Bögl



Rothwell, J. S. S.

The English Reader a Key in the English Language and Literature

Munich 1896

L.g.sept. 50 fcf

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11814074-5